ORACLE
PeopleSoft

PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: PeopleSoft Cash Management

December 2022

ORACLE

PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: PeopleSoft Cash Management
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software, software documentation, data (as defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulation), or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs) and Oracle computer documentation or other Oracle data delivered to or accessed by U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software," "commercial computer software documentation," or "limited rights data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, reproduction, duplication, release, display, disclosure, modification, preparation of derivative works, and/or adaptation of i) Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs), ii) Oracle computer documentation and/or iii) other Oracle data, is subject to the rights and limitations specified in the license contained in the applicable contract. The terms governing the U.S. Government's use of Oracle cloud services are defined by the applicable contract for such services. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle®, Java, and MySQL are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Inside are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Epyc, and the AMD logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at https://docs.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc.

Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit https://docs.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info or visit https://docs.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs if you are hearing impaired.

Contents

Preface: Preface ..... **xiii**
Understanding the PeopleSoft Online Help and PeopleBooks xiii
Hosted PeopleSoft Online Help xiii
Locally Installed Help xiii
Downloadable PeopleBook PDF Files xiii
Common Help Documentation xiii
Field and Control Definitions xiv
Typographical Conventions xiv
ISO Country and Currency Codes xiv
Region and Industry Identifiers xv
Translations and Embedded Help xv
Using and Managing the PeopleSoft Online Help xvi
PeopleSoft FSCM Related Links xvi
Contact Us xvi
Follow Us xvi
Chapter 1: Getting Started with PeopleSoft Cash Management **19**
Cash Management Business Processes 19
Cash Management Integrations 19
Cash Management Implementation 20
Chapter 2: Defining Cash Management Processing Options **25**
Establishing Cash Management Options 25
Defining Treasury Business Unit Options 28
Page Used to Define Treasury Business Unit Options 28
Understanding Defining Treasury Business Unit Options 28
Treasury Options Page 28
Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs 34
Page Used to Define Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs 34
Understanding Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs 34
Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference Page 34
Defining Market Rates 35
Pages Used to Define Market Rates 35
Understanding Defining Market Rates 35
Market/Exchange Codes Page 36
Market Rates Page 36
Market Rates - Market Rate Page 38
Rate Definition Page 39
Rate Reset Code Page 40
Securing ChartFields for PeopleSoft Treasury 40
Integrating PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting 41
Chapter 3: Navigating in Treasury Management **43**
Using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface to Navigate My Treasury 43
Pages Used to Navigate My Treasury in the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface 43
Treasury Tile 47
Navigating in Treasury Management 50
Pages Used to Navigate in Treasury Management 50
Chapter 4: Managing Facilities **53**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding Facilities....53
Understanding Facility Review....53
Prerequisites for Defining Facilities....53
Defining Facilities....54
Pages Used to Define Facilities....54
Understanding Defining Facilities....55
Memo Attributes Page....55
Facility Definition Page....56
Monitoring Facilities....59
Pages Used to Monitor Facilities....59
Understanding Monitoring Facilities....59
Schedule Facility Review Page....59
Facilities by Counterparty Page....60
Chapter 5: Managing Fees and Account Analysis....61
Understanding Managing Fees and Account Analysis....61
Common Elements Used to Manage Fees and Analyze Accounts....62
Setting Up Fee Structures....62
Pages Used to Set Up Fee Structure....62
Understanding Setting Up Fee Structures....63
Fee Transaction Tables Page....63
Fee Codes Page....63
SQL Where Criteria Page....66
Fee Structures - Structure Accounts Page....67
Fee Structures - Structure Definition Page....68
Fee Calculation Type − Fee Structure Page....70
Comparing Fee Structures....70
Pages Used to Compare Fee Structures....70
Fee Structure Comparison Page....70
Performing Account Analysis....71
Pages Used to Perform Account Analysis....71
Understanding Performing Account Analysis....72
Common Elements Used to Perform Account Analysis....72
Creating Statements Manually....72
Fee Statements - Information Page....73
Fee Statements - Rates Page....74
Fee Statements - Balance Compensation Page....74
Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments Page....75
Fee Statements - Service Charges Page....76
Fee Statements - Service Adjustments Page....78
Automatically Importing Statement Information....78
Account Analysis Validation Page....79
Using the Account Analysis Manager....79
Page Used for the Account Analysis Manager....80
Account Analysis Manager Page....80
Creating Fee Entries....81
Pages Used to Create Fee Entries....81
Enter Fees Page....81
Chapter 6: Using Cash Forecasting to Manage Cash Positions....85
Understanding Cash Forecasting....85
Setting Up Cash Forecasting....86
Pages Used to Set Up Cash Forecasting....86

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding Setting Up Cash Forecasting....87
Defining Time Sets....87
Define Time Sets Page....88
Position Field Types Page....90
Understanding Forecast Mapping....92
Forecast Mapping Page....92
Position Source Set Page....94
Setting Up Position Sources....95
Position Source Page....96
Position Source Contacts Page....97
Drill Back Details Page....98
Selection Criteria Page....100
Working with Forecast Rules....102
Forecast Rules Page....102
Calculate Time Spans Page....104
Create Position Source SQL Page....105
Worksheet Definition Page....105
Worksheet Line Items Page....108
Generating the Cash Forecast....110
Pages Used to Generate the Cash Forecast....110
Understanding Manual Positions....111
Enter Manual Position Page....111
Understanding Cash Forecast Calculations....114
Schedule Cash Forecast Page....115
Working with Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results....116
Pages Used to Work with Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results....116
Understanding Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results....116
Cash Forecasting Results Page....118
Understanding the Cash Forecast Search....131
Cash Forecast Search Page....131
Cash Forecast User Preferences Page....135
Performing the Cash Sweep from Cash Forecast Results....136
Understanding Copy Cash Forecast Results....137
Copy Cash Forecast Results Page....137
Copying Cash Forecast Results....138
Understanding The Cash Management Fluid Homepage....141
Working with Cash Forecasting on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface....143
Pages Used to Work with Cash Forecasting on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface....143
Cash Forecast Tile....144
My Preferences - Forecast Page (Fluid)....145
Cash Forecast - Summary Page (Fluid)....147
Cash Forecast Drilldown Page (Fluid)....149
Cash Forecast - Currency Page (Fluid)....150
Cash Forecast - Bank Account Groups Page (Fluid)....151
Cash Forecast - Bank Page (Fluid)....153
Cash Forecast - Bank Accounts Page (Fluid)....154
Cash Forecast - Business Unit Groups Page (Fluid)....155
Cash Forecast - Business Unit Page (Fluid)....157
Reviewing Available and Forecast Balances on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface....158
Pages Used to Review Available and Forecast Balances on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface....158

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Available vs Forecast Balance Tile....159
My Preferences - Forecast Page (Fluid)....159
Available vs Forecast Page (Fluid)....161
Available vs Forecast Details Page (Fluid)....162
Importing Cash Forecast Data....163
Page Used to Import Cash Forecasting Data....164
Integrating External Sources into Cash Forecasting....164
Setting Up Integration Broker to Import Cash Forecast Data....165
Import Cash Forecast Data Page....166
Creating Cash Forecast Reports....169
Pages Used to Create Cash Forecast Reports....169
Understanding Creating Cash Forecast Reports....169
Worksheet Definition (Report) Page....170
Cash Position Report Page....171
Cash Position Variance Report Page....172
Chapter 7: Managing Bilateral Netting....175
Understanding the Bilateral Netting Process....175
Discounts Applied to Netted Transactions....177
Common Elements Used to Manage Bilateral Netting....180
Prerequisites for Managing Bilateral Netting....181
Setting Up Bilateral Nets....181
Pages Used to Set Up Bilateral Nets....181
Understanding Setting Up Bilateral Nets....182
Prerequisites....183
Netting Participants Page....183
Add Multiple Suppliers Page....185
Add Multiple Customers Page....186
Netting Rules Page....186
Netting Contracts - Primary Information Page....187
Netting Contracts - Settlement Information Page....189
Netting Exclusion Parameters Page....190
Selecting Nets Automatically....191
Page Used to Automatically Select Nets....191
Automatic Netting Selection Page....191
Creating Nets Manually....192
Pages Used to Manually Create Nets....192
Understanding Creating Nets Manually....192
Common Elements Used to Manually Create Nets....193
Manual Selection Page....193
Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst Page....194
Manual Select Netting - Payables Page....195
Adding Multiple Vouchers for Payables Manual Netting....196
Manual Select Netting - Receivables Page....196
Adding Multiple Items for Receivables Manual Netting....196
Adjusting Manually Netted Information....197
Pages Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information....197
Common Elements Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information....197
Manual Adjustment Page....197
Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr Page....199
Adjust Netting - Payables Page....199
Adjust Netting - Receivables Page....200

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Processing Multicurrency Nets....201
Multicurrency Netting Functionality....201
Prerequisites....201
Processing Multicurrency Nets....202
Administering Nets....203
Pages Used to Administer Nets....203
Approve Netting Page....203
Cancel Netting Page....204
Closing Nets....205
Understanding the Net Closing Process in Pay Cycle Manager....205
Inquiring on Bilateral Nets....206
Pages Used to Inquire on Bilateral Nets....206
Review Netting Contracts Page....206
Netting Inquiry Page....206
Review Multiple Netting Page....206
Chapter 8: Performing Cash Sweep to Manage Liquidity....207
Understanding Cash Sweep Functionality....207
Prerequisites....208
Defining and Approving a Cash Sweep Structure....209
Pages Used to Define and Approve a Cash Sweep Structure....209
Overview of a Cash Sweep Structure....209
Cash Sweep Structure Page....212
Approve Cash Sweep Structure Page....219
Processing Cash Sweep and Reviewing the Results....220
Pages Used to Run the Cash Sweep Process and Review the Results....220
Overview of the Cash Sweep Processing and Results....220
Cash Sweep Request Page....221
Cash Sweep Results Page....222
Generating Cash Sweep Reports....225
Pages Used to Generate Cash Sweep Reports....225
Cash Sweep Structure Page....225
Cash Sweep Bank Accounts Page....226
Cash Sweep Summary Page....226
Denied Cash Sweep Payments Page....226
Chapter 9: Transferring Funds....229
Understanding the Funds Transfer Process....229
Common Elements Used to Transfer Funds....233
Prerequisites for Transferring Funds....233
Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates....234
Pages Used to Create and Approve Funds Transfer Templates....234
Understanding the Funds Transfer Template Component....235
Enter Transfer Templates - Origin Page....236
Prenotification Details Page....237
Enter Transfer Templates - Destination Page....238
Enter Transfer Templates - Bank Routings Page....242
Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda Page....242
Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description Page....243
Enter Transfer Templates - Beneficiary Address Page....243
Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security Page....243
Managing Funds Transfer Template Approval....245
Page Used to Manage Funds Transfer Template Approval....245

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Approve Transfer Templates Page....245
Beginning Transfer Funds Requests....246
Page Used to Begin a Transfer Funds Request....246
Transfer Funds Page....246
Creating EFT Requests....247
Pages Used to Create an EFT Request....247
EFT Request - Origin Page....248
EFT Request - Destination Page....251
EFT Request - Beneficiary Address Page....255
Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests....255
Pages Used to Create Fee Entries for EFT Requests....255
Defining Fee Codes for EFT Requests....256
Using Fee Codes for EFT Requests....256
Creating Bank Account Transfers....256
Pages Used to Create Bank Account Transfers....256
Understanding Bank Account Transfers....256
Prerequisites....257
Bank Account Transfer Page....257
Category Purpose Page....260
Accounting Events Page....261
Working with Bank Transfers on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface....261
Pages Used to Work with Bank Transfers on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface....262
Bank Transfer Tile....262
Bank Transfer Center Page....263
Bank Transfer Review Page....263
Bank Account Transfer Page....264
Reviewing Repetitive Transfers....269
Page Used to Review Repetitive Transfers....269
Review Repetitive Templates Page....269
Chapter 10: Working with Settlements....271
Understanding the Settlements Payment Process....271
Settlement Workflow....272
Settlement Approval....272
Common Elements Used to Work with Settlements....273
Setting Up Settlement Approvals....275
Configuring Workflow for Settlement Approvals....275
Configuring the Approval Framework for Settlement Approvals....275
Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission....285
Pages Used to Select Settlements....286
Select Settlements Page....286
Sanction Review Page....289
Treasury Payment Life-Cycle Page....289
Review Settlements Page....291
Manually Approving Settlements....291
Pages Used to Manually Approve Settlements....291
Approve Settlements Page....291
Using the Settlement Manager....293
Pages Used with the Settlement Manager....294
Understanding the Settlement Manager....294
Settlement Manager Page....294
Settlement Manager Preferences Page....296

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Specifying Deal Settlement Netting....296
Pages Used to Specify Deal Settlement Netting....296
Deal Settlement Netting Page....297
Review Deal Netting Page....298
Chapter 11: Using PeopleSoft Mobile Approvals for Treasury....299
Understanding PeopleSoft Mobile Approvals for Treasury....299
Setting Up PeopleSoft Mobile Approvals for Treasury....299
Approving Settlements Using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface....302
Pages Used to Approve Settlements Using PeopleSoft Fluid Approval Framework....302
Treasury Settlements - Pending Approvals Page....303
Treasury Settlements - Approval Header Detail Page....306
Treasury Attachments Page....308
Approval Chain Page....309
Chapter 12: Managing Investment Pools....311
Understanding Investment Pools....311
Setting Up Investment Pools....312
Pages Used to Set Up an Investment Pool....312
Understanding Setting Up Investment Pools....312
Pool Information Page....312
Concentration Limits Page....315
Adding Participants to an Investment Pool....316
Pages Used to Add Participants to an Investment Pool....316
Understanding Pool Participation Information....316
Participant Information Page....317
Managing Participants' Funds....318
Pages Used to Create Participant Transactions....318
Understanding Participant Transactions....319
Participant Transactions Page....319
Approve Transactions Page....321
View Transactions Page....322
Viewing Investment Pool Positions....322
Pages Used to Manage Investment Pool Positions....322
Pool Position Page....323
Participant Position Page....324
Maintaining Pool Positions....325
Pages Used to Update Pool Positions....325
Updating Investment Pools....326
Import Pool Position Page....326
Update Pool Position Page....329
Income Distribution Page....330
Chapter 13: Managing Treasury Accounting....333
Understanding the Treasury Management Accounting Process....333
Accounting Templates....333
Accounting Events....333
Interunit and Intraunit Processing in Accounting....335
Defining and Maintaining Accounting Substitution Rules....336
Pages Used to Define and Maintain Substitution Rules....336
Understanding Defining and Maintaining Accounting Substitution Rules....337
Substitution Rule Definition Page....337
Manage Substitution Rules Page....339
Running Accounting Substitution Rule Reports....339

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Establishing Accounting Templates....341
Pages Used to Establish Accounting Templates....341
Understanding Establishing Accounting Templates....341
Accounting Templates Page....341
Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule Page....348
Linking Templates with the Associated Accounting Events....348
Processing Accounting Entries....349
Page Used to Process Accounting Entries....350
Understanding the Inbound and Outbound Transaction Process Flow....350
Understanding the Automated Accounting Build Process....350
Automated Accounting Page....351
Managing Accounting Entries....354
Pages Used to Manage Accounting Entries....354
Common Elements Used to Manage Accounting Entries....354
Accounting Entries Page....355
Creating Ad Hoc Accounting Entries....363
View/Approve Entries Page....365
Accounting Summary Page....366
Understanding Reverse Accounting....367
Reverse Accounting Request Page....367
Reviewing Accounting Information....372
Pages Used to Review Accounting Information....372
Common Elements Used in Accounting Information....373
Treasury Journal Drill Page....373
Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure....374
Page Used to Maintain Fiscal Period Closure....374
Understanding the Fiscal Period Summary Page....374
Prerequisites....374
Fiscal Period Summary Page....375
Chapter 14: Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management....377
Understanding VAT Processing in Treasury Management....377
Prerequisites for VAT Processing in Treasury Management....378
Setting Up VAT for Treasury Management....378
Pages Used to Set Up VAT for Treasury Management....378
Understanding Setting Up VAT for Treasury Management....379
Prerequisites....380
Treasury - VAT Options Page....380
Editing VAT External Transaction Details....381
Pages Used to Edit VAT External Transaction Details....381
Understanding Editing VAT on Treasury External Transactions....382
Effects of Changing VAT Defaults....382
Treasury VAT Processing Page....382
Creating VAT Transactions for Fees....391
Pages Used to Create VAT Transactions for Fees....391
Understanding Creating VAT Transactions for Fees....392
Creating VAT Transactions Using Automatic Reconciliation....392
Page Used to Create VAT Using Automatic Reconciliation....392
Understanding Creating VAT Transactions Using Automatic Reconciliation....392
Forcing the Reconciliation of VAT-Applicable Transactions....393
Managing VAT Accounting....393
Pages Used to Manage VAT Accounting....393

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding Managing VAT Accounting....394
Processing VAT with Automated Accounting....394
Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries....395
Treasury VAT Information Page....396
Processing Final Treasury Management VAT Transactions....400
Chapter 15: Performing In-House Banking Activities....401
Prerequisites for Performing In-House Banking Activities....401
Managing In-House Banking Activities....401
Pages Used to Manage In-House Banking Activities....402
Calculate Interest Accruals Page....402
Internal Account Activity Page....403
Generating the In-House Bank Statement Report....403
Page Used to Generate the In-House Bank Statement Report....403
In-House Bank Statement Page....403
Chapter 16: Using the Treasury WorkCenter and Manager Dashboard....405
Understanding the Treasury WorkCenter and Manager Dashboard....405
Example: Treasury WorkCenter....406
Dashboards and Pivot Grids....407
Setting Up the Treasury Manager Dashboard....407
Setting Pagelet Options in the Treasury WorkCenter....407
Using the Treasury WorkCenter - My Work....408
Cash....409
Finalize Accounting Entries Page....410
Approve Transfer Templates Page....411
Financial Gateway....412
High Value Payments Page....413
Payments Due Today....415
Unpaid Payments Page....416
Deals....417
Change Deals Portfolio Page....418
Confirm Deals Page....419
Approve Deals Page....420
Exceptions....421
Accounting Errors Page....422
Using the Treasury WorkCenter - Links....423
Using the Treasury WorkCenter - Queries....424
Using the Treasury WorkCenter - Reports and Processes....425
Chapter 17: Using the Treasury Dashboard....427
Understanding the Treasury Dashboard....427
Cash Management Dashboard....428
Deal Management Dashboard....429
Operational Dashboards....430
Configuring and Displaying the Cash Management Dashboard....431
Page Used to Configure and Display the Cash Management Dashboard....431
Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position Page....431
Configuring and Displaying the Deal Management Dashboard....435
Pages Used to Configure and Display the Deal Management Dashboard....435
Dashboard Configuration - Deals Page....435
Dashboard Configuration - Time Series Page....437
Configuring and Displaying the Payments Dashboard....437
Page Used to Configure and Display the Payments Dashboard....437

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source Page 437
Configuring and Displaying the Bank Statement Load Chart 439
Page Used to Configure and Display the Bank Statement Load Chart 439
Dashboard Configuration - Bank Statement Load Page 439
Reviewing Investment and Debt on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface 441
Pages Used to Review Investment and Debt on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface 442
Investment and Debt Tile 442
My Preferences - Investment and Debt Page (Fluid) 443
Investment and Debt Page 444
NavBar: Investment and Debt Page 447
Chapter 18: Using the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter 449
Understanding the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter 449
Setting Up and Personalizing the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter 449
Using the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter 449
Pages Used with the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter 449
Treasury Workcenter Tile 450
Treasury WorkCenter page 450
Using the Fluid Treasury WorkCenter - My Work 453
Finalize Accounting Entries Page 453
Approve Transfer Templates Page 454
High Value Payments Page 455
Payments Due Today 456
Unpaid Payments Page 457
Change Deals Portfolio Page 457
Confirm Deals Page 458
Approve Deals Page 459
Payments on Hold Page 460
Payments in Error Page 461
Accounting Errors Page 461
Using the Fluid Treasury WorkCenter - Links 462
Using the Fluid Treasury WorkCenter - Queries 462
Using the Fluid Treasury WorkCenter - Reports and Processes 463
Chapter 19: Configuring Batch Processes for Cash Management 465
Configuring Temporary Tables for Batch Processing 465
Chapter 20: Delivered Workflows for Cash Management 467
Delivered Workflows for Cash Management 467
Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval 467
Chapter 21: Cash Management Reports 469
Cash Management Reports: A to Z 469

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Preface

Understanding the PeopleSoft Online Help and PeopleBooks

The PeopleSoft Online Help is a website that enables you to view all help content for PeopleSoft applications and PeopleTools. The help provides standard navigation and full-text searching, as well as context-sensitive online help for PeopleSoft users.

Hosted PeopleSoft Online Help

You can access the hosted PeopleSoft Online Help on the Oracle Help Center. The hosted PeopleSoft Online Help is updated on a regular schedule, ensuring that you have access to the most current documentation. This reduces the need to view separate documentation posts for application maintenance on My Oracle Support. The hosted PeopleSoft Online Help is available in English only.

To configure the context-sensitive help for your PeopleSoft applications to use the Oracle Help Center, see Configuring Context-Sensitive Help Using the Hosted Online Help Website.

Locally Installed Help

If you're setting up an on-premise PeopleSoft environment, and your organization has firewall restrictions that prevent you from using the hosted PeopleSoft Online Help, you can install the online help locally. See Configuring Context-Sensitive Help Using a Locally Installed Online Help Website.

Downloadable PeopleBook PDF Files

You can access downloadable PDF versions of the help content in the traditional PeopleBook format on the Oracle Help Center. The content in the PeopleBook PDFs is the same as the content in the PeopleSoft Online Help, but it has a different structure and it does not include the interactive navigation features that are available in the online help.

Common Help Documentation

Common help documentation contains information that applies to multiple applications. The two main types of common help are:

- Application Fundamentals
- Using PeopleSoft Applications

Most product families provide a set of application fundamentals help topics that discuss essential information about the setup and design of your system. This information applies to many or all applications in the PeopleSoft product family. Whether you are implementing a single application, some combination of applications within the product family, or the entire product family, you should be familiar with the contents of the appropriate application fundamentals help. They provide the starting points for fundamental implementation tasks.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

In addition, the *PeopleTools: Applications User's Guide* introduces you to the various elements of the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture. It also explains how to use the navigational hierarchy, components, and pages to perform basic functions as you navigate through the system. While your application or implementation may differ, the topics in this user's guide provide general information about using PeopleSoft applications.

Field and Control Definitions

PeopleSoft documentation includes definitions for most fields and controls that appear on application pages. These definitions describe how to use a field or control, where populated values come from, the effects of selecting certain values, and so on. If a field or control is not defined, then it either requires no additional explanation or is documented in a common elements section earlier in the documentation. For example, the Date field rarely requires additional explanation and may not be defined in the documentation for some pages.

Typographical Conventions

The following table describes the typographical conventions that are used in the online help.

Typographical Convention	***Description***
Key+Key	Indicates a key combination action. For example, a plus sign (+) between keys means that you must hold down the first key while you press the second key. For **Alt+W,** hold down the **Alt** key while you press the **W** key.
. . . (ellipses)	Indicate that the preceding item or series can be repeated any number of times in PeopleCode syntax.
{ } (curly braces)	Indicate a choice between two options in PeopleCode syntax. Options are separated by a pipe (|).
[ ] (square brackets)	Indicate optional items in PeopleCode syntax.
& (ampersand)	When placed before a parameter in PeopleCode syntax, an ampersand indicates that the parameter is an already instantiated object. Ampersands also precede all PeopleCode variables.
⇒	This continuation character has been inserted at the end of a line of code that has been wrapped at the page margin. The code should be viewed or entered as a single, continuous line of code without the continuation character.

ISO Country and Currency Codes

PeopleSoft Online Help topics use International Organization for Standardization (ISO) country and currency codes to identify country-specific information and monetary amounts.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

ISO country codes may appear as country identifiers, and ISO currency codes may appear as currency identifiers in your PeopleSoft documentation. Reference to an ISO country code in your documentation does not imply that your application includes every ISO country code. The following example is a country-specific heading: "(FRA) Hiring an Employee."

The PeopleSoft Currency Code table (CURRENCY_CD_TBL) contains sample currency code data. The Currency Code table is based on ISO Standard 4217, "Codes for the representation of currencies," and also relies on ISO country codes in the Country table (COUNTRY_TBL). The navigation to the pages where you maintain currency code and country information depends on which PeopleSoft applications you are using. To access the pages for maintaining the Currency Code and Country tables, consult the online help for your applications for more information.

Region and Industry Identifiers

Information that applies only to a specific region or industry is preceded by a standard identifier in parentheses. This identifier typically appears at the beginning of a section heading, but it may also appear at the beginning of a note or other text.

Example of a region-specific heading: "(Latin America) Setting Up Depreciation"

Region Identifiers

Regions are identified by the region name. The following region identifiers may appear in the PeopleSoft Online Help:

- Asia Pacific
- Europe
- Latin America
- North America

Industry Identifiers

Industries are identified by the industry name or by an abbreviation for that industry. The following industry identifiers may appear in the PeopleSoft Online Help:

- USF (U.S. Federal)
- E&G (Education and Government)

Translations and Embedded Help

PeopleSoft 9.2 software applications include translated embedded help. With the 9.2 release, PeopleSoft aligns with the other Oracle applications by focusing our translation efforts on embedded help. We are not planning to translate our traditional online help and PeopleBooks documentation. Instead we offer very direct translated help at crucial spots within our application through our embedded help widgets. Additionally, we have a one-to-one mapping of application and help translations, meaning that the software and embedded help translation footprint is identical—something we were never able to accomplish in the past.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Using and Managing the PeopleSoft Online Help

Select About This Help in the left navigation panel on any page in the PeopleSoft Online Help to see information on the following topics:

- Using the PeopleSoft Online Help.
- Managing hosted Online Help.
- Managing locally installed PeopleSoft Online Help.

PeopleSoft FSCM Related Links

Oracle Help Center

Hosted Online Help

PeopleSoft Information Portal

My Oracle Support

Financial and Supply Chain Management information for Search Framework search engine can be found in PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals documentation. For application specific information, see the "Understanding Search Pages within Components " (Application Fundamentals) topic.

PeopleSoft Training from Oracle University

PeopleSoft Video Feature Overviews on YouTube

PeopleSoft Business Process Maps (Microsoft Visio format)

PeopleSoft Spotlight Series

Contact Us

Send your suggestions to psoft-infodev_us@oracle.com.

Please include the applications update image or PeopleTools release that you're using.

Follow Us

Icon	***Link***
	YouTube

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Icon	*Link*
	Twitter@PeopleSoft_Info.
	PeopleSoft Blogs
	LinkedIn

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 1

Getting Started with PeopleSoft Cash Management

Cash Management Business Processes

Cash Management provides the following business processes:

- Bank fee and account analysis.
- Position tree creation and maintenance.
- Cash position calculation and review.
- Transactional bilateral netting.
- Electronic funds transfers (EFTs), bank account transfers.
- Cash flow settlement payments.
- Investment pools.
- Accounting events and accounting entry creation, maintenance, and review.
- VAT (value-added tax) accounting creation and adjustment.
- In-house banking activities.

This documentation covers these business processes in the business process topics.

Cash Management Integrations

Cash Management integrates with the following PeopleSoft applications:

- Deal Management
- Financial Gateway
- Risk Management
- Payables
- Receivables
- General Ledger

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- JD Edwards General Ledger

This documentation covers integration considerations in the implementation topics.

Supplemental information about third-party application integrations is located on the My Oracle Support web site.

Cash Management Implementation

PeopleSoft Setup Manager enables you to review a list of setup tasks for your organization for the products that you are implementing. The setup tasks include the components that you must set up, listed in the order in which you must enter data into the component tables, and links to the corresponding documentation.

Cash Management also provides component interfaces to help you load data from your existing system into Cash Management tables. Use the Excel to Component Interface utility with the component interfaces to populate the tables.

This table lists all of the components that have component interfaces:

Component	***Component Interfaces***	***References***
Account (GL_ACCOUNT)	ACCOUNT_CF	See "Account Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Alternate Account (ALTACCT)	ALTACCT_CF	See "Adding and Mapping Accounts and Alternate Accounts" (Application Fundamentals).
Operating Unit (OPERATING_UNIT)	OPER_UNIT_CF	See "Operating Unit Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Department (DEPARTMENT)	DEPT_CF	See "Department Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Fund Code (FUND_DEFINITION)	FUND_CF	See "Fund Code Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Statistics Code (STATISTICS_TBL)	STATISTICS_CODE	See "Statistics Code Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Class Field (CLASS_PNL)	CLASS_CF	See "Class Field Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Budget Reference (BUDREF_PNL)	BUDGET_REF	See "Budget Reference Page" (Application Fundamentals).

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Component	*Component Interfaces*	*References*
Program Code (PROGRAM_ DEFINITION)	PROGRAM_CF	See "Program Code Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Scenario (BD_SCENARIO)	BUDGET_SCENARIO	See "Scenario Page" (Application Fundamentals).
ChartField 1 (CHARTFIELD1)	CHARTFIELD1	See "ChartField 1 Page" (Application Fundamentals).
ChartField 2 (CHARTFIELD2)	CHARTFIELD2	See "ChartField 1 Page" (Application Fundamentals).
ChartField 3 (CHARTFIELD3)	CHARTFIELD3	See "ChartField 1 Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Interunit Template (IU_INTER_TMPLT)	IU_INTER_TMPLT	See "InterUnit Template Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Intraunit Template (IU_INTRA_TMPLT)	IU_INTRA_TMPLT	See "Intraunit Template Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Interunit Pair Maintenance (IU_INTER_ PR_BASIC)	IU_INTER_PR_BASIC	See "Interunit Pairs" (Application Fundamentals).
Ledgers for a Unit (BUSINESS_UNIT_ LED)	EM_BUS_UNIT_LED	See "Defining Ledgers for a Business Unit" (Application Fundamentals).
Value Added Tax Code (TAX_CODE_ VAT)	TAX_CODE_VAT	See "Value Added Tax Code Page" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports).
VAT Accounts by Business Unit (TAX_ BU_CODE_VAT)	TAX_BU_CODE_VAT	See "General Ledger Definition - VAT Defaults Page" (PeopleSoft General Ledger).
VAT Entity (VAT_ENTITY_ID)	VAT_ENTITY_ID	See "Setting Up VAT Entities" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports).
Vat Defaults CI Component (VAT_DEF _CI)	VAT_DEF_CI	See "Establishing VAT Defaults" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports).
Bank Branch Information (BANK_ BRANCHPNL)	TR_BANK_BRANCH_CI	See "Bank Branch Information Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Component	*Component Interfaces*	*References*
Financial Contacts (CONTACTS)	TR_FINANCIAL_CONTACTS_CI	See "Contact Information Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
Netting Participants (NET_ PARTICIPANT)	TR_NET_PARTICIPANT_CI	See Netting Participants Page.
Contact Info (CONTACT_INFO)	CONTACT	See "Setting Up and Maintaining Contacts" (PeopleSoft Order to Cash Common Information).
General Information (CUSTOMER_ GENERAL)	CUSTOMER_MAIN_CI	See "Adding General Customer Information" (PeopleSoft Order to Cash Common Information).
User Preferences (OPR_DEFAULT)	OPR_DEFAULT_FIN	See "Defining Cross-Application User Preferences" (Application Fundamentals).
Fee Codes (DEFINE_FEE_CODE)	TR_DEFINE_FEE_CODE_CI	See Fee Codes Page.
Settlement Instructions (SETTLEMENT _INSTRUC)	TR_SETTLEMENT_ INSTRUCTIONS_CI	See "Beneficiary Bank Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
Treasury Facility Review (FCLTY_DFN)	TR_FCLTY_BCI	See Defining Facilities.
Reconciliation Exceptions (TR_ UNRECON_TRANS)	TR_UNRECON_TRANS	See "Understanding Bank Reconciliation Configuration" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
Treasury Position Time Span (POS_ TIME_SPAN_PNL)	TR_POS_TIME_SPAN	See "Setting Up Dealing Trees and Deal Positions" (PeopleSoft Deal Management).
Create Position SQL (POS_CREATE_ SQL)	TR_POS_CREATE_SQL	See "Setting Up Dealing Trees and Deal Positions" (PeopleSoft Deal Management).
Manual Position Entry (POS_GENERIC _ENTRY)	TR_MANUAL_POSITION_ENTRY _CI	See "Setting Up Dealing Trees and Deal Positions" (PeopleSoft Deal Management).
Netting Accounts (BANK_PNLNET)	TR_NETTING_ACCOUNTS_CI	See "Defining Netting Accounts" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
External Bank Accounts (BANK_ EXTERNAL)	TR_EXTERNAL_ACCOUNTS_CI	See "Defining External Account Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Component	*Component Interfaces*	*References*
External Transactions (GEN_TRAN_ UPDT)	TR_EXTERNAL_ TRANSACTIONS_CI	See "Reconciling Externally Generated Transactions" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Other Sources of Information

In the planning phase of your implementation, take advantage of all Oracle sources of information, including the installation guides and troubleshooting information.

Other resources appear in PeopleTools documentation. See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Setup Manager*.

For information about using the Excel-to-Component Interface Utility, see the product documentation for *PeopleSoft Enterprise Components*.

Related Links

"Other Sources of Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 2

Defining Cash Management Processing Options

Establishing Cash Management Options

This table provides a listing of custom navigation pages that are used to navigate to setup pages in Cash Management. These pages can be accessed through folders found on the Treasury Definitions Center page. This table lists the order the various components should be defined.

Page Name	*Navigation*	*Usage*	*Setup Information*
Treasury Definitions Center	**Treasury Definitions Center**	Access links, grouped by logical function, to setup pages for Treasury Management products. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.	
Banks	Click **Banks**.	Access pages to set up comprehensive bank information (such as bank, bank account, and bank branch information).	See "Understanding Bank Setup" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing). See "Defining Counterparty Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing). See "Understanding External, Internal, and Netting Accounts" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing). See "Defining Internal Account Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing). See "Defining Common Journal Definitions" (Application Fundamentals).
Business Unit Related	Click **Business Unit Related**.	Access the Treasury Options page and specify Treasury Management-specific options for your business units.	See Defining Treasury Business Unit Options.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Navigation*	*Usage*	*Setup Information*
Fees	Click **Fees**.	Access pages to set up fee codes, tables, and structures.	See Setting Up Fee Structures.
Facilities	Click **Facilities.**	Access pages to set up and update facility information.	See Defining Facilities.
Settlements/Netting	Click **Settlements/Netting.**	Access pages to set up bilateral netting rules, participants, and contracts.	See Setting Up Bilateral Nets.
Position Worksheet	Click **Position Worksheet.**	Access pages to set up field types, position sources, forecast mapping, forecast rules, position source sets, time sets, and cash forecast worksheet definitions.	See Setting Up Cash Forecasting.
Funds Transfer	Click **Funds Transfer.**	Access pages to set up and approve funds transfer templates.	See Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates.
Bank Integration	Click **Bank Integration.**	Access pages to define and manage integration information between PeopleSoft and your banks, for your bank statement and payment activities.	See "Understanding Electronic Banking" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway).
Rates	Click **Rates.**	Access pages to set up exchange rate, market rates, rate reset codes, and currency/holiday cross-reference information.	See Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs. See Defining Market Rates.
Accounting	Click **Accounting.**	Access pages to set up accounting templates and events.	See Establishing Accounting Templates.
Investment Pools	Click **Investment Pools**.	Access pages to set up and update investment pool and participant information.	See Understanding Investment Pools.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Navigation*	*Usage*	*Setup Information*
Deals and Instrument Types	Click **Deals/Instrument Types.**	Define deal instruments and templates, and perform deal portfolio activities.	See "Understanding Instruments Types and Instrument Templates" (PeopleSoft Deal Management). See "Understanding the Deal Capture Process" (PeopleSoft Deal Management).
Analytics	Click **Analytics.**	Define risk management analytic functions, calculations, and supplier information.	See "Understanding the Risk Analysis Process" (PeopleSoft Risk Management).
Hedges	Click **Hedges.**	Set up hedge groups, item sources, and strategies.	See "Understanding Hedge Creation and Maintenance" (PeopleSoft Risk Management).

This table lists additional pages used for setting up Cash Management that are not listed in the Treasury Definitions Center page.

Page Name	*Navigation*	*Usage*	*Setup Information*
Installation Options – Treasury	**Set Up Financials/Supply Chain** >**Install** >**Installation Options** >**Treasury**	Define integration options for accounting and Financial Gateway functionality.	See "Installation Options - Treasury Page" (Application Fundamentals).
Business Calendar	**Set Up Financials/Supply Chain** > **Common Definitions** > **Calendars/ Schedules** > **Business Calendar**	Indicate business days, non-business days, and holidays for use in Cash Management and Deal Management processing functions.	See "Defining Business Calendars" (Application Fundamentals).
Bank Statement Accounting	**Banking** > **Administer Reconciliation** > **Bank Statement Accounting**	Define bank statement accounting match rules. The system searches the bank statement addenda for the transactional text you define, and automatically assigns a default accounting template to the transaction.	See "Setting Up Cash Management Bank Statement Accounting Functionality" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
ChartField Security	**Set Up Financials/Supply Chain** > **Security** > **ChartField Security**	Set up ChartField security for Treasury components.	See "Understanding ChartField Security" (Application Fundamentals).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Defining Treasury Business Unit Options

Page Used to Define Treasury Business Unit Options

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Treasury Options Page	BUS_UNIT_OPT_TR	Set up default processing options specific to your Treasury business units.

Understanding Defining Treasury Business Unit Options

You must define default processing options (including VAT) for business units for use in Cash Management, Deal Management, and Risk Management.

Note: All Treasury applications use general ledger business units.

Treasury Options Page

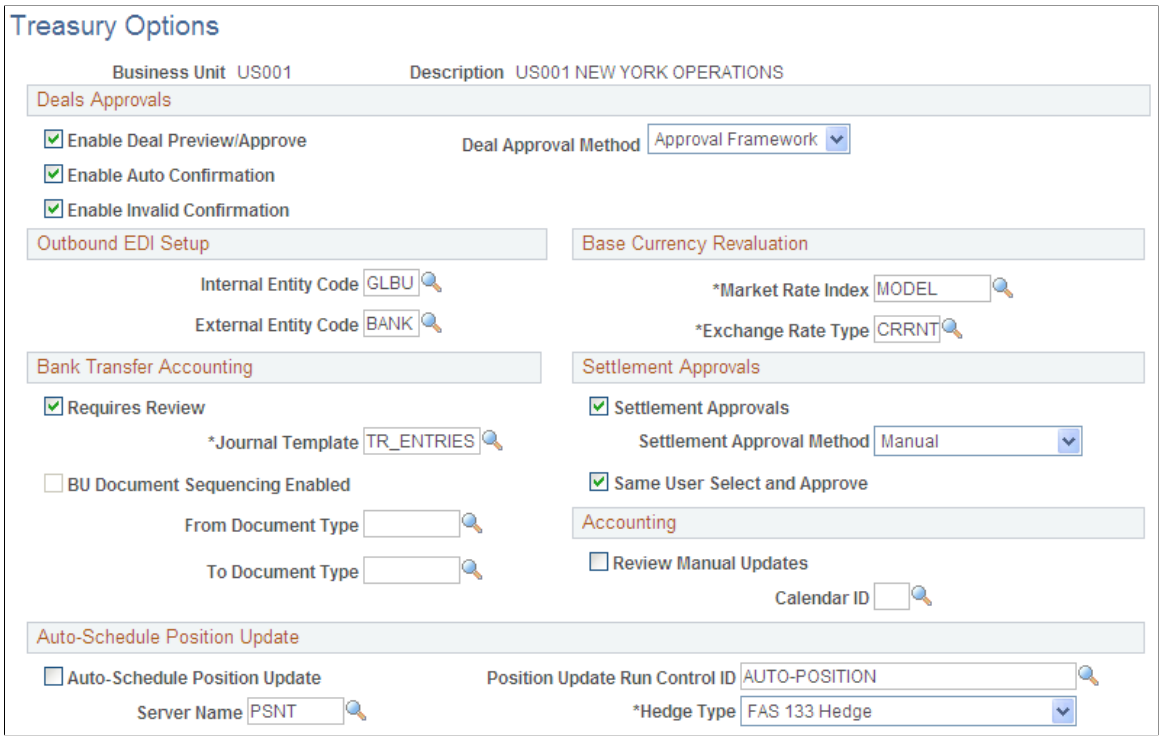
Use the Treasury Options page (BUS_UNIT_OPT_TR) to set up default processing options specific to your Treasury business units.

Navigation:

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain > **Business Unit Related** > **Treasury** > **Treasury Options**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Options page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Deal Approvals

When you select Workflow processing options for Deal Management, the system generates workflow notifications using the specified Deal Approval Method when deals meet certain conditions.

Field or Control	***Description***
Enable Deal Preview/Approve	Select this check box to notify users of deals that require preview or approval. The system generates notifications, based on the deal approval method you select. When you select this option, a notification is triggered, if the following conditions are met: • Deal Preapprovals Workflow is activated when the deal approval status is *Submitted*. • Review Deal Terms Workflow is activated when **Approval Required** is selected on the Instrument Detail page, and the deal status is *Not Reviewed*. • Review at Confirmation Workflow is activated when you select the **Review at Confirmation** check box on the Instrument Detail page, the deal confirmation review status is *Not Reviewed*, and the deal status is *Open* or *Sold/Bought back*.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Enable Auto Confirmation	Select to enable automated inbound deal confirmation notification processes. The system uses this option to generate notifications, based on the Deal Approval Method you select.
Enable Invalid Confirmation	Select to enable notifications for invalid or unmatched deal terms found during online confirmation.
Deal Approval Method	Choose from these options: • *Approval Framework* • *Workflow* **Note:** The Deal Approval Method you choose applies to all three deal approval types: Preview/Approve, Auto Confirmation, and Invalid Confirmation.

Outbound EDI Setup

Field or Control	*Description*
Internal Entity Code	Select the inbound entity code to use for business units.
External Entity Code	Select the outbound entity code to use for counterparties.

Note: Internal and external EDI entity codes enable PeopleSoft EDI Manager to correctly map deal-specific business units and counterparties to EDI data conversion rules.

Base Currency Revaluation

Field or Control	*Description*
Market Rate Index and Exchange Rate Type	Select the appropriate index for each field. The system uses these fields to calculate base currency equivalents for foreign currency amounts when accounting entries are generated from accounting templates.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Bank Transfer Accounting

Field or Control	*Description*
Requires Review	Select to force accounting transactions that use this template to be reviewed. The system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template a *Provisional* status. You can then manually finalize the entry on the Review/Approve Entries page. If this check box is deselected, the system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template a *Final* status.
Journal Template	Select the journal template this business unit uses for its bank transfer accounting builds.
BU Doc Sequencing Enabled	Select to activate document sequencing functionality for this business unit's transactions. See "Understanding Document Sequencing" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports).
From Document Type	If using document sequencing, define the document type to be used for assigning a document sequence number to the outbound bank account transfer transaction.
To Document Type	If using document sequencing, define the document type to be used for assigning a document sequence number to the inbound bank account transfer transaction.

Settlement Approvals

Field or Control	*Description*
Settlement Approvals	Select to require approval for settlements involving this business unit. In the **Settlement Approval Method** field, select the type of approval.
Settlement Approval Method	Select from these approval methods: • *Approval Framework* • *Manual* • *Workflow*

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Same User Select and Approve	Select to enable the same user to both select and approve settlements. This option is applicable for these Settlement Approval Methods: *Manual* and *Workflow*.

Accounting

Field or Control	*Description*
Review Manual Updates	Select this check box to mark for review any accounting entries that are manually updated on the Accounting Entries page. If the Review Manual Updates check box on the Treasury Options page is selected, the system flags an updated accounting entry for review and sets its status to Provisional. Users can review and finalize the manually updated entries on the View/Approve Entries page.
Calendar ID	Select a detail calendar for the business unit. **Note:** You must define calendars for business units that you intend to "soft-close" using the Cash Management Fiscal Period Closure functionality. See Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure.

Auto-Schedule Position Update

Field or Control	*Description*
Auto-Schedule Position Update	You must process a position update request for each deal to create the required records for position management, cash flows, and accounting events for your deals. If you select the check box, the system automatically processes a position update request, which creates the required records for position management and accounting, when you save an active deal. Oracle recommends that you select this check box.
Position Update Run Control ID	Enter the run control ID to use for the automatically created position update requests; for example, enter *AUTO-POSITION*. Specify this run control on the Treasury Options page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Server Name	Specify the name of the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler server that runs position update request processes. If you leave this field blank, the system uses the Default Operating System field as specified on the System Settings page to determine which server to run the process on.
Hedge Type	Select the accounting method used for the business unit's reporting of hedge and derivative transactions. The options are: • *Economic / Other Hedge:* Select if using a hedging accounting treatment other than IAS 39 or FAS 133. • *IAS 39 Hedge:* Complies with the IAS 39 accounting regulations as defined by the International Accounting Standards Committee for financial reporting of derivatives and hedging transactions. • *FAS 133 Hedge:* Complies with the FAS 133 accounting regulations as defined by the Financial Accounting Standards Board for financial reporting of derivatives and hedging transactions. **Note:** A Treasury business unit can comply to only one set of accounting regulations. Treasury does not support multibook accounting.
Treasury VAT Options	Click this link to access the Treasury BU VAT Options page and specify default VAT options for this business unit. The Treasury VAT Options link is available only if the General Ledger business unit that represents the Treasury Management business unit is linked to a VAT entity. See Treasury - VAT Options Page.
VAT Defaults	Click to access the VAT Defaults Setup page. The VAT Defaults Setup page is a common page used to set up VAT defaulting for all PeopleSoft applications processing VAT transactions. On this page you can define Treasury business unit defaults as applicable. See "Establishing VAT Defaults" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports).

See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler*.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note: Deals do not appear on the Position Monitor or Position Manager until a position update request is processed. Oracle recommends that you select the Auto-Schedule Position Update check box.

Related Links

"Delivered Deal Management Workflows" (PeopleSoft Deal Management)
Prerequisites
Understanding the Settlements Payment Process
"Understanding Deals Maintenance" (PeopleSoft Deal Management)

Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

Page Used to Define Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference Page	CUR_HOL_ID_XREF	Associate a holiday list with a particular currency.

Understanding Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

To cross reference holiday lists and currency codes, use the Currency Holiday List ID Cross Reference component (CUR_HOL_ID_XREF).

The system uses cross-referenced currency codes and holiday lists to determine eligible business dates for all Treasury business processes.

Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference Page

Use the Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference page (CUR_HOL_ID_XREF) to associate a holiday list with a particular currency.

Navigation:

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain > **Product Related** > **Treasury** > **Currency/Holiday List X-Ref**

Field or Control	*Description*
Holiday List ID	Associate a holiday list ID with a specified currency code. You can also create additional currency codes and associate holiday list IDs to them.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Defining Market Rates

Pages Used to Define Market Rates

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Market/Exchange Codes Page	TRX_EXCHANGE_CD	Define market and exchange information for a code.
Market Rates Page	RT_RATE_TBL	Specify criteria by which to review rates and to add or update rates.
Market Rates - Market Rate Page	RT_RATE_PNL	View details of a market rate, add a new market rate, and view exchange rate detail information. To set up history rates for existing market rates, use the component in Set Up Financials/Supply Chain - Common Definitions - Market Rates.
Rate Definition Page	RT_RATE_DEF_SEC	Edit the maximum variance and error type information.
Exchange Rate Detail Page	EXCH_RT_DTL	View exchange rate detail information. See the Market Rates - Market Rate Page.
Rate Reset Code Page	TRX_RT_RESET_CD	Define and associate a holiday list ID to a rate reset code.

Related Links

"Understanding Reevaluating Deals" (PeopleSoft Risk Management)

Understanding Defining Market Rates

To define market and exchange codes, use the Market/Exchange Codes component (TRX_EXCHANGE_CD).

In addition to the PeopleSoft Common Definitions pages for defining and maintaining market rate data, Cash Management, Deal Management, and Risk Management use these additional market rate maintenance pages. These market rate pages enable you to specify criteria by which to retrieve and update multiple market rate definitions.

Use the market rate pages to:

- Define market and exchange code information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Define market rates.
- View and add market rate information.
- Edit rate variance information.
- Define rate reset codes.

Market/Exchange Codes Page

Use the Market/Exchange Codes page (TRX_EXCHANGE_CD) to define market and exchange information for a code.

Navigation:

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain > **Product Related** > **Treasury** > **Market/Exchange Codes**

Market Rates Page

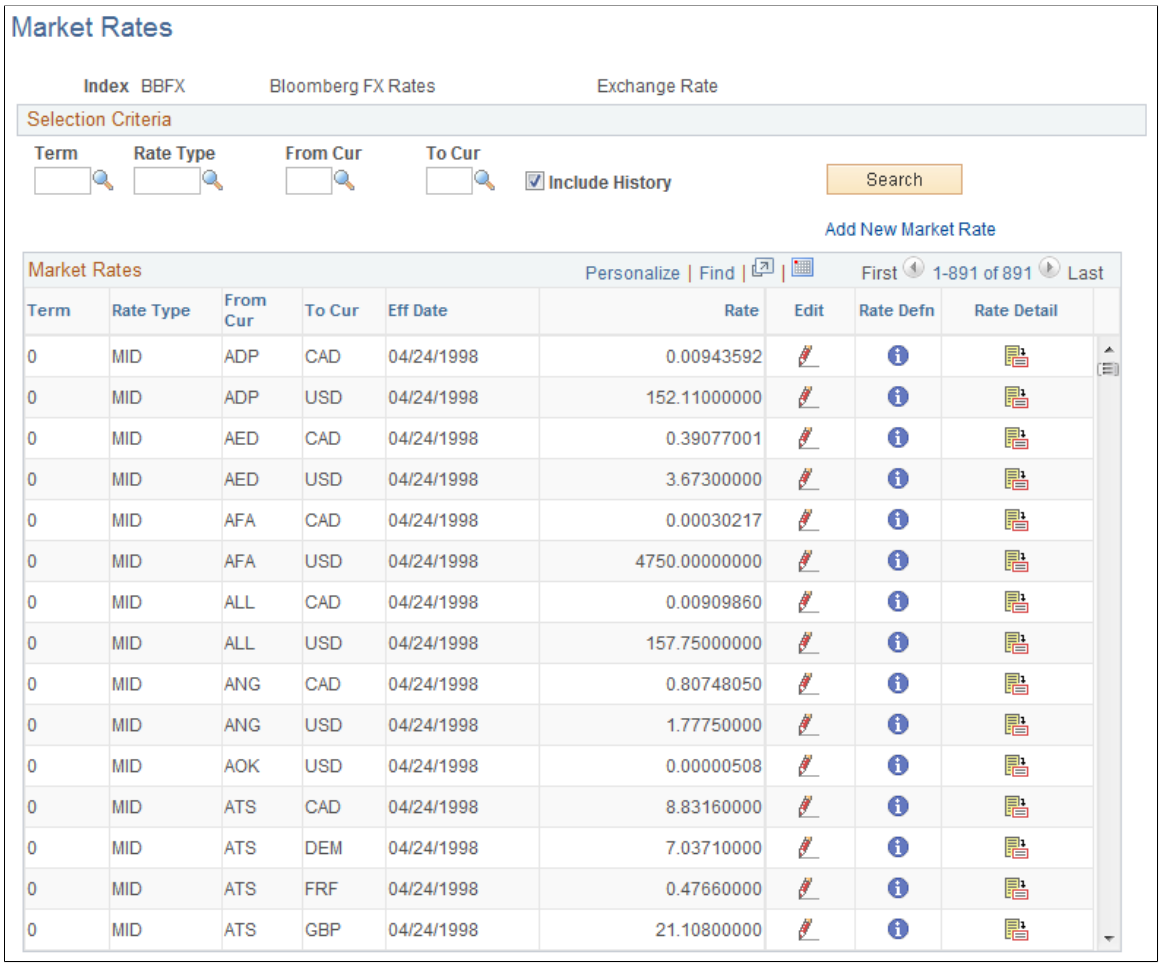
Use the Market Rates page (RT_RATE_TBL) to specify criteria by which to review rates and to add or update rates.

Navigation:

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain > **Product Related** > **Treasury** > **Market Rates**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Market Rates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Market Rates

Index BBFX Bloomberg FX Rates Exchange Rate

Selection Criteria

Term Rate Type From Cur To Cur Include History Search

Add New Market Rate

Market Rates Personalize | Find | First 1-891 of 891 Last

Term	Rate Type	From Cur	To Cur	Eff Date	Rate	Edit	Rate Defn	Rate Detail
0	MID	ADP	CAD	04/24/1998	0.00943592			
0	MID	ADP	USD	04/24/1998	152.11000000			
0	MID	AED	CAD	04/24/1998	0.39077001			
0	MID	AED	USD	04/24/1998	3.67300000			
0	MID	AFA	CAD	04/24/1998	0.00030217			
0	MID	AFA	USD	04/24/1998	4750.00000000			
0	MID	ALL	CAD	04/24/1998	0.00909860			
0	MID	ALL	USD	04/24/1998	157.75000000			
0	MID	ANG	CAD	04/24/1998	0.80748050			
0	MID	ANG	USD	04/24/1998	1.77750000			
0	MID	AOK	USD	04/24/1998	0.00000508			
0	MID	ATS	CAD	04/24/1998	8.83160000			
0	MID	ATS	DEM	04/24/1998	7.03710000			
0	MID	ATS	FRF	04/24/1998	0.47660000			
0	MID	ATS	GBP	04/24/1998	21.10800000			

Note: The appearance of this page varies depending on the market rate category.

Selection Criteria

Enter the criteria by which to retrieve existing market rate definitions.

Field or Control	***Description***
Term	Specify a term code, indicating the length of time the rate is effective.
Rate Type	Select a market rate or exchange rate type.
From Cur (from currency) and To Cur (to currency)	Select the original and conversion currencies of the market rate.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Include History	Select to view market rate history for returned results.
Add New Market Rate	Click to access the Market Rates detail page and add a new rate type. The market rate definition (and, in the case of exchange rates, the currency quotation method for the from currency and to currency) must already exist.

Market Rates

Field or Control	*Description*
	Click the **Edit** button to access the Market Rates - Market Rate page, and edit effective date and rate information. **Note:** To set up history rates for existing market rates, use the component in Set Up Financials/Supply Chain - Common Definitions - Market Rates.
	Click the **Rate Defn** (rate definition) button to access the Rate Definition page, and view information on the rate's maximum variance, error type, and day count basis.
	Click the **Rate Detail** button to access the Exchange Rate Detail page, and view exchange rate detail information.

Market Rates - Market Rate Page

Use the Market Rates - Market Rate page (RT_RATE_PNL) to view details of a market rate, add a new market rate, and view exchange rate detail information.

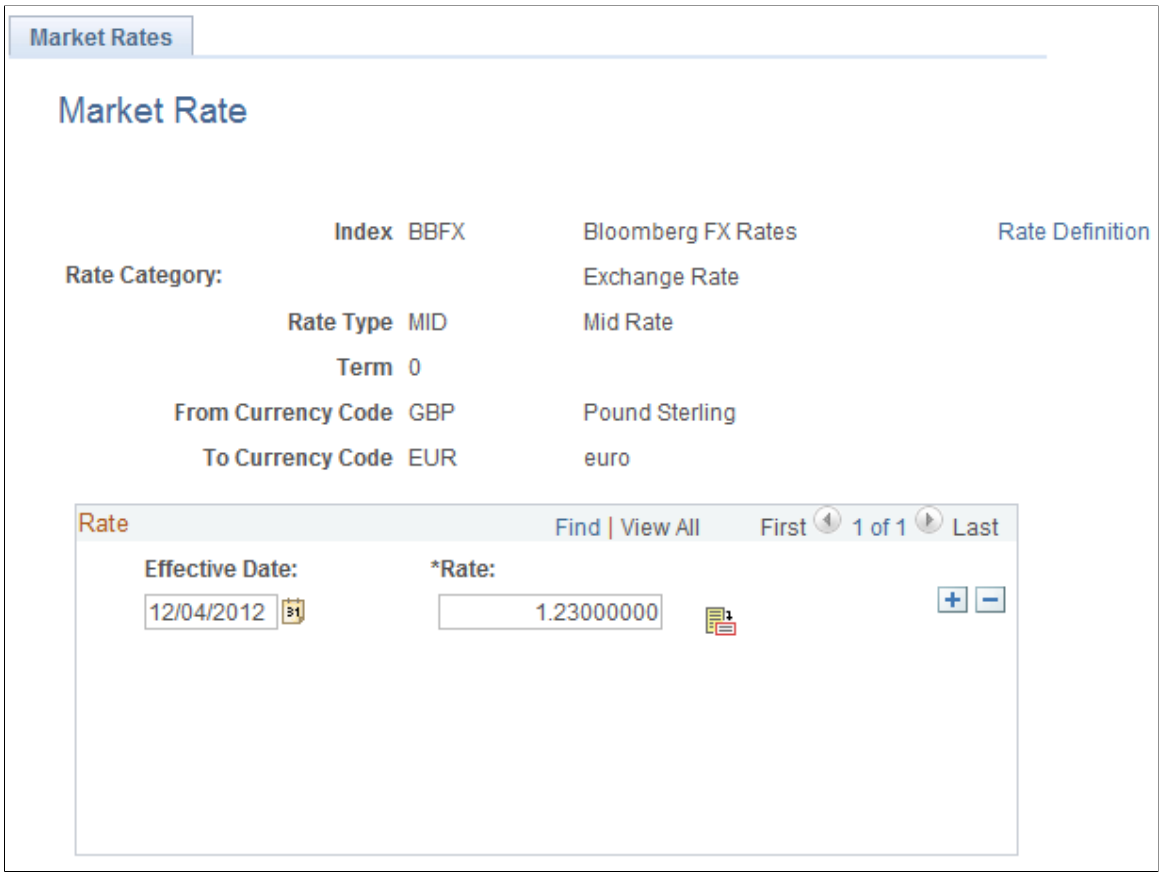
Navigation:

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain > **Common Definitions** > **Market Rates** > **Market Rates - Market Rate**

Click **Edit** on the Market Rates page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Market Rates - Market Rate page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Rate Definition	Click to access the Rate Definition page, and edit variance and error type information for the rate definition.
	Click the **Exchange Rate Detail** button to access the Exchange Rate Detail page, and view rate information.

Note: To use this page to add or change past rates, use the navigation: Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Market Rates, Market Rates. You must be in the correction mode to make changes to historical data.

Related Links

"Defining Market Rates" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports)

Rate Definition Page

Use the Rate Definition page (RT_RATE_DEF_SEC) to edit the maximum variance and error type information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Click **Rate Definition** on the Market Rates - Market Rates page.

Field or Control	*Description*
Maximum Variance	The variance value validates the rates read from the market rate loader process. The system compares the prior historical rate to the one read and ensures that it's within a specified variance. If not, you are alerted with the specified error type. Enter a new Maximum Variance, and specify an Error Type of *None, Stop,* or *Warning.*

Rate Reset Code Page

Use the Rate Reset Code page (TRX_RT_RESET_CD) to define and associate a holiday list ID to a rate reset code.

Navigation:

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain > **Product Related** > **Treasury** > **Rate Reset Codes**

Securing ChartFields for PeopleSoft Treasury

PeopleSoft ChartField security provides a flexible, rule-based approach to administer security at a data level. ChartField security is supported in PeopleSoft Treasury and across other PeopleSoft Financials and Supply Chain Management (FSCM) applications. The ChartField security feature prevents unauthorized employees and contractors from viewing and editing sensitive financial data by restricting access to data stored with specific ChartField values.

The primary features for ChartField security are:

- Enforce security rules by user, role, or permission list.
- Enable ChartField security for all products or selectively by product.
- Enable or disable ChartField security selectively by component.
- Define rules to accommodate end-user areas of responsibility.
- Refine access rules by product feature or component.
- Support super user access to minimize setup.
- Define components as exceptions to override security rules.

For more information, see the *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals*.

See "Securing ChartFields for PeopleSoft Treasury" (Application Fundamentals).

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Integrating PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting

This integration provides users of JD Edwards General Ledger access to the robust PeopleSoft Treasury functionality contained in Cash, Deal, and Risk Management applications. The integration includes:

- Transmitting market rates from the JD Edwards to the PeopleSoft system.
- Transmitting accounting entry lines from Treasury products to the JD Edwards General Accounting ledger.
- Transmitting banks statement data to the JD Edwards General Accounting ledger.
- Generating a cash position worksheet (CPW) in PeopleSoft Cash Management from accounting data imported from the JD Edwards system.

  With the exception of the cash position worksheet functionality, data integration is accomplished through the use of Integration Broker and specific XML messages. The data integration required to generate a cash position worksheet is accomplished using the JDBJ Java API to access the JD Edwards database directly.

Refer to the following document for instruction on setting up and configuring the PeopleSoft Treasury to JD Edwards General Accounting integration.

Related Links

"Installation Options - Treasury Page" (Application Fundamentals)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 3

Navigating in Treasury Management

Using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface to Navigate My Treasury

This topic discusses how you can use the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface to navigate to frequently used components in Treasury. You can perform treasury-related transactions through the fluid Treasury Management page.

Pages Used to Navigate My Treasury in the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Treasury Tile	EP_TR_NAV_COLL_FL	Access a collection of Treasury components.
Cash Forecast Results		
Working with Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results	CSH_FCST_RESULTS	Assess and optimize enterprise cash flow.
My Banking Design		
Business Unit Options Treasury Options Page	BUS_UNIT_OPT_TR	Set up default processing options specific to your Treasury business units.
Bank Information "Bank Information Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)	BANK_PNL1	Define each bank and its general characteristics.
External Bank Accounts "External Accounts Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)	BANK_PNL2	Set up external accounts.
Cash Sweep Structures Cash Sweep Structure Page	CSH_SWEEP_DEFN	Define the master bank account, currency, and cash position worksheet for a physical cash sweep.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Accounting Entry Templates "Accounting Entry Template Page" (Application Fundamentals)	ACCTG_TEMPLATE_AP	Define or modify an accounting entry template.
EFT Templates Enter Transfer Templates - Origin Page	TR_WR_TEMPLATE_FR	Enter template origin information.
My Bank Account Management		
My Account Groups "My Account Groups Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)	BNK_ACCTGRP_FAV	Assign a group of accounts to the current user or review the user's list of bank account groups.
Import Bank Statements "Import Bank Statements Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)	BSP_IMPORT	Import bank statement data using the PSBD1 layout (or PSBD2 layout for Cash Management) into the Bank Statement staging tables.
Reconciliation Manager "Reconciliation Manager Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)	BNK_RCN_MGR	Perform automatic, semi-manual, or manual reconciliation for statements for a single bank.
Book to Bank Reconciliation "Book to Bank Reconciliation Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)	BNK_BTB_REC_MGR	Search for statements marked ready for Book to Bank reconciliation, review balance details, and schedule the process to perform Book to Bank data extraction and balance calculations.
Semi-Manual Reconciliation "Semi Manual Reconciliation Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)	BNK_RCN_SEMI_MAN	Reconcile statements semi-manually when there is not a one-to-one match between your bank and system transactions and you have reconciliation exceptions.
Bank Statement Accounting "Bank Statement Accounting Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)	BNK_BSAC_HDR	Define bank statement accounting match rules.
Bank Acct Analysis Validation Account Analysis Validation Page	FA_BNK_STMT_VALID	Validate a statement against a fee structure.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
My Cash Management		
Review Cash Forecast Results Cash Forecasting Results Page	CSH_FCST_RESULTS	Assess and optimize enterprise cash flow.
Cash Sweep Results Cash Sweep Results Page	CSH_SWEEP_RESULTS	Review and update cash sweep results.
Enter Wires and Transfers EFT Request - Origin Page	TR_WIRE_PNL	Enter transfer origin information. Capture data on the account from which funds will be furnished for the transfer.
Settlement Manager Settlement Manager Page	STL_MGR	Review and manage all settlement activity from a central location.
Review Netting Results Netting Inquiry Page	NET_INQUIRY_HDR	Review information on a single netting relationship.
Financial Gateway Pmt Dispatch "Payment Dispatch Page" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway)	PMT_INQUIRY	Manually send selected payments to a bank from Financial Gateway.
Acknowledgement Files "Importing Bank Acknowledgments" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway)	PMT_FILE_ACK_DEFN	View a listing of imported payment acknowledgement files.
Override Payment Status "Review Payments - Payments Page" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway)	PMT_STAT_OVR	Change the status of payments.
My Deal Management		
Portfolio Manager "Portfolio Manager Page" (PeopleSoft Deal Management)	TRX_PORTFOLIO_DTL	Monitor groups of portfolios.
Deal Details "Deal Detail Page" (PeopleSoft Deal Management)	TRX_DETAIL_TR	Enter deal details for each instrument type.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Confirm Deals Manually "Confirm Deals Manually - Deal Confirmation Page" (PeopleSoft Deal Management)	TRX_SUMMARY_TR	Select a confirmation status for a specified deal.
My Treasury Accounting		
Automated Accounting Automated Accounting Page	TRA_ACCTG_REQ	Run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for the Journal Generator (FSPGJGEN) process.
Accounting Entries Accounting Entries Page	TRA_ACCTG_LINE	Review and adjust automated accounting entries.
Process Accounting Integration Process Accounting Integration Page	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Run Treasury Journal Integration processing (TR_JRNL_INT).
Journal Generator "Generate Journals Request Page" (Application Fundamentals)	JRNL_GEN_REQUEST	Initiate Journal Generator processing.
My Reporting and Analysis		
Ledger Inquiries "Ledger Inquiry Page" (PeopleSoft General Ledger)	INQUIRY_CRITERIA	View ledger detail and summary information based on selected criteria.
Run nVision Reports "Requesting and Distributing the FUND_BALANCE Report" (PeopleSoft General Ledger)	NVS_REPORT_RQST	Enter the criteria necessary to run a PS/nVision report (FUNDSTAT report).
Reporting Console See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler*.	PT_CONSOLE	Provides a single interface for a user to manage and schedule reports. From the Reporting Console users can run a report, schedule a report, and organize reports.
Accounting Entries Accounting Entries Page	TRA_ACCTG_LINE	Review and adjust automated accounting entries.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Treasury WorkCenter		
Understanding the Treasury WorkCenter and Manager Dashboard	CM_WORKCENTER	Manage Treasury activities in one location.

Treasury Tile

Use the Treasury tile to access a collection of Treasury components.

Navigation:

The Treasury tile is delivered as part of the Employee Self Service home page, but the location can change if administrators change the delivered home pages.

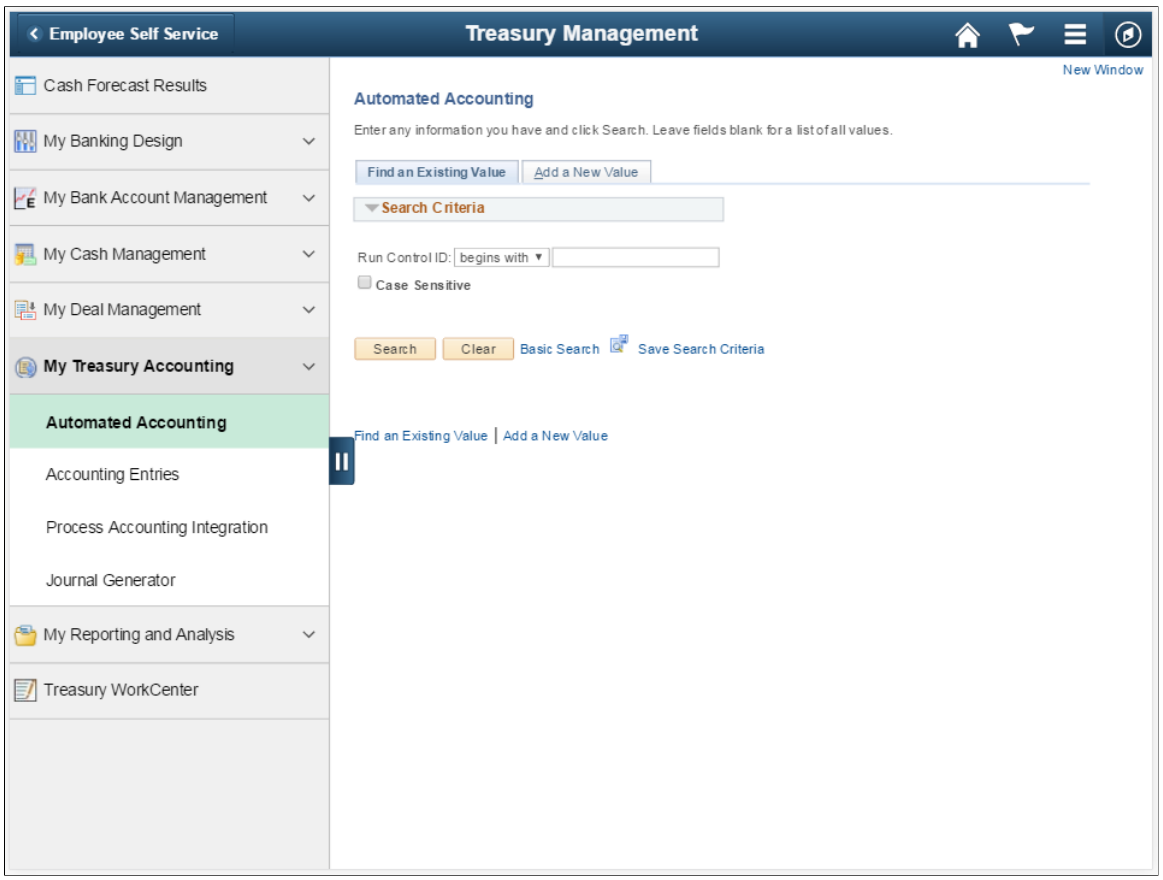
This example shows the Treasury tile as displayed on a tablet.

This example shows the Treasury tile as displayed on a phone.

Click the Treasury tile to access the Treasury navigation collection.

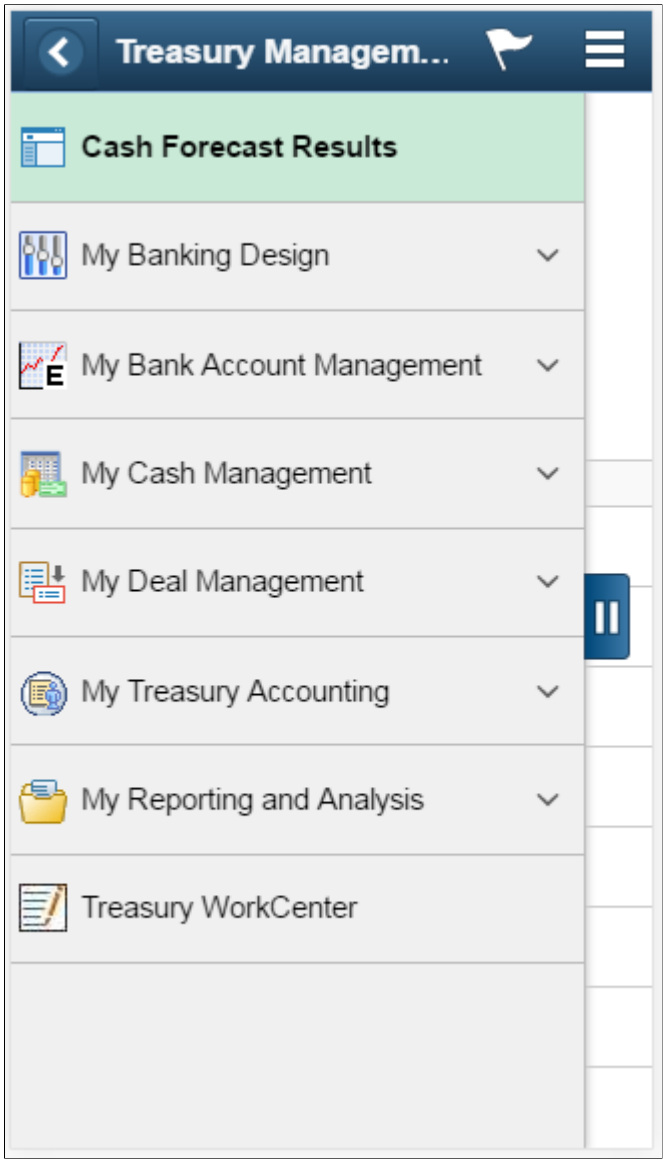
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example shows the Treasury Management page as displayed on a tablet.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example shows the Treasury Management page as displayed on a phone.



This navigation collection enables users to access frequently used Treasury components from one location. The left panel of this page lists the components collected under different categories:

- Cash Forecast Results
- My Banking Design
- My Bank Account Management
- My Cash Management
- My Deal Management
- My Treasury Accounting

You can also access the Treasury WorkCenter from the left panel.

The right panel displays the component selected in the left panel.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigating in Treasury Management

In the classic user interface, Treasury Management provides custom navigation pages that contain groupings of folders that support a specific business process, task, or user role.

Note: In addition to the Treasury Management custom navigation pages, PeopleSoft provides menu navigation and standard navigation pages.

Note: The Treasury Management Processing Center and the Treasury Management Setup Center are individual navigation center pages that can also be accessed from the main Treasury Management Center. As they are already documented below as a navigation center page, they are not included in the Treasury Management Center linked page listing.

For more information, see the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Applications User's Guide*.

Related Links

Understanding the Treasury WorkCenter and Manager Dashboard

Pages Used to Navigate in Treasury Management

This table lists the Custom Navigation pages that are used to navigate in Treasury Management:

Page Name	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Treasury Management Center	**Treasury Management Center**	Access primary Treasury Management setup and process pages from a central location. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.
Accounting Summary	Click the **Accounting Summary** link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Accounting Summary page to search accounting information and review results, displayed by accounting event line.
Bank Account Manager	Click the **Bank Account Manager** link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Bank Account Manager page to review and manage bank account information by functional clusters.
Collateral Summary	Click the **Collateral Summary** link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Collateral Summary page to search for collateral items and return results.
Hedge Group Manager	Click the **Hedge Group Manager** link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Hedge Group Manager page to combine various hedges into collections of "favorites."

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Letters of Credit Summary	Click the **Letters of Credit Summary** link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Letters of Credit Summary page to review summarized information for multiple letters of credit.
Portfolio Manager	Click the **Portfolio Manager** link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Portfolio Manager page to combine various deals into portfolio collections.
Reconciliation Manager	Click the **Reconciliation Manager** link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Reconciliation Manager page to reconcile bank data and manage exceptions from one central location.
Settlement Manager	Click the **Settlement Manager** link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Settlement Manager page to view settlement and exposure information and manage treasury payments from a central location.
Treasury Definitions Center	Click the **Treasury Definitions Center** link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access pages to configure Treasury Management.
Treasury Processing Center	Click the **Treasury Processing Center** link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access common Treasury Management business process pages from a central location. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 4

Managing Facilities

Understanding Facilities

A *facility* is a financial arrangement with a counterparty under which an established monetary amount is available for transacting deals. Similar to a contract, a facility contains pertinent information about the arrangement, such as default settlement instructions, term, review dates, and an expiration date.

With PeopleSoft banking functionality you can define facilities, associate fees to a facility, and periodically run the Monitor Expiring Facilities process (TR_FCLTY_RVW) to evaluate which of your organization's facilities are close to expiring.

Note: Line of Credit and Commercial Paper facilities are covered in the Deal Management documentation.

Understanding Facility Review

PeopleSoft Cash Management offers facility review notifications through Workflow virtual approval or Notification Framework. You can select the review type during facility definition.

If you have implemented the Facility Review Workflow virtual approval methodology, use PeopleSoft Application Designer to define business processes, activities, business events, worklists, routings, and approval rule sets. The system automatically routes expiring facilities to a defined user's worklist when you run the Monitor Expiring Facilities process (TR_FCLTY_RVW) with a facility definition that includes Role Name values in the Facility Review grid.

The other option is Events and Notification Framework, which provides a configurable framework in Enterprise Components, where you can implement the notification process for facility review to send email and worklist notifications. The system automatically routes expiring facilities to a defined user's worklist and sends email notifications when you run the Monitor Expiring Facilities process (TR_FCLTY_RVW) with a facility definition that includes Role Name values in the Facility Review grid.

Related Links

Monitoring Facilities

Prerequisites for Defining Facilities

Before defining facilities you must define:

- Counterparties

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Settlement instructions
- Method of facility review notification

To implement the Facility Review Workflow virtual approval methodology, use PeopleSoft Application Designer to define business processes, activities, business events, worklists, routings, and approval rule sets.

The integration between Treasury and Notification Framework will be delivered as system data to support email and worklist notifications, as shown in this table:

Description	*Process Name*	*Process Category*	*Navigation*
Notify Facilities	TR_NOTIFICATIONS	FACILITIES	**Enterprise Components >Events & Notifications >Notifications Framework >Notifications Registry**

See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Application Designer Developer's Guide* and *PeopleSoft Events and Notifications Framework*.

Related Links

"Defining Counterparty Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)
"EFT Options Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Defining Facilities

Pages Used to Define Facilities

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Facility Definition Page	FCLTY_PNL1	Define a facility.
Memo Attributes Page	FCLTY_CD	Define the attributes to track with a facility and define the type of data that the attributes contain.
Enter Fees Page	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Create fees for a facility. See the Enter Fees Page for more information.
Financial Contacts Page	TR_CONTACT_PNL	Edit information for a financial institution contact assigned to a facility. See the Facility Definition Page.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Comments Page	FCLTY_LONG_SP	Edit memorandum information for a facility attribute. See the Facility Definition Page.
Settlement Instructions Page	STL_INSTR_SP	View details of a specified settlement instruction for a facility. See the Facility Definition Page. For more information, see "Defining Counterparty Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Understanding Defining Facilities

To define facilities information, use the following components:

- Facilities component (FCLTY_DFN).
- Facility Memo Attributes component (FCLTY_MEMO_ATTR).

Use the TR_FCLTY_BCI component interface to load data into the facilities tables.

To set up a facility, you define the types of attributes tracked and then establish the facility itself. You record fees that are associated with the facility by entering them online.

Note: You must define fee codes on the Fee Codes page prior to entering fees online.

Use these components to:

- Define facility memo types.
- Establish facilities.
- Create fee entries.

Related Links

Fee Codes Page
Enter Fees Page

Memo Attributes Page

Use the Memo Attributes page (FCLTY_CD) to define the attributes to track with a facility and define the type of data that the attributes contain.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Facilities** > **Facility Memo Attributes**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Data Type	Provide an attribute description and indicate its data type. Online edits validate the data type when you associate the attributes with a facility. Select from: *Date:* Use for dates. *Long:* Use for storing an unlimited number of characters. *Number:* Use for positive numeric data. *Signed Num* (signed number): Use for storing positive and negative numbers. *Text:* Use for storing text attributes based on a database field. When you select this option, you can optionally specify a prompt table. This limits text entries to a list of values that are generated from the specified table. For example, using the prompt table INSTR_HEADER_TR limits entries to defined instruments.

Note: You must include Comments (CMTS) as a defined attribute for the Memo Attributes page to function correctly. CMTS is included in the system database; do not delete it.

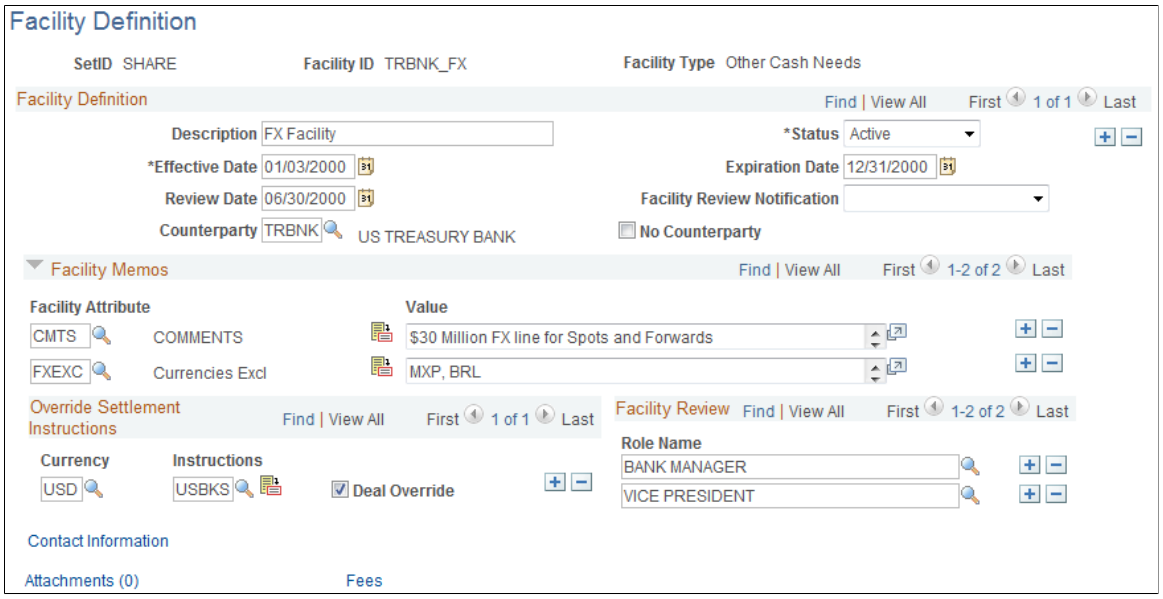
Facility Definition Page

Use the Facility Definition page (FCLTY_PNL1) to define a facility.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Facilities** > **Facility Definition**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Facility Definition page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note: Since facilities are generally associated with a particular counterparty, you may want to incorporate the counterparty code in the **Facility ID** field so that it's easy to distinguish between facilities.

Facility Definition

Field or Control	*Description*
Counterparty	Select the associated counterparty. For facilities that do not have specific counterparties, such as commercial paper, select the **No Counterparty** check box, which disables the Counterparty field.
Review Date	Enter the date the facility will be up for review. This is the date that the role names specified in the Facility Review grid receive PeopleSoft Workflow notification.
Facility Review Notification	Choose the notification type for processing the facility review: • *Notification Framework*: Sends email and worklist notifications to the Role Names listed in the Facility Review grid, using Notification Framework. • *Workflow*: Sends notification to the Role Names that you add to the Facility Review grid, when you define and save the facility and when you run the Monitor Expiring Facilities process (TR_FCLTY_RVW). **Note:** If you add a Role Name to the Facility Review grid, and save the facility definition without choosing a facility review notification type, the system defaults to *Notification Framework*.
Expiration Date	Enter the date the facility is scheduled to expire.
Fees	Click this link to record fees associated with the facility.

Facilities Contacts

Field or Control	*Description*
Contact	Enter the ID number. The name, contact title, and phone number are automatically populated from the Financial Contacts page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Contact Information	Click to view and edit the Financial Contacts page (TR_CONTACT_PNL).

Facilities Memos

Field or Control	*Description*
Facility Attributes	The COMMENTS attribute automatically appears; enter information about the facility in the **Value** field.
	Click the **Expand Long** icon to view the entire **Value** description.

Override Settlement Instructions

Indicate how funds should be settled for transactions using this facility.

Field or Control	*Description*
Deal Override	Select to permit these instructions to be overridden at deal entry.
Instructions	Specify settlement instructions, which are defined on the External Accounts - Settlements Instructions page.
	Click the **View Settlement Instruction** icon to view settlement instruction details on the Settlement Instructions page (STL_INSTR_SP). The Settlement Instructions page displays the international bank account number (IBAN) in addition to the local, domestic bank account number when the country has been set up to display the IBAN on the IBAN Formats page.

Facility Review

Field or Control	*Description*
Role Name	Select the role name that receives PeopleSoft Workflow notification when the facility is up for review.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Related Links

"Settlement Instructions Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)
Creating Fee Entries

Monitoring Facilities

Pages Used to Monitor Facilities

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Schedule Facility Review Page	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Define run parameters for the Monitor Expiring Facilities process.
Facilities by Counterparty Page	BANK_PNLFCLTY	Review facilities summary information by counterparty.

Understanding Monitoring Facilities

Run the Monitor Expiring Facilities Application Engine process (TR_FCLTY_RVW) to determine if your facilities are close to expiring.

View email or worklist notifications generated by the facility review notification method defined on the facility. Refer to your PeopleTools documentation for details about the Virtual Workflow methodology.

To view the details of facility review notifications sent by the Notification Framework, go to **Enterprise Components** >**Events & Notifications** >**Notifications Framework** >**Notification Detail**, or click the **Notification Detail** link in the notification email or worklist. For more information, see the product documentation for *PeopleSoft Events and Notifications Framework*.

Schedule Facility Review Page

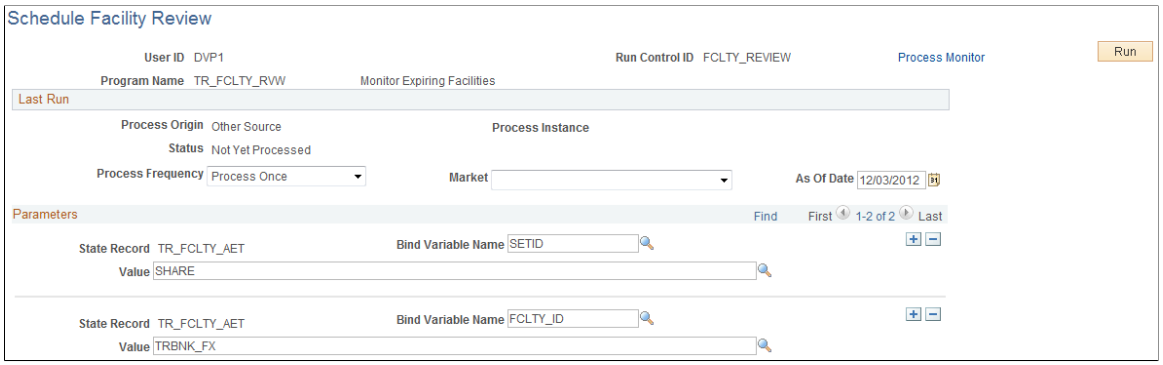
Use the Schedule Facility Review page (TR_AE_RUNCNTL) to define run parameters for the Monitor Expiring Facilities process.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Facilities** > **Schedule Facility Review**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Schedule Facility Review page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Bind Variable Name	In the **Parameters** grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. Select the Bind Variable Name of *FCLTY ID,* and enter the specific facility name to be calculated in **Value.** You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job.

Facilities by Counterparty Page

Use the Facilities by Counterparty page (BANK_PNLFCLTY) to review facilities summary information by counterparty.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Facilities** > **Facilities by Counterparty**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 5

Managing Fees and Account Analysis

Understanding Managing Fees and Account Analysis

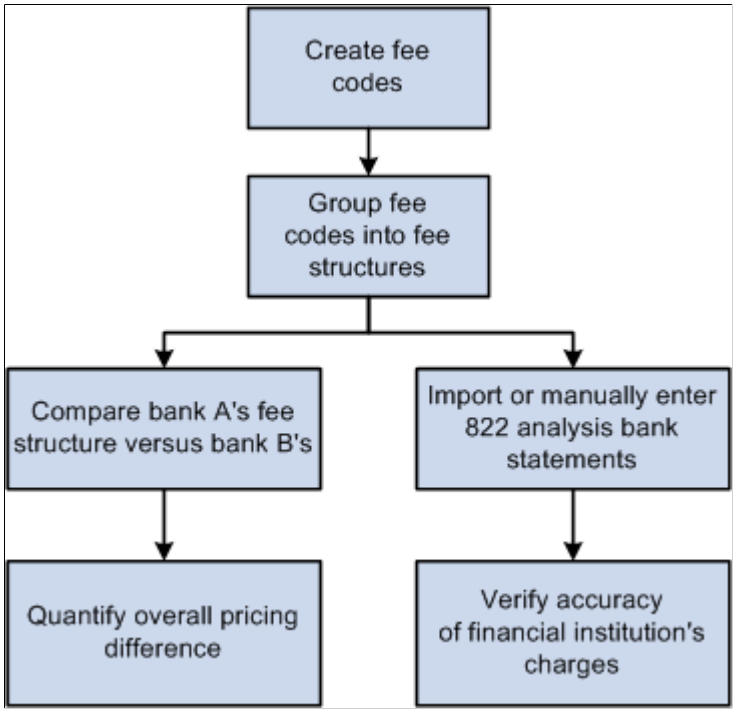
With the Account Analysis feature, you can configure fee codes and fee structures for use in bank fee comparisons and statement analyses.

Account analysis enables you to define how bank fees are calculated for your enterprise and organizes them into fee structures. A fee structure enables you to group, in one place, all the fees that a particular bank charges. You can use fee types that match the standards documented in *Treasury Management Association (TMA) Guide to Account Analysis and Service Codes,* published by the Association for Financial Professionals (AFP). Examples of fee types are tiered pricing, base fee, and minimum/maximum fees.

By defining and analyzing the data, you can reduce your fee expenses in two ways:

- Comparing fees for up to five banks, and determining which bank has the best fee structure for your requirements.
- Catching bank charge errors by comparing an EDI 822 Account Analysis bank statement against the data.

Bank account fee analysis includes creating fee codes and grouping fee codes into fee structures. You can then compare fees for up to five banks to determine which bank has the best fee structure and catch bank charge errors with bank statement analysis



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Common Elements Used to Manage Fees and Analyze Accounts

Field or Control	*Description*
Analysis Start Date and Analysis End Date	Defines the calendar period that the system analyzes. When running an account analysis, the system includes all the activities between these two dates in the analysis.
Bank Code	Displays the identifier code for a specific bank.
Fee Code	Displays the identifier code for a specific fee.
Fee Structure Code	Displays the identifier code for a specific fee structure.
Period Beginning and Period Ending	Defines the beginning and ending dates for a specified time period.
Day Count Basis	Select from the following options: • *30/360:* Assumes that a year consists of twelve months with an equal length of 30 days. A special rule applies when dealing with the end of a month. • *30E/360:* Assumes that a year consists of twelve months with an equal length of 30 days. Also known as Euro 30/360. • *Actual/360:* Assumes that a year consists of 360 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days. • *Actual/365:* Assumes that a year consists of 365 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days. • *Actual/Actual:* Assumes that the number of days between two dates is the actual number of calendar days.

Setting Up Fee Structures

Pages Used to Set Up Fee Structure

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Fee Transaction Tables Page	FA_FEE_TRAN_PNL	Set up transaction tables.
Fee Codes Page	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set up fee codes.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
SQL Where Criteria Page	FA_FEE_SQLWHERE_SP	Establish criteria for the fee analysis metric.
Fee Structures - Structure Accounts Page	FA_FEE_ACCT	Set up fee structures.
Fee Structures - Structure Definition Page	FA_FEE_STRUCT	Define fee structures.
Fee Calculation Type − Fee Structure Page	FA_FEE_STRUCT_SEC	Edit the base fee calculation for certain fee calculation types.

Understanding Setting Up Fee Structures

To define fee codes, use the Fee Codes component (DEFINE_FEE_CODE).

Using this component, you can:

1. Create fee transaction tables.
2. Define fee codes.
3. (Optional) Enter SQL Where Criteria.
4. Set up fee structures.
5. Define fee structures.
6. (Optional) Edit base fee calculations.

Fee Transaction Tables Page

Use the Fee Transaction Tables page (FA_FEE_TRAN_PNL) to set up transaction tables.

Navigation:

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain > **Product Related** > **Treasury** > **Fee Transaction Tables**

Define the names of the transaction tables that you will use with your fee codes. The transaction tables contain the underlying transactions, which the system references when processing fees. After you save the transaction tables, you can reference the table when you define each fee code.

Fee Codes Page

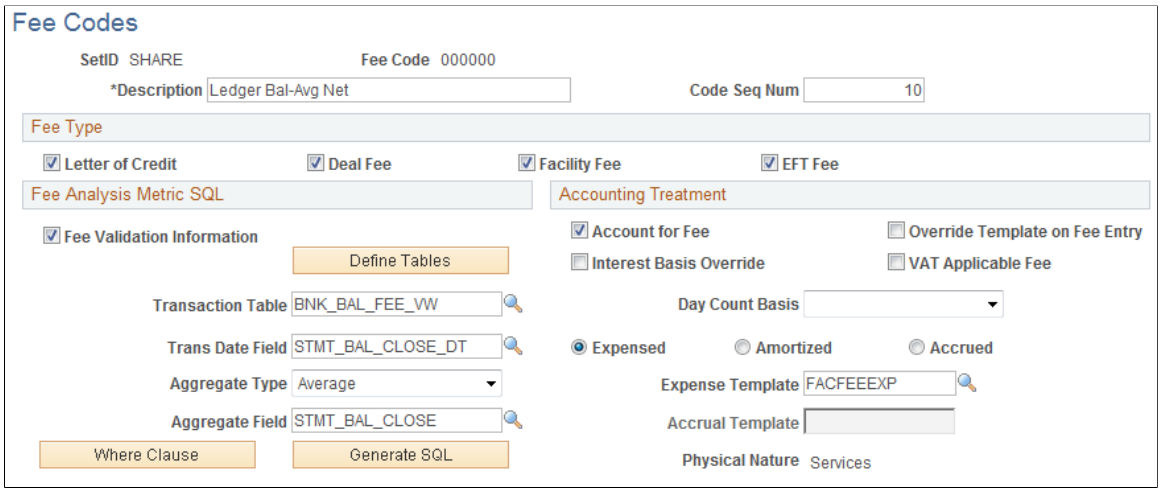
Use the Fee Codes page (FA_FEE_CD_PNL) to set up fee codes.

Navigation:

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain > **Product Related** > **Treasury** > **Fee Codes** > **Fee Codes**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Codes page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Description	Create both a description and fee code and that matches the TMA TS 822 or that matches your financial counterparty account analysis standards.
Code Seq Num (code sequence number)	Assign a fee code to determine the order in which the fee codes appear on your account analysis screens.

Fee Type

Specify whether this fee type applies to transactions involving a **Letter of Credit, Deal Fee, Facility Fee,** or **EFT Fee.** You can select multiple options.

Fee Analysis Metric SQL

Define how the fee metrics will be tracked in your system.

Field or Control	*Description*
Fee Validation Information	If the fee can be tracked in your system, select the check box. In certain circumstances, you may not want to validate all fees. In this case, leave the check box deselect.
Transaction Table	Reference the fee validation information to a fee transaction table (defined in the prior section). After you save this value, click the **Transaction Tables** button to view the specific table definition.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Transaction Date Field	Select the date type field name used to determine the fee (for example, *ACCOUNTING_DT* = accounting date).
Aggregate Type	Select *Count, Avg* (average), *Min* (minimum), *Max* (maximum), or *Sum.* The available aggregate fields to which the aggregate parameters can be applied are prompted for you from the selected transaction table. After selecting the **Aggregate Field,** click the **Where Clause** button to select operators and describe the value that the **Aggregate Field** must match.

Accounting Treatment

Define how the accounting process handles bank fees.

Field or Control	*Description*
Account for Fee	Select this check box if a fee may be expensed, amortized, or accrued. If a fee is amortized, accounting templates for booking the fee and amortization of the fee are required. If a fee is expensed, it may not be amortized or accrued and only the template for booking the expense is required. If a fee is accrued, accounting templates for booking the expense and recording the accrual amount for this fee entry are required.
Interest Basis Override	Fees may be amortized or accrued on various day count basis. Select this check box to enable modification of the **Day Count Basis** type on the Enter Fees page when creating a fee. If not selected, the **Day Count Basis** type on the Enter Fees page automatically defaults to the fee set up information, and cannot be modified.
Override Template on Fee Panel	Select this check box to allow editing of the **Template** field on the Enter Fees page.
VAT Applicable Fee	If this fee code is VAT applicable, select the check box, and specify the appropriate **Expense Template.** All VAT transactions recorded in Treasury Management are assumed to be transactions on services, not transactions on goods. When you create a VAT-applicable fee, the **Physical Nature** field displays *Services.*

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Day Count Basis	Select from the following: • *30/360:* Assumes that a year consists of 12 months with an equal length of 30 days. A special rule applies when dealing with the end of a month. • *30E/360:* Assumes that a year consists of 12 months with an equal length of 30 days. Also known as Euro 30/360. **Note:** The difference between the *30/360* calculation and the *30E/360* calculation occurs when a period ends on the 31st, but did not start on the 30th or 31st. In this case, the *30/360* calculation uses the 31st day as equal to 31, while the *30E/360* calculation uses the 31st day as equal to 30. For example, using the *30/360* calculation, the period starting December 1 and ending December 31 contains 30 days. However, using the *30E/360* calculation, the same December time period contains only 29 days. • *Actual/360:* Assumes that a year consists of 360 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days. • *Actual/365:* Assumes that a year consists of 365 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days. • *Actual/Actual:* Assumes that the number of days between two dates is the actual number of calendar days.
Amortized	If you opt to amortize the fee over time, select both an **Expense Template** and **Accrual Template.**
Expensed	If you opt to only expense the fee, select an appropriate expense template value.
Accrued	If you opt to accrue the fee over time, select both an Expense Template and an Accrual Template.

Related Links

Fee Transaction Tables Page
Account Analysis Validation Page
Creating VAT Transactions for Fees

SQL Where Criteria Page

Use the SQL Where Criteria page (FA_FEE_SQLWHERE_SP) to establish criteria for the fee analysis metric.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Click the **Where Clause** button on the Fee Codes page.

Select operators and describe the *Value* that the Aggregate Field must match to pass the fee analysis. When you enter multiple criteria lines, a logical *and* is implied.

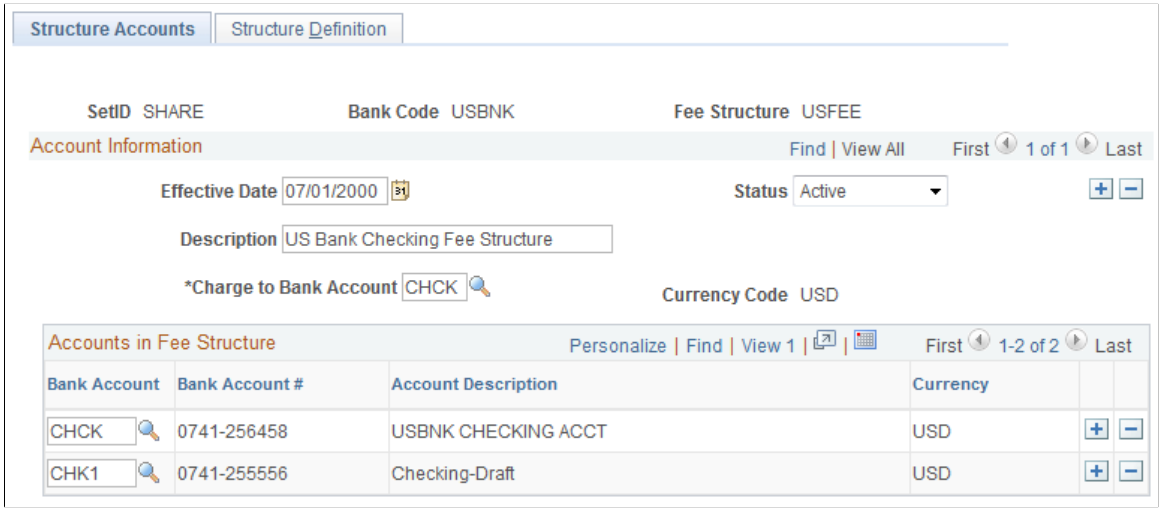
Fee Structures - Structure Accounts Page

Use the Fee Structures - Structure Accounts page (FA_FEE_ACCT) to set up fee structures.

Navigation:

Banking > **Account Analysis** > **Fee Structures** > **Structure Accounts**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Structures - Structure Accounts page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



There two components to a fee structure:

- Account information. Each structure is defined according to the bank and the account to which the fee structure will be charged.
- Accounts in the fee structure, and their associated currency.

Fee Structure Accounts

Field or Control	*Description*
Charge to Bank Account	Select a bank account to record any fees charged to this fee structure.

Accounts in Fee Structure

Enter the bank account or accounts that are associated with a particular fee structure.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
IBAN	Displays the international bank account number (IBAN) in addition to the local, domestic bank account number, when the country has been set up to display the IBAN on the "IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Fee Structures - Structure Definition Page

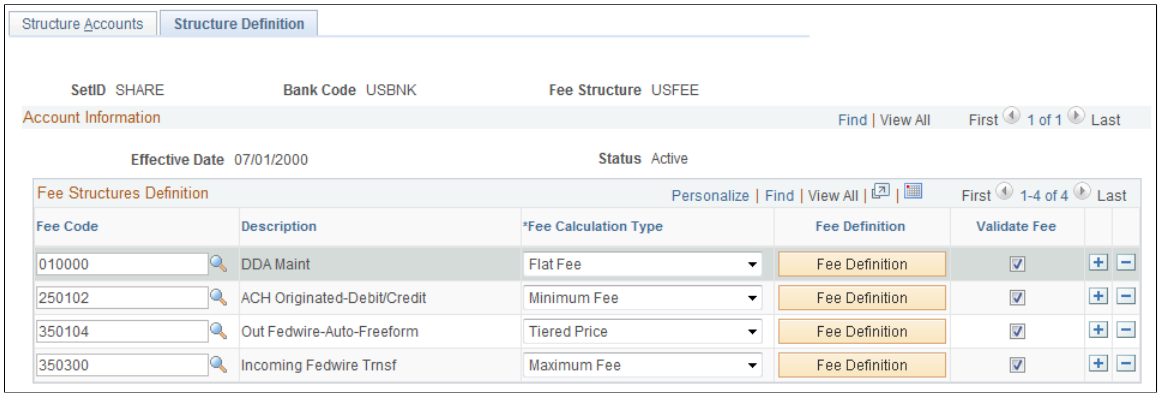
Use the Fee Structures - Structure Definition page (FA_FEE_STRUCT) to define fee structures.

Navigation:

Select the **Structure Definition** tab on the Structure Accounts page.

Access the Fee Structures - Structure Definition page (Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures, Structure Definition).

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Structures - Structure Definition page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Fee Calculation Type	Select one of the following values: • *Base Fee:* Fee that is charged in addition to the unit price when one or more units of the service are provided. For example, a base fee of USD 10.00 is charged, plus USD 0. 50 per unit. • *Flat Fee:* Fixed fee that is charged for service provided that is not directly tied to the volume of the service. For example, Balance Reporting is USD 50.00 per month, regardless of the number or reporting files created during the month. • *Minimum Fee:* Lowest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit with a USD 5. 00 minimum. The minimum fee is charged even if the unit count is less than 5. • *Maximum Fee:* Highest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit, with a USD 50.00 maximum. The maximum fee is charged even if the unit count exceeds 50. • *Rate Based Charge:* This fee is calculated using a balance and an annual percentage rate. For example, an overdraft fee is calculated as the Average Negative Ledger Balance x 12% x 30/365. • *Discounted Price:* This fee is calculated using a price that is less than the standard price for the service provided. For example, Customer A is charged USD 0.90 per unit, instead of the standard USD 1.00 per unit. • *Threshold Price*: The total volume determines the unit price for the service. For example, if the volume is 1,000 or less, the price is USD 0.10 per unit; if the volume is more than 1,000, the price is USD 0.09 per unit. • *Tiered Pricing:* The price for the service is determined by the tiering structure and the total volume. The volume is broken down into as many tiers as necessary, and a different price is used to calculate the fee for each tier. For example, for the first 1,000 items, the price is USD .10 per unit; for more than 1,000 items, the price is USD .09 per unit.
Fee Definition	Click to further define the metrics of the fee on the Fee Calculation Type - Fee Structure page (FA_FEE_STRUCT_ SEC), depending on the **Fee Calculation Type**.
Validate Fee	Select this check box to validate the particular fee code against both the cost and volume as defined in the fee structure and the volume as defined in the fee code setup and fee transaction tables.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Fee Calculation Type − Fee Structure Page

Use the Fee Calculation Type - Fee Structure page (FA_FEE_STRUCT_SEC) to edit the base fee calculation for certain fee calculation types.

Navigation:

Click the **Fee Definition** button on the Fee Structure Definition page.

The fee calculation type must have an editable fee definition to access this page. Enter a new base fee, expressed as a decimal, for fee calculation.

Comparing Fee Structures

Use the pages in this topic to compare fee structures and analyze the results. You can compare as few as two or as many as five fee structures at a time. You can also create multiple comparison scenarios and save them for future use. If the underlying structure changes, you can rerun the saved comparison and view the new results.

Pages Used to Compare Fee Structures

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Fee Structure Comparison Page	FA_CHARGE_COMP	Compare different fee structures that are applied to the same account, and also create and save multiple comparison scenarios for future use
Fee Structure Comparison Results Page	FA_CHARGE_RSLTS	Analyze fee structures' comparison. The page also displays the optimal fee structure choice. See the Fee Structure Comparison Page for more information.

Fee Structure Comparison Page

Use the Fee Structure Comparison page (FA_CHARGE_COMP) to compare different fee structures that are applied to the same account, and also create and save multiple comparison scenarios for future use.

Navigation:

Banking > **Account Analysis** > **Fee Structure Comparison**

To compare fee structures:

1. Enter up to five **Fee Structure Codes** for comparison in the **Fee Structures** group box.
2. Click **Compare Fee Structures**.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. The Fee Structure Comparison Results page appears. Each fee structure you selected on the Fee Structure Comparison page is calculated and displayed. The fee structure of optimal choice, based on the comparison of fees, is identified to the right of the *Guide to Account Analysis* field. A **Charge Difference** column appears on the page only if you are comparing two fee structures.

Performing Account Analysis

Pages Used to Perform Account Analysis

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Fee Statements - Information Page	FA_BNK_STMT_HDR	Enter statement and analysis date information, and select a statement method. You can also view bank contacts.
Fee Statements - Rates Page	FA_BNK_STMT_RATE	Enter rate information for statement fee codes
Fee Statements - Balance Compensation Page	FA_BNK_STMT_ANYL	Enter balances, earnings and other totals.
Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments Page	FA_BNK_STMT_BADJ	Enter balance adjustment information.
Fee Statements - Service Charges Page	FA_BNK_STMT_SRVC	Enter statement service charge information.
Fee Statements - Service Adjustments Page	FA_BNK_STMT_SADJ	Enter adjustments to service charges found on the bank account analysis statement.
Import Bank Statements Page	BSP_IMPORT	Submit an electronic request for bank statement information. See Automatically Importing Statement Information. See also the "Import Bank Statements Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
Account Analysis Validation Page	FA_BNK_STMT_VALID	Validate a statement against a fee structure.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding Performing Account Analysis

Once bank fee codes and structures have been set up, you can perform account analysis on your bank statements to verify fee charges and catch potential errors. EDI 822 statements can be entered either manually or automatically imported using PeopleSoft banking functionality. You use the Account Analysis pages to enter bank statement balance, service, and rate information, as well as balance adjustments and service adjustments, where necessary. After entering a statement, you can validate that statement to ensure correct volumes, balances, and charges. This should help decrease your research time into statement exceptions.

Using pages in this topic, you can:

- Manually create statements.
- Automatically import statement information.
- Validate account analysis information.

Related Links

"Understanding Electronic Banking" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway)

Common Elements Used to Perform Account Analysis

Field or Control	*Description*
Adjustment Date	Displays the balance adjustment or service charge adjustment entry date.
Fee Code	Displays the identifier code for the specified fee.
Pay Method	If you leave the **Pay Method** field blank, the system applies the charge to the balance compensable service charges. • *F:* Free (no charge) • *N:* Non balance compensable • *W:* Waived • *X:* Not assessed through analysis
Service Charge or Service Charge Amount	Displays the service charges assessed to your account by the bank.

Creating Statements Manually

This section discusses how to manually create statements:

1. Enter general statement information.
2. Enter statement rate information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. Enter balance compensation information.
4. Enter balance adjustment information.
5. Enter service charge information.
6. Enter service adjustment information.

Fee Statements - Information Page

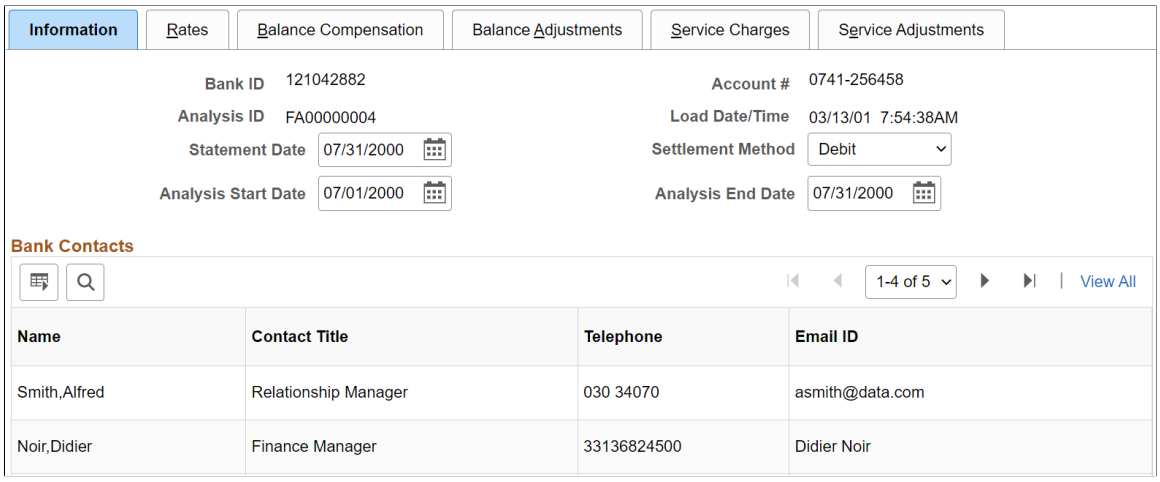
Use the Fee Statements - Information page (FA_BNK_STMT_HDR) to enter statement and analysis date information, and select a statement method.

You can also view bank contacts.

Navigation:

Banking >Bank Statements >Enter Fee Statements >Information

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Statement Date	Enter the date the statement is created or imported.
Settlement Method	Select *Debit* or *Invoice.*

Bank Contacts

This information is associated with the **Bank ID** and **Account #.** The fields display the information you entered on the Financial Contacts page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

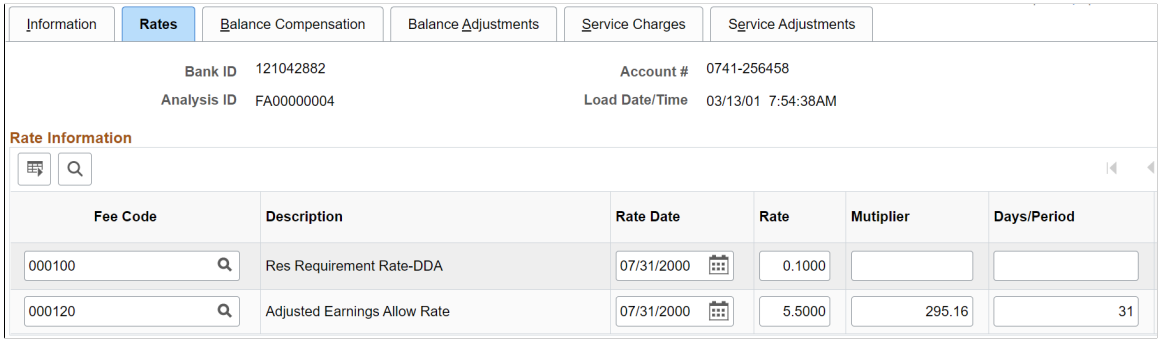
Fee Statements - Rates Page

Use the Fee Statements - Rates page (FA_BNK_STMT_RATE) to enter rate information for statement fee codes.

Navigation:

Banking >Bank Statements >Enter Fee Statements >Rates

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Rates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Rate Date	Enter the effective date for the Rate.
Rate	Enter a rate in decimal format. Rates can be any type, such as earnings rates for the current and next period, or reserve rates.
Multiplier	Specify a service multiplier, in decimal format.
Days/Period	Enter the number of days in the analysis period, generally *30* or *31*.
Days/Year	Enter the number of days in the year, generally *365* or *366*.

Fee Statements - Balance Compensation Page

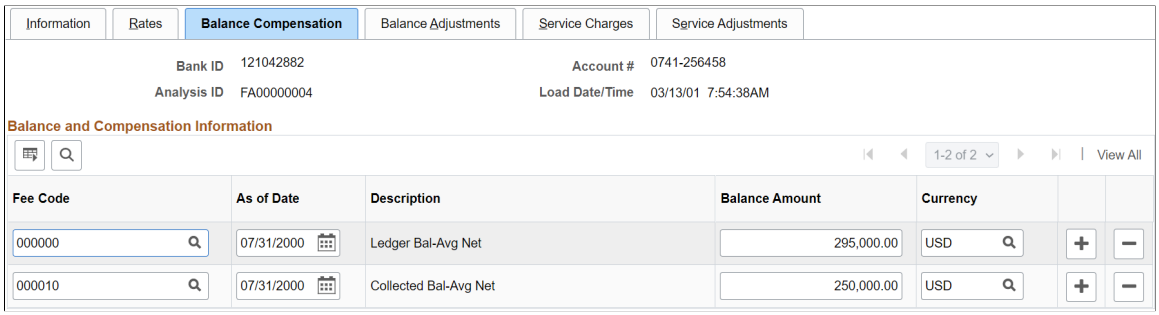
Use the Fee Statements - Balance Compensation page (FA_BNK_STMT_ANYL) to enter balances, earnings and other totals.

Navigation:

Banking > Bank Statements > Enter Fee Statements > Balance Compensation

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Balance Compensation page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



You enter balances, earnings allowance, and service charge summary information for a specified account on this page.

Field or Control	*Description*
Balance Amount	Enter the final balance amount for the indicated **Fee Code** from the 822 Statement.

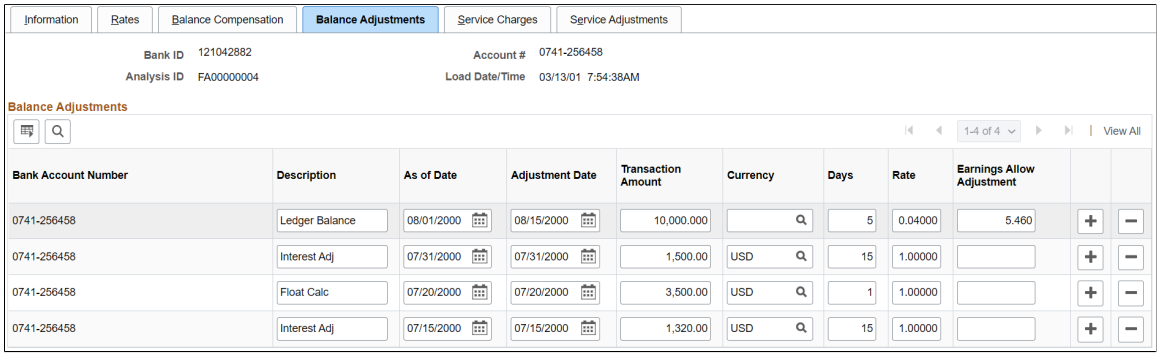
Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments Page

Use the Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments page (FA_BNK_STMT_BADJ) to enter balance adjustment information.

Navigation:

Banking > Bank Statements > Enter Fee Statements > Balance Adjustments

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



You can correct balance information for a specific account number.

Field or Control	*Description*
Transaction Amount	Enter the adjustment transaction amount.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Days	Indicates the number of days the balance adjustment is outstanding. For example, 10,000 USD for five days.
Rate	Displays the adjustment rate expressed as a decimal.
Earnings allow Adjustment	Enter the actual dollar amount being charged or reimbursed to the account by the bank.

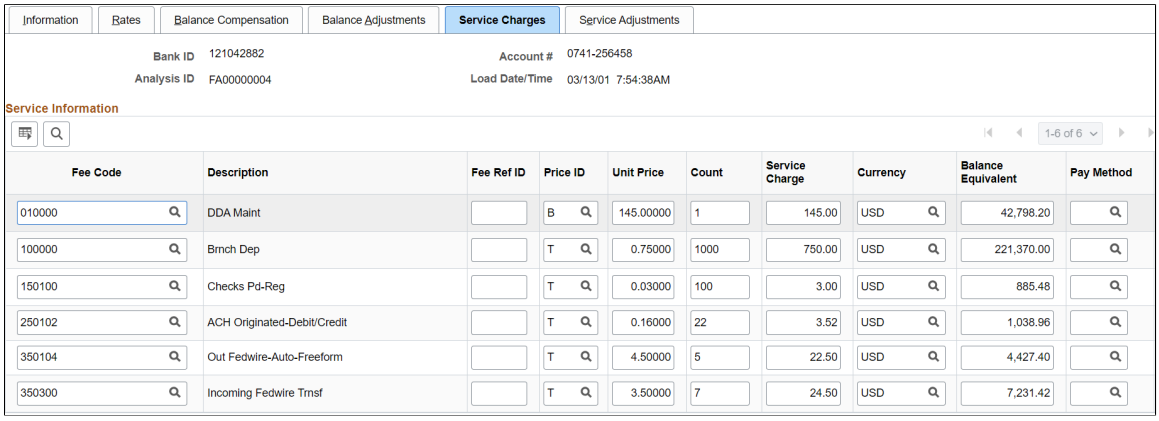
Fee Statements - Service Charges Page

Use the Fee Statements - Service Charges page (FA_BNK_STMT_SRVC) to enter statement service charge information.

Navigation:

Banking > **Bank Statements** > **Enter Fee Statements** > **Service Charges**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Service Charges page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Enter service charges from the bank account analysis statement on this page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Price ID	Refers to the fee calculation type. Select from the following: • *B* (Base Fee): Fee that is charged in addition to the unit price when one or more units of the service are provided. For example, a base fee of USD 10.00 is charged, plus USD 0.50 per unit. • *F* (Flat Fee): Fixed fee that is charged for service provided that is not directly tied to the volume of the service. For example, balance reporting is USD 50.00 per month, regardless of the number or reporting files created during the month. • *M* (Minimum Fee): Lowest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit with a USD 5.00 minimum. The minimum fee is charged even if the unit count is less than 5. • *X* (Maximum Fee): Highest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit, with a USD 50.00 maximum. The maximum fee is charged even if the unit count exceeds 50. • *R* (Rate Based Charge): This fee is calculated using a balance and an annual percentage rate. For example, an overdraft fee is calculated as the average negative ledger balance x 12% x 30/365. • *D* (Discounted Price): This fee is calculated using a price that is less than the standard price for the service provided. For example, customer A is charged USD 0.90 per unit, instead of the standard USD 1.00 per unit. • *H* (Threshold Price): The total volume determines the unit price for the service. For example, if the volume is 1,000 or less, the price is USD 0.10 per unit; if the volume is more than 1,000, the price is USD 0.09 per unit. • *T* (Tiered Pricing): The price for the service is determined by the tiering structure and the total volume. The volume is broken down into as many tiers as necessary, and a different price is used to calculate the fee for each tier. For example, for the first 1,000 items, the price is USD .10 per unit; for more than 1,000 items, the price is USD .09 per unit.
Unit Price	Enter the unit price per fee item.
Count	Enter the number of statement items for each fee code.
Balance Equivalent	Enter the account's balance equivalent, as defined by the bank.

Note: If you use *Flat Fee* for the **Price ID,** the service charge equals the unit price. If you want the service charge to equal the unit price multiplied by the count, you must use *Tiered Price* for the **Price ID.**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

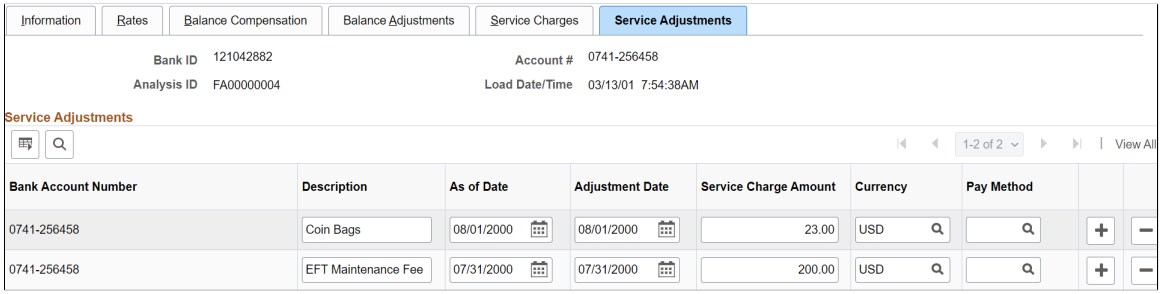
Fee Statements - Service Adjustments Page

Use the Fee Statements - Service Adjustments page (FA_BNK_STMT_SADJ) to enter adjustments to service charges found on the bank account analysis statement.

Navigation:

Banking > Bank Statements > Enter Fee Statements > Service Adjustments

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Service Adjustments page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Use this page to apply any adjustments to service charges found on the bank account analysis statement.

Field or Control	*Description*
Payment Method	Select from the following options: • *B:* Compensation by balance. • *D:* Debited hard charged. • *F:* Free (No charge.) • *I:* Invoiced Separately • *N:* Nonbalance compensable. • *P:* Previously charged. • *W:* Waived • *X:* Not assessed through analysis.

Automatically Importing Statement Information

Use PeopleSoft banking functionality to automatically import bank statement data from your financial institution to the account analysis application tables. Once the data are in the system, you can view and edit statement information on the Fee Statements - Balance Adjustment and Fee Statements - Service Adjustment pages.

Related Links

Fee Statements - Service Charges Page

"Understanding Electronic Banking" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

"Setting Up Bank Statement Processing" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway)

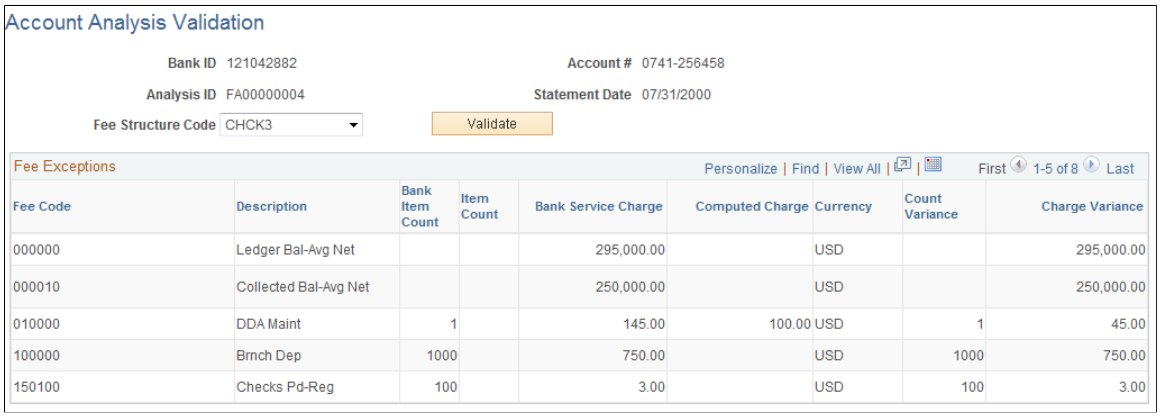
Account Analysis Validation Page

Use the Account Analysis Validation page (FA_BNK_STMT_VALID) to validate a statement against a fee structure.

Navigation:

Banking > **Account Analysis** > **Account Analysis Validation**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Account Analysis Validation page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Account Analysis Validation

Bank ID 121042882 Account # 0741-256458

Analysis ID FA00000004 Statement Date 07/31/2000

Fee Structure Code CHCK3 Validate

Fee Exceptions Personalize | Find | View All | First 1-5 of 8 Last

Fee Code	Description	Bank Item Count	Item Count	Bank Service Charge	Computed Charge	Currency	Count Variance	Charge Variance
000000	Ledger Bal-Avg Net			295,000.00		USD		295,000.00
000010	Collected Bal-Avg Net			250,000.00		USD		250,000.00
010000	DDA Maint	1		145.00	100.00	USD	1	45.00
100000	Brnch Dep	1000		750.00		USD	1000	750.00
150100	Checks Pd-Reg	100		3.00		USD	100	3.00

Field or Control	*Description*
Fee Structure Code	Select a fee structure code and click the **Validate** button. All exceptions, where the system does not match your bank statement, display in the **Fee Exceptions** grid. The types of exceptions appear according to column heading. The grid will indicate what type of exception was encountered and the amount of the discrepancy
Count Variance	Displays the difference between the **Bank Item Count** and your organization's **Item Count.**

Using the Account Analysis Manager

This topic discusses using the Account Analysis Manager. You can examine your fee activity on an ad hoc basis for particular fee structures, for historical or current information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Used for the Account Analysis Manager

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Account Analysis Manager Page	FA_STMT_INQ_PNL	Review fee activity on an ad hoc basis and perform other bank fee and account analysis tasks from a central location.

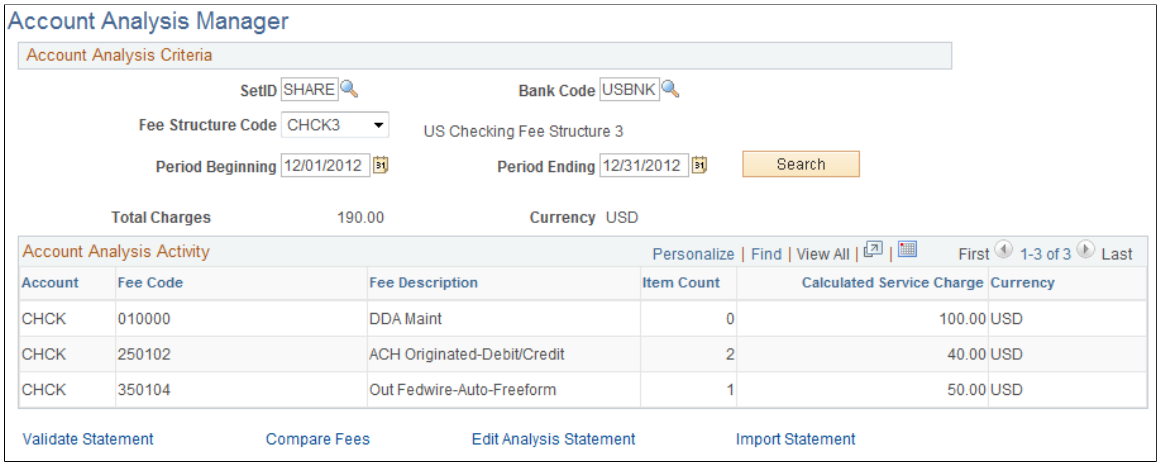
Account Analysis Manager Page

Use the Account Analysis Manager page (FA_STMT_INQ_PNL) to review fee activity on an ad hoc basis and perform other bank fee and account analysis tasks from a central location.

Navigation:

Banking > **Account Analysis** > **Account Analysis Manager**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Account Analysis Manager page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Your search results appear in the **Account Analysis Activity** grid.

Field or Control	*Description*
Validate Statement	Click to access the Account Analysis Validation page and validate account analysis.
Compare Fees	Click to access the Fee Structure page and compare two to five fee structures.
Edit Analysis Statement	Click to access the Enter Fee Statements page and modify a specific account analysis statement.
Load Analysis Statement	Click to access the Import Bank Statement page and request electronic transmission of bank statement information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Related Links

Comparing Fee Structures
Performing Account Analysis
Account Analysis Validation Page
Automatically Importing Statement Information

Creating Fee Entries

This topic discusses how to create both fee entries and external transactions fee entries.

Pages Used to Create Fee Entries

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Enter Fees Page	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Create fees for deal, facility, EFT, and letter of credit sources.
Category Purpose Page	CAT_PURP_FEE	Identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name. See the Enter Fees Page.

Related Links

Creating VAT Transactions for Fees

Enter Fees Page

Use the Enter Fees page (FEE_GENERATOR_PNL) to create fees for deal, facility, EFT, and letter of credit sources.

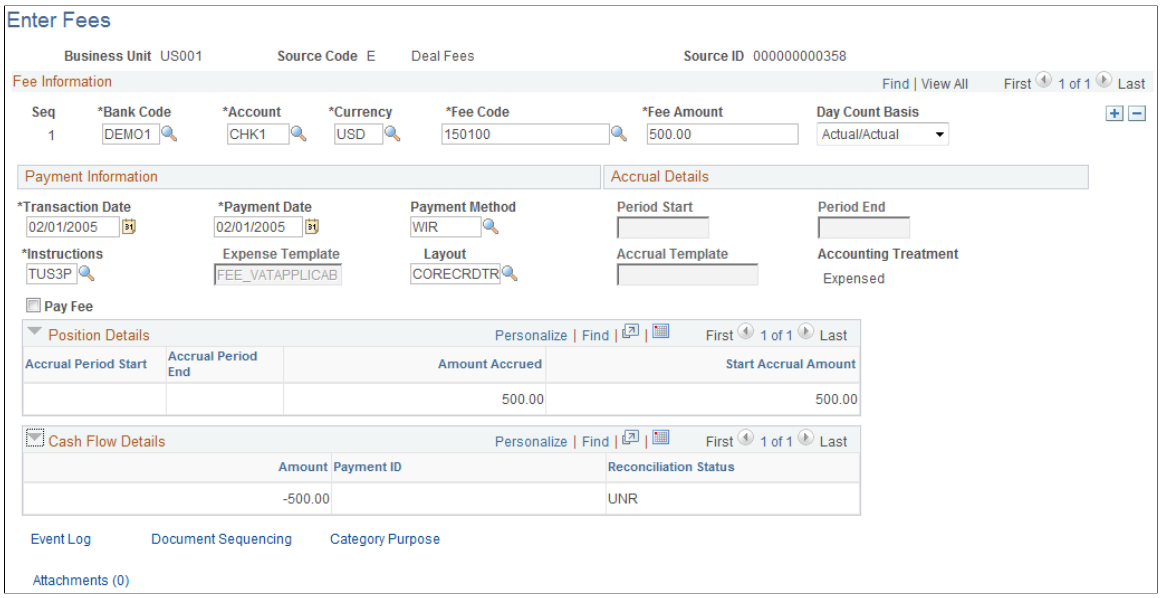
After establishing fee codes and structures, you can create fee entries for both delivered PeopleSoft fee sources and miscellaneous fee entries to track these expenditures. In addition, if you have enabled VAT (value-added tax) processing in Treasury Management, the system automatically calculates, processes, and tracks VAT amounts for VAT−applicable fee entries.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **Enter Fees**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Enter Fees page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Category Purpose	Click this link to access the Category Purpose page (CAT_PURP_FEE), where you can where you can identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.

Fee Information

Field or Control	*Description*
VAT	Click the link to access the VAT Transactions Details page. The system performs an audit, checking that the business unit of the **Bank Code** is VAT enabled, and the **Fee Code** is configured for VAT and associated with a VAT applicable accounting template. The VAT Transactions Details page displays only if these conditions are met.

Payment Information

Field or Control	*Description*
Trans Date (transaction date)	Enter the actual transaction date of the fee entry. The system automatically populates this field with the system date.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Payment Date	Enter the specified payment date of the fee entry.
Pay Fee	Select to pay the fee. Also select a **Payment Method.**
Instructions (settlement instructions)	Select settlement instructions for processing the fee entry payment.
Expense Template	Select an accounting template to record this fee entry as an expense.

Accrual Details

Field or Control	*Description*
Period Start and Period End	Enter the beginning and ending dates of the accrual period.
Accrual Template	Specify the accounting template to record the accrual amount for this fee entry.

Position Details

As the fee is processed through the system, you can view accrual details.

Cash Flow

As the fee is processed through the system, you can view approval and payment details.

Related Links

Understanding the Settlements Payment Process

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 6

Using Cash Forecasting to Manage Cash Positions

Understanding Cash Forecasting

In Treasury Management, a *position* is the total financial value of a particular set of transactions that are performed on behalf of an enterprise. A *cash position* analyzes cash flows to determine the amount of cash that is available at a particular time. Cash flow, or *cash forecasting,* is the modeling of a company or asset's future financial liquidity over a specific time frame. Cash usually refers to a company's total bank balances, but cash forecasting captures your company's treasury position, which is cash plus short-term investments minus short-term debt. A treasury position can include non-cash flow data. Cash flow is the change in cash or treasury position from one period to the next.

PeopleSoft Cash Management provides a simplified worksheet tool for managing your treasury organization's cash forecasting. You can configure the cash forecast dimensions and forecast rules to meet your business needs, support drilling down to details to access more information about the cash forecast results, plug in multiple sources that affect cash forecast results, and support a CSV file interface or XML file interface to bring in cash forecast data from any source.

Click to watch a short video about PeopleSoft Cash Position and Forecasting.

The cash forecasting worksheet functionality enables you to:

- Manage position worksheets (rather than trees).
- Create intraday bank reporting worksheets.
- Create cash position worksheet (CPW) data manually.
- Generate Cash Management position reports.

The Cash Forecast Results enable cash managers to view the cash position in several dimensions, such as bank, bank account, currency, business unit, and several more that you can configure during setup. From any cash forecasting results view, you can click on a line item to drill down into details. Configured at the position source, drill down functionality can take you directly to the source transaction.

Saved searches provide an instant view of your cash forecast results in your preferred dimensions. The relative date option in the search criteria enables users to define saved searches once and use them daily.

The cash forecasting process in PeopleSoft Cash Management adds flexibility to maintenance and reporting. In addition to defining source sets and manual position entry, you can:

- Define variance and variance alerts with cues.
- Display non-cash flow data.
- Use a streamlined worksheet setup.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Select multiple position currencies.

Setting Up Cash Forecasting

Pages Used to Set Up Cash Forecasting

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Define Time Sets Page	POS_TIME_SPAN_PNL	Configure time segments with corresponding start and end cycles and store associated time periods
Position Field Types Page	POS_FIELD_TYPE_PNL	Define user-friendly field names.
Forecast Mapping Page	CSH_FCST_GRP_BY	Set up dimensions for reporting cash forecasting numbers.
Position Source Set Page	SOURCE_SET_DEFN	Define position source sets, such as actuals, forecast, projected, or intraday.
Position Source Page	POS_SOURCE_TBL	Define position records, drill back details, and selection criteria for position sources.
Position Source Contacts Page	POS_SOURCE_CNTC	Associate source contacts with a Contact Type of *Cash Forecast* to a position source.
Drill Back Details Page	POS_SOURCE_KEYS	Define the method for drilling back to the source application, used to view details of a transaction from the Cash Forecasting Results page.
Selection Criteria Page	POS_SOURCE_SQL	Enter selection criteria for a source or regenerate SQL for several sources in batch.
Forecast Rules Page	CSH_FCST_RULES	Identify forecasting rules to shift or replace forecasting values.
Calculate Time Spans Page	TR_TSPAN_REQ	Run the Treasury Position Time Spans process (TR_POSN_TSPAN), which calculates time spans for a specified time set.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Create Position Source SQL Page	TR_CREATE_SQL	Enter the parameters and execute a process that creates the SQL defined for a position source.
Worksheet Definition Page	WORKSHEET_DEFN	Define how your cash forecast worksheet will look and the calculations that will be made, including reporting currencies, forecast rules, source sets, and variance attributes.
Worksheet Line Items Page	WORKSHEET_LINE_ITM	Define line items, position sources, and position source processing attributes for the worksheet.

Understanding Setting Up Cash Forecasting

To define PeopleSoft cash forecasting information, use the Define Cash Forecast menu, which includes components to set up worksheets, forecasting rules, time spans, and position source options.

Using pages in the setup menu, you define the following setup and source data:

- Time sets.
- Position field types.
- Forecast mapping.
- Position source sets.
- Position sources.
- Forecast rules.
- Time span calculation.
- Position source SQL.
- Worksheet definitions.

As part of your installation of Cash Forecasting, you will need to evaluate the values needed for your business.

Defining Time Sets

Configure time sets to create time intervals, or time buckets, that you want to leverage to display cash forecasting results.

You can define time sets with varying intervals, such as daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, yearly, or rolling. Look up sample data for the intervals mentioned here to evaluate the associated time periods and make appropriate changes. You should create new intervals as needed.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

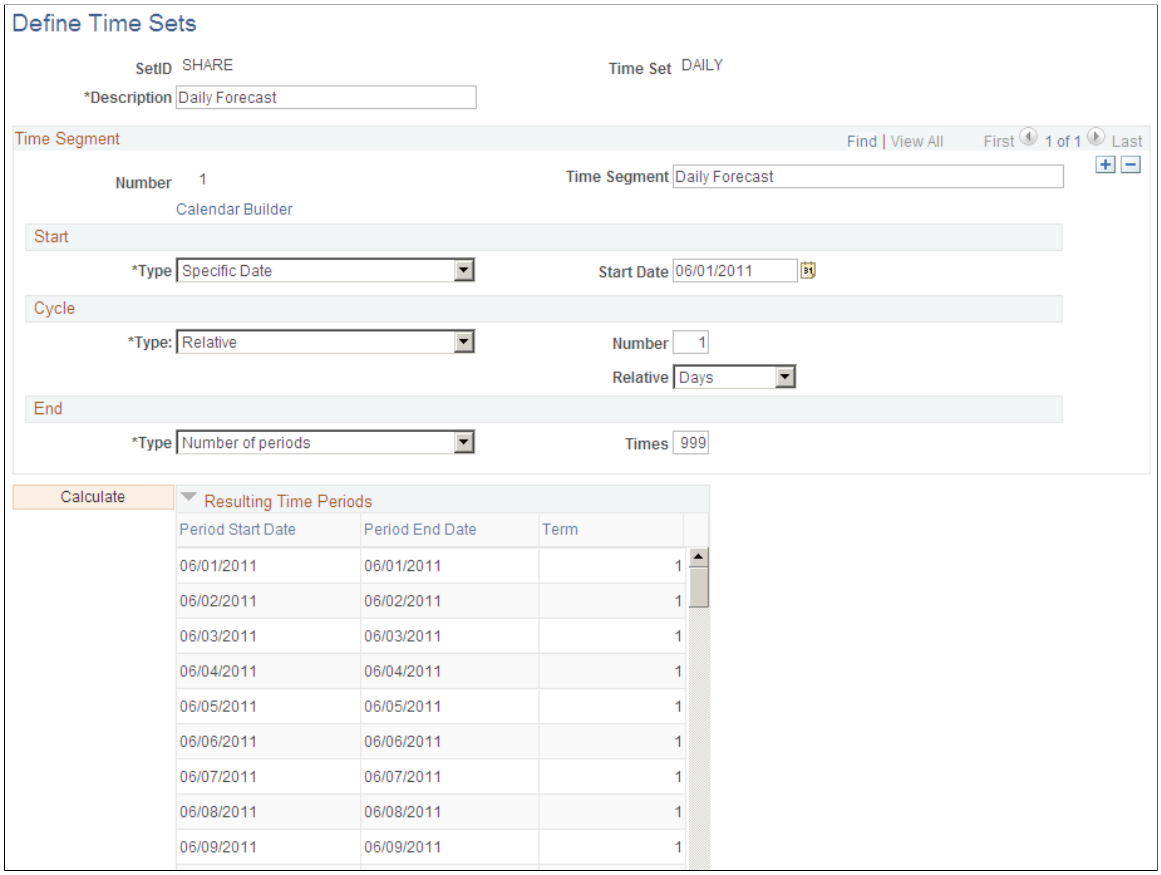
Define Time Sets Page

Use the Define Time Sets page (POS_TIME_SPAN_PNL) to configure time segments with corresponding start and end cycles and store associated time periods.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Define Time Sets

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Define Time Sets page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Number	Indicates the sequential time segment that you are modifying.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Start	Select a start type to indicate how the system determines when a time segment starts. Values are: • *Defined by Period above*: Starts the current time segment when the prior time segment ends. You cannot select this option for the first segment. • *Specific Date*: Starts the current time segment on a specific date. When you select this option, enter the date in the Start Date field. • *Specific Period*: Starts the current time segment on the first day of a specified period. When you select this option, select the calendar on which to base the period start. • *Today*: Starts the current time segment today. Select this value when you want the time span to be based on a current date. Every time the system calculates the time span, this field is updated with the current date.
Cycle	Select a cycle type to indicate the repetition frequency of a time segment. Values are: • *Relative*: Cycles the time segment a relative number of times. When you select this value, enter the number of times it repeats, and then enter the frequency of repetition in the Relative field. You can repeat a number of days, months, or years. For example, to have this time segment repeat daily for five days, you would enter *5* in the Number field, and select *Days* in the Relative field. • *Use Period Definitions*: Cycles the time segment based on the period definitions from a business calendar. When you select this value, select the calendar on which to base this frequency. For example, suppose that you want this time segment to cycle by quarters. Select a defined quarterly calendar in frequency.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
End	Use to control when a time segment ends. After completing the appropriate number of cycles, the following values are available to control the end of the segment: • *End of Next Cycle*: Completes the time segment at the end of the next cycle. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending. • *End of Period*: Completes the time segment when the period that is defined by the selected calendar ends. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending period. • *End of Previous Cycle*: Completes the time segment when the previous cycle ends. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending period. • *Number of Periods*: Completes the time segment after repeating the cycle a given number of periods. Enter the number of times the period should cycle.
Calculate	Click this button to generate the time span intervals. Your results appear in the Resulting Time Periods group box.

Position Field Types Page

Use the Position Field Types page (POS_FIELD_TYPE_PNL) to define user-friendly field names.

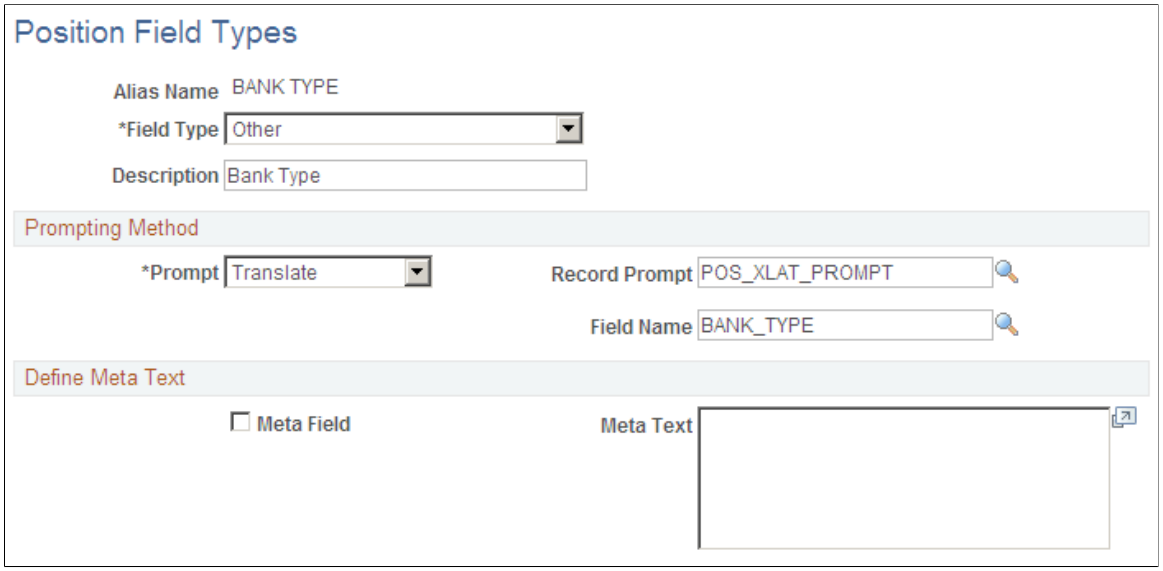
Position Field Types, also known as Alias Names, can be associated with prompt records and meta-SQL. They are used to map to source record fields, define position SQL criteria, and process cash forecast results.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Forecast Position Field Types

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Position Field Types page.



Review existing Position Field Types and define new ones if required to map position source record fields.

Select a Field Type in the system that you want this position field type Alias Name to represent.

Prompting Method

Select a Prompt option to indicate how to control prompting for values for the selected Field Type.

Field or Control	***Description***
Record	Select to base the prompts on the actual database records. In the Record Prompt field, enter the field on which prompting is based.
Translate	Select to base prompting on translate values rather than the records themselves, and select the field name to use for translation. This value applies only to field records that use translate values.

Define Meta Text

Field or Control	***Description***
Meta Field	Select to incorporate a SQL statement with this alias. (Typically, you do not select this check box.)

The following table lists examples of alias names that are delivered with the sample database:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Alias Name	*FieldType*	*Description*	*Prompt*	*Record Prompt*	*Field Name*	*Meta Field*	*Comments*
%THIS DEAL	Other	This Deal	None			Y	Alias name with meta text [1]
ACCOUNT	Bank Account	Account	Record	BANK_ ACCTNUM_ VW			Alias name with record prompt
CANCEL_ STATUS	Other	Cancel Status	Translate	POS_XLAT_ PROMPT	CANCEL_ STATUS		Alias name with record prompt and field
AMOUNT	Amount	Amount	None				Alias name with only field type value

1. Meta text for alias name %THIS DEAL is as follows:

```
(TREAS_HEADER_ID = %BIND(TREAS_HEADER_ID) and BUSINESS_UNIT = %BIND(BUSINESS_UNIT_D⇒
EAL))
```

Understanding Forecast Mapping

In addition to the system-defined groupings (Business Unit, Bank SetID, Bank, Bank Account, and Currency), you can map up to seven additional cash forecast dimensions for which you want to process cash forecast results and view them.

For each additional dimension mapped, you must update the Position Sources Mappings on the Position Source page and ensure that the source data have values for each mapped dimension.

As delivered in PeopleSoft Cash Management, the cash forecasting component stores results by bank, bank account, business unit, position currency, source set, value date, and transaction currency. No change to the forecast mapping is required if you view cash forecast results by delivered dimensions. Map a generic group-by field to an alias name if you want to summarize cash forecast numbers by another dimension.

Forecast Mapping Page

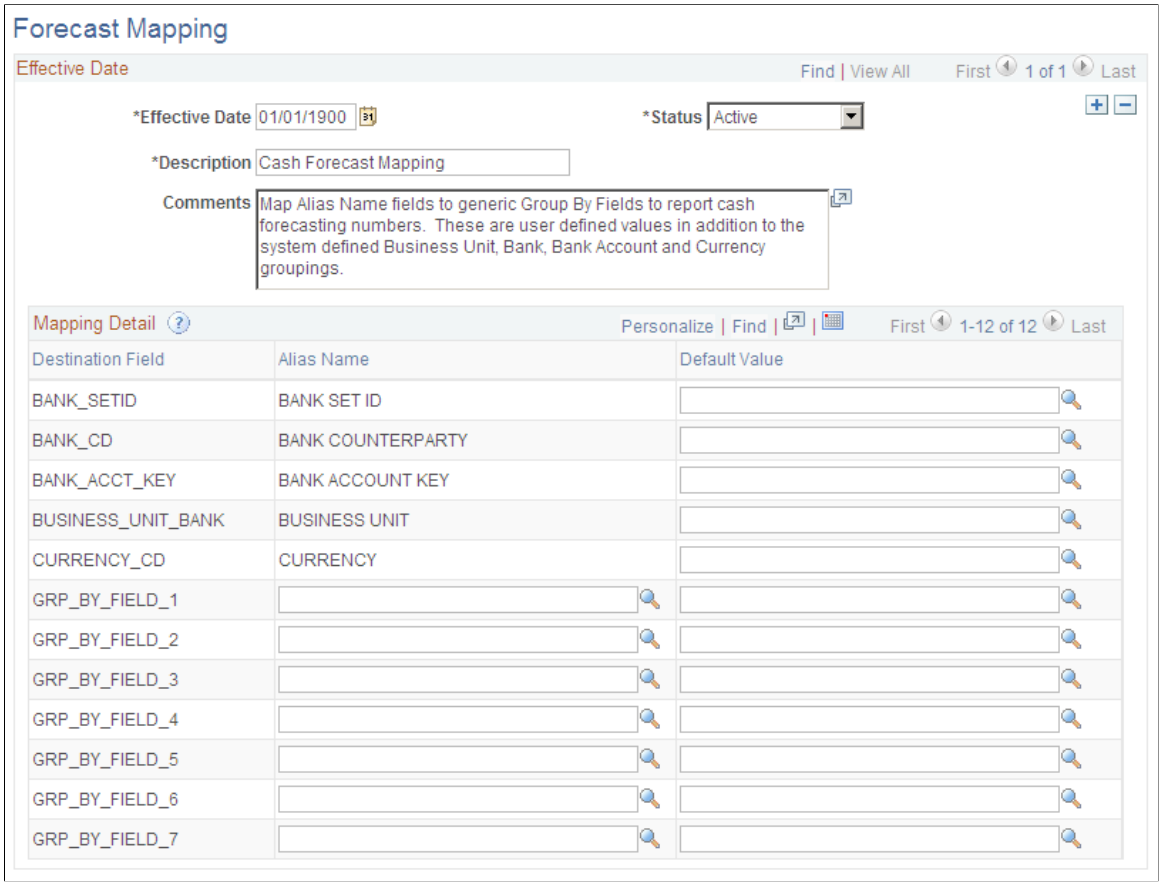
Use the Forecast Mapping page (CSH_FCST_GRP_BY) to set up dimensions for reporting cash forecasting numbers.

Navigation:

Cash Management >**Cash Forecast** >**Define Cash Forecast** >**Forecast Mapping**

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Forecast Mapping page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Destination Field	System-defined groupings include the following: • Business Unit (BUSINESS_UNIT_BANK) • Bank SetID (BANK_SETID) • Bank Account (BANK_ACCT_KEY) • Currency (CURRENCY_CD) • Bank Counterparty (BANK_CD) The system also provides seven generic Destination Field values: • GRP_BY_FIELD1 • GRP_BY_FIELD2 • GRP_BY_FIELD3 • GRP_BY_FIELD4 • GRP_BY_FIELD5 • GRP_BY_FIELD6 • GRP_BY_FIELD7 You can map these fields to create groupings that represent a dimension to be displayed in your cash forecast results. For example, you might choose to map to a geographic region by country. **Note:** For each additional dimension mapped, you must update the Position Source Mappings and ensure that the source data have values for each mapped dimension on the Position Source page.
Alias Name	Select from user-defined Position Field Type values found on the Position Field Type page. Do not map to the alias names used by system-defined mappings.
Default Value	Enter a default value for each grouping field. If the source does not include a value for this field, the system uses the default value you define to group data.

Position Source Set Page

Use the Position Source Set page (SOURCE_SET_DEFN) to define position source sets, such as actuals, forecast, projected, or intraday.

Position Source Sets represent categories for grouping position source data, which you can view and/or compare data between two source sets on the cash forecasting results page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Position Source Set

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Position Source Set page. .

Commonly used source sets are delivered as sample data with your system.

Field or Control	*Description*
SetID	Enter a SetID.
Description	Enter a description.
Source Set	Enter a category for grouping position source data.
Comments	(Optional) Enter comments.

Setting Up Position Sources

A position source represents a source of data that is used to calculate cash forecast/position amount. It also holds details for drill back to source data and SQL criteria that can be applied when retrieving cash forecast/position amounts.

Note: At the time of installation, you should evaluate the appropriateness of the delivered data to your business context and assess whether to create your own position sources. In many cases, you must create your own.

To set up position sources for cash forecasting:

1. Define/identify the underlying position record.
2. (Optional) Define position source contacts.
3. (Optional) Configure drill back to source methodology.
4. (Optional) Define selection criteria for a source.
5. (Required if selection criteria are defined) Create position source SQL.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

After mapping the required alias names—business unit, amount, value date, currency, and a reference—to fields in the record, you should map fields to use for additional forecast dimensions, such as bank, bank account, bank SetID, and any Group By fields that you defined on the Forecast Mapping page.

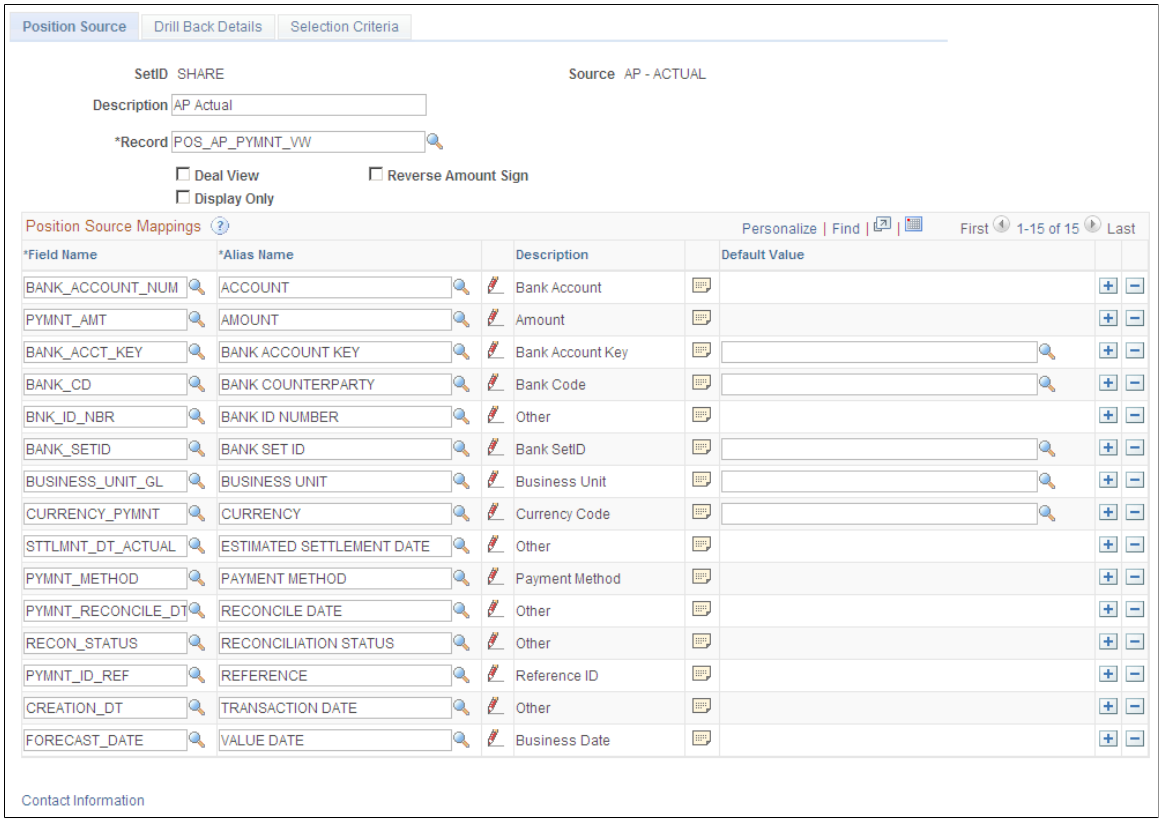
Position Source Page

Use the Position Source page (POS_SOURCE_TBL) to define position records, drill back details, and selection criteria for position sources.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Position Source >Position Source

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Position Source page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Record	Select the database from which the position source derives data.
Deal View	Select to permit remapping of amount fields for different instruments.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Display Only	Select to Indicate that the source data is informational only and will not be included in worksheet calculations. Display-only position sources can be added to the worksheet definition, in the Non-Cash Flow Details grid on the Worksheet Line Items page.
Reverse Amount Sign	Select to reverse the sign on the amount from the source when the data are summarized.

Note: In order to create a valid source, you must map corresponding fields in the record to the alias names for the business unit, amount, value date, currency, and a reference.

Field or Control	*Description*
Field Name	Displays available field names of the selected record.
	Click the Position Field Types icon to define the sets of table fields that are available to the position management tool.
	Click the Long Description icon to enter a comprehensive description for the field.
Default Value	Choose default values for the bank account key, bank code, bank SetID, business unit, and currency, in case the fields in the source are empty.

Position Source Contacts Page

Use the Position Source Contacts page (POS_SOURCE_CNTC) to associate source contacts with a Contact Type of *Cash Forecast* to a position source.

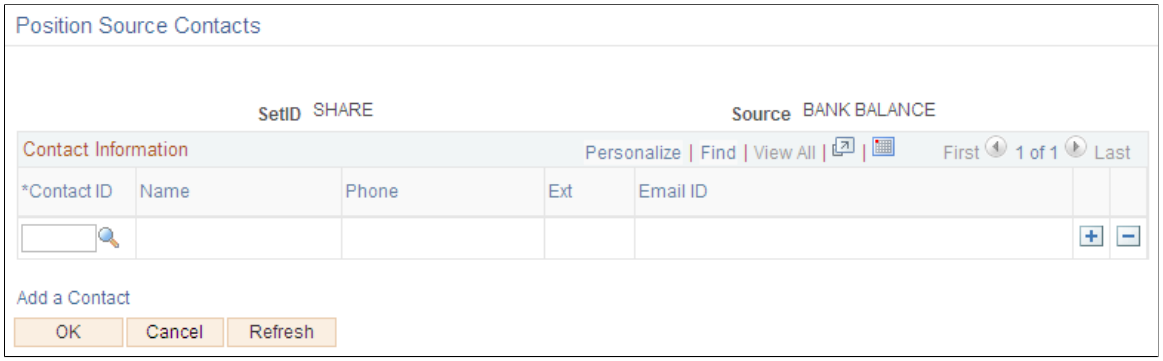
Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Position Source >Position Source

Click the **Contact Information** link on the Position Source page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Position Source Contacts page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Contact ID	Enter the ID for a contact.
Name, **Phone**, **Ext**, and **Email ID**	Displays the contact's name, phone, phone extension, and email ID, if available, from the contacts master table.

Drill Back Details Page

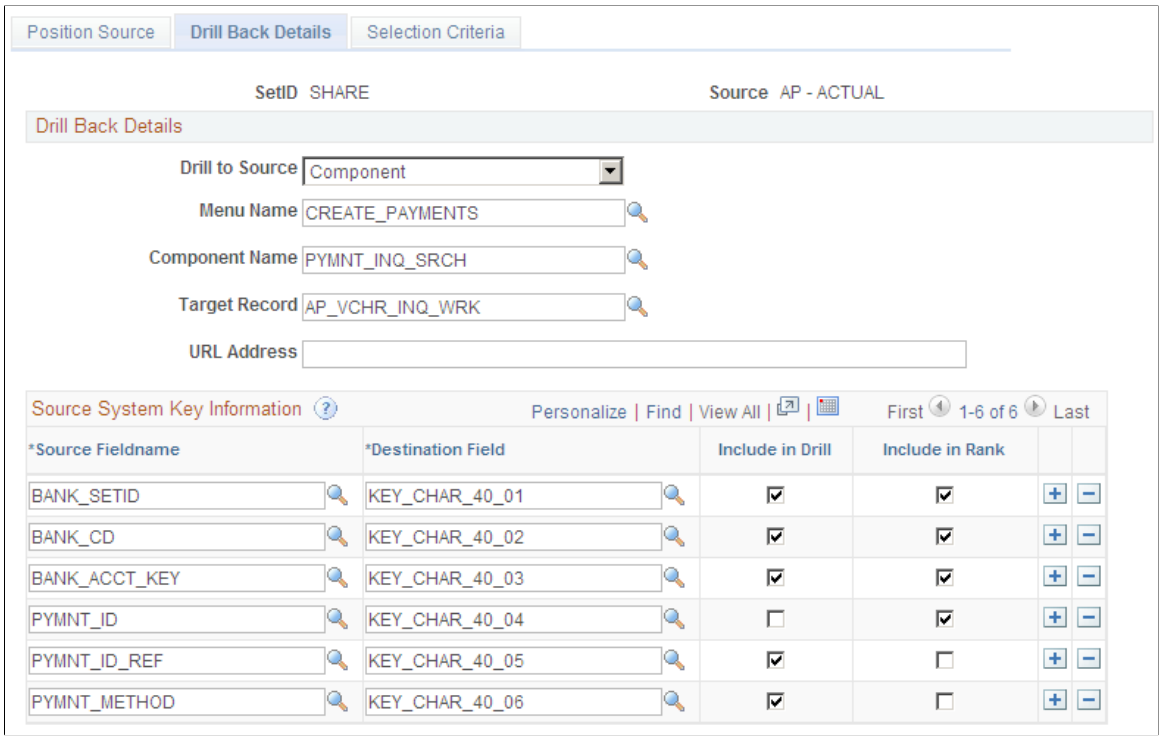
Use the Drill Back Details page (POS_SOURCE_KEYS) to define the method to use to drill back to the source application, to view details of a transaction from the Cash Forecasting Results page.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Position Source >Drill Back Details

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Drill Back Details page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Specify the metadata to identify the drill detail information for the source. Enter the fieldnames from the record, and map them to the generic key fields in the Destination Field column. Select the mapped fields to be used for drilling back to the source and for ranking the rows.

A RANK() function is used to assign sequential numbers to the source detail result set. Provide sufficient Rank fields to identify a unique row in the group when entering source system key information.

Field or Control	***Description***
Drill to Source	Select one of the following methods for drilling to source: • *Component* • *DoModalComponent* • *External URL* • *None*
Menu Name, **Component Name**, and **Target Record**	If you choose to drill to source by component, you must specify the menu and a component name. Specify a target record if the component points to a generic search page that doesn't go through a search. You must specify the target record in order to populate the correct fields.
URL Address	Enter a URL if you select the URL method of drilling to the source.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Specify the metadata to define the detail information from the source in the Source System Key information grid.

Field or Control	*Description*
Source Fieldname	Enter the fieldnames from the record, and map them to the generic key fields in the Destination Field column.
Destination Field	Map delivered character, date/time, and number key fields to source fields, such as the amount, value date, and bank. You identify the destination key fields and the system extracts the information that will be stored on the detail table, which will be used when you drill down to the details.
Include in Drill	Select the mapped fields to be used for drilling back to the source.
Include in Rank	Select the mapped fields to be used for ranking the rows. A RANK() function is used to assign sequential numbers to the source detail result set. Provide sufficient Rank fields to identify a unique row in the group.

Selection Criteria Page

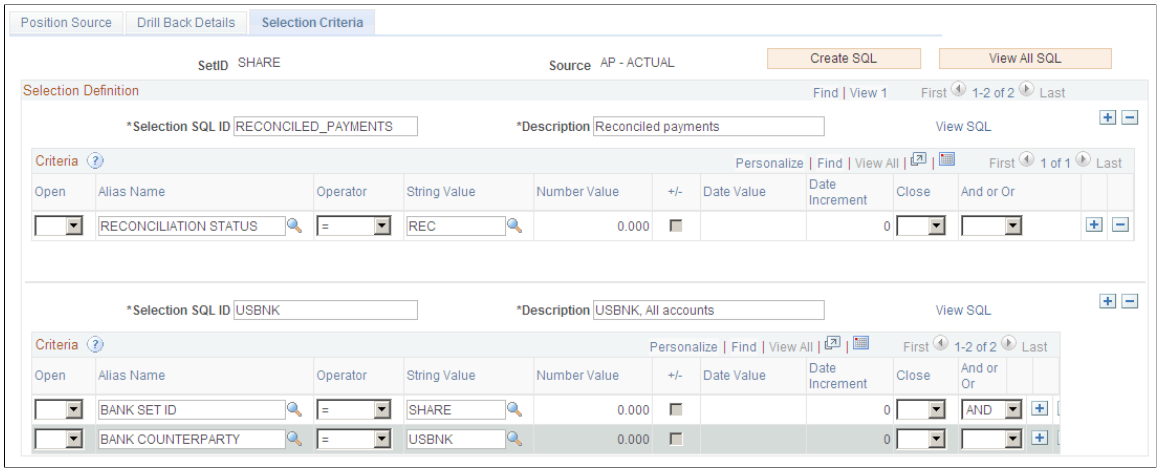
Use the Selection Criteria page (POS_SOURCE_SQL) to enter selection criteria for a source or regenerate SQL for several sources in batch.

In cash forecasting, you define your selection criteria by source. You can create a Selection Definition here, which may include several criteria, then associate it at the worksheet level with the source using the appropriate Selection SQL ID. You can reuse the same selection criteria on any worksheets for the source.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Position Source >Selection Criteria

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Selection Criteria page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Create SQL	Click the **Create SQL** button to create the combined SQL statement from the various statements for different sets of criteria.
View SQL	Click the **View All SQL** to see the SQL that has been generated from the entered criteria. When the process finishes, a dialog box appears with the SQL statement.

Use these fields to create a Selection Definition:

Field or Control	*Description*
Selection SQL ID	Create an ID for the selection criteria for a source.
Description	Describe the SQL Criteria.

Enter SQL criteria for each Selection SQL ID:

Field or Control	*Description*
Open	Select from blank, (, ((, (((, or ((((, depending on your SQL statement and proper SQL syntax.
Alias Name	Select the appropriate alias name.
Operator	Select an operator for your SQL statement.
String Value	Enter any string value or choose one using the lookup prompt.
Number Value	Enter a numeric value.
+/-	Enter an addition/subtraction operator.
Date Value	Enter a calendar date or choose one using the calendar prompt.
Date Increment	Enter an incremental value of days.
Close	Select from blank,),)),))),))))), depending on your SQL statement and proper SQL syntax.
And or Or	Choose from blank, *AND*, or *OR*.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Add row or **Delete row**	Click to add or delete the current row.

Working with Forecast Rules

Forecast Rules are used to shift amount, shift value date based on business convention, shift value date by year, shift value date by month, shift value date by days, shift value date based on payment method, replace forecast data values.

The Forecast Rules page will render differently depending on the rule type you select. You can create the following types of rules or scenarios:

- Amount
- Date
- Payment Method
- Replacement
- Worksheet Offset

The amount type rule is used to adjust the forecast amount, and you can add a weighting value. Or if you want to derive the amount from another field, enter the Alias Name for the field and choose either *Per Unit* in the Measurement field, along with Unit Price.

Use the Date type rule to adjust the forecast value date. You can specify a business day convention in the Convention field and enter the number of years, months, or days to adjust the source date.

Use the Payment Method rule type to shift value date by payment method.

Use the Replacement rule type to replace specific position source values.

Use the Worksheet Offset rule type when copying Cash Forecast Results to vary the date and amount.

Forecast Rules Page

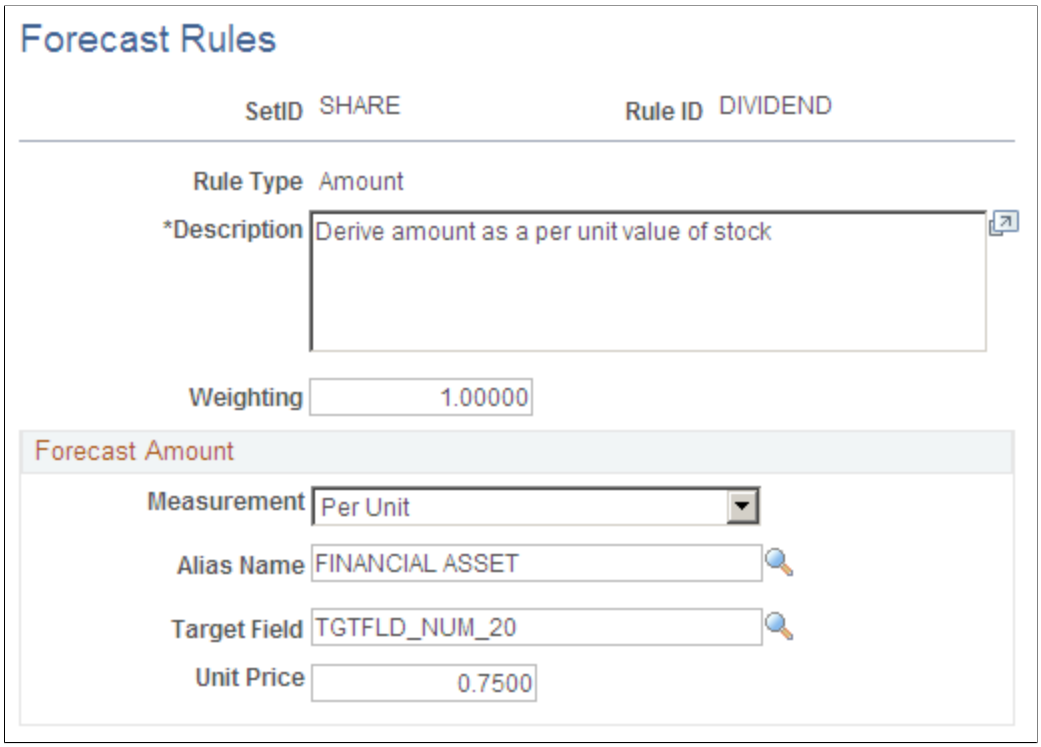
Use the Forecast Rules page (CSH_FCST_RULES) to identify forecasting rules to shift or replace forecasting values.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Forecast Rules

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Forecast Rules page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	***Description***
Rule ID and **Rule Type**	Define the rule by creating a rule ID, and specify a rule type for the rule. Options are: • *Amount* • *Date* • *Payment Method* • *Replacement* • *Worksheet Offset*
Description	Enter a description.
Weighting	Set the percentage that you want to apply to this cash forecast rule. You can also weight worksheet line items on the Worksheet Line Items page. For example, you use the weight of 1.1 to forecast a 10 percent increase or 110 percent of your current situation. Similarly, you use a weight of .9 for a 10 percent decrease or 90 percent of your current cash situation.

In the Forecast Amount group box, enter values for these fields:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Measurement	Choose the *Per Unit* measurement option to enter a value in the Unit Price field.
Alias Name	Enter the alias name for another field from which you want to derive the amount.
Target Field	Select one of the available target record fields.
Unit Price	Enter a unit price value when you select the *Per Unit* measurement.

Calculate Time Spans Page

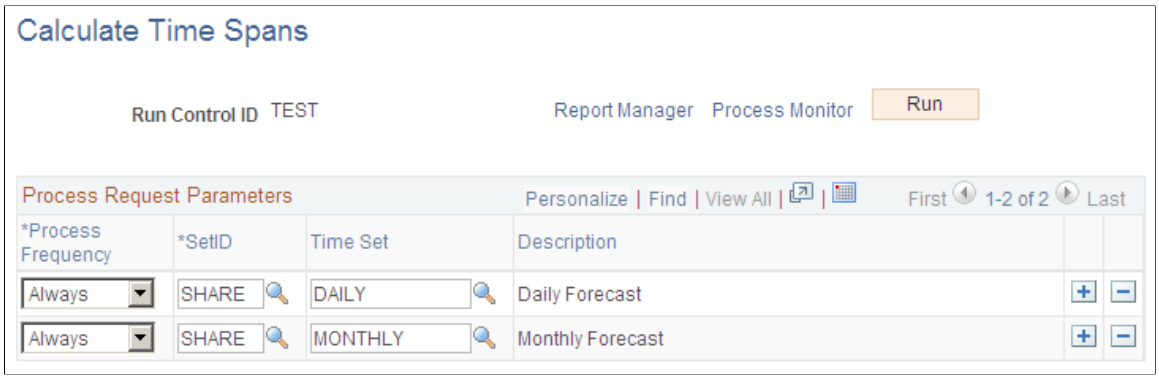
Use the Calculate Time Spans page (TR_TSPAN_REQ) to run the Treasury Position Time Spans process (TR_POSN_TSPAN), which calculates time spans for a specified time set.

You can define time spans with varying intervals, such as daily for a week, weekly for a quarter, and then quarterly for a year. The time spans that you define can overlap, run consecutively, or both.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Calculate Time Spans

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Calculate Time Spans page.



To define the Process Scheduler run, enter a request ID and description and indicate if you want the system to process using a single SetID or all SetIDs.

Field or Control	*Description*
Process Frequency	Specify the frequency with which the process or job is to be run. Choose from *Always*, *Once*, or *Never*.
SetID	Enter a SetID.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Time Set and **Description**	Enter the time interval from sample data delivered with your system, or that you defined on the Define Time Sets page.

Create Position Source SQL Page

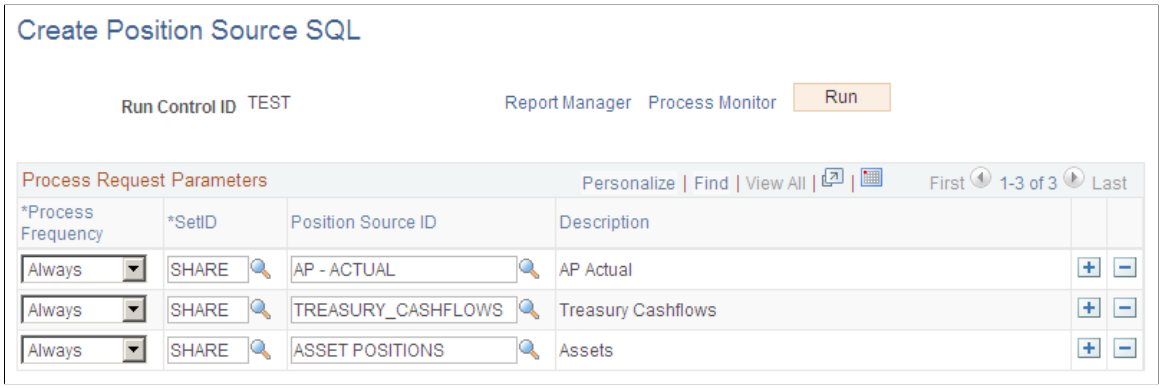
Use the Create Position Source SQL page (TR_CREATE_SQL) to enter the parameters and execute a process that creates the SQL defined for a position source.

The position source SQL for cash forecasting is stored on the source. If you want to regenerate SQL for several sources in batch, you can do it through this component.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Create Position Source SQL

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Create Position Source SQL page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Process Frequency	Specify the frequency with which the process or job is to be run. Choose from *Always*, *Once*, or *Never*.
SetID	Enter a SetID.
Position Source ID and **Description**	Identify the record that will be used as the base when building the SQL to retrieve the impacted rows of data according to the search criteria. The SQL will retrieve distinct records for the main source record primary key.

Worksheet Definition Page

Use the Worksheet Definition page (WORKSHEET_DEFN) to set up a worksheet structure to define the overall processing options, reporting position currencies, forecast rules, source sets, and variance attributes.

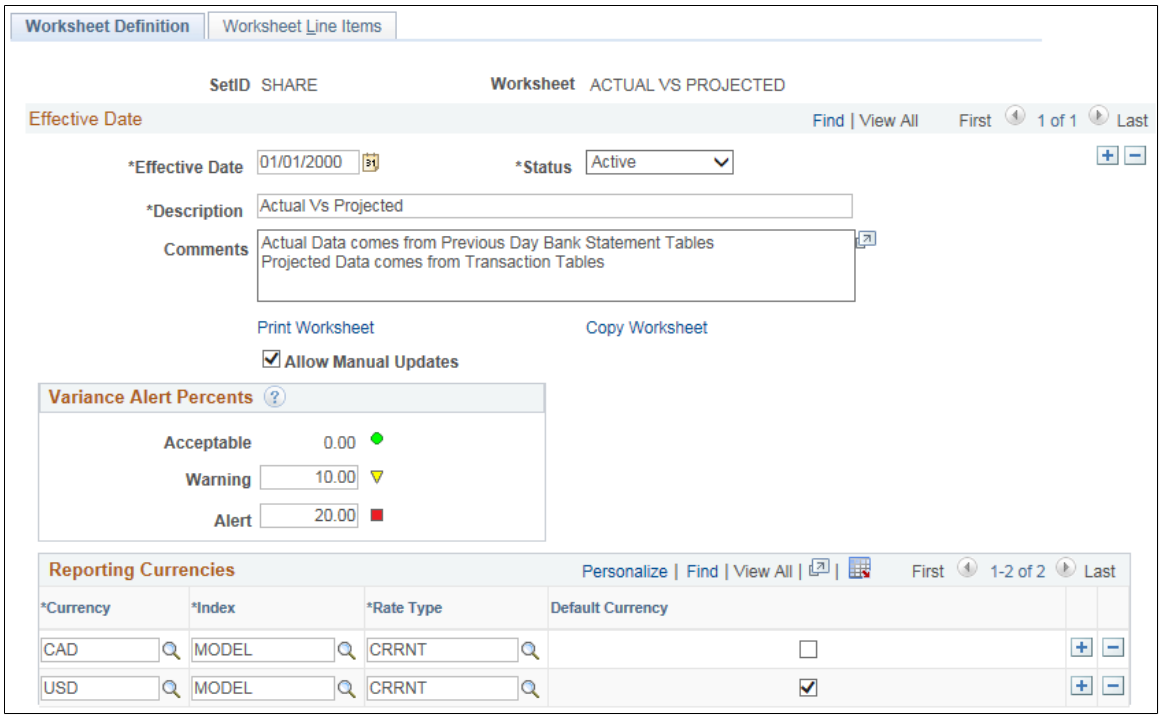
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The worksheet definition determines how your cash forecast results will be computed and displayed.

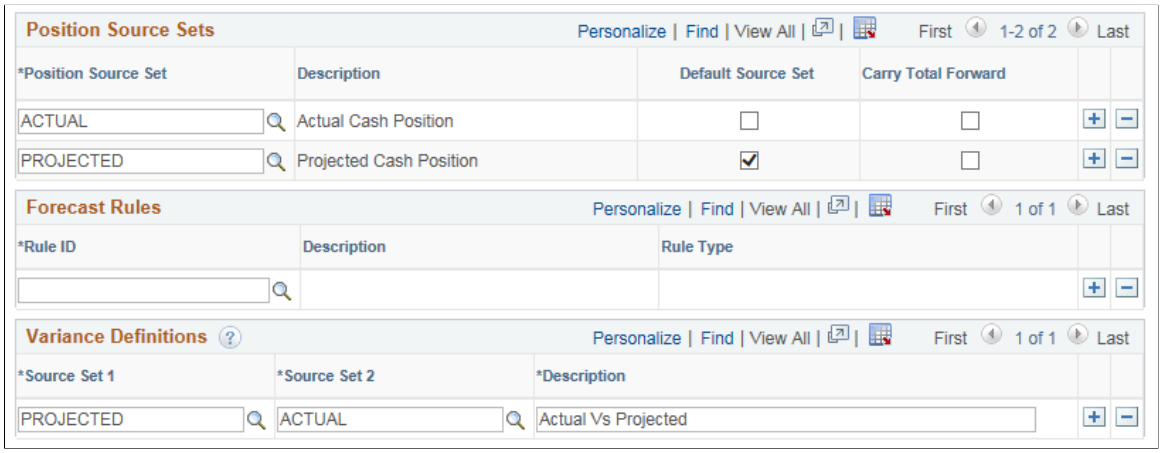
Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Worksheet Definition >Worksheet Definition

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Worksheet Definition page (1 of 2).



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Worksheet Definition page (2 of 2).



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Print Worksheet	Click this link to preview the worksheet definition and print the worksheet. The process generates Worksheet Definition Report (TRX5100).
Copy Worksheet	Click this link to open the Copy Worksheet page, where you can specify a new worksheet ID and create a copy of the active worksheet definition.
Allow Manual Updates	To enable locking, select the Allow Manual Updates check box. If a worksheet is locked, the value does not change if the cash forecast is recalculated. It stays as it is until it is unlocked.
Variance Alerts Percents	Set up threshold levels of variance between two source sets. You can choose to show a variance that's acceptable as well as levels for displaying a warning or an alert. There are three alert statuses you can use to indicate variance levels on the Cash Forecast Results page. Enter a numerical value to trigger an alert status as follows: • Acceptable Percent: A variance value that is equal to or higher than the acceptable percent (always zero) but less than the warning percent will trigger a green circle acceptable status. • Warning Percent: A variance value that is equal to or higher than the warning percent but less than the alert percent triggers a yellow triangle warning status. • Alert Percent: A variance value that is equal to or higher than the alert percent will trigger a red square alert status.
Reporting Currencies	Define at least one and up to three different currencies for the cash worksheet. You must specify one currency as the default. This will be your position currency. Reporting currencies will be one of the parameters you can use to display your cash forecasting results on the Cash Forecasting Results page.
Position Source Sets	Enter one or more categories for grouping position source data that you defined on the Position Source Set page. You must specify one position source set as the default.
Carry Total Forward	Select the check box for an individual source set to populate the total carried forward row for line items, when viewing by Time Set on the Cash Forecasting Results page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Forecast Rules	(Optional) Choose one Amount rule and/or one date type rule (Date or Payment Method). You can associate a maximum of one amount rule and one date type rule per worksheet definition. **Note:** You cannot associate the Replacement rule with a worksheet definition. The Replacement rule must be associated with the source on the Worksheet Line Items page.
Variance Definitions	In order to define variance for comparisons, you must have more than one source set associated with the worksheet. You define variance levels in the Variance Alert Percents group box. The variance percent is always calculated as follows: Variance percent = (Variance Amount/Source_set2)*100 The Cash Position Variance Report shows the variance amount and variance percent between source sets that are defined on the Worksheet Definition page. You must provide variance definitions on the worksheet template to generate variance results. See Cash Position Variance Report Page.
Source Set 1, **Source Set 2**, and **Description**	Enter source sets against which to calculate a variance between the two. You must also enter a description for each pair of source sets.

See also documentation for the Worksheet Definition (Report) Page.

Worksheet Line Items Page

Use the Worksheet Line Items page (WORKSHEET_LINE_ITM) to define line items, position sources, and position source processing attributes for the worksheet.

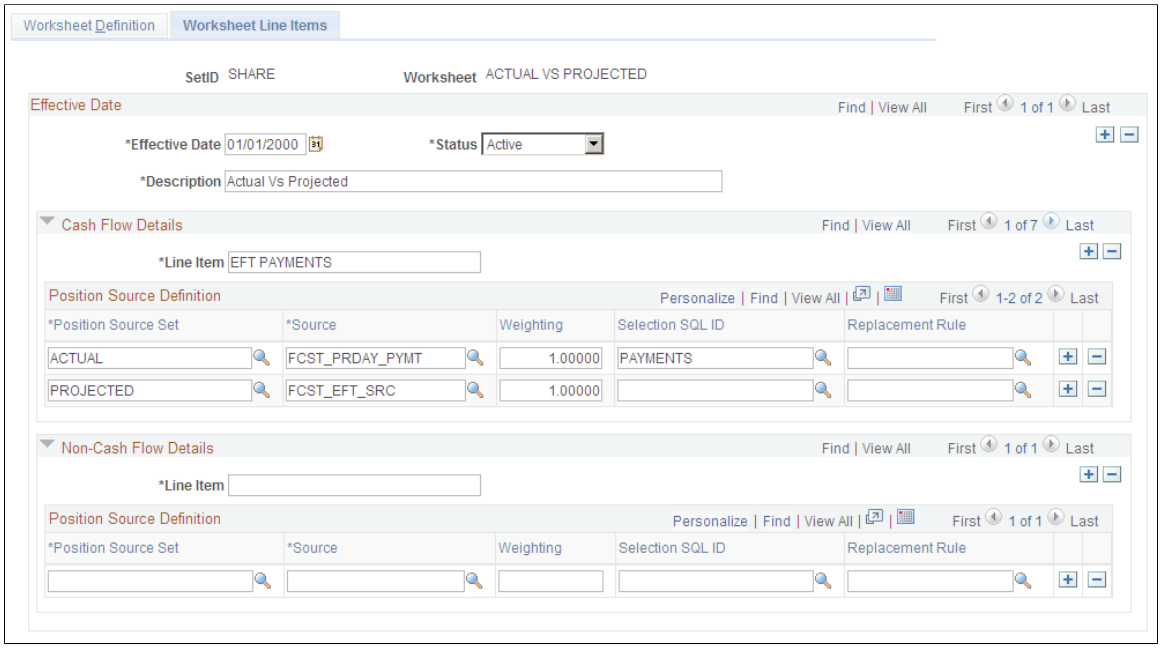
Each line item determines the different types of cash information that you are going to see on your worksheet, such as supplier payments, receipts, collections, and treasury inflows. You can enter cash flow as well as non-cash flow line items, which you can select to display in your cash forecasting results on the Cash Forecasting Results page.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Forecast >Define Cash Forecast >Worksheet Definition >Worksheet Line Items

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Worksheet Line Items page.



Note: You must set up at least one cash flow line item, with at least one source set and source, to create a valid worksheet. The non-cash flow line items are optional.

To display cash flow details, enter values In the Cash Flow Details section:

Field or Control	***Description***
Line Item	Enter an item category that determines the characteristic of the line you want to show in your cash forecasting results.
Position Source Set	Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined on the Position Source Set page.
Source	Identify a source record to be used in the search criteria. It will be part of the FROM statement of the SQL that will be generated to retrieve cash forecasting data.
Weighting	Enter a weighting value for the worksheet line items. You can add a weighting value to the cash forecast by defining a forecast rule weighting value on the Forecast Rules page and then applying the rule to the worksheet on the Worksheet Definition page.
Selection SQL ID	Enter an ID for the selection criteria for a source that you defined on the Selection Criteria page.
Replacement Rule	Enter a rule that you defined on the Forecast Rules page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

To display non-cash flow details, enter values In the Non-Cash Flow Details section:

Field or Control	*Description*
Line Item	Enter an item category that determines the characteristic of the line you want to show in your cash forecasting results.
Position Source Set	Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined on the Position Source Set page.
Source	Identify a source record to be used in the search criteria. It will be part of the FROM statement of the SQL that will be generated to retrieve cash forecasting data.
Weighting	Enter a weighting value for the worksheet line items. You can add a weighting value to the cash forecast by defining a forecast rule weighting value on the Forecast Rules page and then applying the rule to the worksheet on the Worksheet Definition page.
Selection SQL ID	Enter an ID for the selection criteria for a source that you defined on the Selection Criteria page.
Replacement Rule	Enter a replacement rule that you defined on the Forecast Rules page.

Generating the Cash Forecast

This topic documents these cash forecast processes: entering manual positions and running the Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR_CSH_FCST) process.

Pages Used to Generate the Cash Forecast

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Enter Manual Position Page	MANUAL_POSN_ENTRY	Capture data that can then be added to a cash position or associated with a specific worksheet.
Schedule Cash Forecast Page	CSH_FCST_REQ	Run the Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR_CSH_FCST) process.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding Manual Positions

Cash managers at times may want to include some numbers in the cash forecast that do not come from a particular source. Using manual position entry, you can bring in third-party details or numbers from another part of your organization. With Manual Position Entry, you enter data manually and create a source record for that data. You can then use this source record as a source detail in your Cash Forecast worksheet definition.

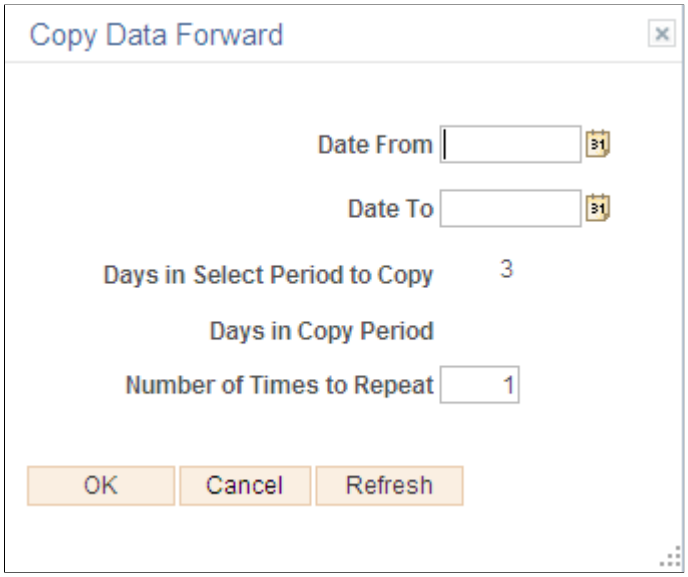
When entering manual position data, you choose either to search existing position data and copy or to add new position data.

To add new manual position data using the Manual Cash Position component access the Manual Cash Position component and populate the Manual Cash Position Entry grid at the bottom of the page and save the component. An asterisk (*) designates required fields on the grid. The Manual Cash Position Entry grid allows users to associate each entry to a Worksheet, Source Set, or Cash Position dimension.

To add new manual position data using the copy feature, access the Manual Cash Position component and populate the Search Criteria and Additional Search Criteria fields as required by your business needs, and search for existing manual cash position data. Both Search Criteria and Additional Search Criteria provide many options to narrow down the manual cash position results, which are displayed on the Manual Cash Position Entry grid.

Use the Copy button to copy data forward. This example shows the Copy Data Forward fields:

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Copy Data Forward page.



Enter Manual Position Page

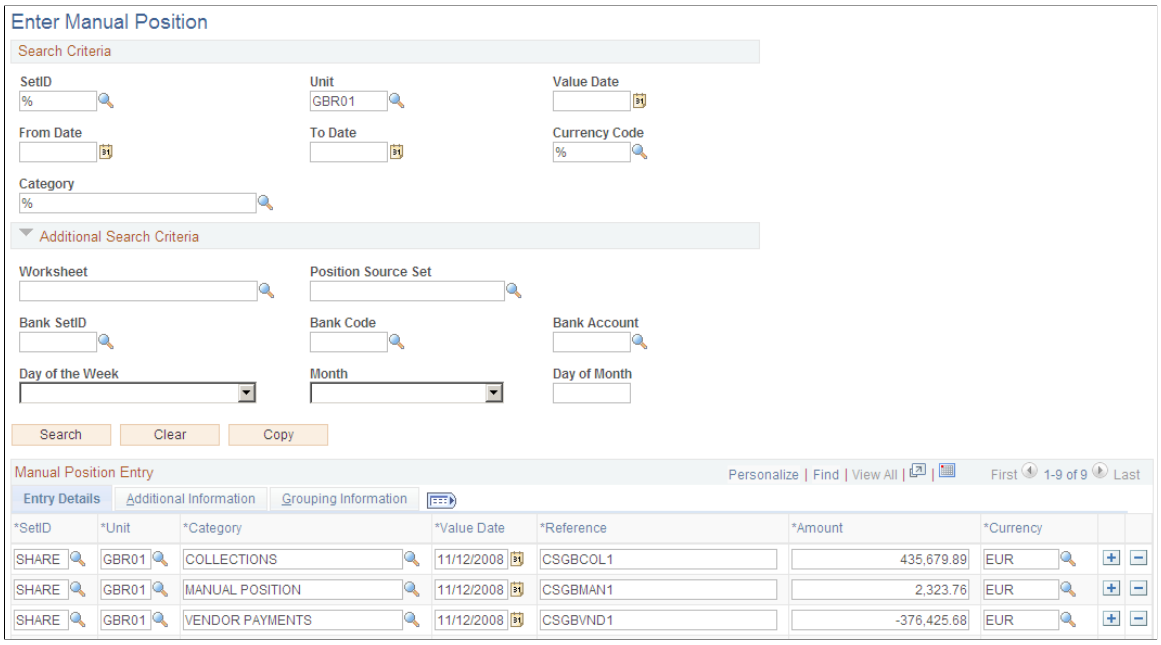
Use the Enter Manual Position page (MANUAL_POSN_ENTRY) to capture data that can then be added to a cash position or associated with a specific worksheet.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Cash Forecast** > **Process and Review** > **Enter Manual Position** >**Enter Manual Position**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Enter Manual Position page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	***Description***
Search	Click this button to search existing position data.
Clear	Click this button to start a new search.
Copy	Click this button to specify parameters for copying forward rows of position entry information.

Search Criteria

Enter search criteria, as your business needs require, for retrieving data.

Field or Control	***Description***
SetID	Enter a SetID.
Unit	Enter a business unit.
Value Date	Enter a payment value date.
From Date and **To Date**	Enter a date range, including a starting date and an ending date.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Currency Code	Enter a currency code.
Category	Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined as a worksheet line item.

Additional Search Criteria

Enter additional criteria, as your business needs require, for retrieving data.

Field or Control	*Description*
Worksheet	Enter a Worksheet associated with the SetID.
Position Source Set	Enter a Position Source Set associated with the Worksheet.
Bank SetID	Enter a SetID to identify bank information.
Bank Code	Enter a Bank Code associated with the Bank SetID.
Bank Account	Enter a Bank Account associated with the Bank Code.
Day of the Week	Enter a calendar day.
Month	Enter a calendar month.
Day of Month	Enter a calendar day.

Manual Position Entry Grids

Search results for the criteria you specified appear in the grids. You can manually add or delete rows or edit data that appear in the fields.

Field or Control	*Description*
SetID	Enter a SetID.
Unit	Enter a business unit.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Category	Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined as a worksheet line item.
Value Date	Enter a payment value date.
Reference	Enter reference that will be used when reference is mapped on the Position Source Mappings grid on the Position Source page.
Amount	Enter the amount that should be used by the Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR_CSH_FCST) process to calculate cash forecast amounts.
Currency	Enter a currency code. **Note:** All lines that are added to the Manual Position Entry grid must be of a currency for which an exchange rate is established; otherwise, the lines will not be included in the generation of the worksheet. Exchange rates are set on the Market Rates page.

Understanding Cash Forecast Calculations

The Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR_CSH_FCST) process calls the calculation engine (TR_FCST_CALC), which uses the request parameters to process each request. For each Worksheet request, the system does the following:

- Selects rates for the Worksheet currencies.
- Selects detail data for each source.
- Applies rules and default values to the detail data.
- Summarizes the detail data by all the forecast dimensions.
- Loads the results into the detail and summary results tables.

Users can schedule the forecast process for each Worksheet and Source Set. The cash forecast calculation process will override all results in summary and detail tables that have been created for a specific calculation date and value date if the results are not locked. If the cash forecast results are locked, the system will not override the results. Oracle's PeopleSoft recommends locking the results on a daily basis.

Note: Ensure that position source data are ready before running the cash forecast calculation process.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

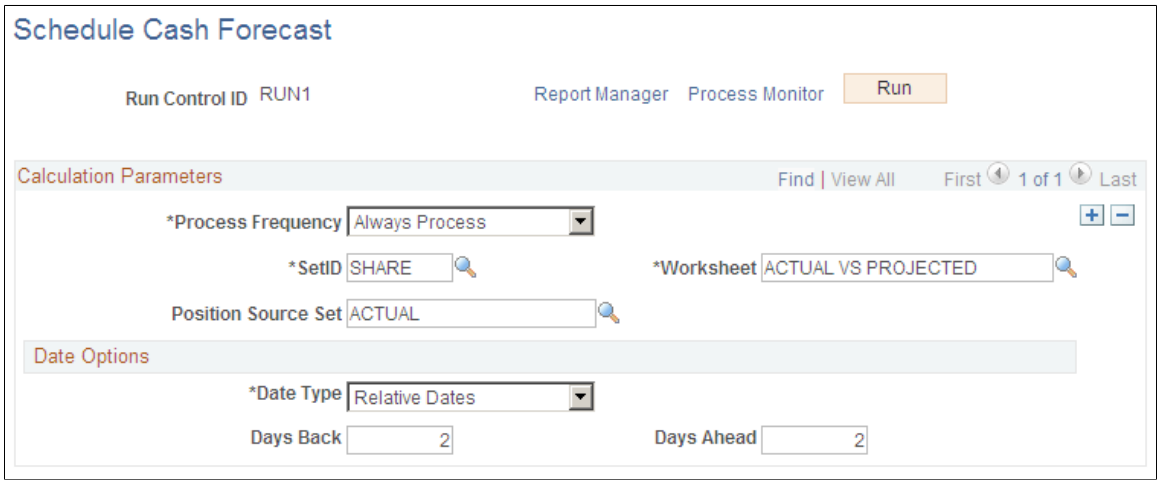
Schedule Cash Forecast Page

Use the Schedule Cash Forecast page (CSH_FCST_REQ) to run the Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR_CSH_FCST) process.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Cash Forecast > Process and Review >Schedule Cash Forecast >Schedule Cash Forecast

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Schedule Cash Forecast page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Calculation Parameters

Field or Control	*Description*
Process Frequency	Specify the frequency with which the process or job is to be run. Choose from *Always*, *Once*, or *Never*.
SetID	Enter a SetID.
Worksheet	Enter the worksheet definition for which you would like to calculate the cash forecast (Worksheet Definition page).
Position Source Set	Enter a position source set that is delivered with your system or one that you defined on the Position Source Set page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Date Options

Field or Control	*Description*
Date Type	Choose from these options: • *Specific Dates* - When you select this option, enter values in the From Date and To Date fields. • *Relative Dates* - When you select this option, enter values in the Days Back and Days Ahead fields.

Working with Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results

Pages Used to Work with Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Cash Forecasting Results Page	CSH_FCST_RESULTS	Assess and optimize enterprise cash flow.
Cash Forecast Search Page	CSH_FCST_SAVE_SP	Add or modify cash forecast search criteria.
Cash Forecast User Preferences Page	USER_PREFERENCES	Set up the default search and other position functions, funds transfer settings, and charting options for the Cash Forecast Results.
Cash Sweep Request Page	CSH_SWEEP_REQ	Schedule the Cash Sweep Calculations process. See Processing Cash Sweep and Reviewing the Results and the Cash Sweep Request Page.
Copy Cash Forecast Results Page	CSH_FCST_SHOCK_RES	Copy a worksheet and modify cash flow amounts.

Understanding Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results

Many options are available when you generate and display cash forecast results. For example, you can:

- View your position over a period of time or evaluate it for just one day.
- Analyze cash forecast trends and distributions using graphic representations.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Perform a variety of actions, including transfer funds and execute cash sweeps.
- Access worksheet line item details and drill down to source transactions.
- Base your cash forecast on a previous worksheet, adjusting the amounts by specified factors to estimate future cash positions.
- Calculate variance and display visual cues in the results.

The Cash Forecasting Results page when populated with data shows three main areas: a results grid, saved searches, and visual representations. The initial results page will be blank, and populated upon executing a search. Results displayed depend on the specified search criteria as well as cash forecasting user preferences.

Results Grid

Cash Forecast Results grid displays cash forecast data corresponding to each worksheet line item and dimension. Rows in the results grid display worksheet line items, which may be associated with one or more position sources. The columns are dynamic and can represent any supported dimension, such as bank, bank account, currency, business unit, and several more that you configure during setup.

Depending on setup, the cash manager can analyze the cash forecast results and perform the following actions:

- Transfer funds.
- Execute cash sweeps.
- Access worksheet line item details.
- Drill down to source transactions.

You can also configure variance thresholds on the worksheet definition to calculate variance and display visual cues on the Cash Forecast Results grid for each worksheet line item. You can specify three variance thresholds: normal, warning, and alert.

Saved Searches

Saved searches retrieve data from cash forecasting computations and display cash forecast results in your preferred dimensions. Saved searches offer views that are delivered with the system and shared across users. The relative date option in the search criteria enables users to define searches once, and execute daily. Saved Searches are created by saving the search criteria with a search name.

You can create and save searches to view cash positions for these dimensions:

- Each bank.
- Each bank account.
- A group of bank accounts.
- Cash sweep structures.
- Each business unit.
- A group of business units.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- User-defined dimensions.
- Each source set.
- Variance between source sets.
- Time periods, such as daily, weekly, monthly, and so on.
- Up to three position currencies.

You can also view transaction currency exposure.

Charts and Graphs

The cash forecasting pie chart shows the cash forecast data calculated for each worksheet line item for a value date.

A trend analysis chart displays the cash flow for each dimension over time. Users can control the days to trend and the number of top dimensions to trend through User Preferences. The trend analysis graph helps create a clearer picture of historical patterns that can be used to anticipate cash flow needs.

Cash Forecasting Results Page

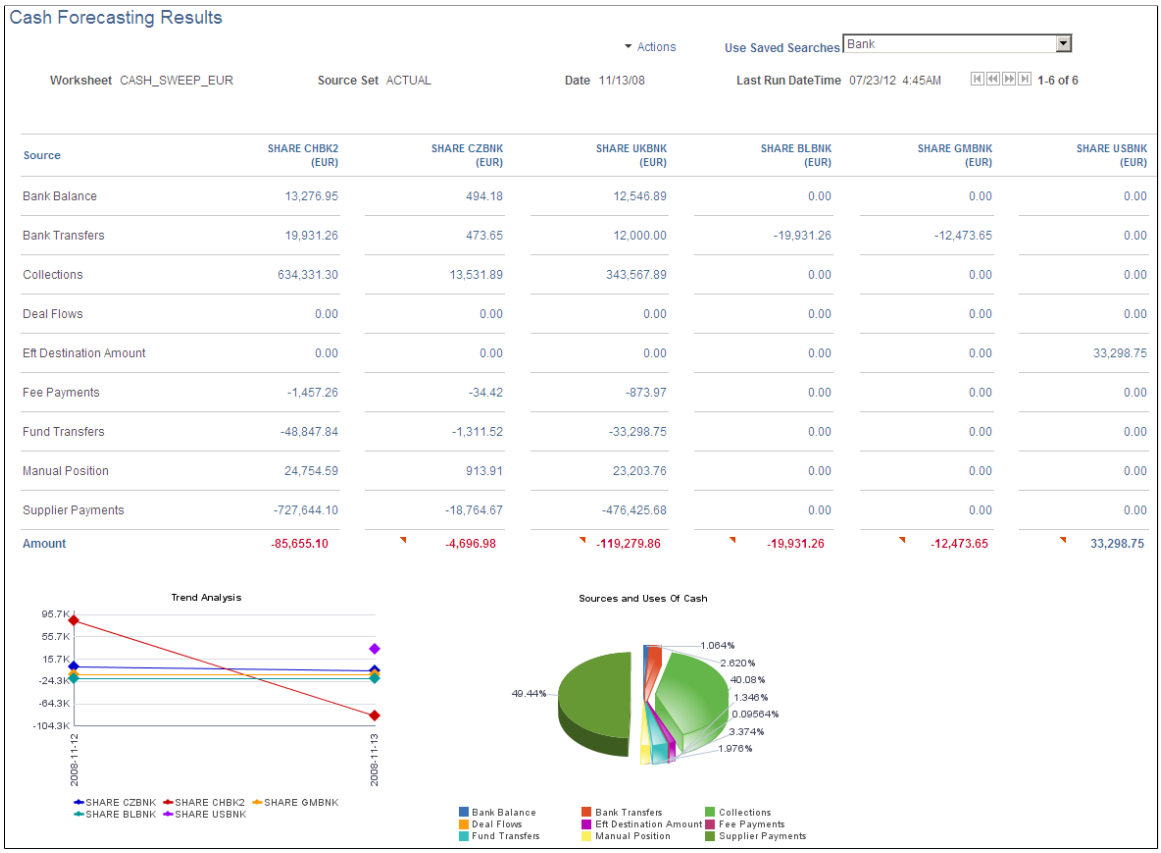
Use the Cash Forecasting Results page (CSH_FCST_RESULTS) to assess and optimize enterprise cash flow.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Cash Forecast** > **Process and Review** >**Cash Forecast Results** >**Cash Forecasting Results**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Actions	Choose from these actions: • *Add Manual Position* - Click this link to transfer to the Enter Manual Positions component and add manual cash positions. • *Add New Search* - Click this link to open the Cash Forecast Search page and create a new search. • *Delete Search* - Click this link to open the Delete Saved Search page, where you can select and delete one or more saved searches. • *Execute Cash Sweep* - Click this link to schedule cash sweep requests. This link is available when the results grid is populated with data. • *Run Cash Forecast* - Click this link to access the Schedule Cash Forecast component and run cash forecast processing to load forecast data. • *Update Search* - Click this link to open the Cash Forecast Search page and edit an existing search. • *Update User Preferences* - Click this link to open the Cash Forecast User Preferences page and define user specific choices.
Saved Searches	Choose from saved searches to populate the results grid and graphic presentation.
locked and unlocked icons	Indicates whether amounts are locked or unlocked. If cash flow details are locked, you cannot override the amount when you drill down to details. Also the value does not change if the cash forecast is recalculated for the same calculation date. You can set the Cash Forecast User Preferences to use the lock reminder. Locks are displayed only when viewing results by source set and time set. Also the position currency on the results page should match the default position currency specified on the Worksheet Definition page to display the locks. Oracle’s PeopleSoft recommends locking the results on a daily basis.
Amount links	Click an amount link to drill down to line item details.
Related Action (on Total Amount column)	Use the Related Action options on Total Amount column to transfer funds.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

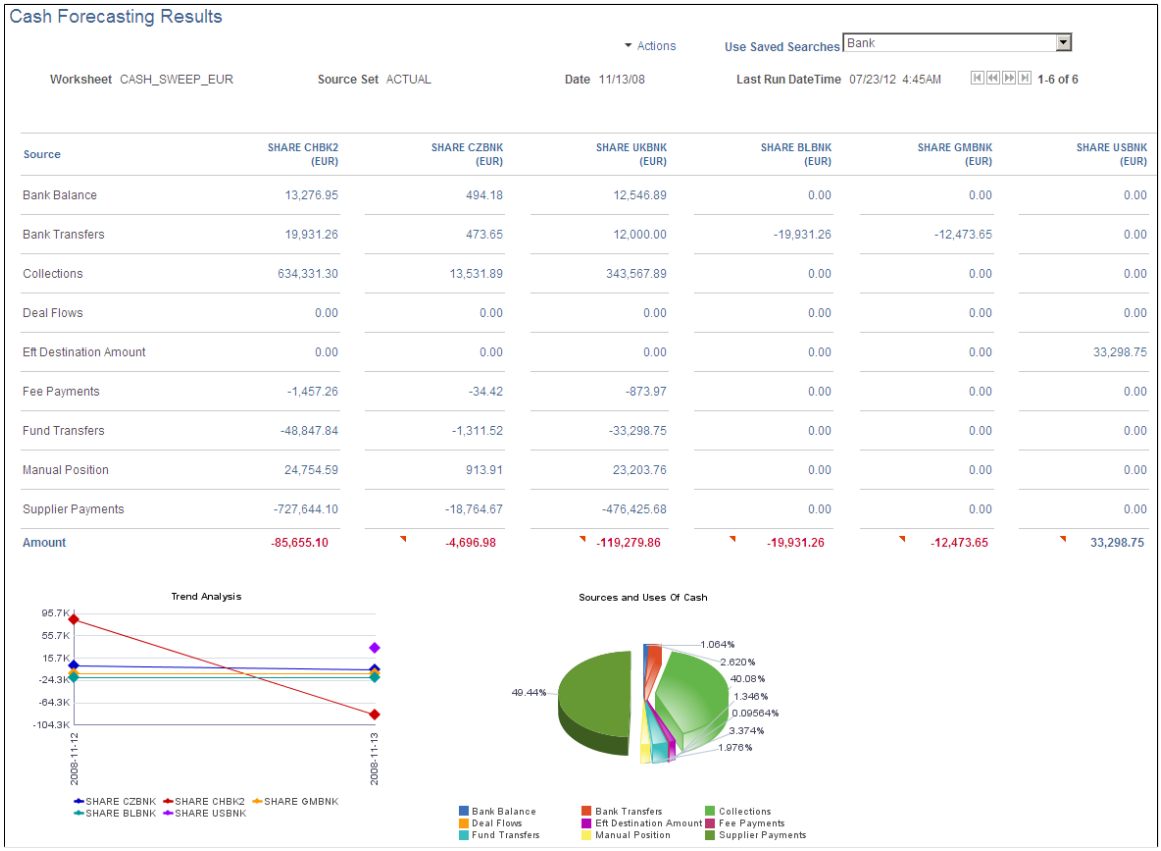
View Results by Bank

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, Shift by Days/Value Date, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for each bank, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Bank*. You can further filter to view the results for a specific Bank SetID or Bank SetID and Bank Code.

On the results grid, each column shows data designated to a bank.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by bank.



Source	SHARE CHBK2 (EUR)	SHARE CZBNK (EUR)	SHARE UKBNK (EUR)	SHARE BLBNK (EUR)	SHARE GMBNK (EUR)	SHARE USBNK (EUR)
Bank Balance	13,276.95	494.18	12,546.89	0.00	0.00	0.00
Bank Transfers	19,931.26	473.65	12,000.00	-19,931.26	-12,473.65	0.00
Collections	634,331.30	13,531.89	343,567.89	0.00	0.00	0.00
Deal Flows	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Eft Destination Amount	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	33,298.75
Fee Payments	-1,457.26	-34.42	-873.97	0.00	0.00	0.00
Fund Transfers	-48,847.84	-1,311.52	-33,298.75	0.00	0.00	0.00
Manual Position	24,754.59	913.91	23,203.76	0.00	0.00	0.00
Supplier Payments	-727,644.10	-18,764.67	-476,425.68	0.00	0.00	0.00
Amount	-85,655.10	-4,696.98	-119,279.86	-19,931.26	-12,473.65	33,298.75

View Results by Bank Account

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, Shift by Days/Value Date, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for each bank account, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Bank Account*. You can further filter to view the results for a specific Bank SetID; Bank SetID and Bank Code; or Bank SetID, Bank Code, and Bank Account.

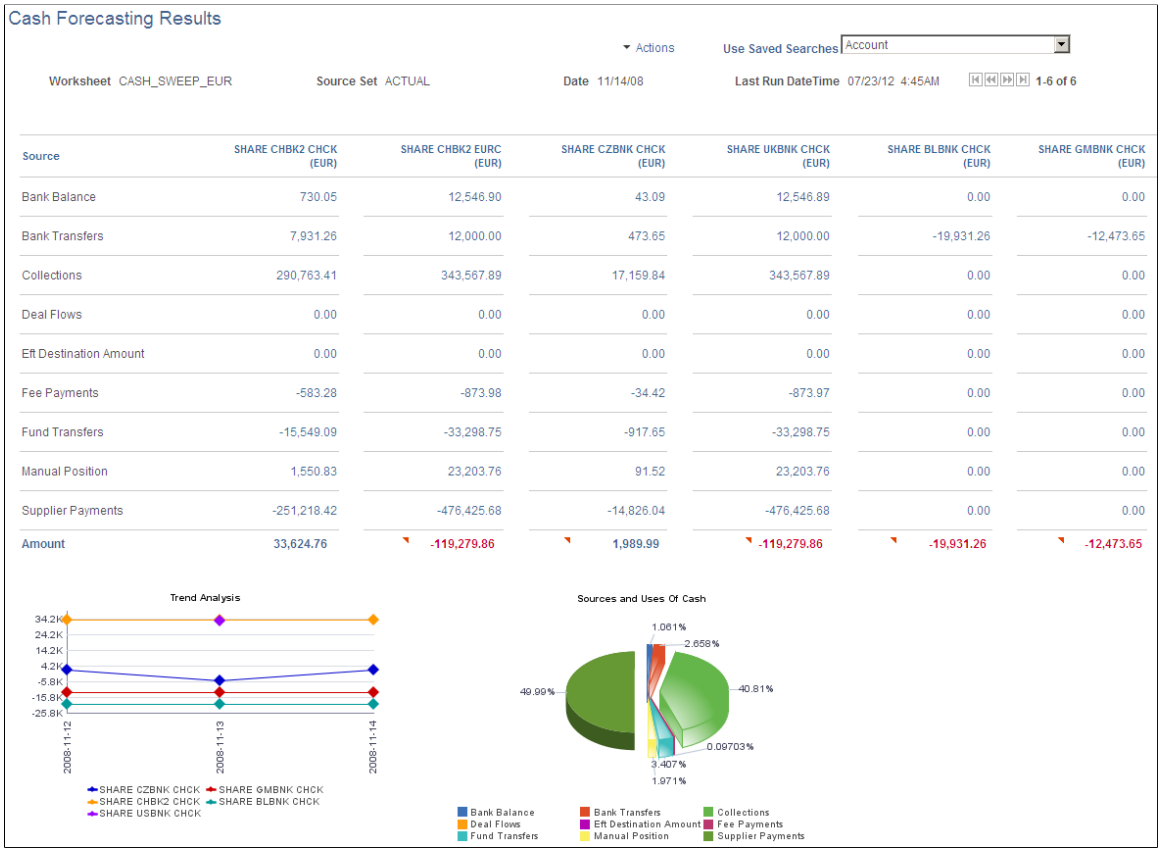
On the results grid, each column shows data designated to a bank account.

When you populate the View Results by field with *Bank Account,* you choose either *Position Currency* or *Bank Account Default Currency* in the Bank Account Currency field. These selections display results measured in the currency you defined.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example shows results by bank account:

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by bank account.

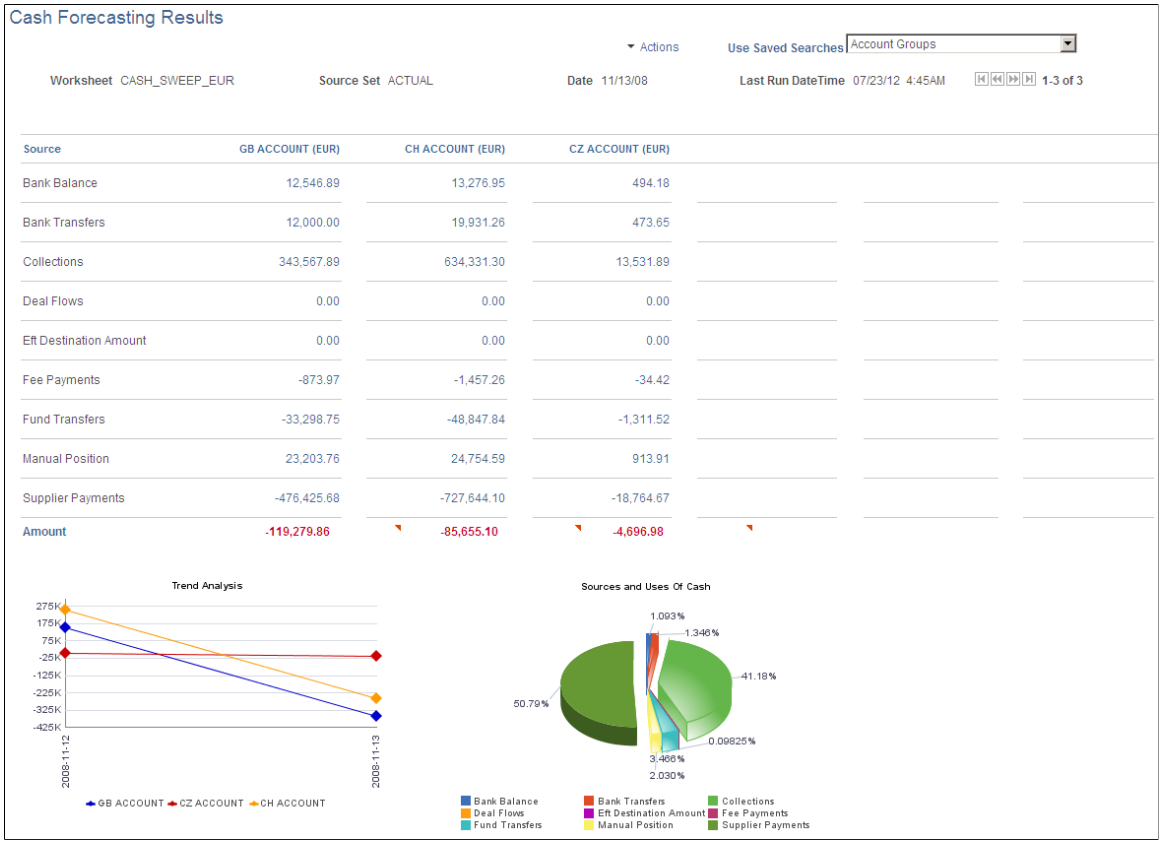


When you view results by *Bank Account* you have two more options for viewing results: In the Bank Criteria group box, choose to view the results by Account Groups or by Cash Sweep Structure. If you select Display By Account Groups, then each column shows an Account Group. The system summarizes position data for all bank accounts associated with that Account Group and displays the results in the grid.

This example shows results by account groups:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by account group.

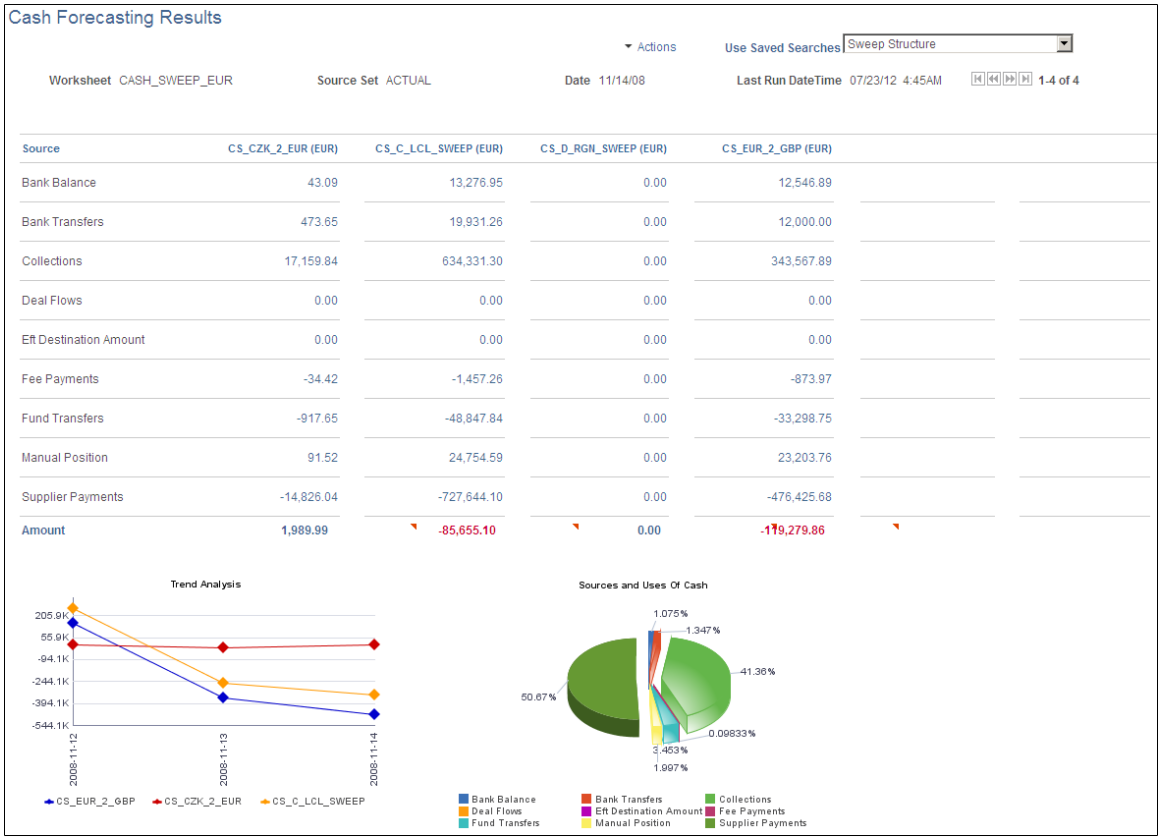


When you choose to display by cash sweep, then each column displays a Cash Sweep Structure. The system summarizes position data for all bank accounts associated with the selected Cash Sweep Structure and displays the results in the grid.

This example shows results by cash sweep structure:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by cash sweep structure.



View Results by Business Unit

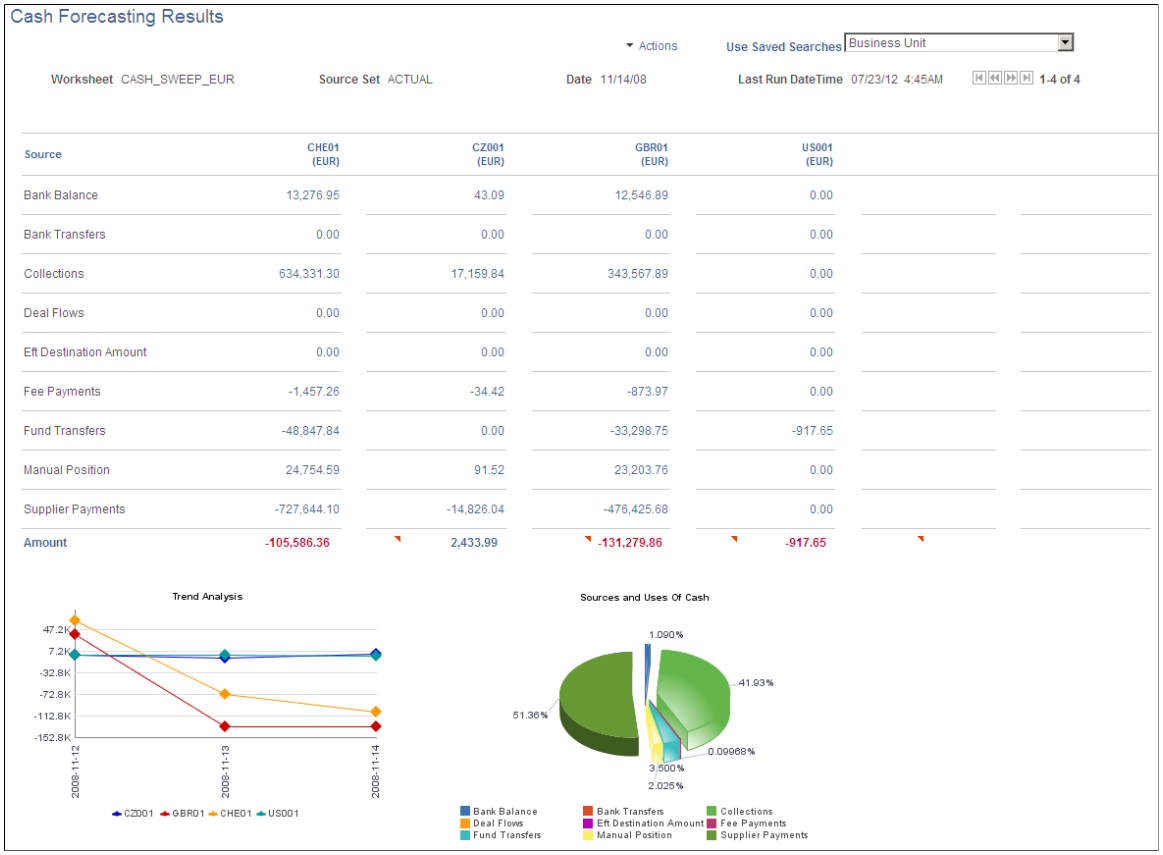
Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, Shift by Days/Value Date, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for each business unit, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Business Unit*. You can further filter to view the results for a specific Business Unit or a Business Unit Group. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a Business Unit.

This example shows results by business unit:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by business unit.

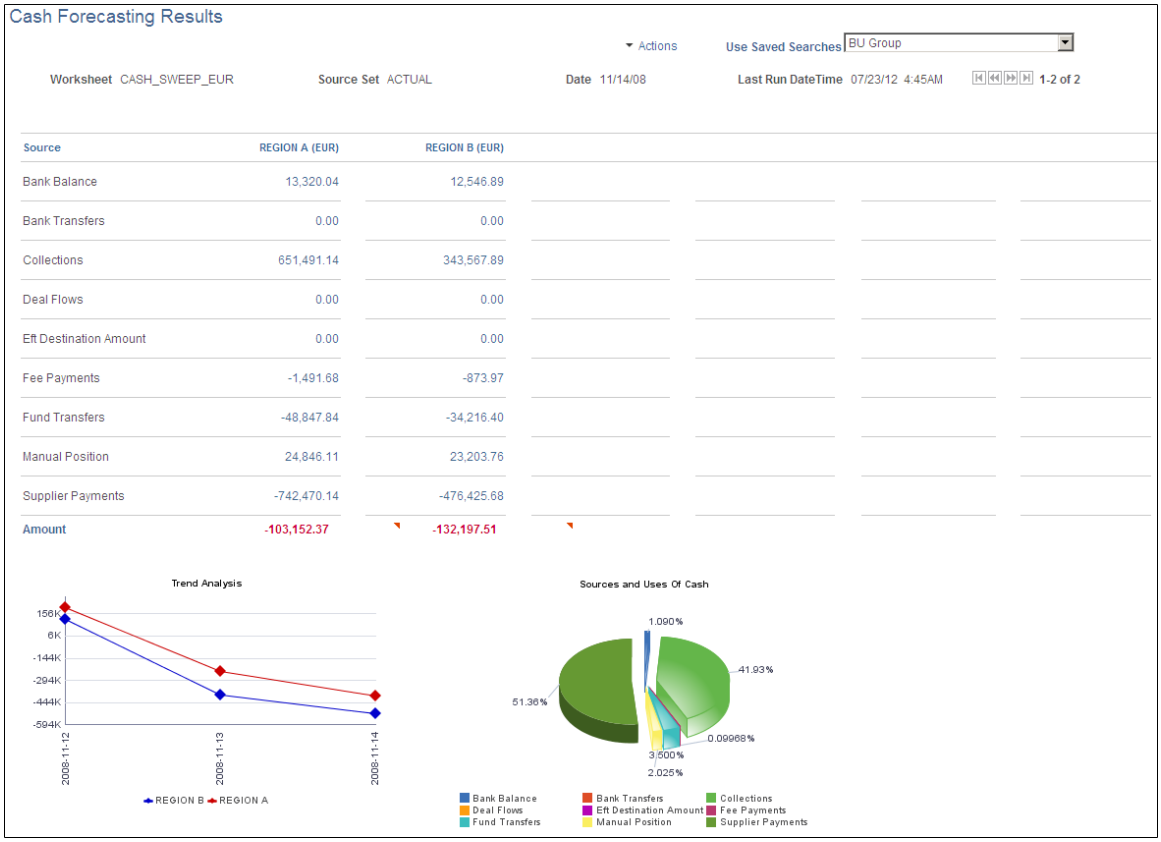


When you view results by *Business Unit,* you can also opt to display the results by a business unit group. The system summarizes position data for all business units associated with each Business Unit Group and displays the results in the grid, where the columns show data for each Business Unit Group.

This example shows results by business unit group:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by business unit group.



View Results by User Configurable Dimension

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, Shift by Days/Value Date, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for a user-configured dimension, define a search by populating the View Results by field with a *Group By Field* value. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a user-configured Group By Field value.

View Results by Position Currency

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, and Shift by Days/Value Date fields.

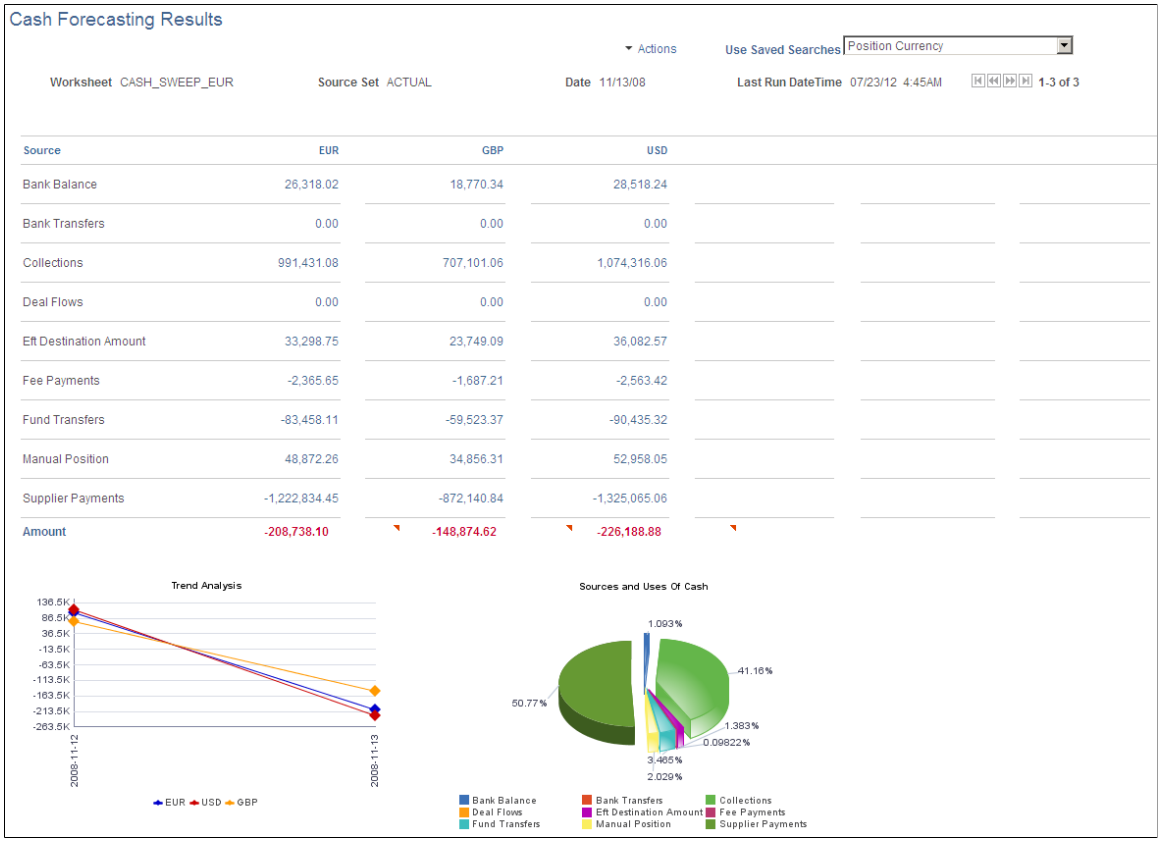
To view cash position needs for each position currency, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Position Currency*. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a Position Currency.

The system generates only a trend analysis chart when viewing results by Position Currency.

This example shows results by position currency:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by position currency.



View Results by Source Set

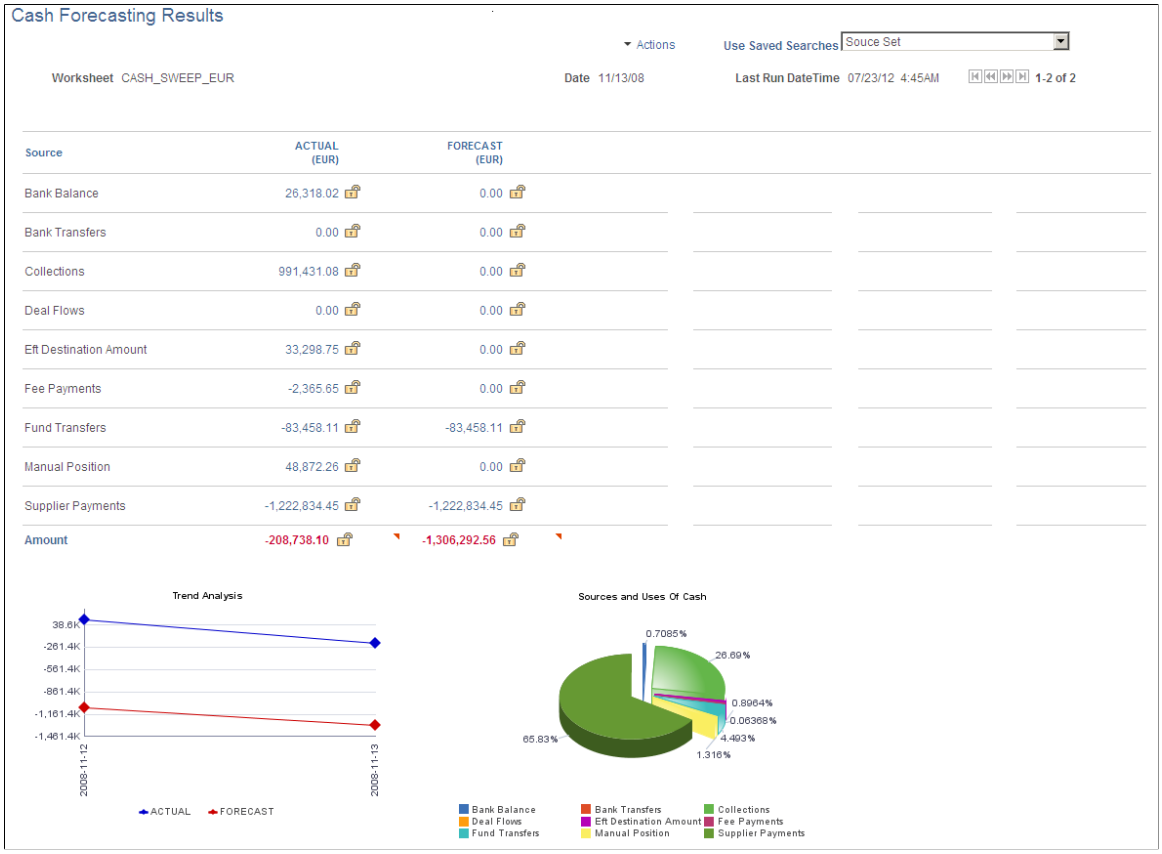
Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Date Type, Shift by Days/Value Date, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for each source set, define a search by populating the View Results by field with Source Set. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a Source Set.

This example shows results by source set:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by source set.



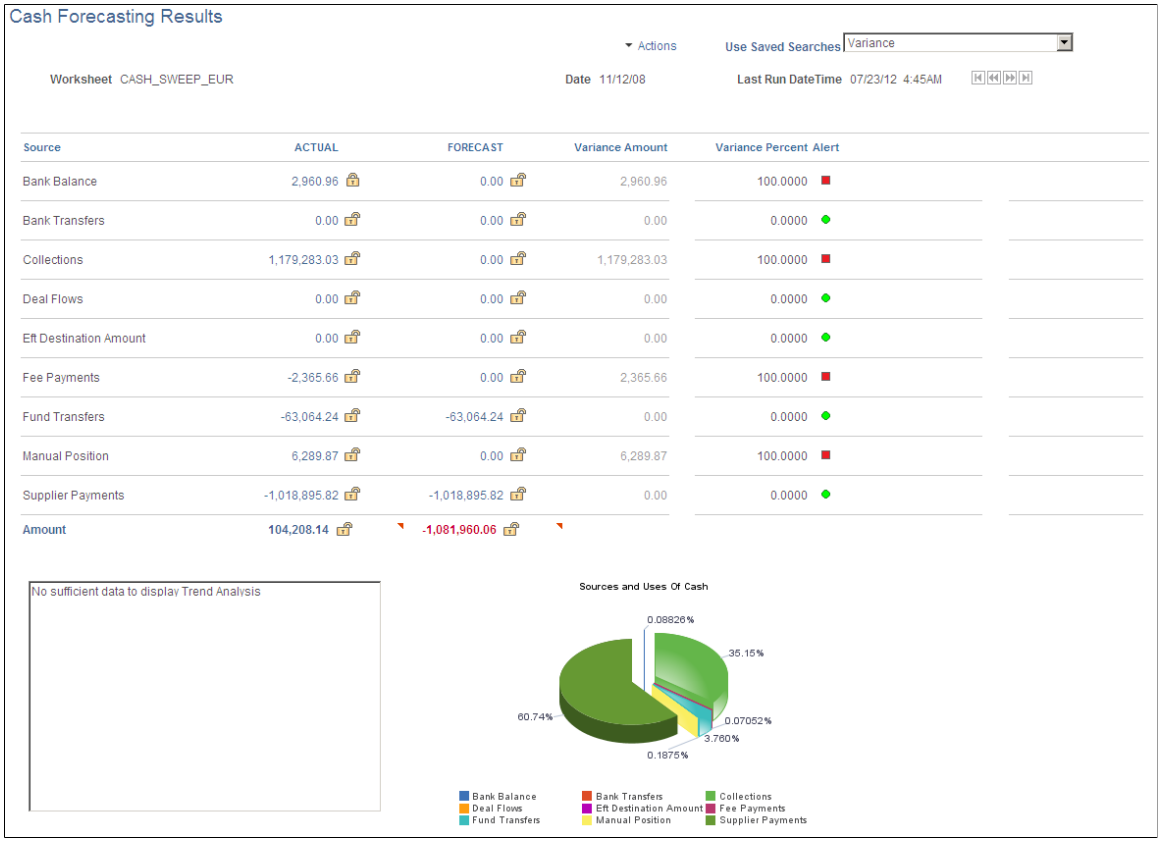
When you view results by *Source Set,* you can also opt to display the variance between two source sets, in the Variance Description field. This option requires that you first define multiple source sets and identify variance between the source sets on the Worksheet Definition. The system calculates the amount and percentage variance for each worksheet line item and shows a visual cue for each variance, based on the Variance Alert Percents defined in the Worksheet Definition.

Use this results option to view intraday cash position, actual versus projected forecast data, or both.

This example shows results by source sets for which variance alerts have been configured:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed with variance alerts.



The variance amount and percentage are calculated as follows:

Variance Amount = Column 2 – Column 1
Variance percent = (Variance Amount/Source_set2)*100

See also Worksheet Definition Page.

View Results by Time Set

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, and Position Currency fields.

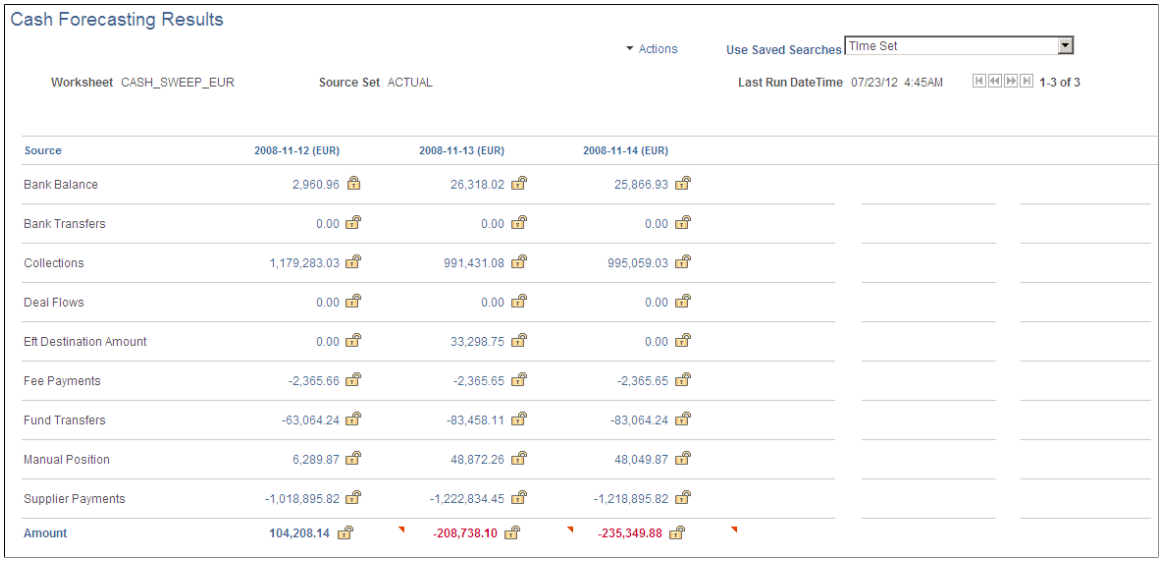
To view cash position needs for each time set, or period, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Time Set*. You must also identify a Time Set in the Time Set Criteria group box. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a time period.

When you specify a time set, the system uses the time period from the associated Time Set. You can specify a start date as well.

Use this results option to view periodic forecasts. This example shows results for a three-day time segment:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by time set.



View Results by Transaction Currency

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, and Shift by Days/Value Date fields.

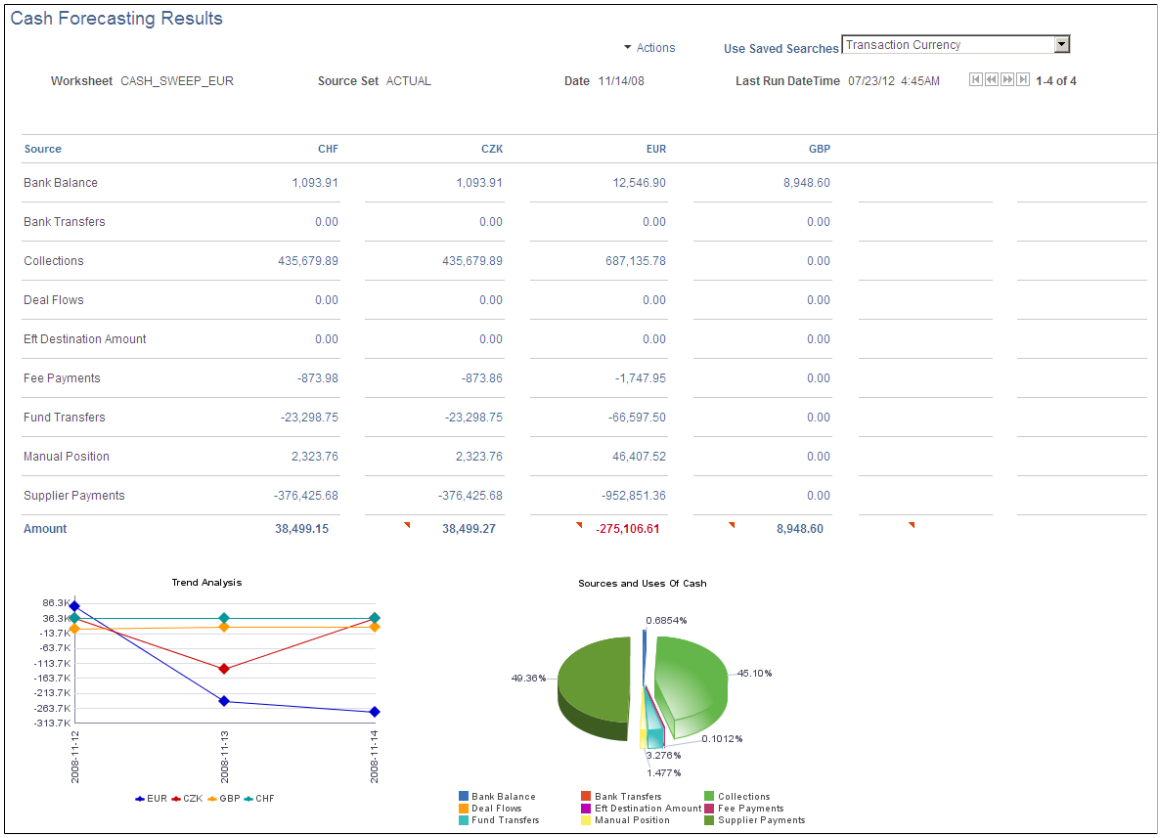
To view cash position needs for each transaction currency, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Transaction Currency*. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a Transaction Currency.

The system generates only a trend analysis chart when viewing results by Transaction Currency.

Use this results option to view currency exposure. This example shows results by transaction currency:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by transaction currency.



Understanding the Cash Forecast Search

The criteria you specify on the Cash Forecast Search can be used one time or reused multiple times. If you intend to use the search criteria multiple times, specify a search name after you have defined the search criteria and click OK on the Cash Forecast Search page. The system saves the search name and makes the search available for selection in the Use Saved Searches list.

Note: You can view results on the Cash Forecast Results page only if you have scheduled the Cash Forecast process and results are available in Cash Forecast Results tables.

Cash Forecast Search Page

Use the Cash Forecast Search page (CSH_FCST_SAVE_SP) to add or modify search criteria.

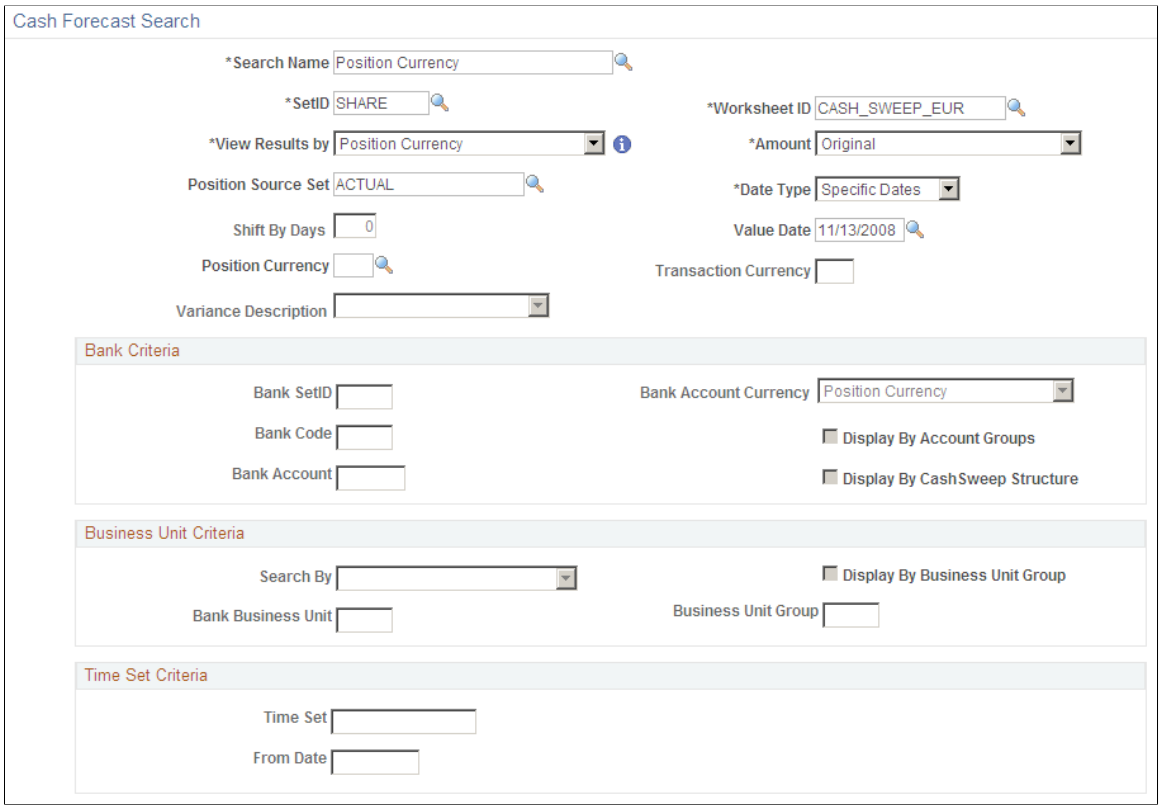
Navigation:

Cash Management > Cash Forecast > Process and Review >Cash Forecast Results >Cash Forecasting Results

Click the **Add New Search** link or the **Update Search** link in the Actions list on the Cash Forecasting Results page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecast Search page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	***Description***
Search Name	Enter a new name for these search criteria, or use the lookup prompt to select an existing search, to review or edit the search parameters.
SetID	Enter a SetID associated with the Worksheet ID.
View Results by	Select from these options. Depending on your selection, other search parameters on the page will be enabled. • *Bank* - Activates Bank Criteria fields. • *Bank Account* - Activates Bank Criteria fields. • *Business Unit* - Activates Business Unit Criteria fields. • *Group By Field 1* through *Group By Field 7* • *Position Currency* • *Source Set* • *Time Set* - Activates Time Set Criteria fields. • *Transaction Currency*

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Worksheet ID	Enter the ID for the worksheet that you set up on the Worksheet Definition page.
Amount	Choose from *Original* or *Weighted*.
Position Source Set	Select the source set for which you want to see cash forecast results.
Date Type	Choose from *Relative Dates* or *Specific Dates*.
Value Date	Enter a Value Date for which Cash Forecast Results have been calculated. The Value Date field is available if the Date Type is *Specific Dates*.
Shift By Days	Enter a number of days to determine the value date for which results need to be displayed. This field is available when you select the *Relative Dates* date type option. The system calculates the value date by using the Shift By Days value to adjust the system date. A Shift By Days value of zero (*0*) specifies the system date.
Position Currency	Select a position currency that is associated with the Worksheet Definition.
Transaction Currency	Enter a value if you want to see the results for a specific transaction currency. This field is available when you elect to view results by *Transaction Currency*. You can filter the results for a specific currency.
Variance Description	Enter a description of the variance. Variance represents a comparison of results between two source sets and is set up on the Worksheet Definition.

Bank Criteria

These fields are active when you view results by *Bank*.

Field or Control	*Description*
Bank SetID	Enter a bank SetID.
Bank Code	Enter a bank code.
Bank Account	Enter a bank account.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Bank Account Currency	Choose from *Bank Account Default Currency* or *Position Currency*.
Display By Account Groups	Choose to display results by Account Groups.
Display By Cash Sweep Structure	Choose to display results by Cash Sweep Structure.

Business Unit Criteria

These fields are active when you view results by *Business Unit*.

Field or Control	*Description*
Search By	Choose a business unit search option from the list: • *Business Unit* - Enter a value in the Bank Business Unit field. • *Group Business Unit* - Enter a value in the Business Unit Group field.
Bank Business Unit	Enter a bank business unit.
Business Unit Group	Enter a business unit group to display results for each business unit within that group.
Display By Business Unit Group	Select to display cash forecast results by business unit group rather than by business unit.

Time Set Criteria

These fields are active when you view results by *Time Set*.

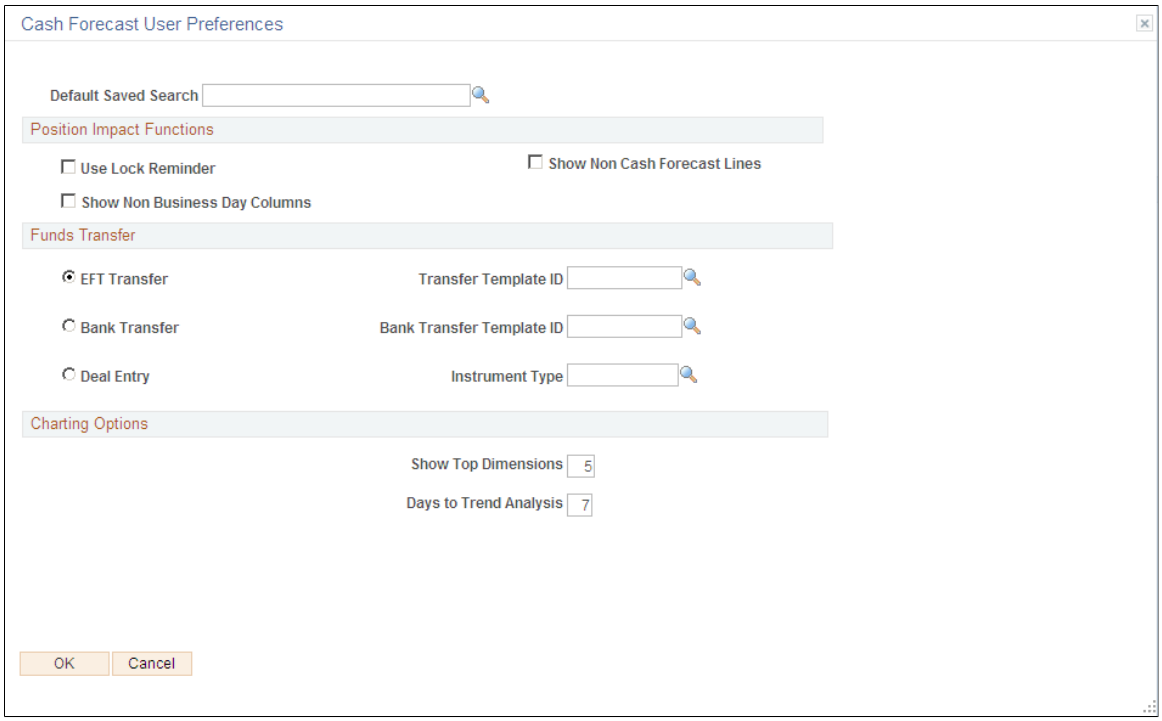
Field or Control	*Description*
Time Set	Select a time set that you have defined on the Define Time Sets page.
From Date	Identify the start date for the period of time.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Cash Forecast User Preferences Page

Use the Cash Forecast User Preferences page (USER_PREFERENCES) to set up the default search and other position functions, funds transfer settings, and charting options for the Cash Forecast Results.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecast User Preferences page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Default Saved Search	Select an existing saved search to use as the default when accessing the Cash Forecasting Results page. When a default search has not been specified, the initial results page contains no data.

Position Impact Functions

Field or Control	*Description*
Use Lock Reminder	Select to see lock reminders when viewing results by Source Set or Time Set.
Show Non Business Day Columns	Select to show a column for every day of the week.
Show Non Cash Forecast Lines	Select to display non-cash flow details, if defined in the Non-Cash Flow Details grid on the Worksheet Line Items page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Funds Transfer

Choose the type of funds transfer and the corresponding transfer template ID, or the deal entry along with the instrument type, which will be the default transfer type when you initiate a transfer from the results grid. Select one pair of values:

- *EFT Transfer* and *Transfer Template ID*
- *Bank Transfer* and *Bank Transfer Template ID*
- *Deal Entry* and *Instrument Type*

Charting Options

The charting options apply only to the trend chart.

Field or Control	***Description***
Show Top Dimensions	Enter a number from 1 to 9 to show the top line dimensions.
Days to Trend Analysis	Enter a number from 1 to 99. The trend chart shows the specified number of days calculated back from the Value Date in the search criteria.

Performing the Cash Sweep from Cash Forecast Results

You can schedule a cash sweep from the Cash Forecast Results page or through the Cash Sweep component.

For more information about cash sweep and requesting a cash sweep in the Cash Sweep component, see Processing Cash Sweep and Reviewing the Results.

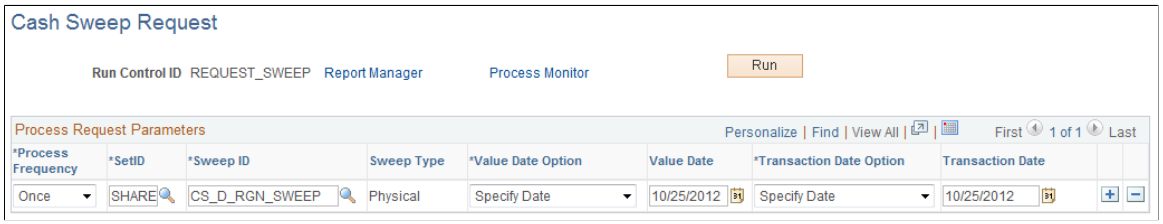
Use the Cash Sweep Request page (CSH_SWEEP_REQ) to schedule the Cash Sweep Calculations process.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Cash Forecast > Process and Review >Cash Forecast Results >Cash Forecasting Results

Click the **Execute Cash Sweep** link in the Actions list on the Cash Forecasting Results page.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Request page.



 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The Cash Sweep Request page displays Sweep IDs associated with the Worksheet Definition. Select the Sweep IDs for which you want to schedule the Cash Sweep Request and click OK. The system schedules the Cash Sweep Request in the background.

Note: If you want to see the updated forecast results after executing a cash sweep, you must also run the Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR_CSH_FCST) process.

Related Links

Understanding Cash Sweep Functionality

Understanding Copy Cash Forecast Results

Copy Cash Forecast Results functionality allows a user to shift dates and amounts for calculated cash forecast results and analyze the impact of these shifts on Cash Forecast Amount. When shifting dates and amounts, you can apply offsets on an ad hoc basis or use predefined scenarios. The copied results are stored separately from the calculated results based on history.

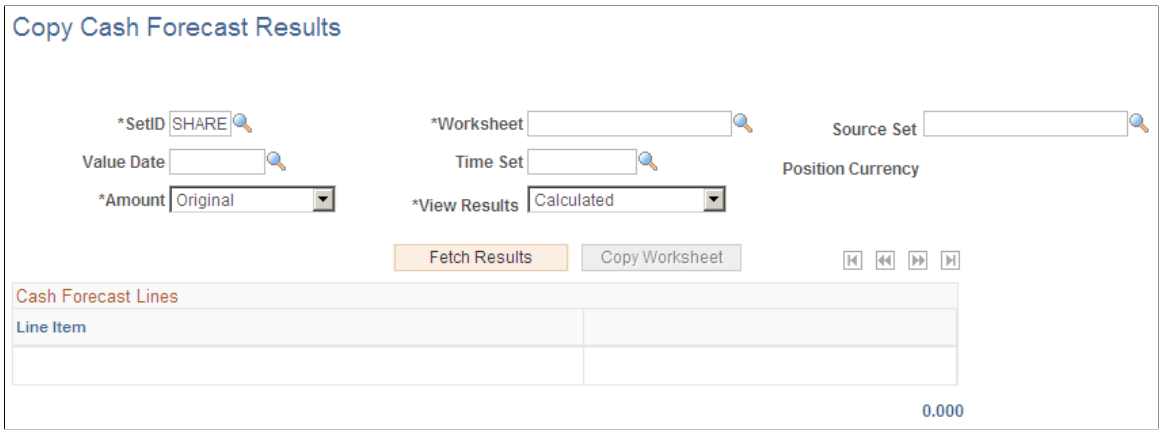
Copy Cash Forecast Results Page

Use the Copy Cash Forecast Results page (CSH_FCST_SHOCK_RES) to copy a worksheet and modify cash flow amounts.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Cash Forecast > Process and Review >Copy Cash Forecast Results >Copy Cash Forecast Results

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Copy Cash Forecast Results page . You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
SetID	Enter a SetID.
Worksheet	Enter the ID for the worksheet that you set up on the Worksheet Definition page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Source Set	Select a source set that is associated with the worksheet on the Worksheet Definition page.
Value Date	Enter a date if you wish to work with one date.
Time Set	Select a time set, if you wish to work with multiple dates. This option is not supported when you want to see both calculated and copied results together by selecting *Calculated* and *Copied* in the View Results field.
Position Currency	Displays the default reporting currency that was defined on the Worksheet Definition page.
Amount	Choose from *Original* or *Weighted*.
View Results	Choose from these options: • *Calculated*: Select to shift date and amount. • *Calculated and Copied*: Select to compare calculated and copied results. • *Copied Results*: Select to view copied results.
Fetch Results	Click this button to populate fields in the **Cash Forecast Lines** grid with results that match parameters specified in the search fields.
Copy Worksheet	Click this button to copy the worksheet and modify the cash flow amounts.

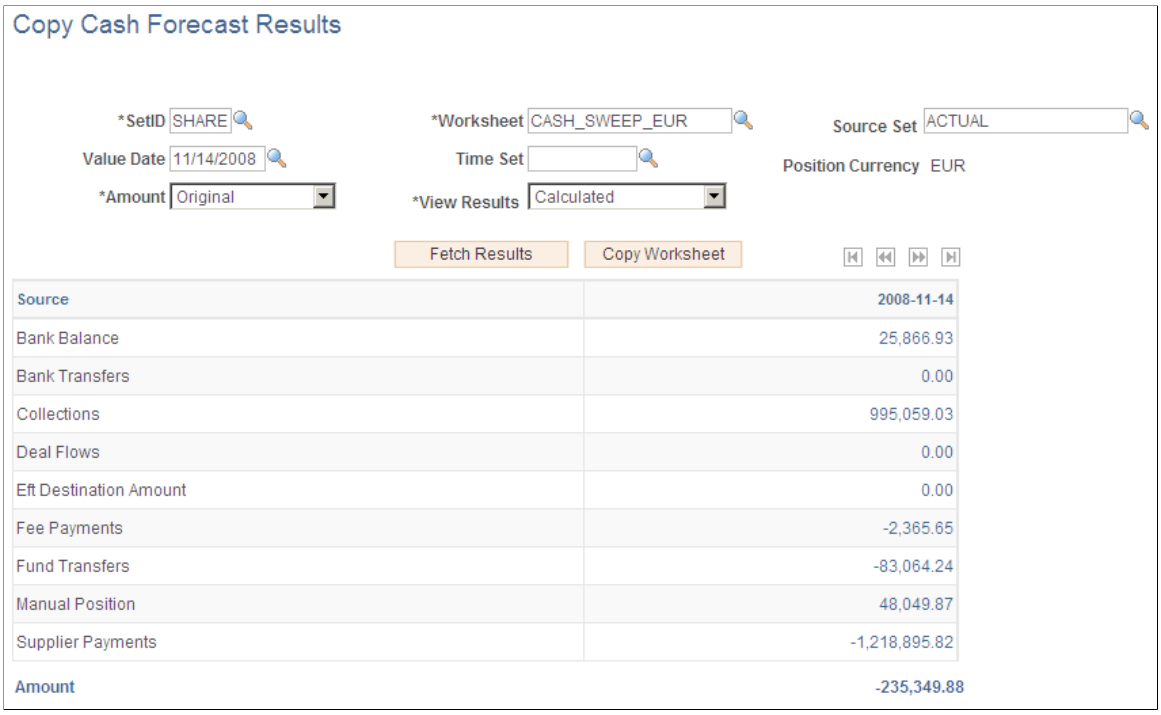
Copying Cash Forecast Results

To copy cash forecast results:

1. Enter search parameters in the Copy Cash Forecast Results page header fields to return calculated data.
2. Click the **Fetch Results** button to populate the **Cash Forecast Lines** grid.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Copy Cash Forecast Results page with fetched results. Retrieved results are ready to be copied:



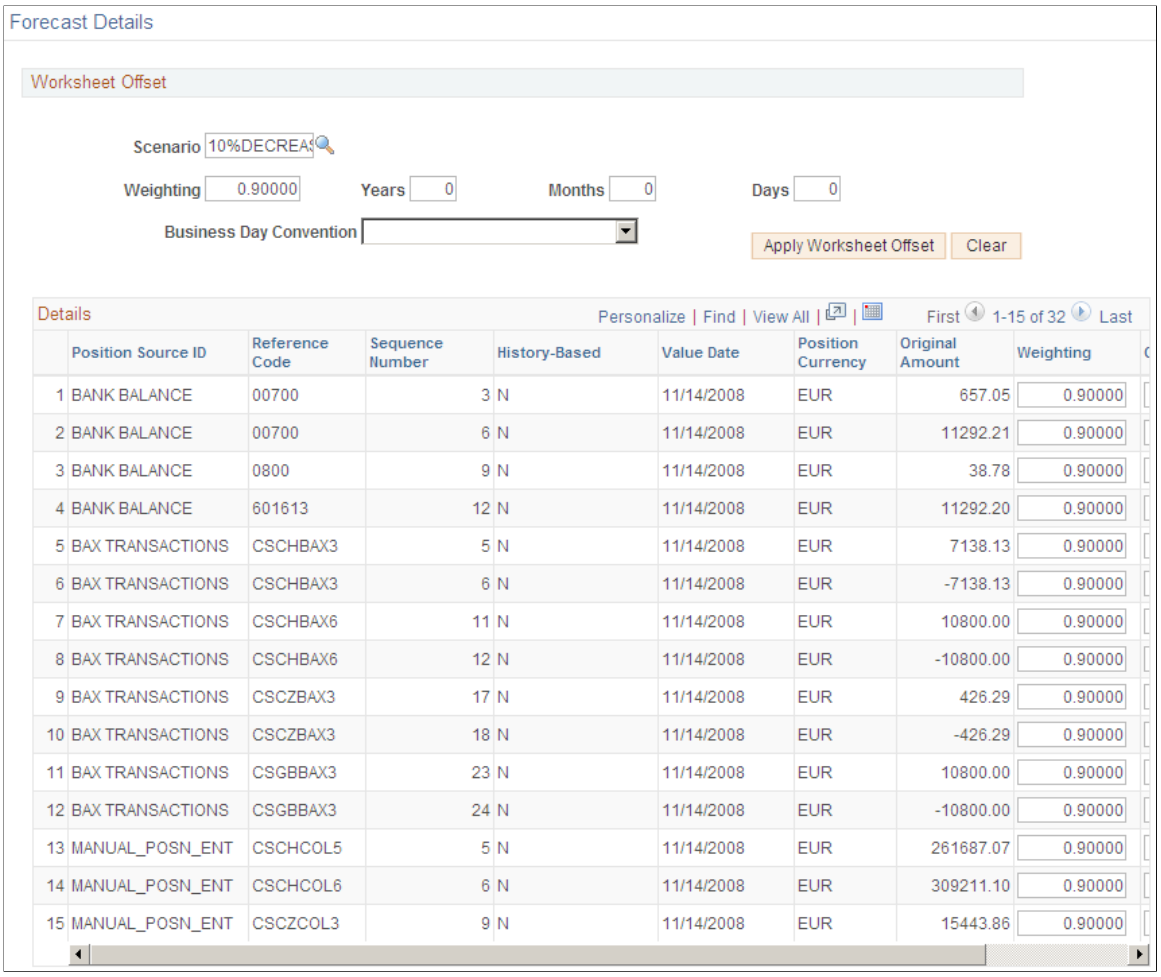
3. Click the **Copy Worksheet** button to access the Forecast Details – Worksheet Offset page.
4. Specify the Worksheet Offset criteria as desired to shift the dates and amounts.

   You can apply the offsets to shift individual rows or all rows.

Note: The system supports only positive integers and zero (0) for offset days.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Forecast Details - Worksheet Offset page, with an example of offset details.



Forecast Details

Worksheet Offset

Scenario 10%DECREA

Weighting 0.90000 Years 0 Months 0 Days 0

Business Day Convention

Apply Worksheet Offset Clear

Details Personalize | Find | View All | First 1-15 of 32 Last

	Position Source ID	Reference Code	Sequence Number	History-Based	Value Date	Position Currency	Original Amount	Weighting
1	BANK BALANCE	00700	3	N	11/14/2008	EUR	657.05	0.90000
2	BANK BALANCE	00700	6	N	11/14/2008	EUR	11292.21	0.90000
3	BANK BALANCE	0800	9	N	11/14/2008	EUR	38.78	0.90000
4	BANK BALANCE	601613	12	N	11/14/2008	EUR	11292.20	0.90000
5	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCHBAX3	5	N	11/14/2008	EUR	7138.13	0.90000
6	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCHBAX3	6	N	11/14/2008	EUR	-7138.13	0.90000
7	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCHBAX6	11	N	11/14/2008	EUR	10800.00	0.90000
8	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCHBAX6	12	N	11/14/2008	EUR	-10800.00	0.90000
9	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCZBAX3	17	N	11/14/2008	EUR	426.29	0.90000
10	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCZBAX3	18	N	11/14/2008	EUR	-426.29	0.90000
11	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSGBBAX3	23	N	11/14/2008	EUR	10800.00	0.90000
12	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSGBBAX3	24	N	11/14/2008	EUR	-10800.00	0.90000
13	MANUAL_POSN_ENT	CSCHCOL5	5	N	11/14/2008	EUR	261687.07	0.90000
14	MANUAL_POSN_ENT	CSCHCOL6	6	N	11/14/2008	EUR	309211.10	0.90000
15	MANUAL_POSN_ENT	CSCZCOL3	9	N	11/14/2008	EUR	15443.86	0.90000

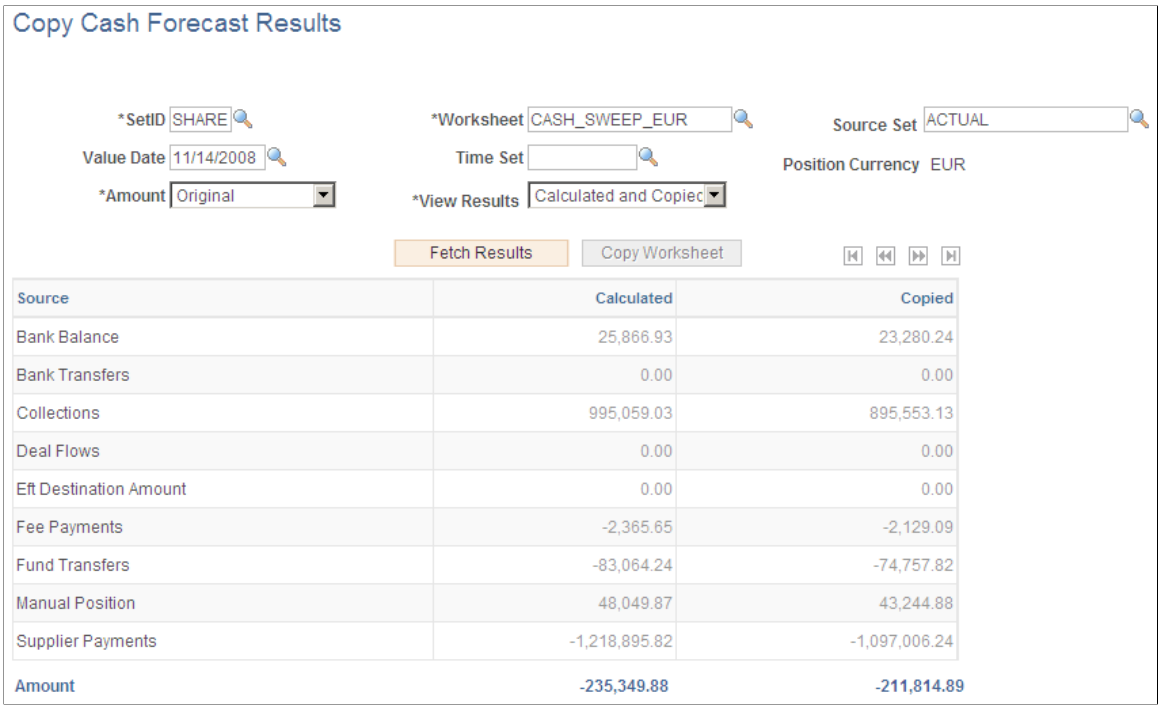
5. Click the **Apply Worksheet Offset** button and **OK** to save the copied results and return to the Copy Cash Forecast Results page.

6. To view calculated and copied results together, select *Calculated and Copied* in the **View Results** field, and click the **Fetch Results** button.

   The results show the **Calculated** and **Copied** columns, with values for each line item.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Copy Cash Forecast Results page with calculated and copied results.



Source	Calculated	Copied
Bank Balance	25,866.93	23,280.24
Bank Transfers	0.00	0.00
Collections	995,059.03	895,553.13
Deal Flows	0.00	0.00
Eft Destination Amount	0.00	0.00
Fee Payments	-2,365.65	-2,129.09
Fund Transfers	-83,064.24	-74,757.82
Manual Position	48,049.87	43,244.88
Supplier Payments	-1,218,895.82	-1,097,006.24
Amount	-235,349.88	-211,814.89

Understanding The Cash Management Fluid Homepage

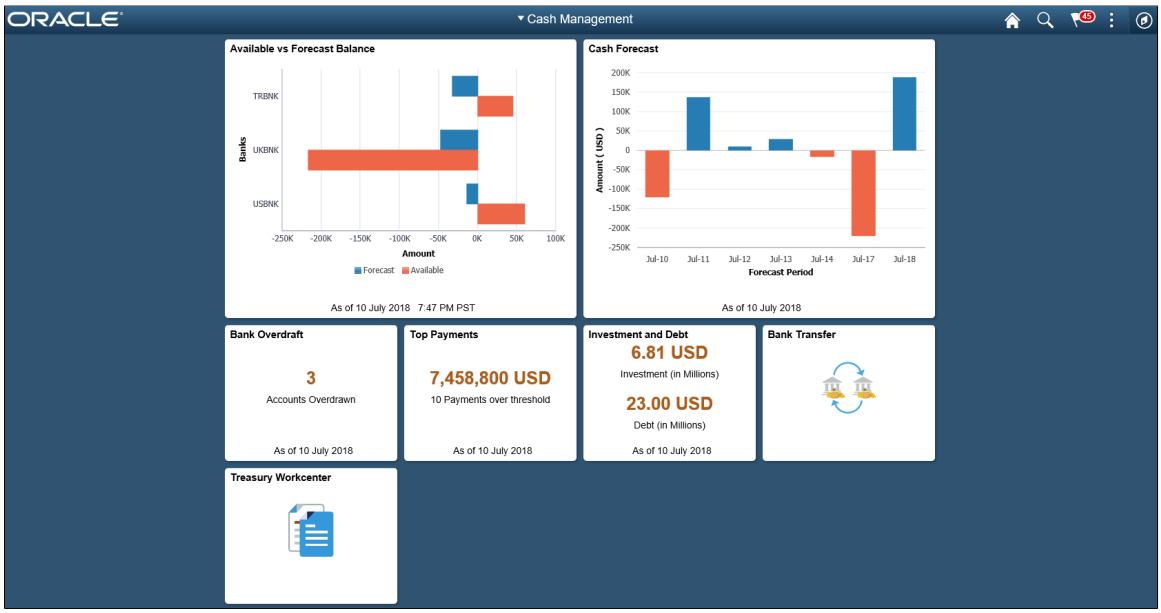
Based on PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface technology, the Cash Management Homepage offers mobile device users access to Cash Position/Cash Forecast, Overdraft Balances, Top Payments, and Investment data. This information can be used by Cash Managers, Deal Managers, and Treasury Managers to handle their treasury tasks performed throughout the day.

Click to watch a short video about the PeopleSoft Cash Management Homepage on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface.

Note: The tiles on the Cash Management homepage and associated pages were designed using PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface technology. They can be accessed from a mobile device. See "Understanding PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface" (Application Fundamentals) and *PeopleTools: Fluid User Interface Developer's Guide* for more information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Management Home page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



From the Cash Management Homepage, users can review these areas:

- **Available vs Forecast Balance**

  Here the Cash Manager can check the daily cash position with available bank balances. After reviewing the numbers, he can follow up with the trading desk based on the surplus or deficit.

  For more information, see the Available vs Forecast Balance Tile.

- **Cash Forecast**

  In this scenario, a Cash Manager checks the daily cash position in the morning. After reviewing the numbers, she makes a call to draw a line of credit or borrow money from the market.

  For more information, see the Cash Forecast Tile.

- **Bank Overdrafts**

  For example, a Cash Manager reviews overdraft accounts after the current-day bank statement is loaded.

  For more information, see the "Bank Overdraft Tile" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing). See also the "NavBar: Bank Balances Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

- **Top Payments**

  The Cash Manager can review the high-dollar payments going out on a daily basis.

  For more information, see the "Top Payments Tile" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway).

- **Investment and Debt**

  For example, a Deal Manager reviews the Investment and Debt mix and the market value of the investments and provides data to the trading desk for suitable adjustments in the Investment Portfolio.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

For more information, see the Investment and Debt Tile. See also the NavBar: Investment and Debt Page.

- **Bank Transfer**

  The Cash Manager can view or update existing bank transfer details and create new bank transfers.

  For more information, see Working with Bank Transfers on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface.

- **Treasury Workcenter**

  For more information, see Using the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter

Related Links

"Adding Homepages and Tiles" (Application Fundamentals)

Working with Cash Forecasting on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface

This topic discusses using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface to work with cash forecasting. Access cash position information through the Cash Forecast tile on the Cash Management homepage.

Click to watch a short video about the PeopleSoft Cash Management Homepage on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface.

Pages Used to Work with Cash Forecasting on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface

Page/Tile Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Cash Forecast Tile	EP_TR_CASH_POS_FL	View the overall cash position bar chart for the first seven periods. Access cash position information, including a summary, currencies, banks, bank accounts, bank account groups, business unit groups, and business units.
My Preferences - Forecast Page (Fluid)	TR_USER_PREF_FL	Set up user preferences for the Available vs Forecast Balance and Cash Forecast tiles and pages.
Cash Forecast - Summary Page (Fluid)	TR_LIQ_OVERALL_FL	Review the overall cash position information.
Cash Forecast Drilldown Page (Fluid)	TR_CF_DRILL_SCF	Review transaction details by payment date and line item.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page/Tile Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Cash Forecast - Currency Page (Fluid)	TR_LIQ_CUR_FL	Review cash forecast amounts by currency.
Cash Forecast - Bank Account Groups Page (Fluid)	TR_LIQ_ACGRP_FL	Review the cash position by each bank account group.
Cash Forecast - Bank Page (Fluid)	TR_LIQ_BNK_FL	Review the cash position by bank.
Cash Forecast - Bank Accounts Page (Fluid)	TR_LIQ_BAC_FL	Review the cash position by bank account.
Cash Forecast - Business Unit Groups Page (Fluid)	TR_LIQ_BGR_FL	Review the cash position by each business unit group.
Cash Forecast - Business Unit Page (Fluid)	TR_LIQ_BU_FL	Review the cash position by business unit.

Cash Forecast Tile

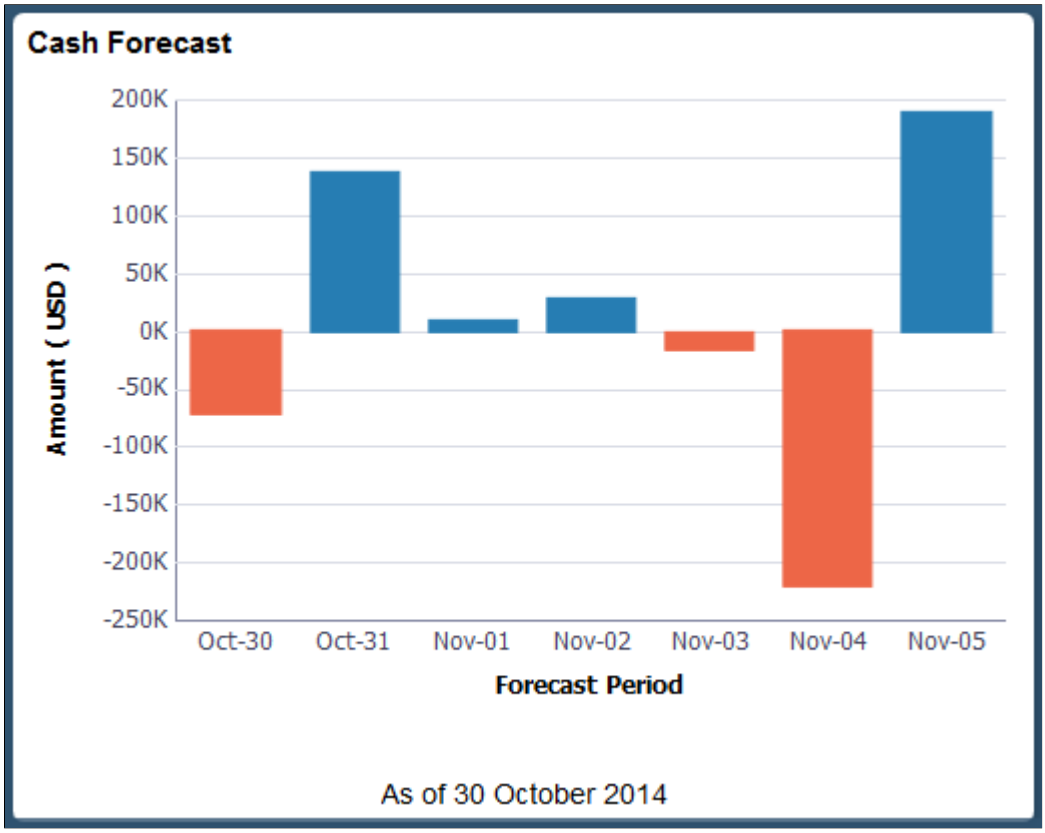
Use the Cash Forecast tile (EP_TR_CASH_POS_FL) to access cash position details, including a summary, currencies, banks, bank accounts, bank account groups, business unit groups, and business units.

Navigation:

View the tile on the Cash Management homepage.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecast tile.



Related Links

Understanding The Cash Management Fluid Homepage

My Preferences - Forecast Page (Fluid)

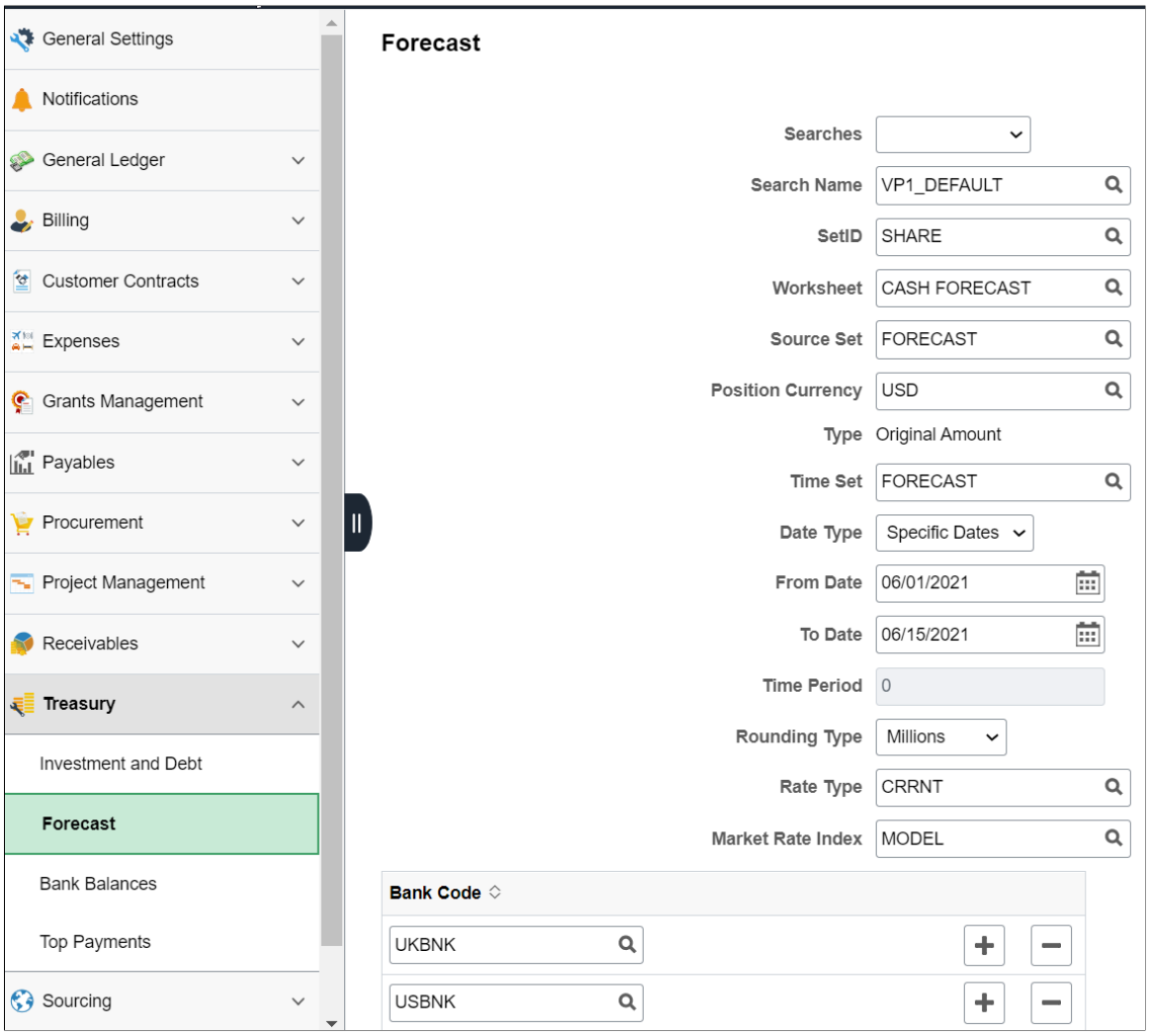
Use the My Preferences - Forecast page (TR_USER_PREF_FL) to set up user preferences for the Available vs Forecast Balance and Cash Forecast tiles and pages.

Navigation:

- From any Fluid homepage, select the Actions List button, then select *My Preferences*. Select Treasury in the left panel and select the **Forecast** link.
- On the Cash Management homepage, select the Cash Forecast tile. Select the Actions List button, then select *My Preferences* from the list.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid My Preferences - Forecast page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Searches	Select an option to create a search or delete an existing search. The available options are: • *New Search*: Select to create a search. When you click new search, all the fields on the page will be empty. • *Delete Search*: Select to delete an existing search. You can delete any saved searches but not the default searches available to users.
Search Name	Enter a new search name or select a saved search name by clicking the prompt. You can select a saved search and add/ modify the search criteria.
SetID	Enter a SetID.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Worksheet	Enter a worksheet defined during cash forecasting setup.
Source Set	Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined on the Position Source Set page.
Position Currency	Enter a reporting currency defined on the Worksheet Definition page during cash forecasting setup.
Type	Displays *Original Amount*.
Time Set	Enter the time interval defined to display cash forecasting results on the Define Time Sets page.
Date Type	Select a date type. The available options are: • *Specific Dates*: Select to enter a from date and to date. • *Relative Dates*: Select to enter a time period in days.
From Date and **To Date**	Enter the dates. The From Date and To Date fields are enabled only when Date Type option is *Specific Dates*.
Time Period	Enter a time period. The Time Period field is enabled only when Date Type option is *Relative Dates*.
Rounding Type	Select from *Billions*, *Millions*, or *Thousands*.
Rate Type	Enter the market rate type.
Market Rate Index	Enter the market rate index.
Bank Code	Enter up to four reporting banks. Up to four reporting banks can be set up for a Worksheet.

Cash Forecast - Summary Page (Fluid)

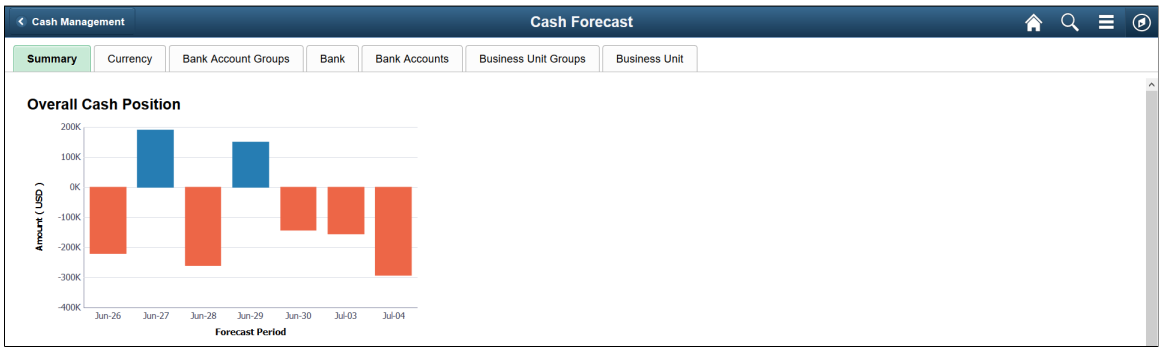
Use the Cash Forecast - Summary page (TR_LIQ_OVERALL_FL) to review the overall cash position information.

Navigation:

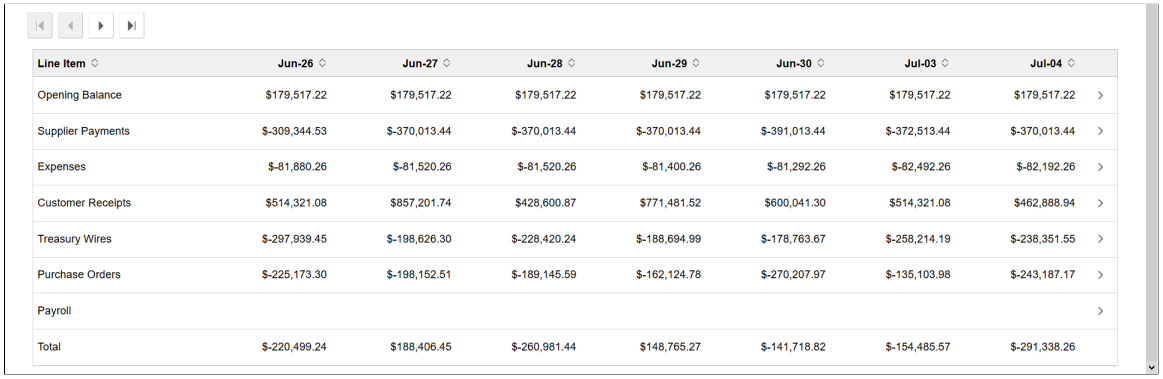
Select the Cash Forecast tile on the Cash Management homepage.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecast - Summary page (1 of 2) in the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecast - Summary page (2 of 2) in the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Line Item	Jun-26	Jun-27	Jun-28	Jun-29	Jun-30	Jul-03	Jul-04
Opening Balance	$179,517.22	$179,517.22	$179,517.22	$179,517.22	$179,517.22	$179,517.22	$179,517.22
Supplier Payments	$-309,344.53	$-370,013.44	$-370,013.44	$-370,013.44	$-391,013.44	$-372,513.44	$-370,013.44
Expenses	$-81,880.26	$-81,520.26	$-81,520.26	$-81,400.26	$-81,292.26	$-82,492.26	$-82,192.26
Customer Receipts	$514,321.08	$857,201.74	$428,600.87	$771,481.52	$600,041.30	$514,321.08	$462,888.94
Treasury Wires	$-297,939.45	$-198,626.30	$-228,420.24	$-188,694.99	$-178,763.67	$-258,214.19	$-238,351.55
Purchase Orders	$-225,173.30	$-198,152.51	$-189,145.59	$-162,124.78	$-270,207.97	$-135,103.98	$-243,187.17
Payroll							
Total	$-220,499.24	$188,406.45	$-260,981.44	$148,765.27	$-141,718.82	$-154,485.57	$-291,338.26

The Overall Cash Position bar chart provides this information:

Field or Control	***Description***
Forecast Period	View the first seven time periods on the x-axis. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Amount	View amounts on the y-axis, in the currency selected on the My Preferences - Cash Forecast page.

The Overall Cash Position table displays line item amounts by date and a total for each date.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Line Item	View the worksheet line items for each time period and a total for each day. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the Scroll Right button. Select the line item row to open the Cash Forecast Drilldown page, where you can review details of the overall cash position by line item and date.
Total	View the total line item amounts for each date in the last row.

Cash Forecast Drilldown Page (Fluid)

Use the Cash Forecast Drilldown page (TR_CF_DRILL_SCF) to review transaction details by payment date and line item.

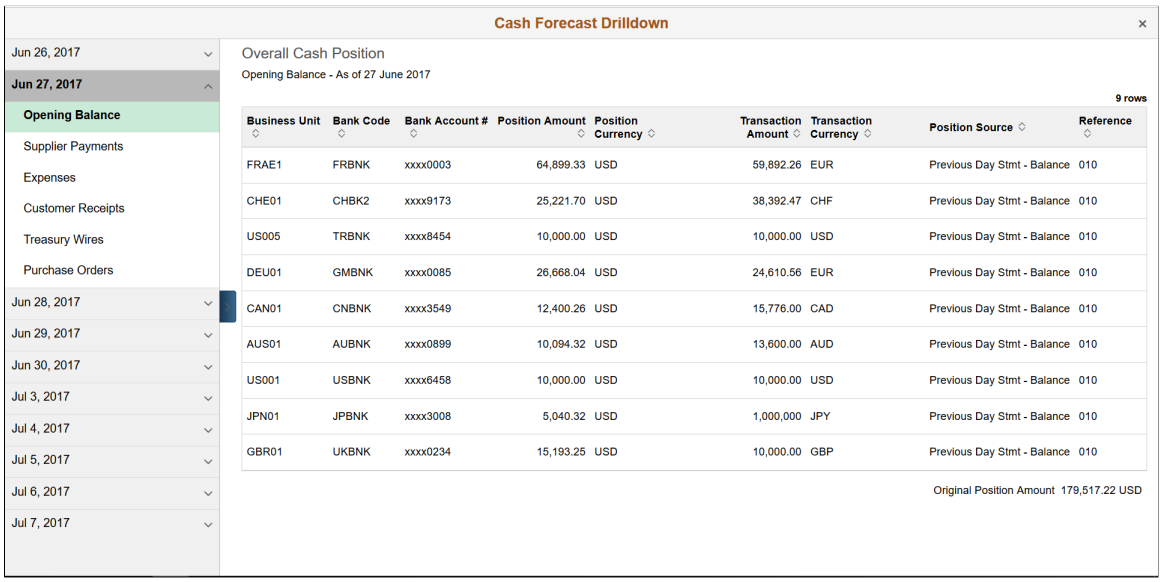
Navigation:

Select a line item row in the table on any tab of the Cash Forecast page.

Select the line item links by date in the left panel of the drilldown page to review the transaction data without navigating back to main page.

You can drill into line items by date on these pages: Summary (Overall Cash Position), Currency, Bank Account Groups, Bank, Bank Accounts, Business Unit Groups, and Business Unit.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid Cash Forecast Drilldown page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Date and Transaction List

Expand a date in the left panel to view the line items for that date. Click the line item to view the corresponding transaction details in the table in the contents window.

Drilldown Details Table

View payment details for transactions in the line item. Payment details include business unit, bank code, bank account number, position amount and currency, transaction amount and currency, position source, and reference code. You can sort by column.

The original position amount from the Cash Forecast page appears below the table.

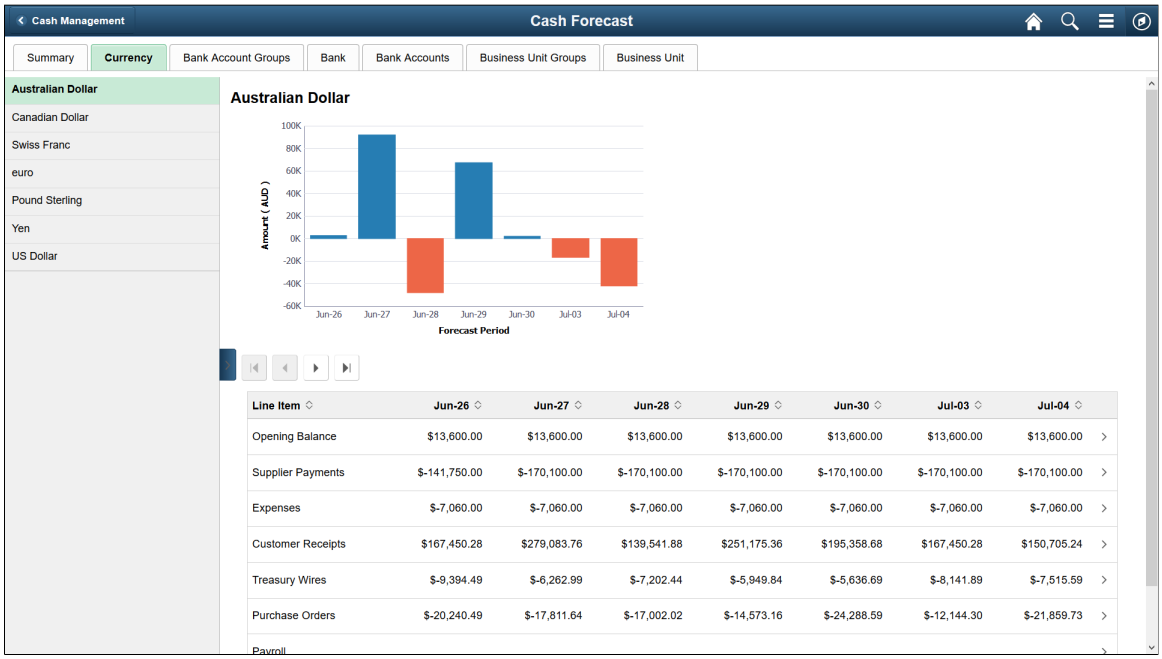
Cash Forecast - Currency Page (Fluid)

Use the Cash Forecast - Currency page (TR_LIQ_CUR_FL) to review cash forecast amounts by currency.

Navigation:

Select the Cash Forecast tile on the Cash Management homepage. Select the Currency tab.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid Cash Forecast - Currency page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



The left pane displays the different currencies of transactions made for the timeframe shown. Select currencies on the left side to see the details of transactions for each currency in the bar chart and table in the content pane.

The Currency bar chart provides these fields:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Forecast Period	View the first seven time periods on the x-axis. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Amount	View amounts on the y-axis, in the currency selected on the My Preferences - Cash Forecast page.

The Currency table provides these fields:

Field or Control	*Description*
Line Item	View the worksheet line items for each time period and a total for each day. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Total	View the total line item amounts for each date in the last row.

Cash Forecast - Bank Account Groups Page (Fluid)

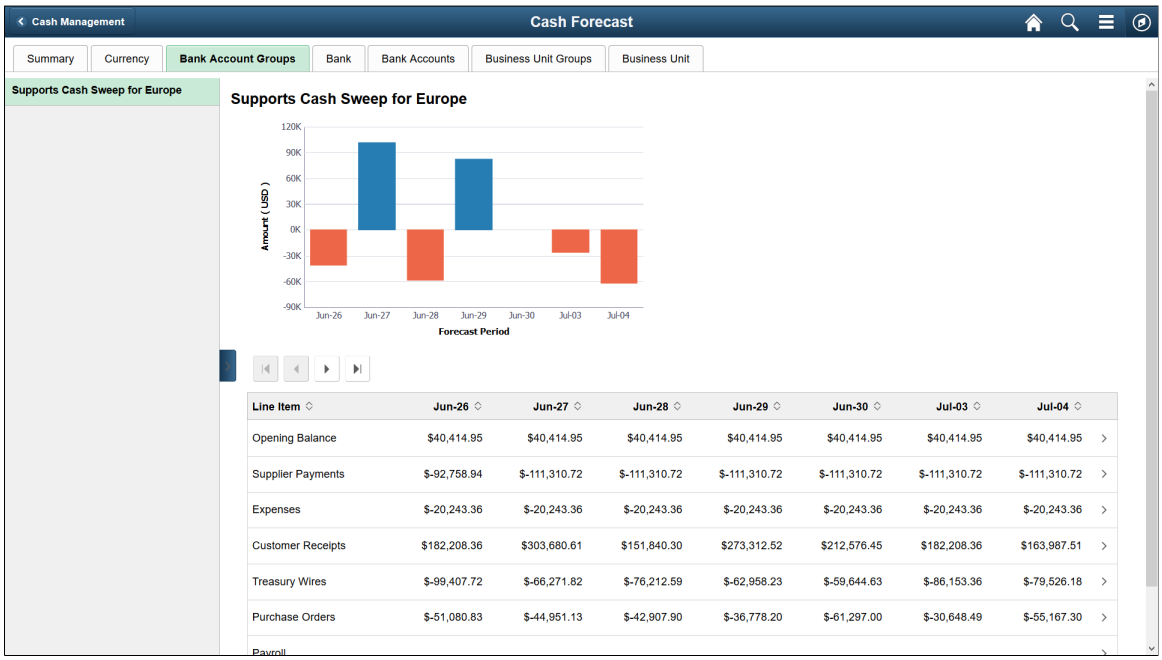
Use the Cash Forecast - Bank Account Groups page (TR_LIQ_ACGRP_FL) to review the cash position by each bank account group.

Navigation:

Select the Cash Forecast tile on the Cash Management homepage. Select the Bank Account Groups tab.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid Cash Forecast - Bank Account Groups page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



The left pane displays the bank account groups. Select a bank account group in the list to see the details of each account group in the bar chart and table in the content pane.

The Bank Account Groups bar chart provides these fields:

Field or Control	***Description***
Forecast Period	View the first seven time periods on the x-axis. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Amount	View amounts on the y-axis, in the currency selected on the My Preferences - Cash Forecast page.

The Bank Account Groups table provides these fields:

Field or Control	***Description***
Line Item	View the worksheet line items for each time period and a total for each day. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time period columns. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Total	View the total line item amounts for each date in the last row.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

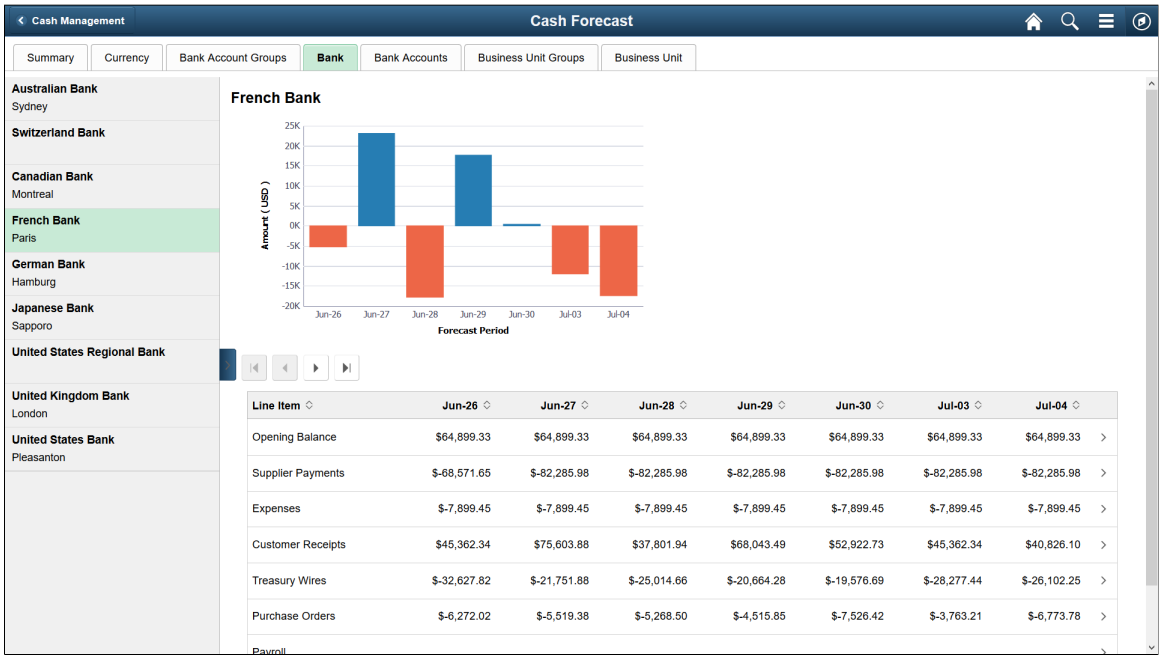
Cash Forecast - Bank Page (Fluid)

Use the Cash Forecast - Bank page (TR_LIQ_BNK_FL) to review the cash position by bank.

Navigation:

Select the Cash Forecast tile on the Cash Management homepage. Select the Bank tab.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecast - Bank page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



The left pane displays banks. Select a bank on the left pane to see the details of each bank in the bar chart and table in the content pane.

The Bank bar chart provides these fields:

Field or Control	***Description***
Forecast Period	View the first seven time periods on the x-axis. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Amount	View amounts on the y-axis, in the currency selected on the My Preferences - Cash Forecast page.

The Bank table provides these fields:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Line Item	View the worksheet line items for each time period and a total for each day. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Total	View the total line item amounts for each date in the last row.

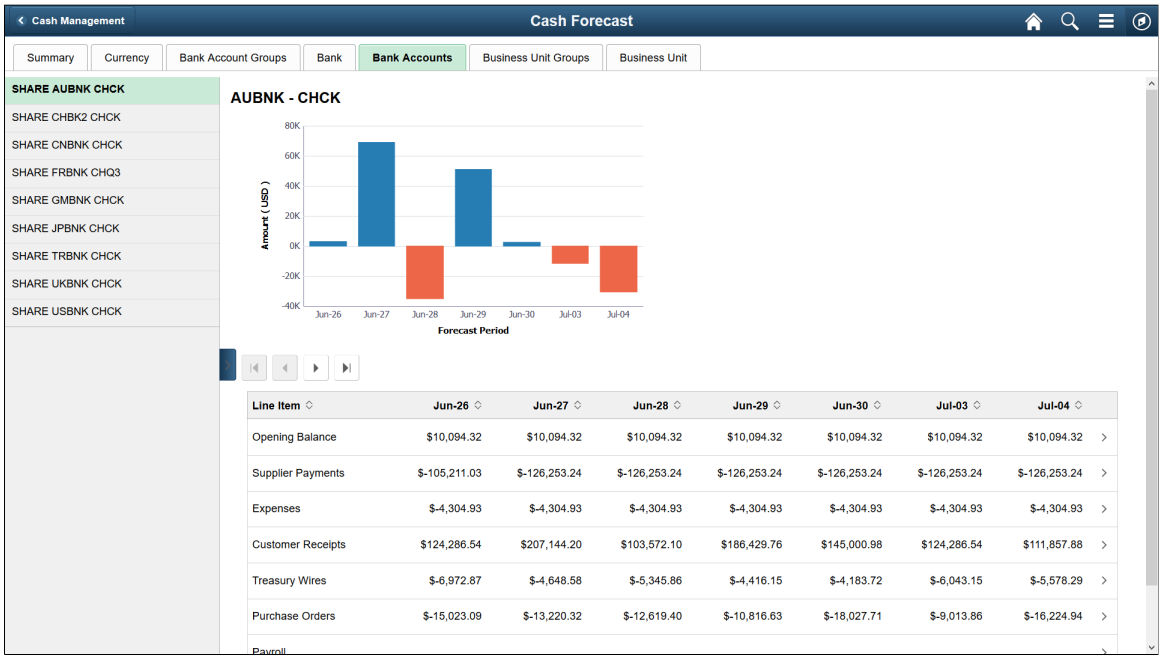
Cash Forecast - Bank Accounts Page (Fluid)

Use the Cash Forecast - Bank Accounts page (TR_LIQ_BAC_FL) to review the cash position by bank account.

Navigation:

Select the Cash Forecast tile on the Cash Management homepage. Select the Bank Accounts tab.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid Cash Forecast - Bank Accounts page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



The left pane displays bank accounts. Select a bank account on the left pane to see the details of each bank account in the bar chart and table in the content pane.

The Bank Account bar chart provides these fields:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Forecast Period	View the first seven time periods on the x-axis. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Amount	View amounts on the y-axis, in the currency selected on the My Preferences - Cash Forecast page.

The Bank Account table provides these fields:

Field or Control	*Description*
Line Item	View the worksheet line items for each time period and a total for each day. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Total	View the total line item amounts for each date in the last row.

Cash Forecast - Business Unit Groups Page (Fluid)

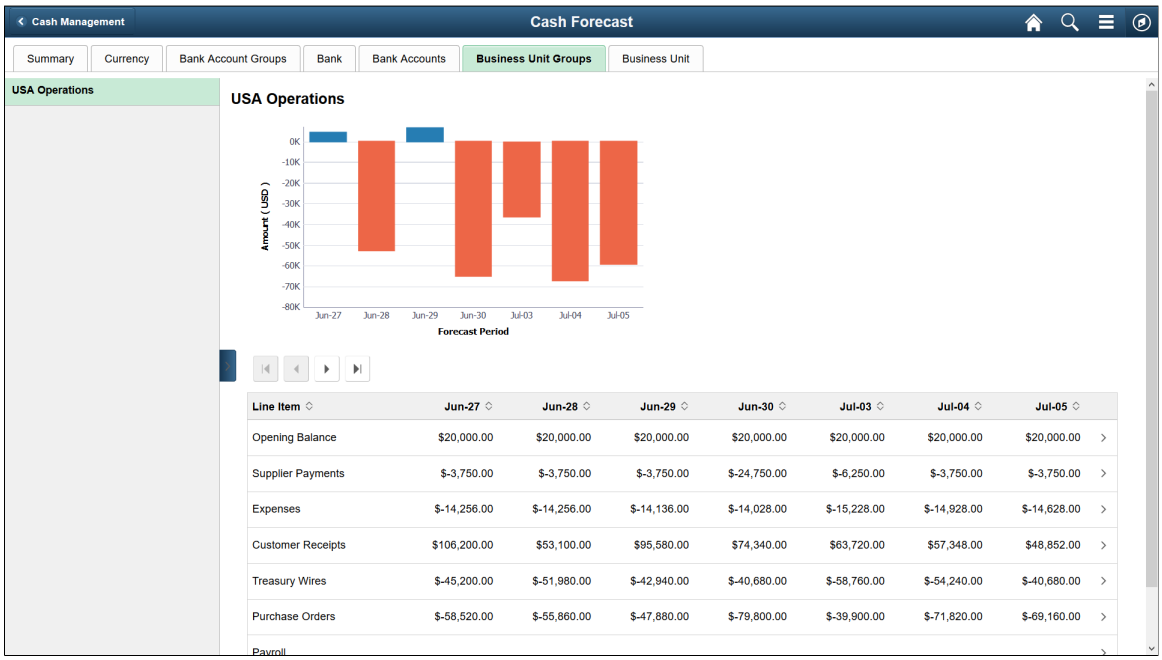
Use the Cash Forecast - Business Unit Groups page (TR_LIQ_BGR_FL) to review the cash position by each business unit group.

Navigation:

Select the Cash Forecast tile on the Cash Management homepage. Select the Business Unit Groups tab.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid Cash Forecast - Business Unit Groups page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



The left pane displays business unit groups. Select a business unit group on the left pane to see the details of each group in the bar chart and table in the content pane.

The Business Unit Groups bar chart provides these fields:

Field or Control	***Description***
Forecast Period	View the first seven time periods on the x-axis. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Amount	View amounts on the y-axis, in the currency selected on the My Preferences - Cash Forecast page.

The Business Unit Groups table provides these fields:

Field or Control	***Description***
Line Item	View the worksheet line items for each time period and a total for each day. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Total	View the total line item amounts for each date in the last row.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

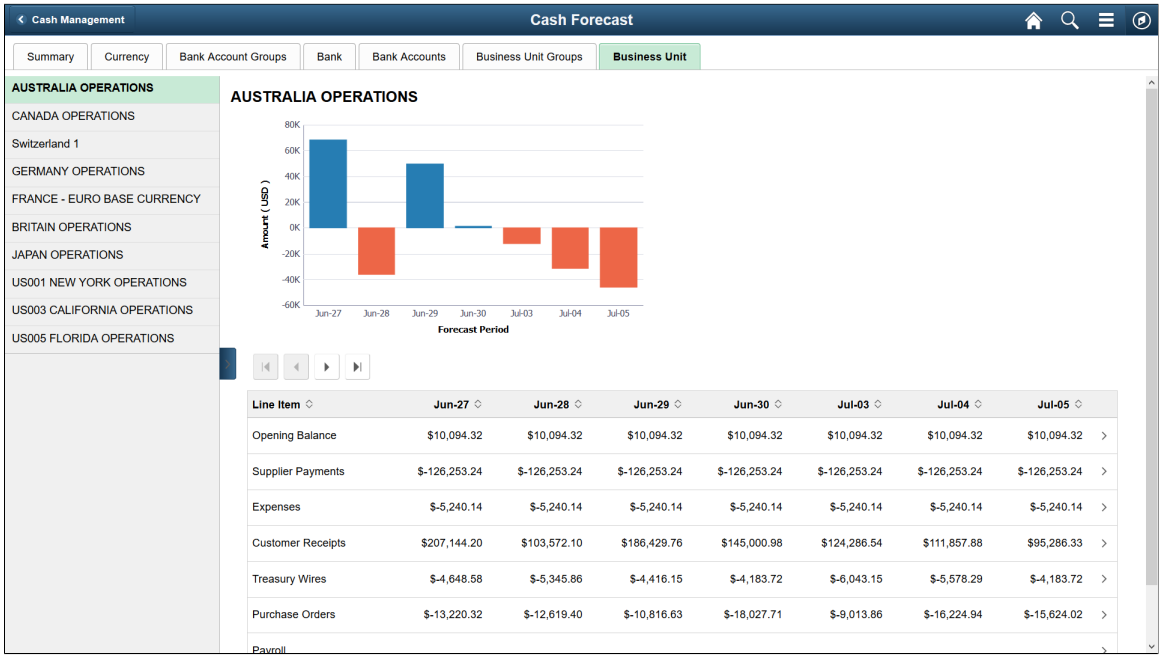
Cash Forecast - Business Unit Page (Fluid)

Use the Cash Forecast - Business Unit page (TR_LIQ_BU_FL) to review the cash position by business unit.

Navigation:

Select the Cash Forecast tile on the Cash Management homepage. Select the Business Unit tab.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid Cash Forecast - Business Unit page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



On the bar chart, the x-axis shows the first seven time periods and the y-axis shows the amounts. The table shows the worksheet line items for each time period and the total for each day. The scroll buttons above the table populate the next seven time periods. buttons are left, right, first, and last. The left panel displays business units, which you can select to see details.

The left pane displays business units. Select a business unit on the left pane to see the details of each business unit in the bar chart and table in the content pane.

The Business Unit bar chart provides these fields:

Field or Control	***Description***
Forecast Period	View the first seven time periods on the x-axis. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Amount	View amounts on the y-axis, in the currency selected on the My Preferences - Cash Forecast page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The Business Unit table provides these fields:

Field or Control	*Description*
Line Item	View the worksheet line items for each time period and a total for each day. Use the scroll buttons above the table to navigate among time periods. Populate the next seven time periods by selecting the right arrow scroll button.
Total	View the total line item amounts for each date in the last row.

Reviewing Available and Forecast Balances on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface

This topic discusses using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface to review and compare available balances and forecast balances by bank for the current date. Access available and forecast amount information through the Available vs Forecast Balance tile on the Cash Management homepage.

Click to watch a short video about the PeopleSoft Cash Management Homepage on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface.

Pages Used to Review Available and Forecast Balances on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Available vs Forecast Balance Tile	EP_TR_ACT_VS_PROJ_FL	View a balances chart with available and forecast amounts by bank for the current date. Access the Available vs Forecast page with bank balance and variance details.
My Preferences - Forecast Page (Fluid)	TR_USER_PREF_FL	Set up user preferences for the Available vs Forecast Balance and Cash Forecast tiles and pages.
Available vs Forecast Page (Fluid)	TR_ACT_VS_PROJ_FL	Review the available balance versus the forecasted balance bar chart for each bank for the current date. View balance and variance details.
Available vs Forecast Details Page (Fluid)	TR_AVF_DRILL_SCF	Review details for a bank account including opening balance, transactions by type, and closing balance.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Available vs Forecast Balance Tile

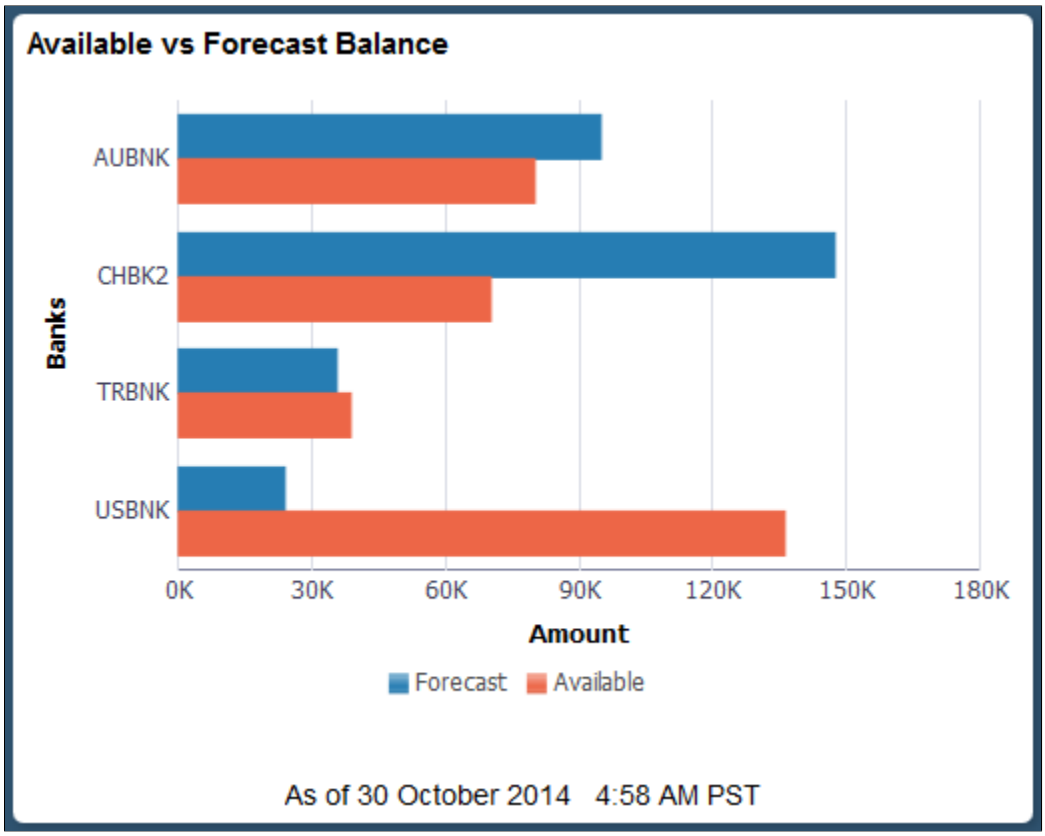
Use the Available vs Forecast Balance tile (EP_TR_ACT_VS_PROJ_FL) to view a balances chart with available and forecast amounts by bank for the current date.

Access the Available vs Forecast page with bank balance and variance details.

Navigation:

View the tile on the Cash Management homepage.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Available vs Forecast Balance tile.



Related Links

Understanding The Cash Management Fluid Homepage

My Preferences - Forecast Page (Fluid)

Use the My Preferences - Forecast page (TR_USER_PREF_FL) to set up user preferences for the Available vs Forecast Balance and Cash Forecast tiles and pages.

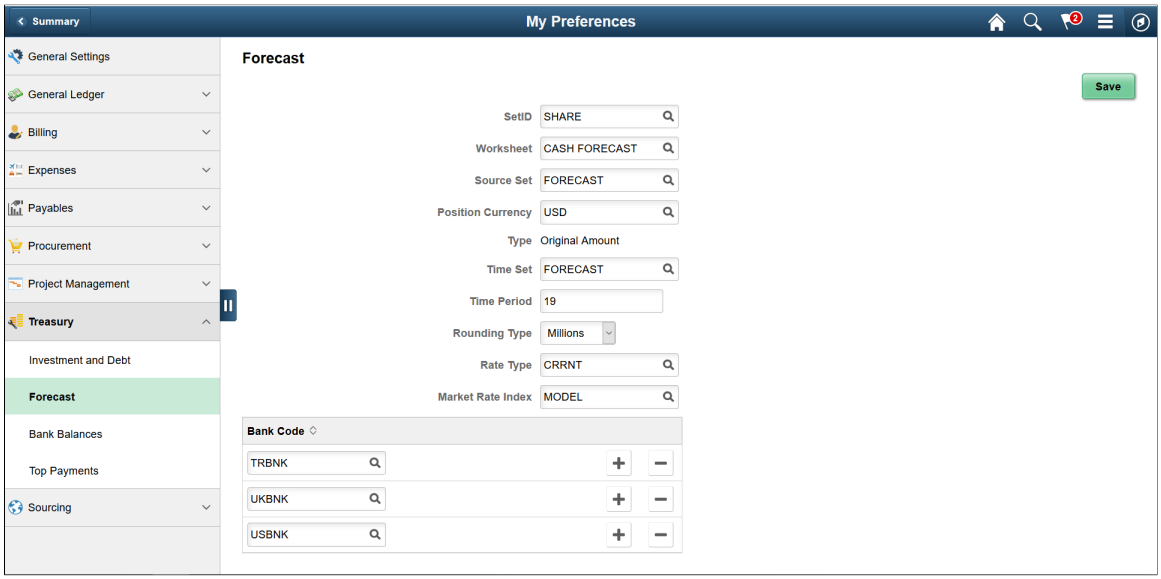
Navigation:

- From any Fluid homepage, select the **Actions List** button, then select *My Preferences*. Select Treasury in the left panel and select the **Forecast** link.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- On the Cash Management homepage, select the Available vs Forecast Balance tile. Select the **Actions List** button, then select *My Preferences* from the list.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid My Preferences - Forecast page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	***Description***
SetID	Enter a SetID.
Worksheet	Enter a worksheet defined during cash forecasting setup.
Source Set	Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined on the Position Source Set page.
Position Currency	Enter a reporting currency defined on the Worksheet Definition page during cash forecasting setup.
Type	Displays *Original Amount*.
Time Set	Enter the time interval defined to display cash forecasting results on the Define Time Sets page.
Time Period	Enter a time period.
Rounding Type	Select from *Billions*, *Millions*, or *Thousands*.
Rate Type	Enter the market rate type.
Market Rate Index	Enter the market rate index.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Bank Code	Enter up to four reporting banks. Up to four reporting banks can be set up for a Worksheet.

Available vs Forecast Page (Fluid)

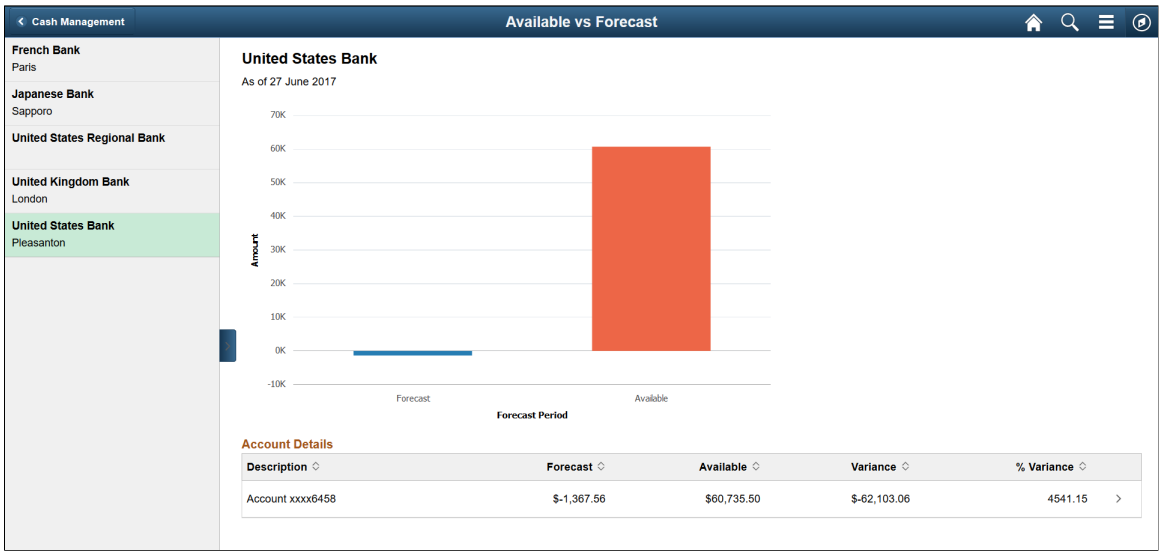
Use the Available vs Forecast page (TR_ACT_VS_PROJ_FL) to review the available balance versus the forecasted balance bar chart for each bank for the current date.

View balance and variance details.

Navigation:

Select the Available vs Forecast Balance tile on the Cash Management homepage.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid Available vs Forecast page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Select a Bank and Location listed on the left panel to display the forecast period and amount in a bar graph, and account details in the table on the content pane.

The system displays the available balance from imported bank statements only, and uses statement code 045.

The Available vs Forecast bar chart provides this information:

Field or Control	*Description*
Forecast Period	View *Forecast* and *Available* periods on the x-axis.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Amount	View sum amounts on the y-axis, in the currency selected on the My Preferences - Cash Forecast page. The sum may reflect table rows with multiple currencies.

The Account Details table provides this information:

Field or Control	*Description*
Account	View the bank account for the bank and location selected on the left panel. The account details appear in remaining columns. The system uses the bank account default currency. Select an account row to drill into bank account details.
Forecast and **Available**	Displays the forecast amount and the available amount for the bank account.
Variance and **% Variance**	Displays the variance between the forecast and available amounts, and a calculation of the percentage variance.

Available vs Forecast Details Page (Fluid)

Use the Available vs Forecast Details page (TR_AVF_DRILL_SCF) to review details for a bank account, including opening balance, transactions by type, and closing balance.

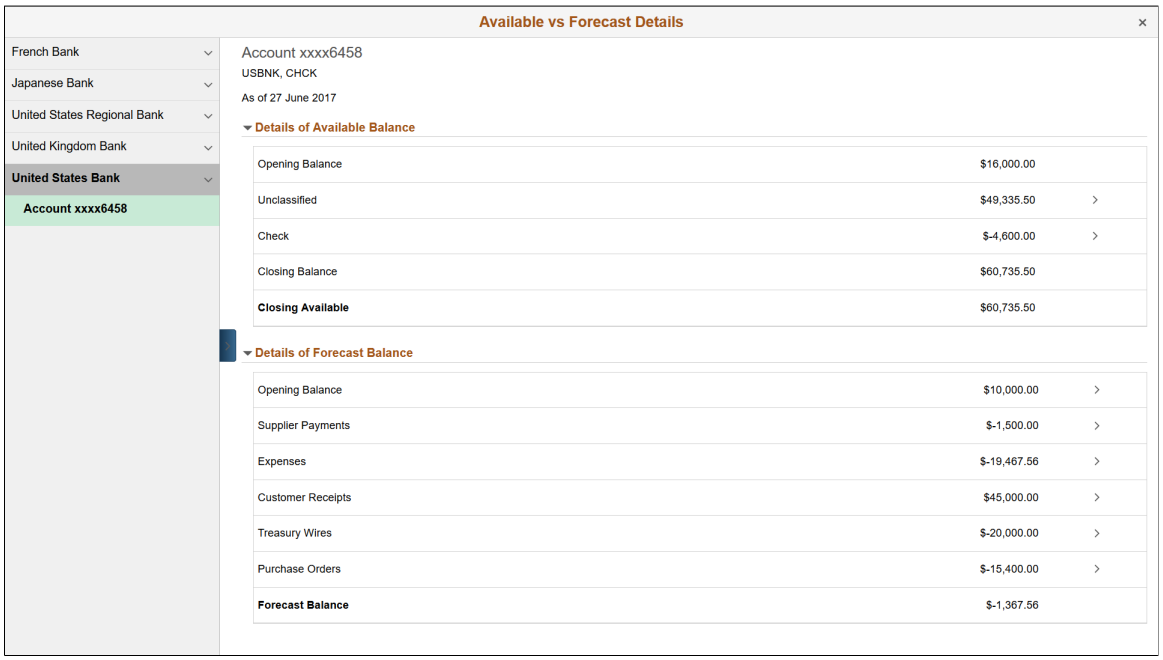
Navigation:

Select an account row on the Available vs Forecast page.

Select the bank account links in the left panel of the details page to review the data for different banks without navigating back to main page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid Available vs Forecast Details page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Details of Available Balance

View opening and closing balances as well as the available closing balance. Click the cash inflow and outflow rows to view transaction details, including statement ID, statement code, reference, bank date, transaction amount, and transaction currency. The statement ID represents the transaction BAI code. You can also access addenda details on the transaction details page.

Details of Forecast Balance

View the opening balance and forecast amount based on the listed transactions sources. Click the transaction sources to view details, including business unit, position amount and currency, transaction amount and currency, position source, and reference code. The forecast is driven by the Worksheet Definition page (WORKSHEET_DEFN).

Importing Cash Forecast Data

This topic provides an overview of the cash forecast integration with external sources and discusses how to set up and import cash forecast data in the form of an XML message using Integration Broker, and import cash forecast data in the form of CSV or XML files.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Used to Import Cash Forecasting Data

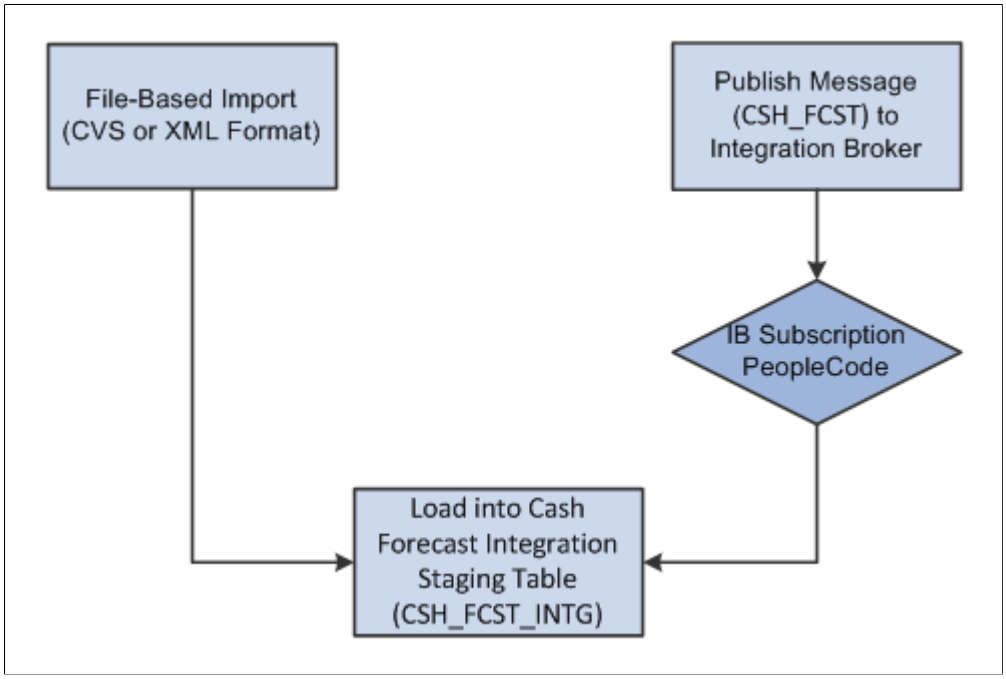
Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Import Cash Forecast Data Page	FCST_IMPORT	Configure the Cash Forecast Import Application Engine process (CSH_FCST_IMP) to manage various import methods for integrating external source data into the application tables.

Integrating External Sources into Cash Forecasting

You can load third-party cash forecasting data into Cash Management by using the Cash Forecast Integration component functionality. The Cash Forecast Import Application Engine process (CSH_FCST_IMP) enables you to import source data in CSV or XML formats directly from a flat file in your system, or via a file transfer protocol (FTP) or HTTP. If you decide to import the cash forecasting source data by using FTP or HTTP, you must also set up the source data host with appropriate user and Integration Broker access settings.

This diagram shows the process of loading external source data into Cash Management:

Load data into the Cash Forecast Integration Staging table (CSH_FCST_INTG) using file-based import or message to Integration Broker



The system creates a new record (CSH_FCST_INTG) to store imported cash forecast data from external sources before loading into the application tables.

Prerequisites

If you decide to import the cash forecasting source data by using FTP or HTTP, you must also set up the source data node with appropriate user and Integration Broker access settings.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note: For complete information on setting up Integration Broker and using service operations, see *PeopleTools: Integration Broker* and *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Service Operations Monitor* documentation for your PeopleTools release.

Setting Up Integration Broker to Import Cash Forecast Data

The cash forecast import service operation (CASH_FRCST) enables Cash Management to receive an incoming XML message with third-party cash forecast data, which is loaded into the cash forecast integration staging table (CSH_FCST_INTG).

PeopleSoft delivers service operations in PeopleSoft Integration Broker with a default status of *Inactive.* You must activate each service operation before attempting to send or receive data from a third-party source or another PeopleSoft system.

To set up this service operation, use the information in this table and refer to the integration scenarios in *PeopleTools: Integration Broker*.

Service Operation	***Description***	***Direction and Type***	***Handlers***
Cash Forecast Import (CASH_FRCST)	Receives cash import data in the form of an XML message (CSH_FCST) from a third-party source.	Inbound Asynchronous One-Way	OnNotify

To activate a service operation, complete the following steps in PeopleSoft Integration Broker:

1. Activate the service operation.

   On the General tab of the Service Operations component, select the Active check box for the applicable service operation version. If the desired version is not the default version for the service operation, the default version must also be activated.

2. For asynchronous service operations only, verify the queue is running.

   On the General tab of the Service Operations component, select the View Queue link at the bottom of the page. On the Queue Definitions page, verify the Queue Status field has a value of *Run.*

3. Activate the OnNotify service operation handler for Cash Forecast Import (CASH_FRCST).

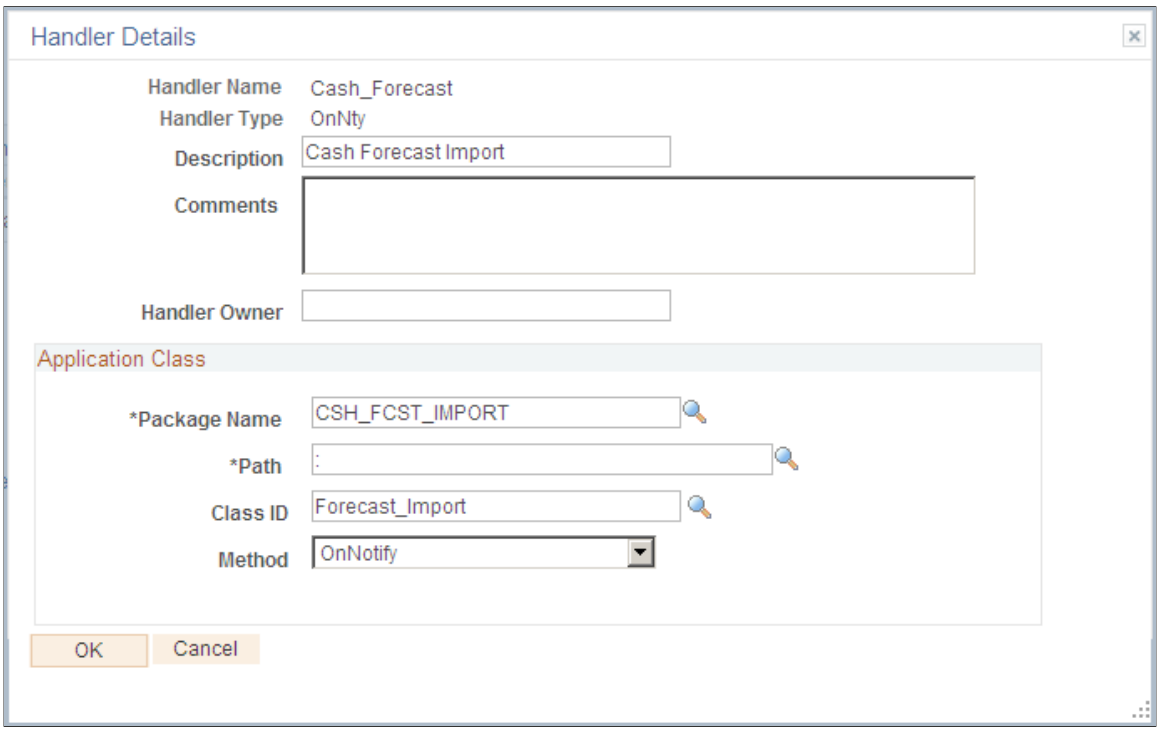
   Click the Detail link on the Handlers page (PeopleTools > Integration Broker > Integration Setup > Service Operations> Handlers) for the CASH_FRCST service operation to access the Handler Details page. Verify the following Application Class parameters:

   - Package Name = CSH_FCST_IMPORT
   - Path = :
   - Class ID = Forecast_Import
   - Method = OnNotify

   This is an example of the Handler Details page (IB_SERVICEHDLR_SEC):

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Handler Details page.



4. Activate an inbound routing to receive cash position import data into PeopleSoft Financial Gateway.

   On the Routings tab of the Service Operations component, activate a routing definition for each node that will send or receive data. To activate a routing, select the check box next to the routing definition and click the Activate Selected Routings button.

5. Verify the node from the routing is active.

   Go to the Node Definitions page and verify the Active Node check box has been selected for any sender or receiver nodes used in the routings that you activated on the Service Operations - Routings page.

Import Cash Forecast Data Page

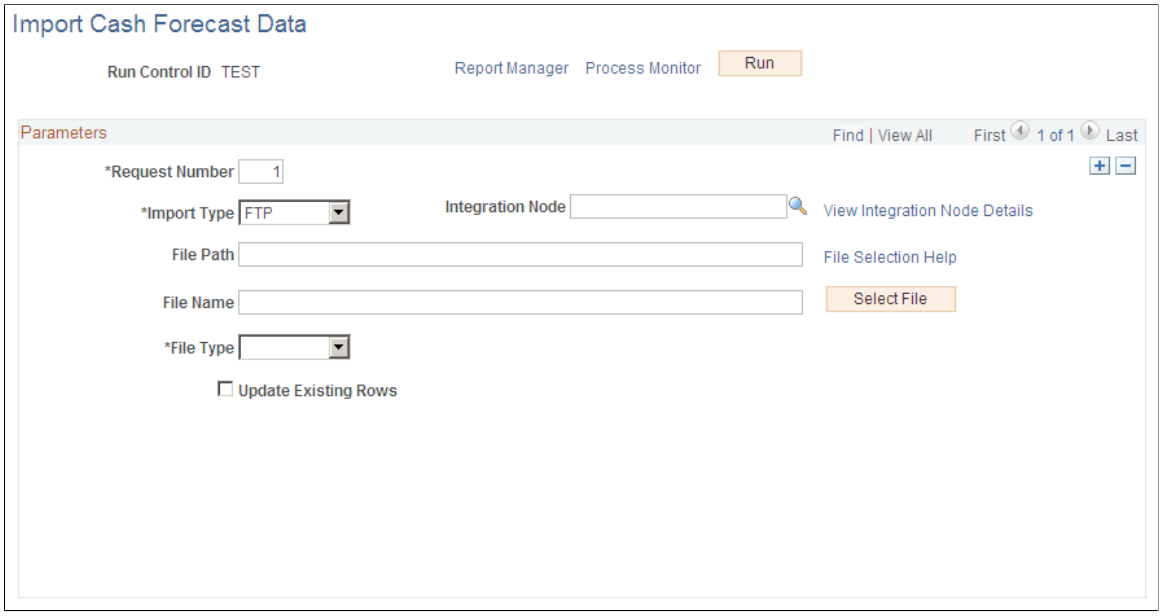
Use the Import Cash Forecast Data page (FCST_IMPORT) to configure the Cash Forecast Import Application Engine process (CSH_FCST_IMP) to manage various import methods for integrating external source data into the application tables.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Cash Forecast > Integration >Import Cash Forecast Data >Import Cash Forecast Data

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Import Cash Forecast Data page.



Before executing the Cash Forecast Import Application Engine process (CSH_FCST_IMP), check for data in CSH_FCST_INTG table. Navigate to Query Manager and search for the Query CSH_FCST_INTG. Click the **Edit** link to open the Query. Execute the Query in the Run tab.

On the run control page, click the **Run** button and select CSH_FCST_IMP process on the Process Scheduler Request page to load cash forecast data into the cash forecast integration (CSH_FCST_INTG) table.

Field or Control	***Description***
Request Number	Enter a number or use the default autonumbering in the field.
Import Type	Choose from these options: • *FTP* Select if you are importing the file by using file transfer protocol, and enter an FTP connection through which to transfer the data. For the *FTP* import type, use a forward slash (/) to separate directories in the **File Path** field. • *File* Select if you are importing a flat file directly from a share drive or server, and complete the **File Path** and **File Name** fields. For the *File* import type, use a backslash (\) to separate directories in the File Path field. • *HTTP* Select if you are importing an XML file using a URL. No file path or file name is required.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
File Location	Appears when using the *File* import type only. Displays the file location entered on the configuration page by a bank integration administrator. Users have access only to the folders below the base path displayed in the File Location field. For more information, see Managing Import File Locations.
File Path	Enter a file path according to the import type selected: • *File* Import Type: Leave this field blank to select a file in the base path shown in the File Location field, or enter a folder name with trailing backslash below the base path, for example, /Bank02/. Wildcard characters are not supported when using the *File* import type. • *FTP* Import Type: Enter the complete file path location. To select files by using the **Select File** button, you must include a trailing backslash (\) in the file path. You can you can also load all files in a given directory by using the *.* notation or search for files of a specific type by entering an asterisk and the extension suffix. For example, to search all files with an .xxx suffix, enter *.xxx. • *HTTP* Import Type: Does not require a file path and the field is unavailable. **Note:** Be sure that the application server and the Process Scheduler have access to the directory, FTP node, or HTTP node where the files are staged for import.
File Selection Help	Click to view help information (9450,1273) about specifying file paths and file names.
File Name	Enter a filename, including the file type extension. When you select a file using the **Select File** button, the filename appears in the **File Name** field.
Select File	Click this button to display all files and folders located in the specified file path when *FTP* or *HTTP* is selected as the import type. You must enter a file path to view the list of files. Click this button to open the File List dialog box, where you can select the file you want from the base path or child folders when *File* is selected as the import type.
Integration Node	Enter the bank node that was used to transfer the data. This field appears only if *FTP* or *HTTP* is selected as the import type.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
View Integration Node Details	Click to access the Node Definitions page and review property details of the selected node. This link appears only if *FTP* or *HTTP* is selected as the import type. **Note:** Be sure that the application server and the Process Scheduler have access to the directory, FTP node, or HTTP node where the files are staged for import
File Type	Select *CSV* or *XML*.
Update Existing Rows	Select to override existing data while importing cash forecast data. If this check box is selected, the existing rows are updated or deleted.

Creating Cash Forecast Reports

Pages Used to Create Cash Forecast Reports

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Worksheet Definition (Report) Page	RUN_TRX5100	Enter parameters that you would like to see on the Worksheet Definition Report (TRX5100).
Cash Position Report Page	RUN_CSH_FCST	Enter parameters that you would like to see on the Cash Position Report (FCST_RPT).
Cash Position Variance Report Page	RUN_CPVAR_RPT	Enter parameters that you would like to see on the Cash Position Variance Report (FCST_VAR_RPT).

Understanding Creating Cash Forecast Reports

After you have defined your cash worksheet and set up your position source, you can generate reports to analyze the worksheet template or the cash position data. This topic discusses the following cash forecast reports:

- Worksheet Definition Report (TRX5100)
- Cash Position Report (FCST_RPT)
- Cash Position Variance Report (FCST_VAR_RPT)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Worksheet Definition Report

Use the Worksheet Definition report to list detailed information as defined in a specified worksheet template or in all worksheet templates created on or after the date entered. This report lists detailed information for a Worksheet template structure, including reporting currencies, source sets, variance data, forecasting rules, line items, and sources.

Cash Position Report

When you run the Cash Position Report, you choose among business unit, bank code, bank account, and other forecast dimensions to generate an XML Publisher report containing the cash position for each Worksheet Line Item and Source Set.

Cash Position Variance Report

The Cash Position Variance Report shows the variance amount and variance percent between source sets that are defined on the Worksheet Definition page. You must provide variance definitions on the worksheet template to generate variance results. This report can be used to produce actual versus projected comparisons by defining an actuals source set and a projected source set., and sorted by specified criteria including bank, bank account, business unit, or user-defined forecast dimensions.

The Cash Position Variance Report shows the variance amount and variance percent between Source Set 1 and Source Set 2, which are defined in the **Variance Definition** grid on the Worksheet Definition page. The variance percent is calculated as:

Variance percent = (Variance Amount/Source_set2)*100

If Source Set 1 and Source Set 2 are not defined on the Worksheet Definition page, the report shows no data.

Related Links

Worksheet Definition Page

Worksheet Definition (Report) Page

Use the Worksheet Definition (report) page (RUN_TRX5100) to enter parameters that you would like to see on the Worksheet Definition Report (TRX5100).

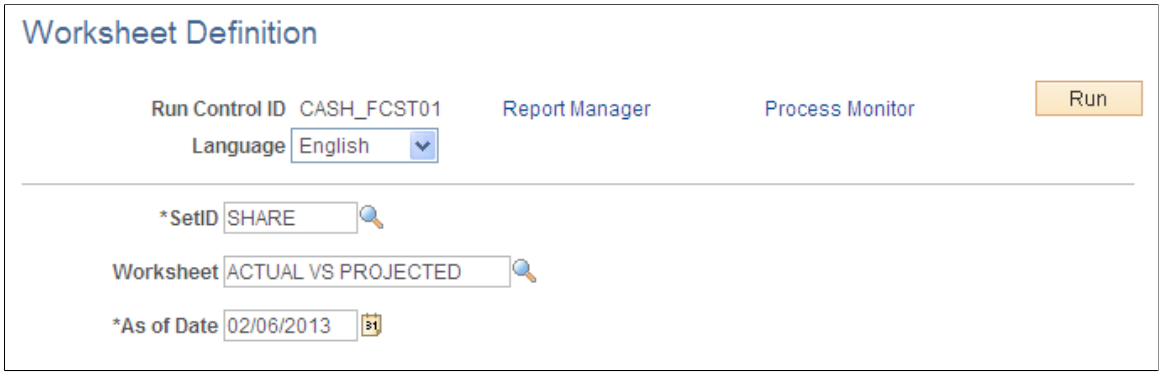
Navigation:

- **Cash Management** > **Cash Forecast** >**Reports** >**Worksheet Definition Report** >**Worksheet Definition**
- **Cash Management** > **Cash Forecast** >**Define Cash Forecast** >**Worksheet Definition**

  Click the **Worksheet Definition** link on the Worksheet Definition page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Worksheet Definition (report) page.



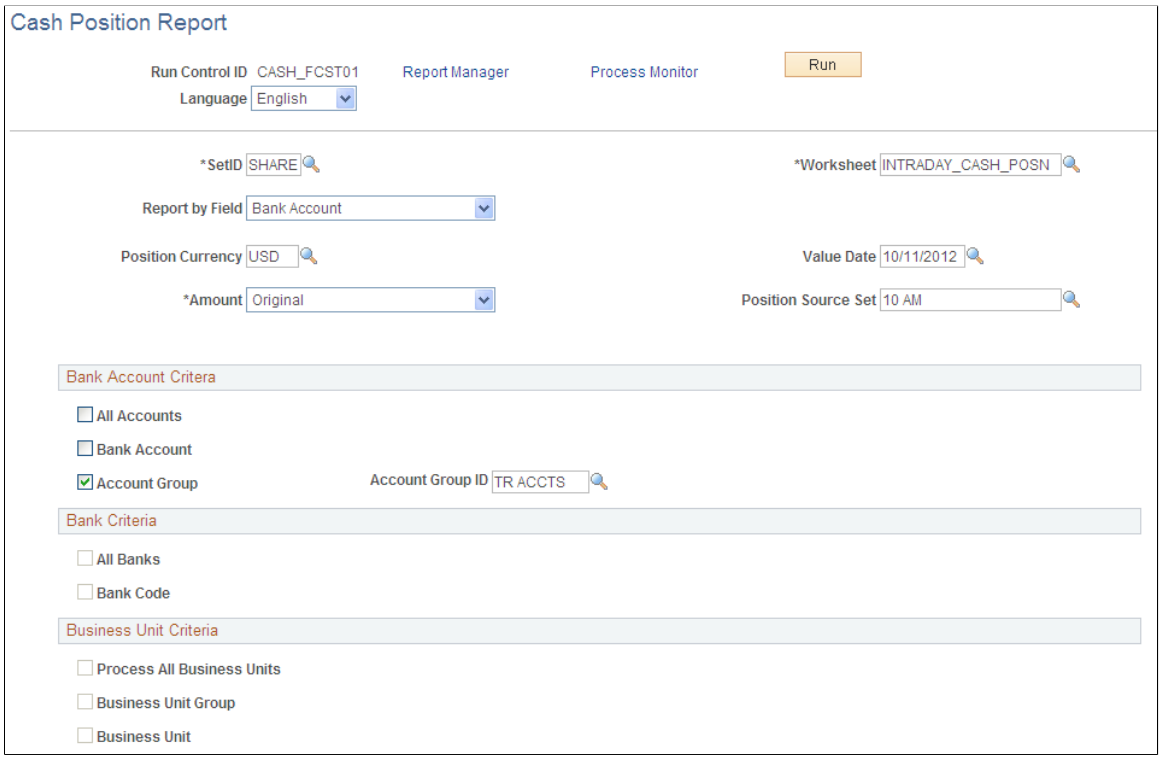
Cash Position Report Page

Use the Cash Position Report run control page (RUN_CSH_FCST) to enter parameters that you would like to see on the Cash Position Report (FCST_RPT).

Navigation:

Cash Management > Cash Forecast >Reports >Cash Position Report >Cash Position Report

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Position Report page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Enter the report parameters and click the Run button.

On the Process Scheduler Request page, select the BI Publisher process FCST_RPT and the desired output format (PDF, RTF, XLS, or HTML) to generate the Cash Position Report.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Run Control ID	Displays the existing or new ID you specified on the search page.
Language	Select the language in which the report should be generated.
SetID	Enter a SetID.
Worksheet	Enter the ID for the worksheet template that you set up on the Worksheet Definition page.
Report by Field	Select from these options. Depending on your selection, report parameters on the page will change. • *Bank* - Activates the Bank Criteria fields. • *Bank Account* - Activates the Bank Account Criteria fields. • *Business Unit* - Activates the Business Unit Criteria fields. • *Group By Field 1* through *Group By Field 7* (generic values for user-defined cash forecast dimensions) - Each requires the **Report by Field Value** field, which appears upon selecting one of the **Group By Field** options. • *Position Currency* • *Source Set* • *Value Date* - Requires the **From Date** and **To Date** fields, which appear upon selecting *Value Date*, and hides the Value Date entry field. The value you choose in **Report by Field** is used to categorize worksheet summary lines on the Cash Position Report.
Position Currency	Displays the default reporting currency that was defined on the Worksheet Definition page.
Amount	Choose from *Original* or *Weighted*.
Position Source Set	Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined on the Position Source Set page.

Cash Position Variance Report Page

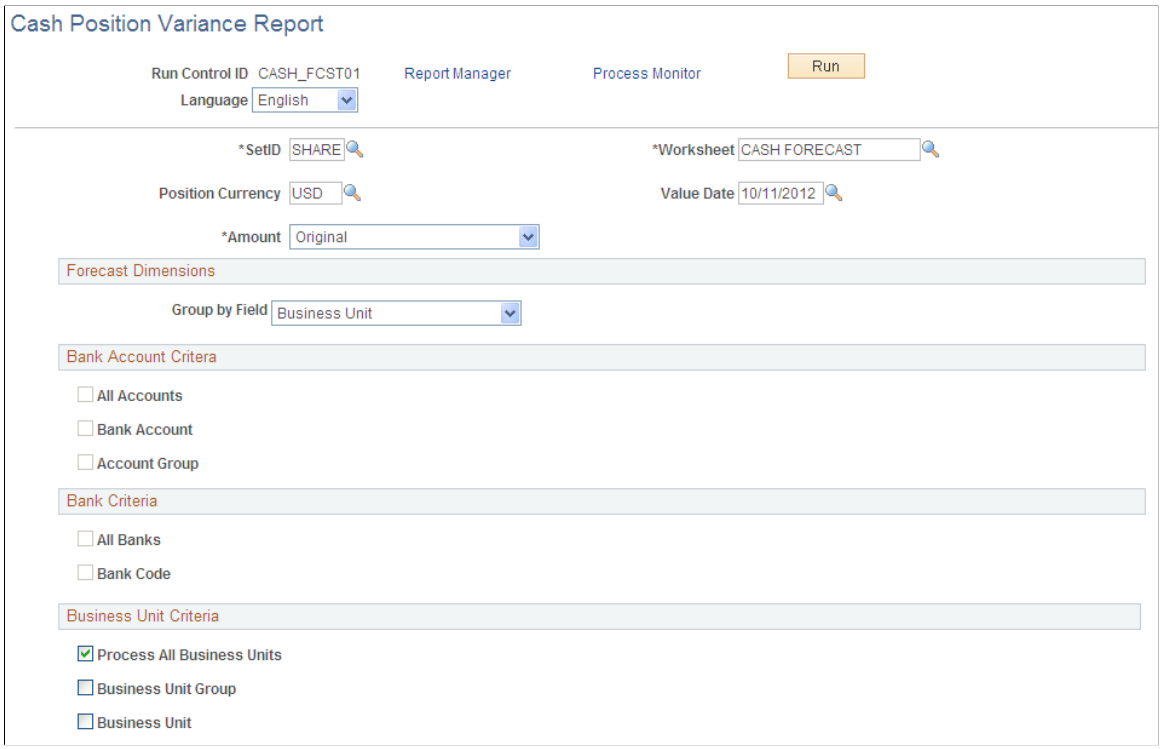
Use the Cash Position Variance Report page (RUN_CPVAR_RPT) to enter parameters that you would like to see on the Cash Position Variance Report (FCST_VAR_RPT).

Navigation:

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Cash Management > Cash Forecast >Reports >Cash Position Variance Report >Cash Position Variance Report

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Position Variance Report page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Enter the report parameters and click the Run button.

On the Process Scheduler Request page, select the BI Publisher process FCST_VAR_RPT and the desired output format (PDF, RTF, XLS, or HTML) to generate the Cash Position Variance Report.

Field or Control	***Description***
Run Control ID	Displays the existing or new ID you specified on the search page.
Language	Select the language in which the report should be generated.
SetID	Enter a SetID.
Worksheet	Enter the ID for the worksheet template that you set up on the Worksheet Definition page.
Position Currency	Displays the default reporting currency that was defined on the Worksheet Definition page.
Value Date	Enter a payment date value.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Amount	Choose from Original or Weighted.

Forecast Dimensions

Field or Control	*Description*
Group by Field	Select from these options. Depending on your selection, report parameters on the page will change. • *Bank* - Activates the Bank Criteria fields. • *Bank Account* - Activates the Bank Account Criteria fields. • *Business Unit* -Activates the Business Unit Criteria fields. • *Group By Field 1* through *Group By Field 7* (generic values for user-defined cash forecast dimensions) - Each requires the **Report by Field Value** field, which appears upon selecting one of the **Group By Field** options. The value you select for **Group by Field** is used to categorize worksheet summary lines on the Cash Position Variance Report.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 7

Managing Bilateral Netting

Understanding the Bilateral Netting Process

Bilateral netting is a process by which two parties (supplier and client to each other) reduce or aggregate the overall number of transactions between them. This decreases actual transaction volume between the two parties. It also decreases the amount of accounting activity and associated business costs (for example, banking fees).

This topic discusses how to configure, define, and process netting transactions. You can:

- Select the suppliers and customers involved in a netting relationship.
- Define the rules, contracts, sequence order, and settlement method of a net.
- Generate inquiries and reports on your netting data.

There are two netting closing methods: *partial* and *full*.

- In partial netting, all items are netted to zero (0), and no payment or receipt of funds is done. You must run Pay Cycle Manager to make any adjustments or changes to the vouchers. Any voucher or item balance that is remaining is handled separately in Payables or Receivables.

  Only the matching balance is paid off during partial netting, leaving some receivables items or payables items open. For example, if the total amount of all payables items participating in a netting cycle is more than the total amount of all receivables items, all receivables items are paid (or closed). The total amount applied to the receivables items is then used to pay individual payables items until this amount reaches zero. Likewise, if the total amount of all receivables items participating in a netting cycle is higher than the total amount of all payables items, all the payables items are paid. The total amount applied to the payables items is then used to pay individual receivables items until this amount reaches zero.

- With full netting, you pay or receive all voucher items that are due.

  During full netting processing, all receivables and payables items participating in the netting cycle are paid, and a new item is created for the remaining balance. This means that if the total amount of all payables items participating in any one netting cycle is more than the total amount of all participating receivables items, the system automatically creates a new receivables item (an invoice). If the total amount of all receivables items is more than the total amount of all payables items, the system creates a new payables item (a voucher).

Note: PeopleSoft delivers and supports only partial bilateral netting functionality. However, you can adapt the application to handle full bilateral netting functionality (though PeopleSoft will not support this configuration). In addition, when using full bilateral netting functionality, you can also optionally activate the value-added tax (VAT) functionality to calculate VAT transactions.

Here is an example of partial bilateral netting:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Company A is both a client and a supplier of Company B and holds Accounts Payable (AP) and Accounts Receivable (AR) line items in relation to Company B. The two companies set up a contractual netting relationship, modifying their typical accounting, to enter into this protocol. They agree on particular intervals to conduct netting and zero out their respective accounts.

Company A's books contain the following line-item amounts:

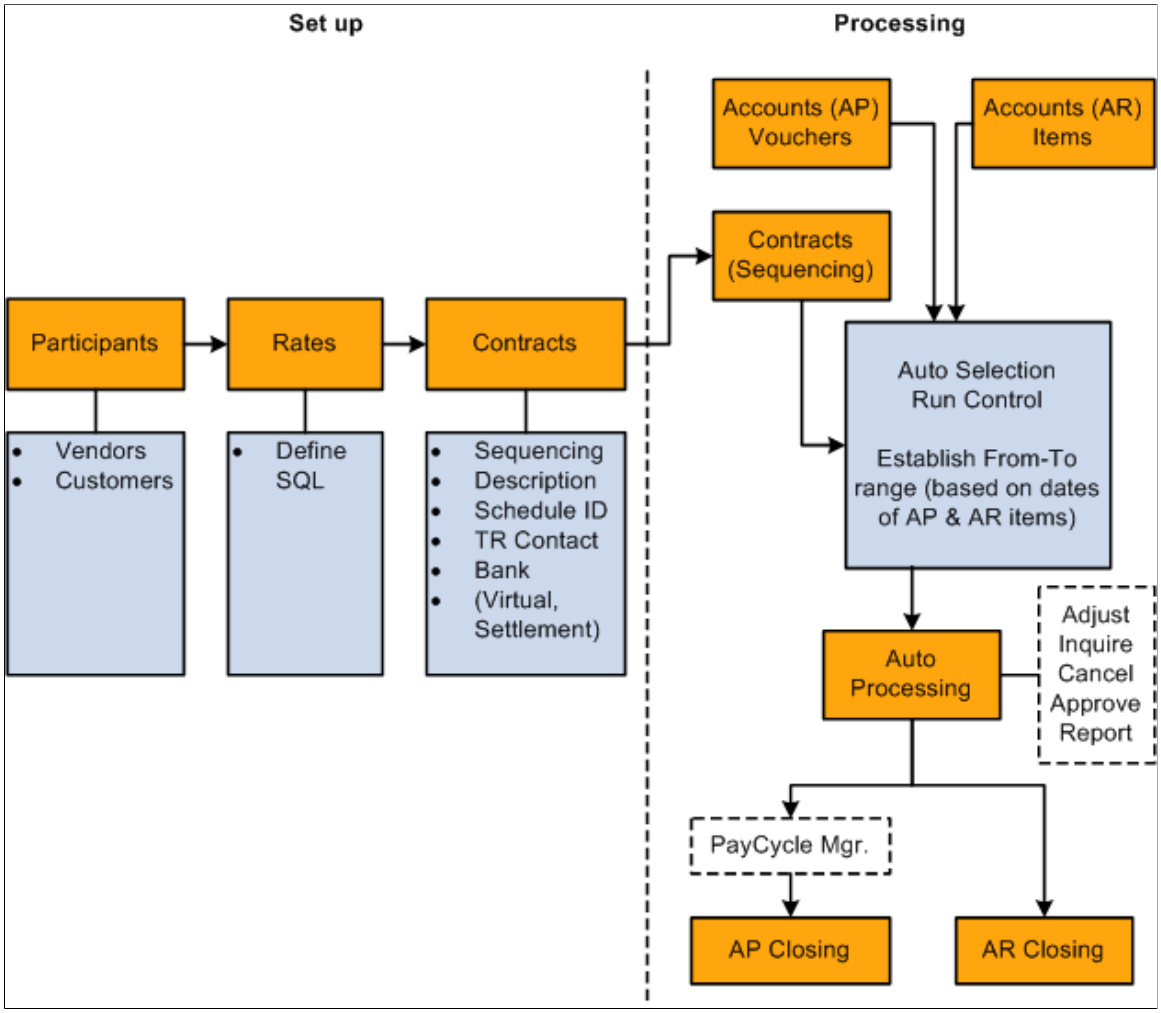
AP	***AR***
100	150
250	50
Total: 350	Total: 200
<200>	
Net: 150	

Without netting, Company A would have conducted four transactions to address the two Accounts Payable and two Accounts Receivable line items. Instead, their single outstanding balance to pay off and zero out after processing is 150. Using this example, Company B's books would be a mirror image of Company A's.

This is a simple example, but if there are hundreds or thousands of transactions happening between organizations, there can be a considerable decrease in transactional activity and attendant fees. This graphic illustrates the bilateral netting process.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Overview of the bilateral netting process



Related Links

"Understanding Document Tolerances" (PeopleSoft Purchasing)
"Understanding Pay Cycle Processing" (PeopleSoft Payables)
"Bilateral Netting" (PeopleSoft Receivables)

Discounts Applied to Netted Transactions

You have the option to process accounts payable discount terms and accounts receivable discount terms as they are defined on each side to netted transactions. You can select a Apply Discount to Transactions check box on the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page or the Manual Select Netting - Manual Selection page.

You can set up Manual Select Netting to manually net the accounts payable and accounts receivables transactions, or you can run the Automatic Netting Selection process (TR_NET_ASEL) to net these transactions for any date that occurs on or before the date that you run the pay cycle. The Netting Auto Selection process stores the discount available amounts related to selected accounts payable vouchers and accounts receivable items based on the selection of the Apply Discount to Transactions check box on the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

When you run the Netting Close process, TR_NET_CLOSE, the Pay Cycle Manager calls the Application Engine program (TR_NET_DSCNT) to apply the discounts to the netted transactions. This program updates the netted amounts, balance amounts, and discount applied amounts on the netting tables for Netting Reference IDs that have the apply discount option set. The program will then call on accounts payable to provide the amount of discount taken for the selected accounts payable vouchers and will call on accounts receivable to provide the amount of discount taken for the selected accounts receivables items to complete the Netting Close process.

These are some of the factors that you will want to consider when applying discounts to netted transactions.

1. While applying discounts to netted transactions, all accounts payable vouchers and accounts receivable items associated with a netting reference are evaluated for discount and a discount is applied wherever applicable. The collection of any accounts receivable item balance, whether partial or final, could be impacted by various factors such as the ability to pay by the customer, the amount of liquidity, and more as an event that happens after the process applies the discount to netted transactions and the information stored in the accounts receivable tables is not subject to reconciliation with the information stored in Netting History tables.

2. The selection of the Apply Discount to Transactions check box is applied to both Accounts Payable vouchers and Accounts Receivable items.

3. While applying a discount to netted transactions, accounts payable vouchers and accounts receivable items are not re-sequenced.

4. You cannot partially deselect an accounts payable voucher or an accounts receivable item when you select the Apply Discount Transaction check box.

Here is an example of bilateral netting transactions where discounts have been applied to netting transactions.

Netting Scenario where AR > AP

	Gross Amount	***Netting Amount***	***Balance Amount***	***De selected Amount***	***Earned Discount***	***Discount Available***	***Discount Taken***	***Adjusted Gross Amount***	***Netting Status***
AP Voucher	1500.00	1500.00			Y	30.00			NET
AP Voucher	1000.00	1000.00			Y	20.00			NET
AP Voucher	500.00	500.00			Y	10.00			NET
	3000.00	3000.00				60.00			
AR Item	1500.00	1500.00			Y	30.00			NET

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

	Gross Amount	***Netting Amount***	***Balance Amount***	***De selected Amount***	***Earned Discount***	***Discount Available***	***Discount Taken***	***Adjusted Gross Amount***	***Netting Status***
AR Item	2000.00	1500.00	500.00		Y	40.00			SPLIT
AR Item	500.00		500.00		Y	10.00			BALANCE
	4000.00	3000.00	1000.00			80.00			
After Applying Discount	AR>AP								
	Gross Amount	Netting Amount	Balance Amount	Deselected Amount	Earn Discount	Discount Available	Discount Taken	Adjusted Gross Amount	Netting Status
AP Voucher	1500.00	1470.00			Y	30.00	30.00	1470.00	NET
AP Voucher	1000.00	980.00			Y	20.00	20.00	980.00	NET
AP Voucher	500.00	490.00			Y	10.00	10.00	490.00	NET
	3000.00	2940.00				60.00	60.00	2940.00	
AR Item	1500.00				Y	30.00	30.00	1470.00	NET
AR Item	2000.00	1470.00	490.00		Y	40.00	40.00	1960.00	SPLIT
AR Item	500.00	147000	490.00		Y	10.00	10.00	490/—	BALANCE
	4000.00	2940.00	980.00			80.00	80.00	3920.00	

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Common Elements Used to Manage Bilateral Netting

Field or Control	*Description*
Apply Discount to Transactions	Select to indicate that the system should consider the discount from the payment terms when calculating netted amounts. .
Closing Method	Select *Partial,* the delivered default value.
Contact	Specify the financial contacts for a netting relationship.
Contract ID	Enter the netting contract identification number.
Customer ID	Enter the unique identifier code for a customer.
Discount Available Amount	Displays the amount of discount that is available for payable vouchers and receivable items. This value is calculated when the **Apply Discount to Transactions** option is selected.
GL Unit	Enter the General Ledger business unit.
Netting Rule ID	Enter the netting rule identification code.
Participant ID	Enter the netting participant identification code.
Payable Discount Available	Displays the amount of discount that is available for payable vouchers. This value is calculated when the **Apply Discount to Transactions** option is selected.
Receivable Discount Available	Displays the amount of discount that is available for receivable items. This value is calculated when the Apply Discount to Transactions option is selected.
Remit Vendor	Enter the vendor payee.
Schedule SetID	Select the correct SetID to establish the interval when the netting executes.
Settlement Date	Specify the actual date of the settlement payment.
Vendor ID	Enter a unique identifier code for a vendor.

Related Links

Understanding the Bilateral Netting Process

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Prerequisites for Managing Bilateral Netting

Before using netting, you must define your:

- General Ledger business units.
- Payables Suppliers, Supplier IDs, and business units.
- Receivables Customer IDs and business units.
- Market rates and netting account currency codes, to facilitate multicurrency netting.
- Netting accounts.

In addition, before defining a bilateral netting relationship, you must set up the following in Payables and Receivables:

1. Enter a voucher on the Vouchers page in Payables.
2. Enter an invoice on the Online Pending Item Entry page in Receivables or interface an invoice from your billing application into Receivables.
3. Run the Receivables Update process (AR_UPDATE) using the Receivables Update page.

Related Links

"Defining Netting Accounts" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)
"Defining General Ledger Business Units" (PeopleSoft General Ledger)
"Entering Invoice Information for Online Vouchers" (PeopleSoft Payables)
"Running Receivables Update" (PeopleSoft Receivables)

Setting Up Bilateral Nets

Pages Used to Set Up Bilateral Nets

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Netting Participants Page	NET_PARTICIPANT	Define the supplier and customer relationships involved in netting.
Add Multiple Suppliers Page	NET_VENDOR_ADD	Search and select multiple suppliers associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.
Add Multiple Customers Page	NET_CUSTOMER_ADD	Search and select multiple customers associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Netting Rules Page	NET_NETTING_RULES	Enter a SQL statement that will be included into the Application Engine Netting selection logic.
Netting Contracts - Primary Information Page	NET_CONTRACT_PRIM	Enter primary information for netting contracts.
Netting Contracts - Settlement Information Page	NET_CONTRACT_STL	Define all settlement instruction information for a netting contract.
Netting Exclusion Parameters Page	NET_EXCL_PARM	Define parameters used to automatically exclude certain payments from the AP and AR netting process.

Understanding Setting Up Bilateral Nets

To define netting information, use the following components:

- Netting Contracts component (NET_CONTRACT).
- Netting Exclusion Parameters component (NET_EXCL_PARM).
- Netting Participants component (NET_PARTICIPANT).
- Netting Rules component (NET_NETTING_RULES).

The steps to set up bilateral nets are as follows:

1. Define participant relationships.
2. (Optional) Add multiple suppliers.
3. (Optional) Add multiple customers.
4. Define netting rules with SQL statements.
5. Enter primary information for netting contracts.
6. Enter settlement information for netting contracts.
7. Define voucher netting exclusion parameters.

Understanding Voucher Netting Exclusion

You can define parameters to exclude certain vouchers from payment. The netting exclusion functionality is built to accommodate certain U.S. Federal Government requirements on voucher payments (Financial Systems Integration Office [FSIO] requirement PMC-31, to "allow for the exclusion of payments from agency offset based on user-defined criteria including funding source, object class, vendor type, and vendor number"), but any organization can use this feature to exclude vouchers from netting, based on

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

defined parameters. Although you generally define netting exclusion parameters during the setup phase of voucher payment implementation, you can create or modify these definitions at any time.

This functionality also takes advantage of PeopleSoft's ChartField utility process. As ChartFields can be renamed, and made active or inactive, the setup of these user-defined parameters is dynamic to enable you to select the appropriate ChartField field name and its corresponding values. In addition, you can define multiple sets of exclusion parameters, by defining multiple rows per Exclusion ID, and/or defining multiple Exclusion IDs.

Values entered on the Netting Exclusion Parameters page are stored and used at voucher save time to determine if the voucher should be excluded from the netting process between Payables and Receivables. If an exclusion parameter definition has been created, and a payment falls within the exclusion and effective date parameters, then the payment is excluded from the Payables and Receivables netting process and paid in full. (The system changes the internal voucher netting value to *N* to indicate the voucher is not applicable to netting.) This applies to payments created normally through the PeopleSoft Pay Cycle process.

Though the Exclude from Netting Parameters and the Netting Rule Definition pages share a similar purpose—defining rules or parameters for the voucher netting process—their results are different. The netting exclusion functionality excludes matching vouchers from payment by setting the internal netting flag to N (not applicable for netting). The netting rules functionality excludes vouchers based on the criteria defined in the rules.

Note: Netting exclusion parameters apply to the entire voucher—not just a particular part of the voucher. If a single data element (or "piece") of a voucher meets the exclusion requirements, the entire voucher is excluded. For example, if a voucher has 100 lines with 200 distributions, and only one distribution qualifies for netting exclusion. In this scenario, the entire voucher and payment schedule—all 200 distributions—is excluded from netting.

Related Links

"Understanding Pay Cycle Processing" (PeopleSoft Payables)

Prerequisites

To use the Exclude from Netting functionality with vouchers, you must do the following:

- Define suppliers as "netting suppliers," using the Apply Netting option on the Supplier Information - Payment Options page.
- Create vouchers using defined netting suppliers.

Related Links

"Scheduling and Creating Voucher Payments for Online Vouchers" (PeopleSoft Payables)

Netting Participants Page

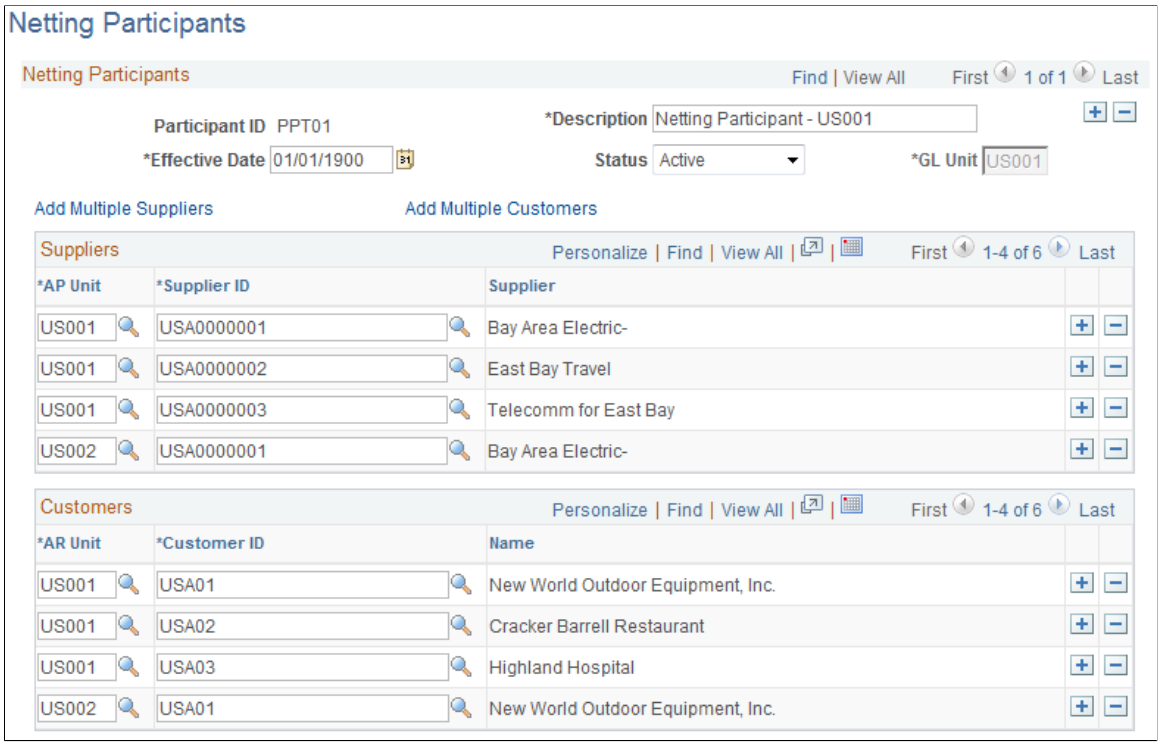
Use the Netting Participants page (NET_PARTICIPANT) to define the supplier and customer relationships involved in netting.

Navigation:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Cash Management > Administer Cash > Netting Participants

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Netting Participants page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
GL Unit (General Ledger business unit)	For reporting purposes, you must select the unit that is targeted by these transactions, because the transactions affect balances at the general ledger level.

Suppliers

Field or Control	*Description*
AP Unit (Payables business unit)	Select the unit that houses the suppliers that are entering the netting relationship, and specify the **Supplier ID.**
Add Multiple Suppliers	Click to access the Add Multiple Suppliers page, and make this relationship a one-to-many or many-to-many relationship (for example, you might want to net the transactions of subsidiaries to a corporation).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Customers

Field or Control	*Description*
AR Unit (Receivables business unit)	Select the unit that houses the customers that are entering the netting relationship, and specify the **Customer ID.**
Add Multiple Customers	Click to access the Add Multiple Customers page, and make this relationship a one-to-many or many-to-many relationship (for example, you might want to net the transactions of subsidiaries to a corporation).

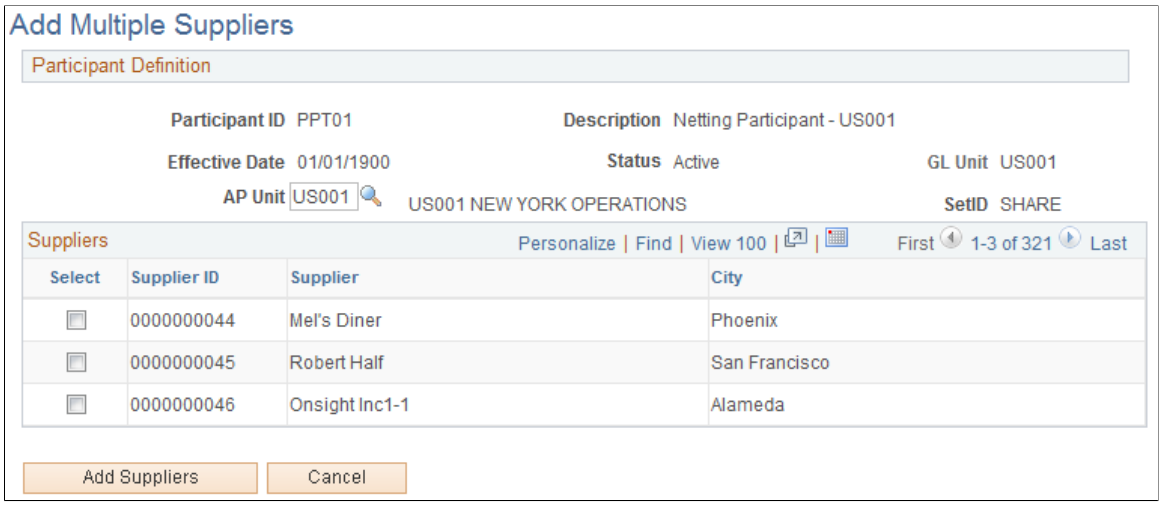
Add Multiple Suppliers Page

Use the Add Multiple Suppliers page (NET_VENDOR_ADD) to search and select multiple suppliers associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.

Navigation:

Click **Add Multiple Suppliers** on the Participant Definition page.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Add Multiple Suppliers page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
AP Unit	Specify a business unit from which to select suppliers.
Add Suppliers	Select suppliers and click this button to add them as participants.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

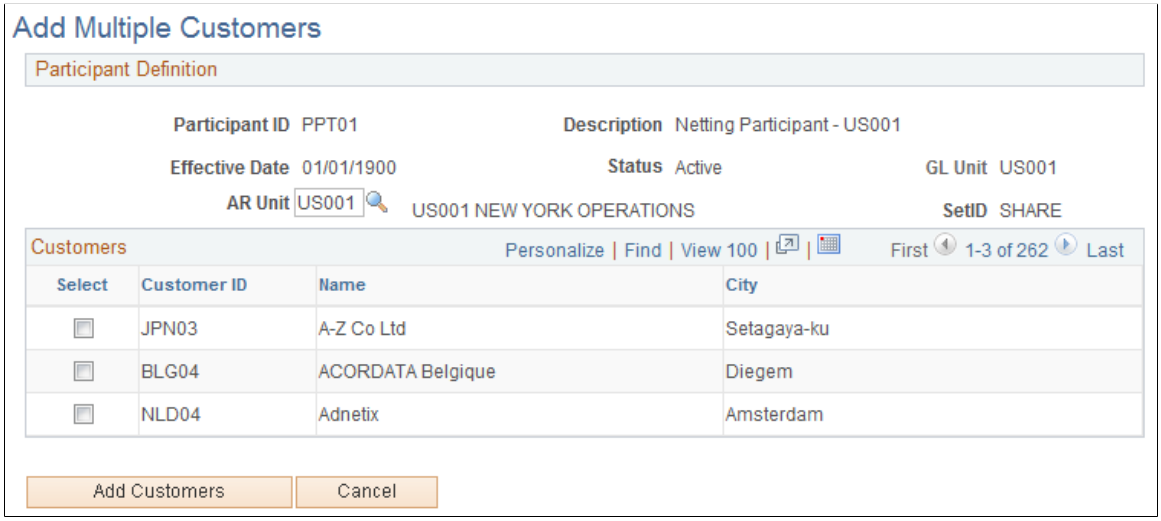
Add Multiple Customers Page

Use the Add Multiple Customers page (NET_CUSTOMER_ADD) to search and select multiple customers associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.

Navigation:

Click **Add Multiple Customers** on the Participant Definition page.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Add Multiple Customers page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
AR Unit	Specify a business unit from which to select customers.
Add Customers	Select customers and click this button to add them as participants.

Netting Rules Page

Use the Netting Rules page (NET_NETTING_RULES) to enter a SQL statement that will be included into the Application Engine Netting selection logic.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Administer Cash** > **Netting Rules**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Netting Rules page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Field or Control	*Description*
Receivable SQL and Payable SQL	Enter the appropriate SQL statements to set up the mechanics of the net, and to further define and/or limit which open items are selected. For example, `where I.DEPARTMENT equals 'ABC'`.
	Click to add comments regarding SQL statements for the respective (Receivable or Payable) edit box.

Netting Contracts - Primary Information Page

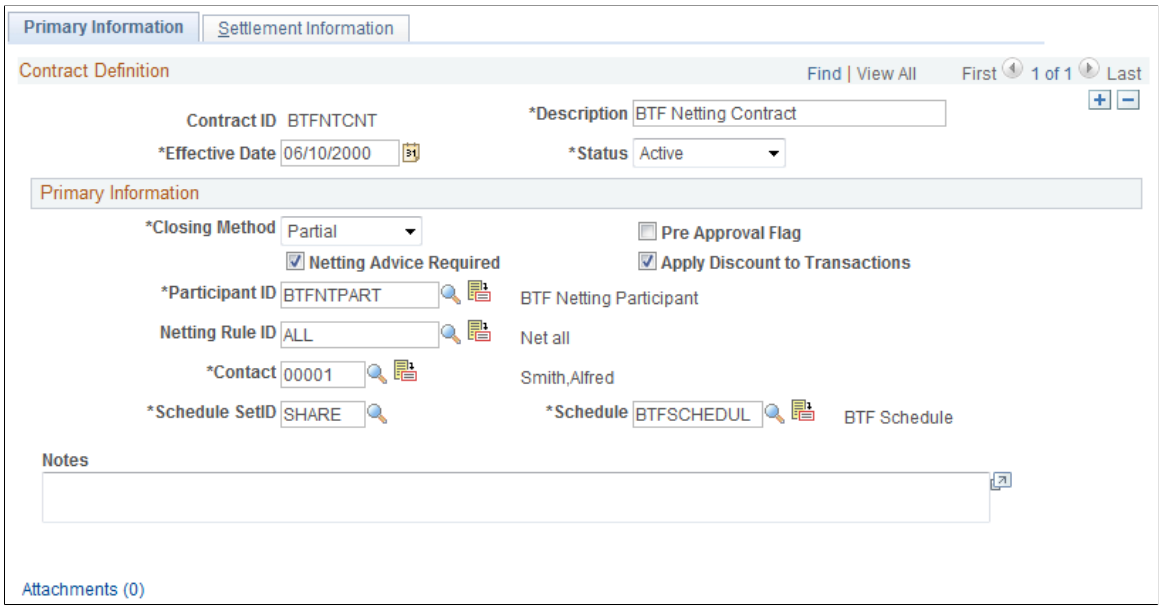
Use the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page (NET_CONTRACT_PRIM) to enter primary information for netting contracts.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Administer Cash** > **Netting Contracts** > **Primary Information**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Primary Information

Field or Control	*Description*
Pre Approval Flag	Select to indicate the netting contract is already approved.
Netting Advice Required	Select to notify a contact when netting is run.
Apply Discount to Transactions	Select to indicate that the system should consider the discount from the payment terms when calculating netted amounts.
Schedules	Specify the netting run schedule for the specified **Schedule SetID.**
	Click **View Participants** to view participants of the specified Participant ID.
	Click **View Rules** to view rules of the specified Netting Rule ID.
	Click **View Contacts** to view contact information for the specified Contact ID.
	Click **View Schedules** to view schedule information for the specified Schedule.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Related Links

Netting Participants Page
Netting Rules Page
"Contact Information Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

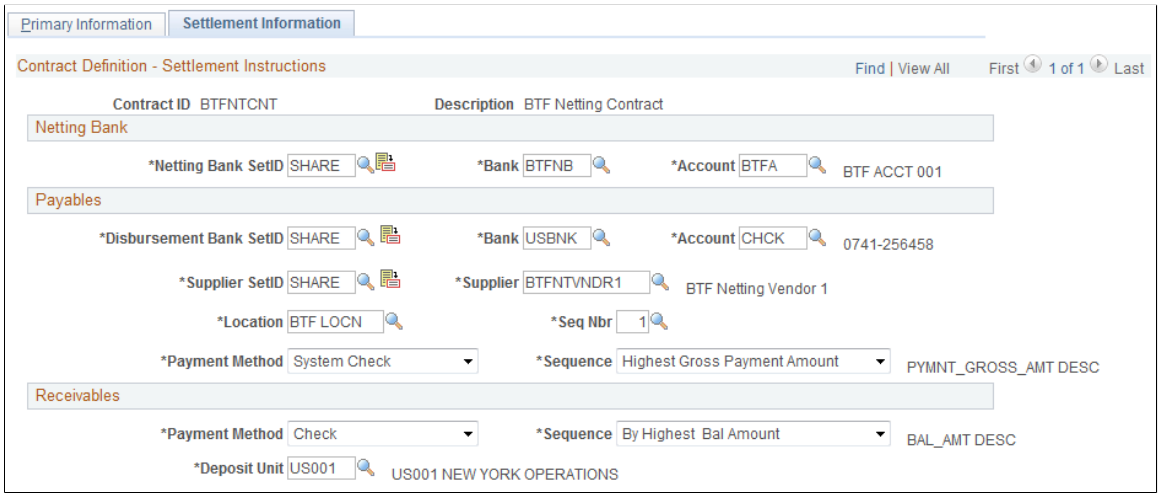
Netting Contracts - Settlement Information Page

Use the Netting Contracts - Settlement Information page (NET_CONTRACT_STL) to define all settlement instruction information for a netting contract.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Administer Cash** > **Netting Contracts** > **Settlement Information**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Netting Contracts - Settlement Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Netting Bank SetID	Assign a netting SetID; then select the **Bank** and **Account** for the netting activities. The netting bank is a virtual bank account: no funds are actually paid into or out of the netting account. It is debited and credited by the netted amount of the AP and AR transactions.
Disb Bank SetID (disbursement bank SetID)	Select from the available external banks, and specify the settle through **Bank** and **Account**.
Supplier SetID	Assign a supplier SetID. In the **Supplier** field, designate the supplier involved in the net and assign a **Location** and **Seq Nbr** (sequence number). You enter the supplier ID and sequence number to associate the default bank with that supplier (this is required to support certain payment methods).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Payment Method	For the Payables group box, specify if payments are submitted by *Automated Clearing House, Direct Debit, EFT, Manual Check, System Check,* or *Wire Report.* For the Receivables group box, specify if payments are received by *Check (Check, EFT, etc.), Direct Debit,* or *Draft.*
Sequence	Select the order in which balances will net, either *By Account Date (FIFO)* (first in first out), *By Accounting Date (LIFO)* (last in first out), *By Due Date (FIFO), By Due Date (LIFO), By Voucher, Highest Gross Balance,* or *Smallest Gross Balance.*
Deposit Unit	Define which business unit will receive payment after the net.
	Click **View Netting Account** to view detailed information for the specified netting account.
	Click **View Disbursement Bank** to view detailed information for the specified external bank account.
	Click **View Supplier Bank** to view detailed information for the supplier location.

Netting Exclusion Parameters Page

Use the Netting Exclusion Parameters page (NET_EXCL_PARM) to define parameters used to automatically exclude certain payments from the AP and AR netting process.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Administer Cash** > **Netting Exclusion Parameters**

Select the parameter for excluding the voucher.

When you select **Supplier ID,** also specify a **Supplier** name and optionally, a **Location.**

When you select **Supplier Classification,** also select a **Classification** option of *Attorney, Employee, HRMS,* or *Supplier.*

In the **ChartField Exclusion Parameters** region, specify a ChartField and corresponding value on which to base the netting exclusion.

Note: You can only specify one value per defined ChartField name.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Selecting Nets Automatically

Define processing parameters and automatically select your nets using the Automatic Netting Selection process (TR_NET_ASEL).

Page Used to Automatically Select Nets

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Automatic Netting Selection Page	NET_AUTO_RQST	Set up an automatic process to run bilateral nets.

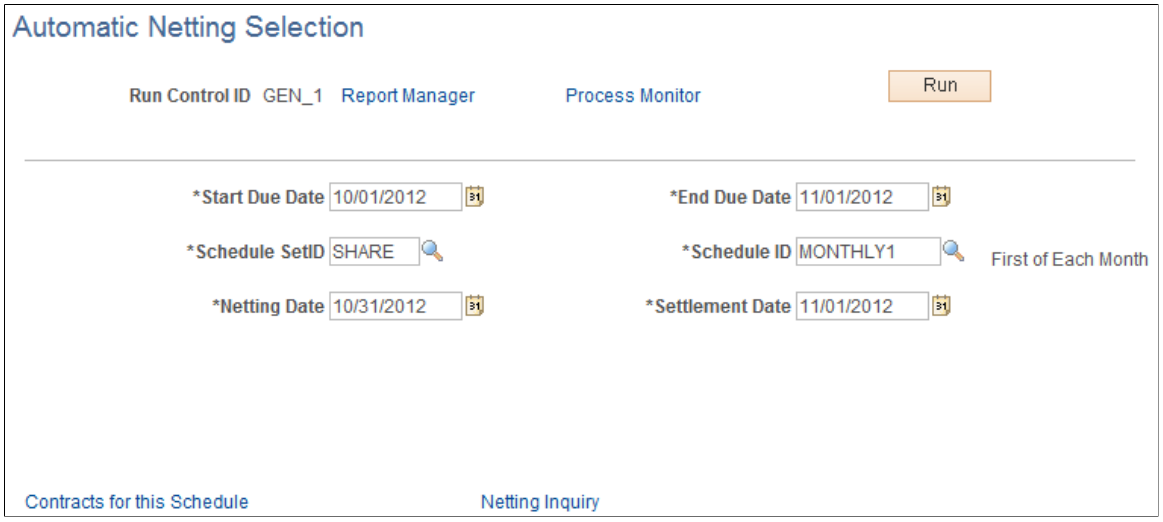
Automatic Netting Selection Page

Use the Automatic Netting Selection page (NET_AUTO_RQST) to set up an automatic process to run bilateral nets.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** > **Automatic Netting Selection** > **Automatic Netting Selection**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Automatic Netting Selection page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Contracts for this Schedule	Click to access the Review Netting Contracts page, and view all contracts associated with the specified Schedule ID.
Netting Inquiry	Click to access the Netting Inquiry page, and view information for the associated Netting Reference ID.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

When the Automatic Netting Selection process is complete, use the Review Multiple Netting page to verify and modify the netted information.

Related Links

Administering Nets

Creating Nets Manually

Pages Used to Manually Create Nets

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Manual Selection Page	NET_MANUAL_RQST	Enter primary information.
Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst Page	NET_MANUAL_RQST1	Set up your settlement instructions.
Manual Select Netting - Payables Page	NET_MAN_RQST_AP	Set up payables for manual netting.
Enter Manual Selection Page (vouchers)	NET_VOUCHER_ADD	Add multiple vouchers to payables for manual netting. See Adding Multiple Vouchers for Payables Manual Netting.
Manual Select Netting - Receivables Page	NET_MAN_RQST_AR	Set up receivables for manual netting.
Enter Manual Selection Page (items)	NET_ITEM_ADD	Add multiple items to receivables for manual netting. See Adding Multiple Items for Receivables Manual Netting.

Understanding Creating Nets Manually

To manually create bilateral nets, you do the following:

1. Enter primary netting information.
2. Define the settlement instructions.
3. Set up the payables leg.
4. (Optional) Add multiple vouchers to the payables leg.
5. Set up the receivables leg.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

6. (Optional) Add multiple items to the receivables leg.

Common Elements Used to Manually Create Nets

Field or Control	*Description*
Add Multiple Items	Click to add multiple vouchers from a specified business Unit and Supplier ID to your bilateral net.
Request Status	Displays either *WIP* (work in progress) or *Submitted.*
Total AP Txns (transactions)	Total number of Payables transaction items.
Total AR Txns (transactions)	Total number of Receivables transaction items.

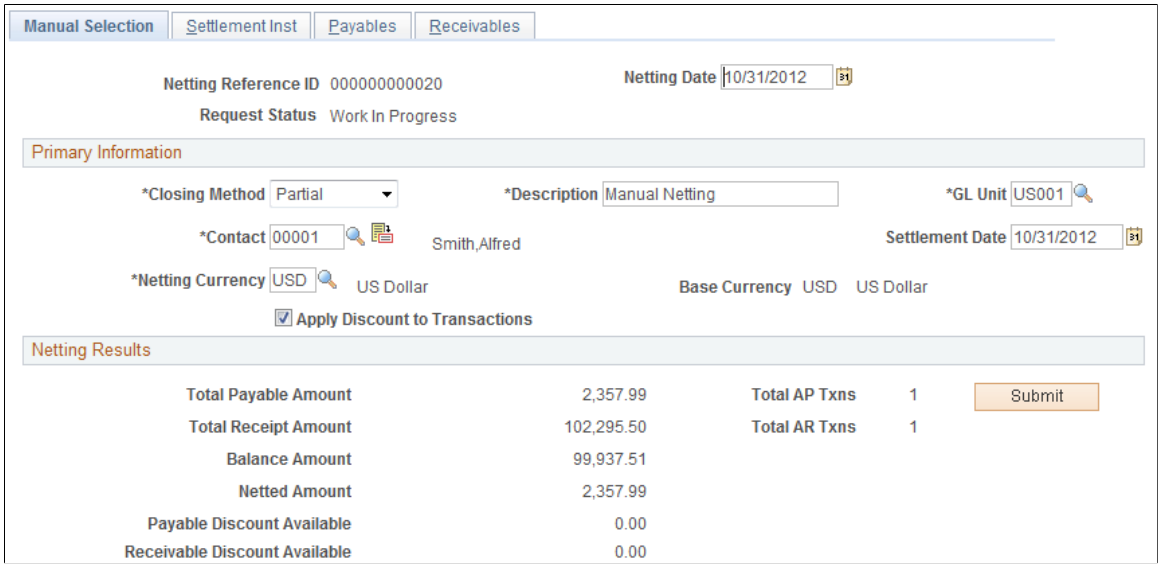
Manual Selection Page

Use the Manual Selection page (NET_MANUAL_RQST) to enter primary information.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** > **Manual Select Netting** > **Manual Selection**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Manual Selection page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Netting Date	Displays the effective date of the net.

Field or Control	*Description*
Netting Currency	Select a netting currency. The system converts all amounts and displays them in this defined netting currency.
Base Currency	Displays the base currency of the selected GL Unit.
Submit	Click to submit the net. **Note:** Prior to submitting the net, you must complete the other pages in this component.

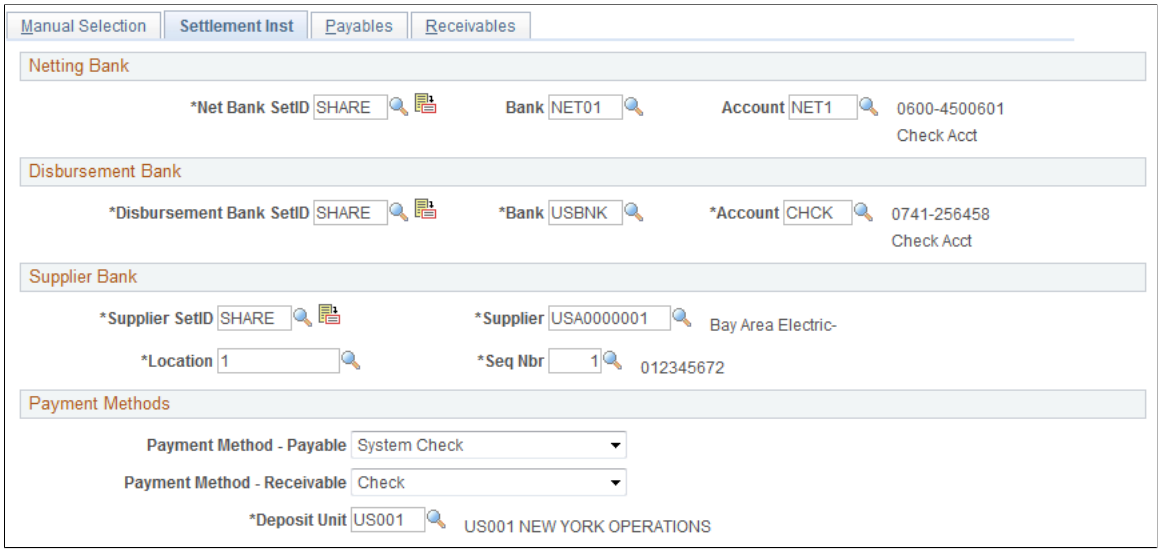
Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst Page

Use the Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst (instructions) page (NET_MANUAL_RQST1) to set up your settlement instructions.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** > **Manual Select Netting** > **Settlement Inst**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Settlement Inst (instructions) page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Netting Bank	Click to select your netting bank SetID, and specify the bank and account.
Disbursement Bank	Click to select your disbursement bank ID, and specify the bank and account.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Supplier Bank	Click the link to select your supplier bank ID. Enter the **Supplier, Location,** and **Sequence Nbr** (sequence number).
Payment Method-Payable	Select *Automated Clearing House, Direct Debit, EFT, Manual Check, System Check,* or *Wire Report.*
Payment Method-Receivable	Select *Check, Direct Debit,* or *Draft.*
Deposit Unit	Define which business unit receives payment after the net.

Related Links

Netting Contracts - Settlement Information Page

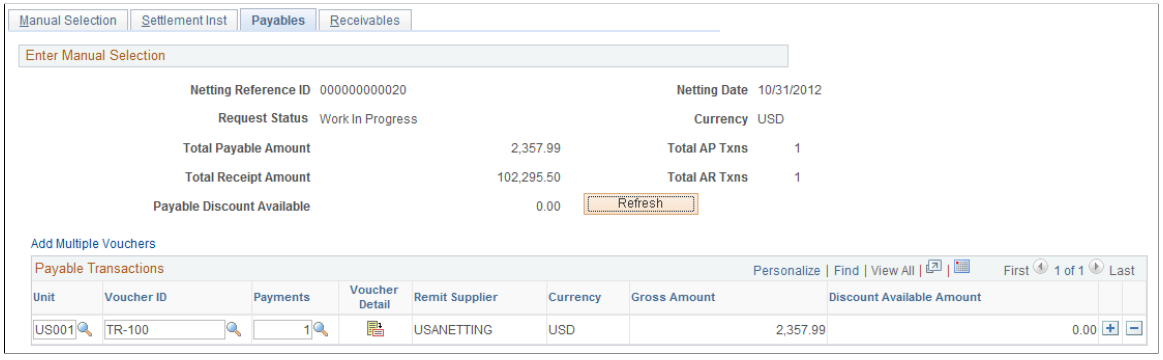
Manual Select Netting - Payables Page

Use the Manual Select Netting - Payables page (NET_MAN_RQST_AP) to set up payables for manual netting.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** > **Manual Select Netting** > **Payables**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Manual Select Netting - Payables page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
	Click **Voucher Detail** to access the Payables Voucher Detail page and view information for the voucher line item.
Refresh	When you are finished entering payable transaction items, click to update **Total Payment Amount.**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Adding Multiple Vouchers for Payables Manual Netting

Use the Enter Manual Selection (vouchers) page (NET_VOUCHER_ADD) to add multiple vouchers to payables for manual netting.

Navigation:

Click the **Add Multiple Vouchers** link on the Manual Select Netting - Payables page.

After you enter a business unit and supplier ID, select each voucher that you want to add and click **Add.**

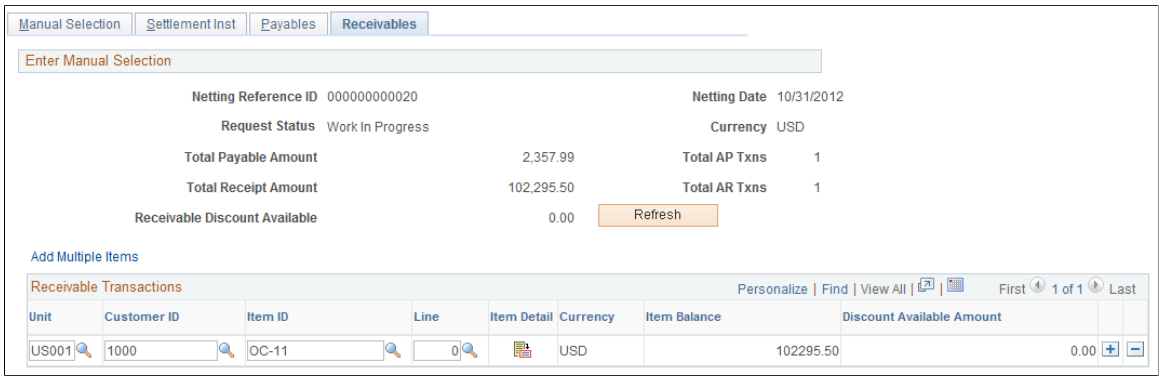
Manual Select Netting - Receivables Page

Use the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page (NET_MAN_RQST_AR) to set up receivables for manual netting.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** > **Manual Select Netting** > **Receivables**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
	Click **Show Item Detail** to access the Receivables Item Maintenance page, and view information for the receivables line item.
Refresh	When you are finished entering receivable transaction items, to update **Total Receipt Amount.**

Adding Multiple Items for Receivables Manual Netting

Use the Enter Manual Selection (items) page (NET_ITEM_ADD) to add multiple items to receivables for manual netting.

Navigation:

Click the **Add Multiple Items** link on the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

After you enter a business **Unit** and **Customer ID,** select each item that you want to add and click **Add.**

Adjusting Manually Netted Information

After creating manual bilateral nets you'll need to maintain them. Depending on your user ID and security settings, you can edit certain enabled fields on each page. These pages are similar to the manual net creation procedure pages.

Pages Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Manual Adjustment Page	NET_MANUAL_ADJUST	Adjust manual net information.
Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr Page	NET_MANUAL_ADJUST1	Adjust settlement instructions .
Adjust Netting - Payables Page	NET_MAN_ADJUST_AP	Adjust payables voucher information.
Adjust Netting - Receivables Page	NET_MAN_ADJUST_AR	Adjust receivables item information.

Common Elements Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information

Field or Control	*Description*
Gross Amount	Displays the Gross amount, which must equal the netting amount plus balance amount plus deselected amount. However, you can only populate two of these three fields to equal the gross amount, not all three.
DeSelected Payable	Displays the payables amount subtracted from the gross amount.
DeSelected Receivable	Displays the receivables amount subtracted from the gross amount.

Manual Adjustment Page

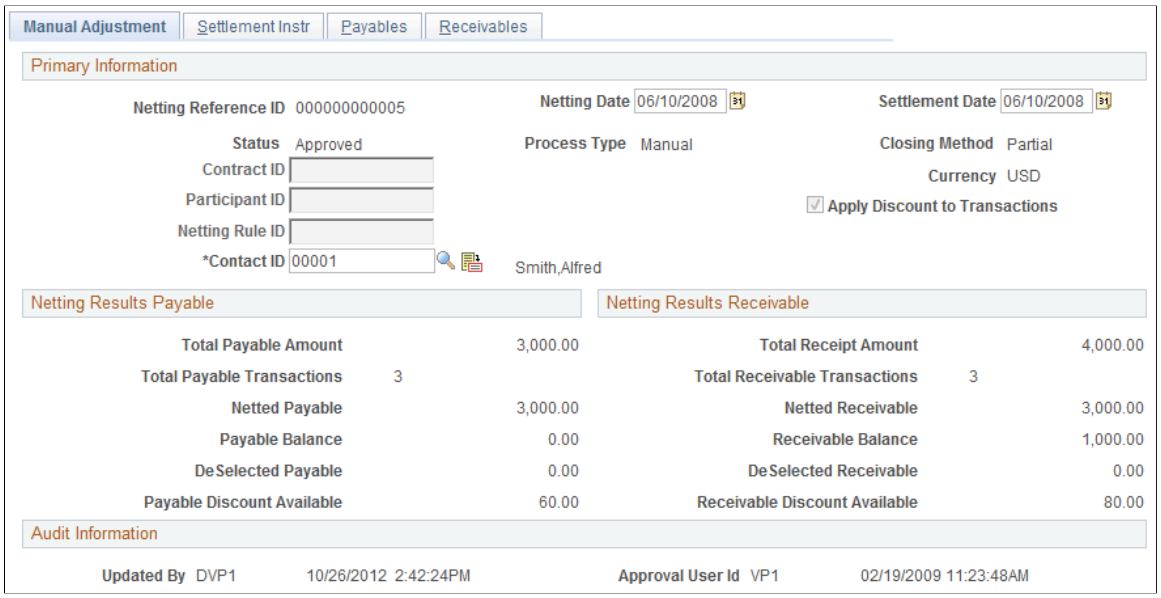
Use the Manual Adjustment page (NET_MANUAL_ADJUST) to adjust manual net information.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** > **Adjust Netting** > **Manual Adjustment**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Manual Adjustment page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Process Type	Indicates whether the net was processed by either *Automatic* or *Manual* method.

Netting Results Payable

The system calculates the amounts based on the transaction entries on the Payables page.

Field or Control	*Description*
Netted Payable	Displays the netting amount total.
Payable Balance	Displays the balance amount total.
DeSelected Payable	Displays the deselected amount total.

Netting Results Receivable

The system calculates the amounts displayed based on the transaction entries on the Receivables page.

Field or Control	*Description*
Netted Receivable	Displays the netting amount total.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Receivable Balance	Displays the balance amount total.
DeSelected Receivable	Displays the deselected amount total.

Related Links

Creating Nets Manually

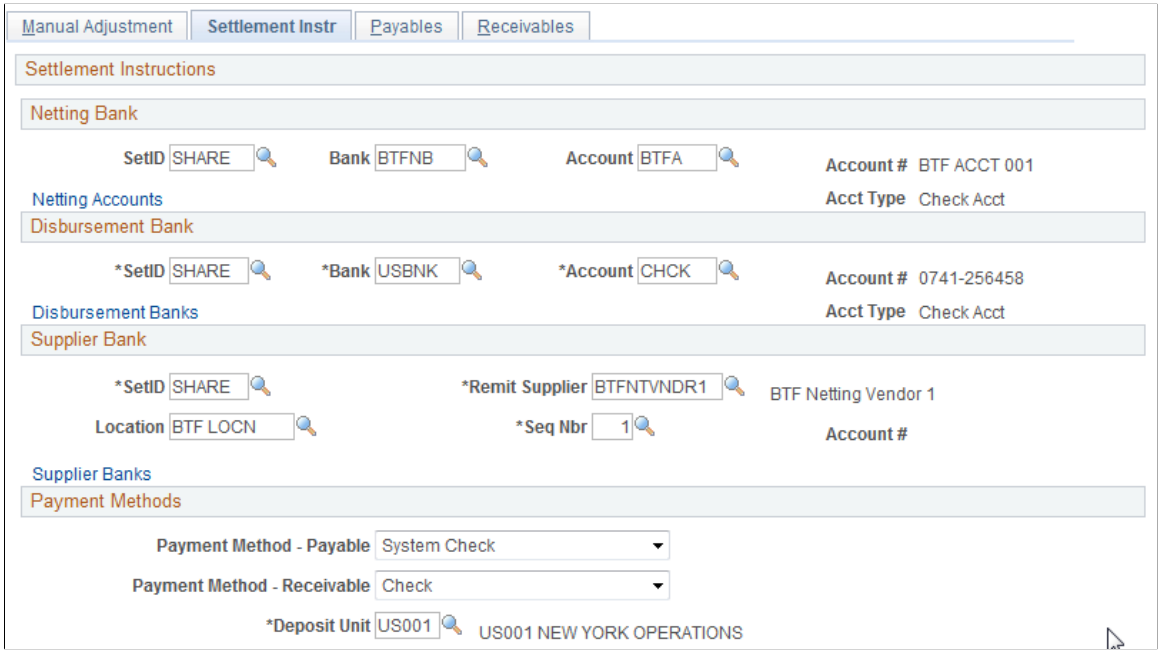
Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr Page

Use the Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr (instructions) page (NET_MANUAL_ADJUST1) to adjust settlement instructions .

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** > **Adjust Netting** > **Settlement Instr**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr (instructions) page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Related Links

Netting Contracts - Settlement Information Page

Adjust Netting - Payables Page

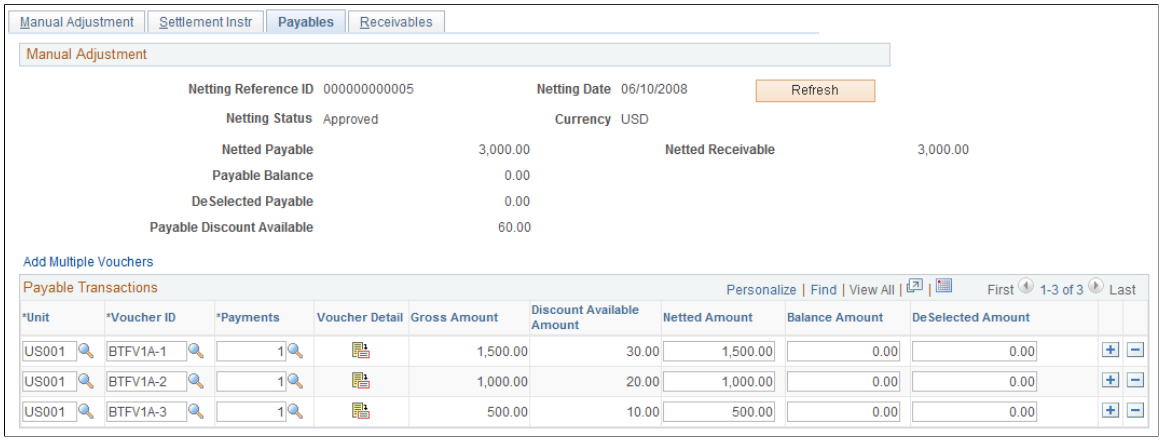
Use the Adjust Netting - Payables page (NET_MAN_ADJUST_AP) to adjust payables voucher information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Bi-Lateral Netting > Adjust Netting > Payables

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Adjust Netting - Payables page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Note: You can only add transaction items. You cannot delete existing or added transactions.

Related Links

Manual Select Netting - Payables Page

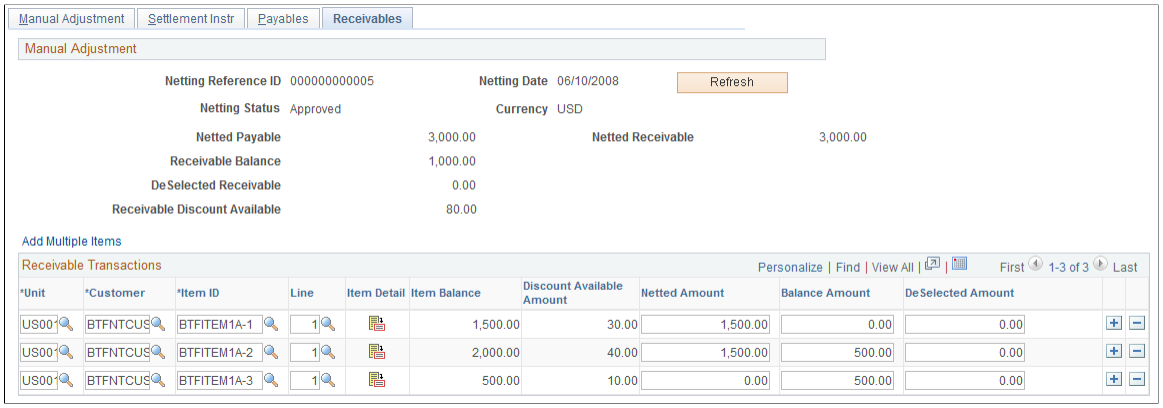
Adjust Netting - Receivables Page

Use the Adjust Netting - Receivables page (NET_MAN_ADJUST_AR) to adjust receivables item information.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Bi-Lateral Netting > Adjust Netting > Receivables

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Adjust Netting - Receivables page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Note: You can only add transaction items—you can't delete existing or added transactions.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Related Links

Manual Select Netting - Receivables Page

Processing Multicurrency Nets

This section provides an overview of the multicurrency netting functionality, and discusses how to process multicurrency nets.

Multicurrency Netting Functionality

PeopleSoft netting includes functionality to automatically adjust netted non-base currency accounting entries to ensure that the netting bank entries are in balance. This functionality requires that you setup certain pages and currency default values.

When you have established the necessary currency codes, no further input is required because the system automatically evaluates and adjusts the necessary netting accounting entries.

The adjustment functionality occurs during the Netting Close process (TR_NET_CLOSE), which the system calls from the Pay Cycle Selection process (AP_PAYSELECT). The Netting Close process analyzes if voucher and item accounting entries meet certain criteria. For example, if netting currency is greater than or less than the base currency. If the entries match the criteria, the Netting Close process adjusts them by updating the AR (PAYMENT_ITEM) and AP (PAYMENT_VCHR_XREF, VOUCHER, VOUCHER_LINE, DISTRIB_LINE) information prior to posting in AP and AR. Posting creates accounting entries, therefore, the netting adjustment occurs prior to posting to avoid the additional work of adjusting accounting entries.

Here is an example of the netting adjustment functionality when the net involves Japanese yen (JPY) and United States dollars (USD):

- Netting Base Amount = 10000 JPY.
- Netting Foreign Amount = 100 USD.
- Rate = 100 JPY/USD.
- Summarized receivables amount for netting = 100 USD (10001 JPY).
- Summarized payables amount for netting = 100 USD (9999 JPY).

Given the above, the system calculates that:

- The Netting Base Amount of 10000 JPY is less than the receivables amount of 10001 JPY, and subtracts 1 JPY from the receivables total.
- The Netting Base Amount of 10000 JPY is greater than the payables amount of 9999 JPY, and adds 1 JPY to the payables total.

Prerequisites

If you are netting bank accounts that are defined with different currencies, you must ensure that:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- You have established an exchange rate between two different currency codes on the Market Rates page.
- You have established as many valid currencies as needed by the specific netting bank account on the Netting Accounts - Valid Currencies (BANK_ACCT_CURR_SEC) page. For example, if you are netting between two accounts (one using JPY, one using USD) you must define both JPY and USD as valid currencies for both accounts.

Related Links

Defining Market Rates

"Defining Netting Accounts" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Processing Multicurrency Nets

To process multicurrency nets:

1. For the AP Voucher Entry confirm that:
   - You define the **Curr** (currency) field on the Invoice Information page with the convert into currency.
   - You define the **Payment Currency** field on the Invoice Information - Payments: Payment Options page with the convert into currency.
2. Approve the AP Voucher, but do not post it.
3. For the AR Item Entry confirm that:
   - You define the **Control Currency** field on the Group Control page with the convert into currency.
   - You define the **Currency** field on the Pending Item 1 page with the convert into currency.
4. Post the AR vouchers using the Group Control - Group Action page. (You can post AR vouchers as they are not evaluated by the Net Close process.)
5. Run the Receivables Update process (AR_UPDATE).
6. Create a manual net using the Manual Netting pages, being sure to define the **Netting Currency** field with the convert into currency. When you complete creating the manual net, click **Submit.**
7. Approve the multicurrency net using the Review Multiple Netting page.
8. Establish voucher payment selection criteria for the pay cycle using the Payment Selection Criteria page.
9. Process the pay cycle and create the payment using the Pay Cycle Manager page.
10. Post the voucher using the Payment Posting Request page.
11. Run the Receivables Update process (AR_UPDATE) again to close the receivables nets.
12. Review the resulting accounting entry and payment information on the following pages:

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- (AP) Voucher Accounting Entries
- (AR) Group Control - Accounting Entries
- Payment Control - Accounting Entries

Note: Remember that any AP vouchers that are posted before the Netting Close process runs *do not* encounter the rounding analysis of the netting adjustment process. Their associated accounting entries are not adjusted.

Related Links

Administering Nets
Creating Nets Manually
Closing Nets
"Entering Invoice Information for Online Vouchers" (PeopleSoft Payables)
"Running the Voucher Posting Process" (PeopleSoft Payables)
"Reviewing Voucher Information" (PeopleSoft Payables)
"Entering or Updating Pending Items" (PeopleSoft Receivables)
"Understanding Posting and Unposting" (PeopleSoft Receivables)
"Changing and Reviewing Item Information" (PeopleSoft Receivables)

Administering Nets

This topic discusses how to approve and cancel nets:

Pages Used to Administer Nets

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Approve Netting Page	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Approve nets.
Cancel Netting Page	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Cancel nets.

Approve Netting Page

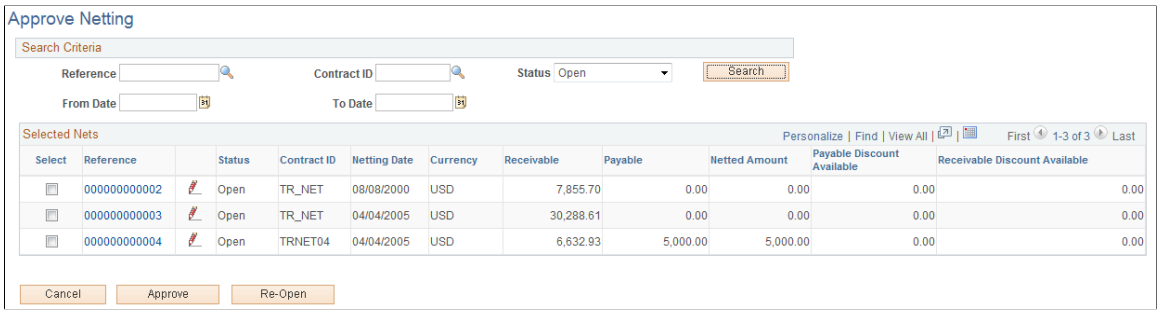
Use the Approve Netting page (NET_NETTING_ADMIN) to approve nets.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** > **Approve Netting** > **Approve Netting**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Netting page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Search	Specify search criteria and click the button to retrieve data on multiple nets. Your results appear in the **Selected Nets** grid.
Status	Select from *Approved, Cancelled, Closed,* or *Open*.
Reference	Click the link to access the bilateral netting pages, and modify transaction information.
	Click to adjust the selected net.
Select	Select an item's check box, then approve or cancel net. The selected net(s) status changes to *Approved* or *Cancelled.* Once netting contracts are approved, they are "locked" and can't be edited. Select **Re-Open** to unlock approved netting contracts for modifications.

Cancel Netting Page

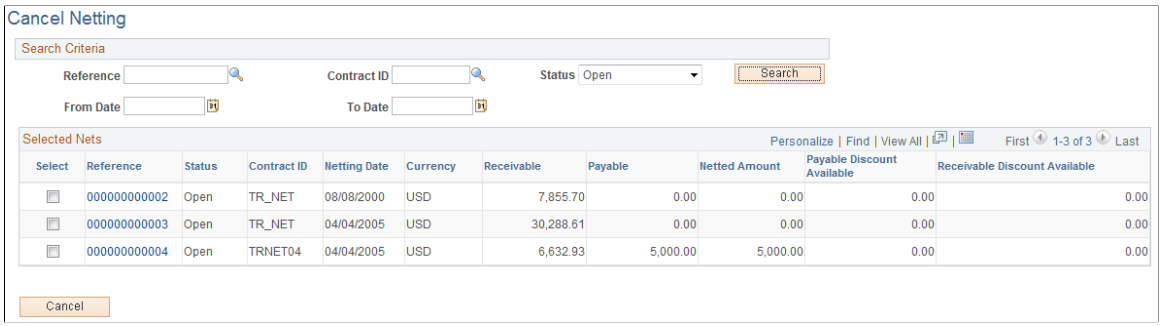
Use the Cancel Netting page (NET_NETTING_ADMIN) to cancel nets.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Bi-Lateral Netting > Cancel Netting > Cancel Netting

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cancel Netting page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Page fields and functionality are similar to those discussed in Administering Nets. However, you can only cancel nets with an *Open* Status.

Related Links

Administering Nets

Closing Nets

Once you select (by manual or automatic methods) and approve nets, you close them in both Payables and Receivables.

You close Payables nets by creating payment selection criteria and running Pay Cycle Manager. If there is any remaining Payables net balance (balance is less than or greater than zero), you must create a new payment selection criteria and run Pay Cycle Manager again.

To close Receivables nets, you must run the Receivables Update process, which updates the customer information with the invoice netting payment created in the netting process.

The Net Closing Process also contains the multicurrency net adjustment functionality. For nets involving multiple currencies this functionality evaluates if the Payables and Receivables accounting entries are in balance, given a defined currency conversion rate. The system then automatically adjusts them as necessary prior to Payables and Receivables posting.

Related Links

Multicurrency Netting Functionality

"Understanding Document Tolerances" (PeopleSoft Purchasing)

"Understanding Pay Cycle Processing" (PeopleSoft Payables)

"Bilateral Netting" (PeopleSoft Receivables)

Understanding the Net Closing Process in Pay Cycle Manager

Here is a more detailed look at the Netting Closing Application Engine processes, TR_NET_CLOSE and TR_NET_ARCLS, which launch from Pay Cycle Manager (AP_APY2015). These processes close the netting population of the AR and AP transactions that are selected for netting. Closing refers to updating the transactions in the netting tables as well as updating transactions in the AP and AR tables. Inserts are

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

done in certain situations. (For example, if an AP payment is greater than the AR balance, PeopleSoft inserts a new line in AP for the remaining balance not offset by the receivable amount.)

Inquiring on Bilateral Nets

You can inquire on your bilateral netting contract and relationship information.

Pages Used to Inquire on Bilateral Nets

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Review Netting Contracts Page	NET_SCHD_CNTRC	Search your netting data by netting contract.
Netting Inquiry Page	NET_INQUIRY_HDR	Review information on a single netting relationship.
Review Multiple Netting Page	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Review information on multiple netting contracts.

Review Netting Contracts Page

Use the Review Netting Contracts page (NET_SCHD_CNTRC) to search your netting data by netting contract.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** >**Review Netting Contracts** >**Review Netting Contracts**

Netting Inquiry Page

Use the Netting Inquiry page (NET_INQUIRY_HDR) to review information on a single netting relationship.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** > **Review Single Netting** > **Netting Inquiry**

Review Multiple Netting Page

Use the Review Multiple Netting page (NET_NETTING_ADMIN) to review information on multiple netting contracts.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Bi-Lateral Netting** > **Review Multiple Netting** > **Review Multiple Netting**

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 8

Performing Cash Sweep to Manage Liquidity

Understanding Cash Sweep Functionality

Cash Sweep enables you to perform a sweep across multiple external bank accounts to manage the liquidity in your organization. Cash Sweep leverages the functionality of these PeopleSoft Treasury features:

- External bank accounts.
- Cash position.
- Fund transfers - Bank account and EFT (electronic fund transfer) requests.

The Cash Sweep process flow includes these steps:

1. Set up the cash sweep structure.

   You set up the cash sweep structure across multiple external bank accounts. The cash sweep structure consists of a master account, overall processing attributes, sub-accounts and sub-account processing attributes.

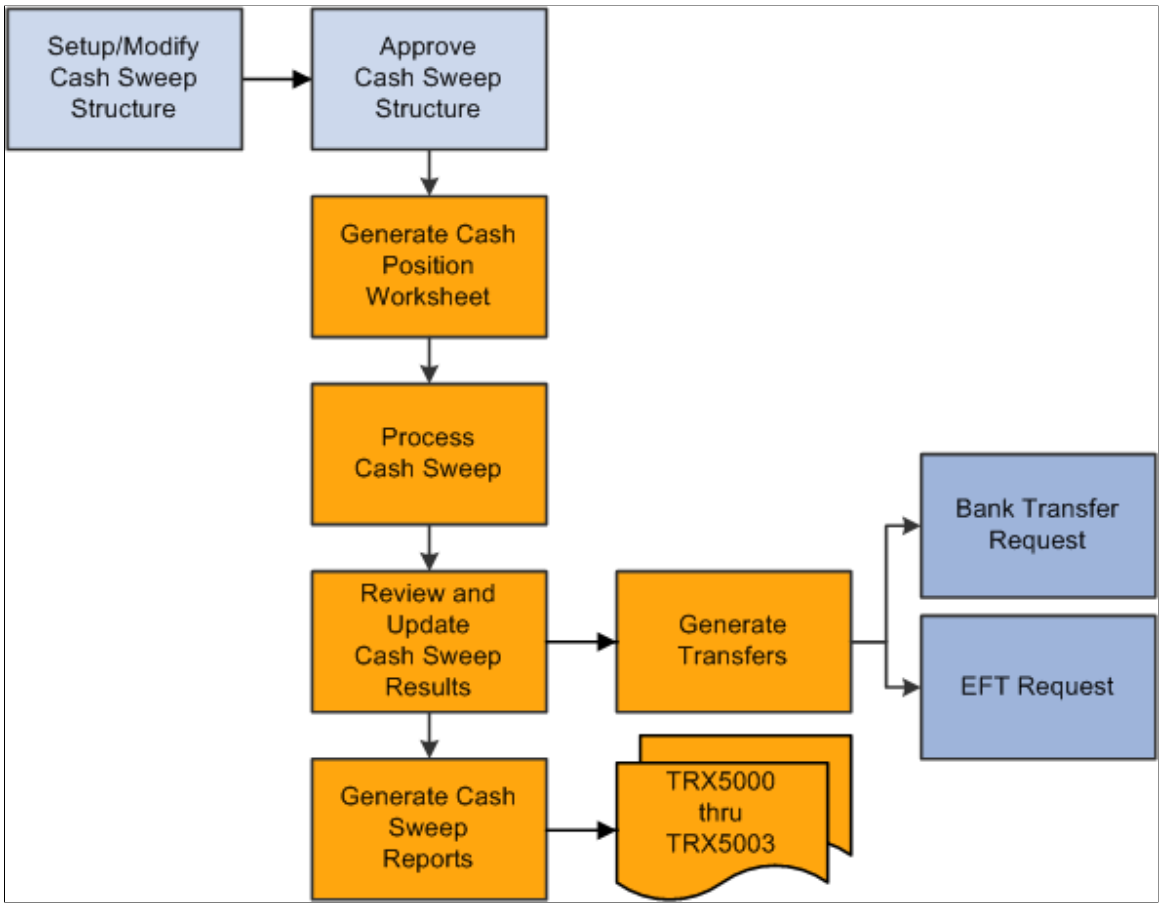
2. Approve the cash sweep structure.

   You must approve any new or modified cash sweep structure before you can run the Cash Sweep process (TR_CSH_SWEEP).

3. Generate the Cash Position worksheet.
4. Run the Cash Sweep process.
5. Review and update the cash sweep results.
6. Generate transfers using bank transfer or EFT request.
7. Generate cash sweep reports.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Cash sweep process flow from setting up or modifying the cash sweep structure and approving the cash sweep structure through generating transfers and reporting



Prerequisites

Complete these prerequisites prior to setting up a cash sweep structure:

- Set up external bank accounts.
- Set up internal bank accounts.
- Set up bank transfer templates.
- Set up EFT templates.
- Define cash position.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Defining and Approving a Cash Sweep Structure

Pages Used to Define and Approve a Cash Sweep Structure

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Cash Sweep Structure Page	CSH_SWEEP_DEFN	Define the master bank account, currency, and cash position worksheet for a physical cash sweep. Set up cash sweep sub-accounts.
Approve Cash Sweep Structure Page	CSH_SWEEP_APPR	Approve or deny selected cash sweep structures.

Overview of a Cash Sweep Structure

To perform a cash sweep, you must set up an active physical cash sweep structure as of a specified effective date. You can update this structure and change the effective date to keep track of any changes you make.

You set up a physical cash sweep structure across multiple external bank accounts. You identify an external bank account as the master bank account for this cash sweep structure and identify one or more sub-accounts. You can only select one master bank account for each physical cash sweep structure. However, you can select the same external bank account as the master bank account across multiple physical cash sweep structures. When you select a master bank and bank account for a cash sweep structure, the sweep currency and business unit used to set up the bank account display as default values for the cash sweep structure. You cannot change these values unless you select a different bank account.

The activity type that you select for a physical cash sweep structure determines how the funds are moved. Activity types are:

- Funding

  This activity type moves funds out of the master bank account to the selected sub bank accounts.

- Concentration

  This activity type moves funds out of selected sub bank accounts to the master bank account.

- Bidirectional

  This activity type moves funds into and out of the master bank account depending on the calculated transfer amount. If the cash position of the subaccount is negative, Cash Sweep assumes that here is a shortage of funds in the subaccount and moves funds from the master bank account to the subaccount. If the cash position of the subaccount is positive, Cash Sweep assumes that there is a surplus of funds and moves funds from the subaccount to the master bank account. Negative balances in subaccounts are Funded and positive balances in subaccounts are Concentrated.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Example 1: When activity type is bidirectional and the sub bank account cash position is - 12, 000 USD, Cash Sweep understands that the funds need to be moved from the master bank account to the sub bank account.

Example 2: When the activity type is bidirectional and the sub bank account cash position is + 12, 000 USD, Cash Sweep understands that the funds need to be moved from the sub bank account to the master bank account.

You identify either your organization or the bank as the initiator of the cash sweep. When an organization initiates the cash sweep the Auto Generate Transfers check box is enabled. You select this check box to enable the system to automatically generate the EFT requests and bank transfers when the Cash Sweep (TR_CSH_SWEEP) process is run. If you select an organization and do not select this check box, then you must access the Request Cash Sweep component and perform the transfers manually. However, frequently an organization does not want to initially generate the EFT requests and bank transfers automatically (deselect the check box) so that it can review the recommended transfer amount for each cash sweep structure and make any necessary changes. Once the organization is satisfied with the recommended transfer amount, it can select the Auto Generate Transfers check box and the system will automatically generate the EFT requests and bank transfers when the Cash Sweep process is run. The Auto Generate Transfers check box is not selected if a bank initiates the cash sweep.

When the bank is the initiator of the cash sweep, the bank moves the funds, but the system only stores the recommended transfer amounts without creating the actual EFT requests or bank transfers.

You select a market index and rate type to assist in identifying the exchange rate to apply to the cash sweep when cash sweep currency is different from cash position currency.

Important! Make sure that the Exchange Rate tables are updated with the appropriate exchange rates.

You can select cash sweep rounding options or choose not to round the physical cash sweep amounts. Rounding never breaks below the target balance defined on the external bank account definition.

You can select one of the following rounding options:

- *Nearest*

  Selecting this value increases or decrease the physical cash sweep amount to the closest multiple specified. For example, if the physical sweep/concentration amount of 1,234,567.87 USD is rounded to the nearest hundred, the amount will be calculated as 1,234,600.00 USD. However, if a physical sweep/concentration amount of 1,234,347.87 USD is rounded to the nearest hundred, the amount will be 1,234,300.00 USD.

- *None*

  Rounding is not be performed when you select this value.

- *Round Down*

  Selecting this value will decrease the physical cash sweep amount to the nearest multiple specified. For example, if the physical sweep/concentration amount of 1,234,567.87 USD rounded down to hundreds, the amount will be calculated as 1,234,500.00 USD.

- *Round Up*

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Round up increases the physical cash sweep amount to the nearest multiple specified. For example, if the physical cash sweep amount of 1,234,567.87 USD is rounded up to the nearest hundred, the amount will be calculated as 1,234,600.00 USD.

If you select *Nearest, Round Down,* or *Round Up* as a rounding option, you must select one of these rounding factors:

- Units (1)
- Tens (10)
- Hundreds (100)
- Thousands (1,000)
- Ten thousands (10,000)
- Hundred thousands (100,000)
- Millions (1,000,000)
- Ten Millions (10,000,000)

You select an active cash forecasting worksheet name and position currency for each cash sweep structure. The master bank account and any sub-accounts identified for each cash sweep structure must share the same cash position worksheet.

Note: Use a designated worksheet with only one source set. Multiple source sets are allowed on a worksheet definition, but in the case of cash sweep, worksheets with only one source set should be used.

You can identify one or more external bank accounts as sub-accounts on a physical cash sweep structure. The system issues a warning message to alert the user that setting an external bank account as sub-account on multiple physical cash sweep structures could result in a sub-account that is overdrawn. Duplicate sub-accounts in the same cash sweep structure are not permitted. You also cannot identify the same external bank account as a master bank account and a sub-account in the same physical cash sweep structure. However, you can identify an external bank account as a sub-account in one physical cash sweep structure, and as a master bank account in another physical cash sweep structure. You can pool multiple sub-accounts for a cash sweep.

You can select *EFT Transfer* or *Bank Transfer* as the **Transfer Class** for each sub-account. Selecting either transfer class moves funds across bank accounts. However, if you select *Organization* as the Initiator on the Cash Sweep Structure page, you must select one of these values for each sub-account that you establish.

You can select a Funding or Concentration template to apply to each sub-account. These templates enable you to set up transactions in advance with parties with which you conduct regular, specific transactions. You select a *Funding Template* for each sub-account if you selected *Funding* or *Bi-Directional* as the activity type on the Cash Sweep Structure page. You select the *Concentration Template* if you selected *Concentration* or *Bi-Directional* as the activity type.

Important! It is critical that you define and map the appropriate template with each sub-account. Mapping these templates incorrectly can result in transfer errors when the Cash Sweep process is run.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

You specify the minimum amount and a maximum amount to transfer during the Cash Sweep process between a master bank account. A zero amount indicates that there is no minimum amount limit. Specific rules dictate how the minimum and maximum transfer amounts either do or do not affect the calculated amount that the cash sweep process generates:

- Minimum Transfer Amount

  The minimum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process between Master Bank Account and Sub Bank Account. A zero amount indicates that there is no minimum amount limit.

  When the activity type is Funding and calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, cash sweep process sets the calculated transfer amount to the minimum transfer amount.

  When the activity type is Concentration and the calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, cash sweep process sets the calculated transfer amount to zero. There are not enough funds in the sub-account to meet the minimum transfer amount and still maintain its target balance, so no amount is set to transfer.

- Maximum Transfer Amount

  The maximum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process between Master Bank Account and Sub Bank Account. A zero amount indicates that there is no maximum amount limit.

  The maximum transfer amount rule is the same for both Funding and Concentration activity types. During the cash sweep process if the calculated transfer amount is greater than the maximum transfer amount, then the calculated transfer amount is set to the maximum transfer amount.

You can select an Exclude check box on the Cash Sweep Structure page to temporarily prevent a sub-account row from being included in the Cash Sweep Process. Once you deselect the check box, the row is included the next time the Cash Sweep Process runs.

Once you have set up and saved a cash sweep structure, a designated approver must approve the cash sweep structure using the Cash Sweep Structure Approval component before running the Cash Sweep process. The status of a cash sweep structure can be pending, approved, or denied. If the approver either approves or denies approval of the cash sweep structure, you can modify the cash sweep structure without having to leave the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page . When you modify an approved or denied cash sweep structure and save it, the status of the cash sweep structure changes to *pending* until the designated approver approves or denies it again. If the structure is approved, it is ready for the Cash Sweep Calculations process to be run. When a designated approver approves or denies a cash sweep structure, the user ID of the approver and the date that the structure was approved or denied appears on the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page. An assigned user other than the user who entered the Cash Sweep Structure must approve all changes before you can run the Cash Sweep Calculations process.

Important! The user who is assigned to approve a cash sweep structure must be someone other than the user who enters or modifies the cash sweep structure.

See Setting Up Cash Forecasting.

Cash Sweep Structure Page

Use the Cash Sweep Structure page (CSH_SWEEP_DEFN) to define the master bank account, currency, and cash position worksheet for a physical cash sweep.

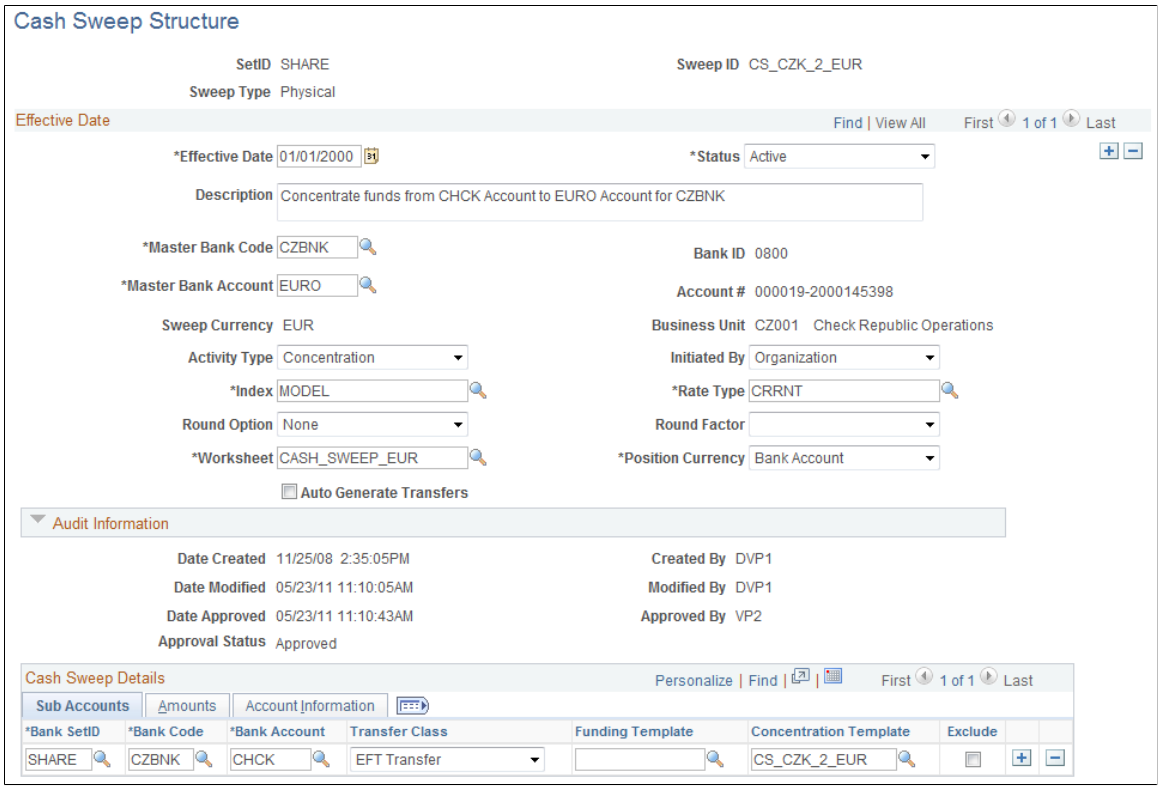
 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Set up cash sweep sub-accounts.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Cash Sweep** > **Define Cash Sweep Structure** > **Cash Sweep Structure**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Structure page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Sweep ID	Select the appropriate SetID and enter a value to identify the cash sweep structure that you are creating on the Cash Sweep Structure search page.
Sweep Type	Accept the system-defined default value, **Physical** on the Cash Sweep Structure search page. A physical cash sweep indicates movement between external bank accounts selected for this cash sweep structure.
Master Bank Code	Select the bank that has the master bank account that you want to assign to this cash sweep structure. The **Bank ID** field is updated based on the code you select.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Master Bank Account	Select the bank account that you want to use to transfer funds to subaccounts or to concentrate funds from subaccounts. The **Bank Account #** (number), **Sweep Currency,** and **Business Unit** values associated with the selected bank account appear as defaults on the page and are derived from the account selected as the master bank account. This business unit is used as the anchor business unit when the cash sweep transfers are performed.
Activity Type	Select one of these activity types to move funds for this cash sweep structure. This field is required for both organization and bank initiated cash sweeps. • *Bi-Directional* Moves funds into and out of the master bank account depending on the of the calculated transfer amount. If the cash position of the sub-account is negative, Cash Sweep assumes that here is a shortage of funds in the sub-account and moves funds from the master bank account to the sub-account. If the cash position of the sub-account is positive, Cash Sweep assumes that there is a surplus of funds and moves funds from the sub-account to the master bank account. Negative balances in subaccounts are Funded and positive balances in sub-accounts are Concentrated. • *Concentration* Moves funds out of subaccounts to the master bank account. • *Funding* Moves funds out of the master bank account to the sub bank accounts.
Initiated By	Select one of these values as the initiator of the cash sweep. • *Organization* Indicates that your organization will create the bank transfers and EFT requests. • *Bank* Indicates that the bank will make the fund movement. The accounting comes from the bank statement. The system only stores the recommended transfer amounts, and does not create the actual EFT requests or bank transfers.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Auto-Generate Transfers	Select this check box to enable the system to automatically generate EFT (electronic file transfer) requests and bank transfers for the recommended transfer amount when you run the Cash Sweep process. If you deselect this check box, then you must access the Cash Sweep Results page to initiate the creation of EFT requests and bank transfers.
Index	Derived from the selected master bank account . Selecting a market rate from the market rate index assists in identifying the exchange rate to apply to the cash sweep when the cash sweep currency is different from the cash position currency.
Rate Type	Derived from the selected master bank account. Selecting a rate type assists in identifying the exchange rate to apply to the cash sweep when cash sweep currency is different from the cash position currency.
Round Option	Select one of these options to determine how you want to round the transfer amount: • *Nearest* Rounds either up or down to the nearest round factor. • *None* • *Round Down* • *Round Up*
Round Factor	Select one of these options to determine how the amount will be rounded. • *1* • *1,000,000* • *10,000* • *10* • *10,000* • *10,000,000* • *100* • *100,000* **Note:** The **Round Factor** is required unless the value selected for the **Round Option** is *None.*

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Worksheet	Select a forecasting worksheet definition to associate with this cash sweep. The selected worksheet definition is used by the cash sweep process to retrieve data from cash position tables. **Note:** Use a designated worksheet with only one source set. Multiple source sets are allowed on a worksheet definition, but in the case of cash sweep, worksheets with only one source set should be used.
Position Currency	Select a position currency to apply to this cash sweep. • *Bank Account*: Use this option to select the currency associated with the master bank account. • *Worksheet*: This option indicates that you want to use the default reporting currency shown on the worksheet definition that you selected in the **Worksheet** field. **Note:** You select a market index and rate type to assist in identifying the exchange rate to apply to the cash sweep when the bank account currency is different from the position currency. Make sure that the Exchange Rate tables are updated with the appropriate exchange rates.

Audit Information

The system tracks and displays this information about a selected cash structure:

- **Date Created**

  Identifies when the cash sweep structure was created.

- **Created By**

  Identifies the user who created the cash sweep structure.

- **Date Modified**

  Identifies the last date that the cash sweep structure was modified.

- **Modified By**

  Identifies the last person who modified the cash sweep structure

- **Date Approved**

  Identifies the date that the cash sweep structure was approved.

- **Approved By**

  Identifies the user who approved the cash sweep structure.

- **Approval Status**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Identifies the cash sweep structure as *Pending, Approved,* or *Denied.*

Cash Sweep Details – Subaccounts Information

Select the Cash Sweep Details – Sub Accounts tab.

Field or Control	*Description*
Bank SetID, Bank Code and **Bank Account**	Select a bank SetID, bank code, and bank account for each subaccount that you set up for this physical cash sweep structure.
Transfer Class	Select one of these values to transfer the physical cash sweep amount. • *EFT Transfer* • *Bank Transfer* **Note:** You must select one of these values if you selected *Organization* as the **Initiator** of the physical cash sweep on the Cash Sweep Definition page.
Funding Template	Select a funding template if you selected either *Funding* or *Bi-Directional* as the **Activity Type** on the Cash Sweep Definition page. If you selected *Bank Transfer* as the **Transfer Class,** the system only displays a list of external bank account funding transfer templates.
Concentration Template	Select a concentration template if you selected either *Concentration* or *Bi-Directional* as the **Activity Type** on the Cash Sweep Definition page. If you selected *Bank Transfer* as the **Transfer Class,** the system only displays a list of external bank account transfer templates. **Important!** You must select the funding and concentration templates that are set up for the purpose of performing a cash sweep and are appropriate for the cash sweep structure that is being defined, otherwise the system may generate incorrect transfers.
Exclude	Select this check box to exclude the sub-account row for which it is selected from being included in the cash sweep process.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Cash Sweep Details – Amount Information

Select the Cash Sweep Details – Amount tab.

Field or Control	*Description*
Minimum Transfer Amount	Enter the minimum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process between the master bank account and a sub-account. A zero minimum amount indicates that there is no limit to the minimum transfer amount regardless of the activity type selected on the Cash Sweep Definition page. However if the calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, these rules apply: • When the activity type is *Funding* and the calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, the Cash Sweep process sets the calculated transfer amount to the minimum transfer amount. • When the activity type is *Concentration* and the calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, the Cash Sweep process sets the calculated transfer amount to zero. There are not enough funds in the sub-account to meet the minimum transfer amount and still maintain its target balance, so no amount is set to transfer.
Maximum Transfer Amount	Enter the maximum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process between the master bank account and the subaccount. A zero amount indicates that there is no maximum amount limit. The maximum transfer amount rule is when you select either Funding or Concentration as the activity type on the Cash Sweep Definition page. When you run the Cash Sweep process, if the calculated transfer amount is greater than the maximum transfer amount, then the calculated transfer amount is set to the maximum transfer amount for both activity types.
Sweep Currency	The default currency that appears in this field is derived from the Master Bank Account.

Cash Sweep Details – Account Information

Select the Cash Sweep Details – Account Information tab.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This grid defines the bank account details for each sub-account including the **Bank ID,** the **Bank Account #** (bank account number) as well as the bank account's currency, associated business unit, and description.

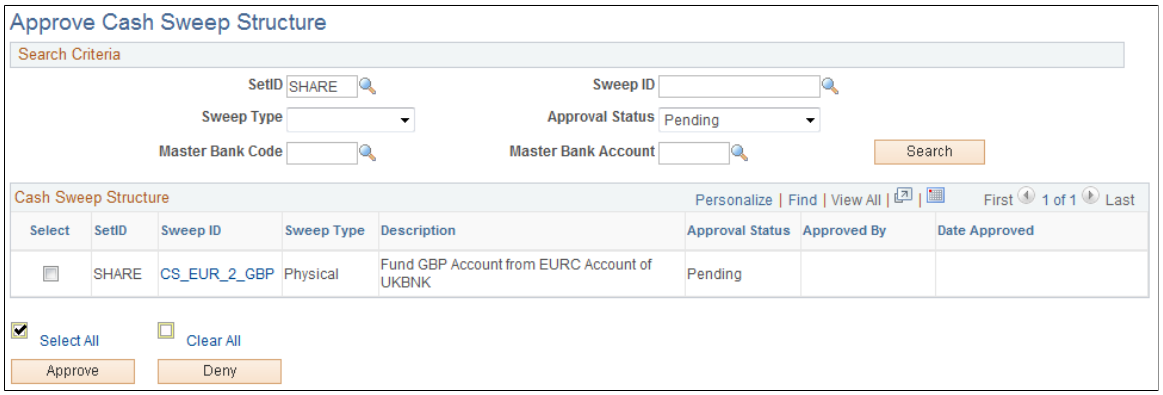
Approve Cash Sweep Structure Page

Use the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page (CSH_SWEEP_APPR) to approve or deny selected cash sweep structures.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Cash Sweep** > **Approve Cash Sweep Structure** > **Approve Cash Sweep Structure**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Search Criteria

Select values for the search criteria fields as needed. If you only select a SetID and leave all other fields blank, the system will list all of the Cash Sweep Structures that have a status of *Pending, Approved,* and *Denied* when you click the **Search** button. You can also select an approval status of Pending, Approved, or Denied and only cash sweep structures with the selected approval status appear on the list when you click the **Search** button.

Cash Sweep Structure

A list of cash sweep structures appears in the Cash Sweep Structure group box based on you selected search criteria. You can select all of the structures in the list or select individual structure check boxes and click the **Approve** or **Deny** button to approve or deny the selected cash sweep structures.

Field or Control	***Description***
Cash Sweep ID	Click the link of an individual cash sweep structure and access the actual cash sweep structure.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Approval Status	These values can appear in this field: • *Pending* This value appears for a cash sweep structure that has never been approved or has been modified after approval or denial. • *Approved* This value appears when an authorized approver clicks the Approved button on this page. • *Denied* This value appears when an authorized approver clicks the Denied button on this page.
Approved By and **Date Approved**	Displays the User ID of the individual who approved or denied the cash sweep structure along with the date that the structure was approved or denied.

Processing Cash Sweep and Reviewing the Results

Pages Used to Run the Cash Sweep Process and Review the Results

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Cash Sweep Request Page	CSH_SWEEP_REQ	Run the Cash Sweep Calculations process.
Cash Sweep Results Page	CSH_SWEEP_RESULTS	Review and update cash sweep results.

Overview of the Cash Sweep Processing and Results

The Cash Sweep process (TR_CSH_SWEEP) drives the data extraction, funds transfer calculation and funds transfer execution for a cash sweep structure. This process performs these functions for each sub-account:

- Retrieves the cash position balance.
- Retrieves the target balance.
- Calculates the amount of funds in short or excess of the target balance.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Determines from the cash sweep structure whether funding or concentrating funds apply.
- Applies rounding rules set in the cash sweep structure to the transfer amount.
- Compares the transfer amount to the minimum and maximum transfer limits in the cash sweep structure and adjusts as needed.
- Sets the final recommended transfer amount.
- If auto-generate check box is selected for a cash sweep structure, then it generates any bank transfers or EFT transfers.
- Populates the header and details on the Cash Sweep Results tables.

You can process cash sweep for each cash sweep structure and for a specific date. You can run the Cash Sweep process multiple times during a specified date. You can also select or not select sub-accounts for cash sweep processing.

Important! You can run Cash Sweep process for a cash sweep structure multiple times during the day. You should exercise caution and ensure that the system is set up to handle such a scenario. Make sure that the Cash Position Sources include the cash sweep amount and that a cash position has been recalculated after generating cash sweep transfers. If system is setup incorrectly it could result in inappropriate transfers.

Related Links

Cash Management Reports: A to Z

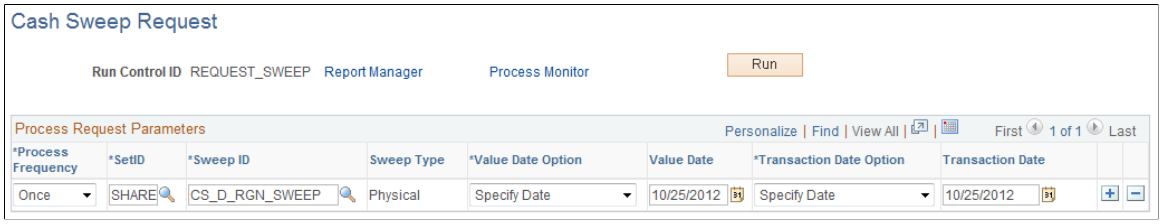
Cash Sweep Request Page

Use the Cash Sweep Request page (CSH_SWEEP_REQ) to run the Cash Sweep Calculations process.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Cash Sweep** > **Request Cash Sweep** > **Cash Sweep Request**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Request page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Value Date Option	Select one of these options to set the date for the value date. The value date is the date that is used to retrieve the cash position amounts. • *Current* Selecting this option assigns the current system date as the value date. • *Specify* Select this option to display the **Value Date** field in which you can assign a specific date as the value date. **Note:** If the auto generate check box is checked on the cash sweep structure, then the system retrieves the cash position amounts for each cash sweep structure based on each sequence and creates the EFT requests and bank transfers. If the auto generate check box is not checked, the system retrieves the cash position amounts for each cash sweep structure based on each sequence and stores the details in the Cash Sweep Structure tables.
Transaction Date Option	Select one of these options to set the transaction date for the transfer transactions. • *Current* Select this option to apply the current system date to the transfer transactions. • *Specify* Select this option to display the **Transaction Date** field in which you can assign a specific date to the transfer transactions.

Cash Sweep Results Page

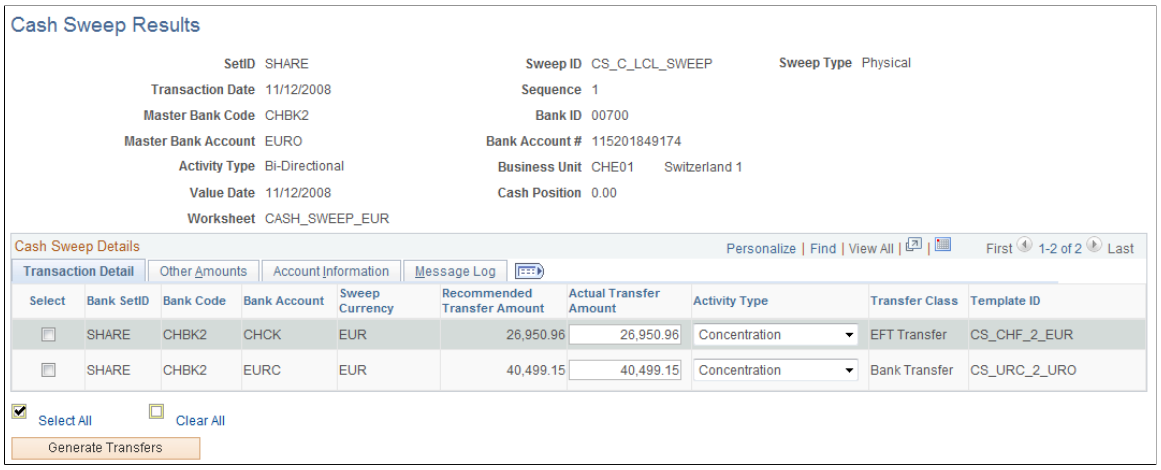
Use the Cash Sweep Results page (CSH_SWEEP_RESULTS) to review and update cash sweep results.

Navigation:

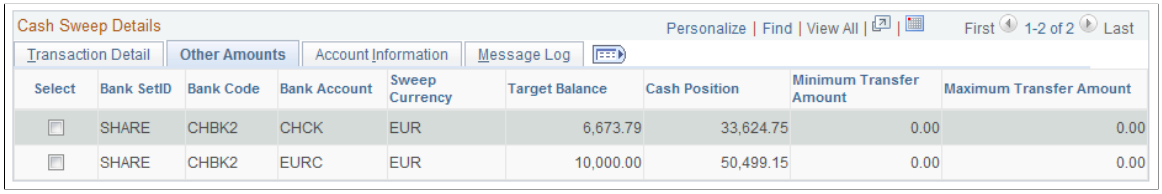
Cash Management > **Cash Sweep** > **Cash Sweep Results** > **Cash Sweep Results**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

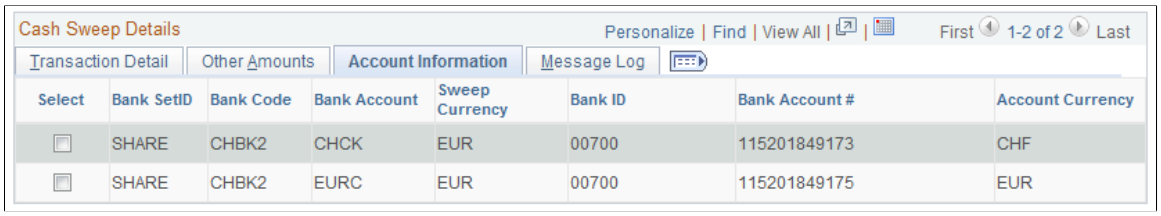
This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Results page – Transaction Detail tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



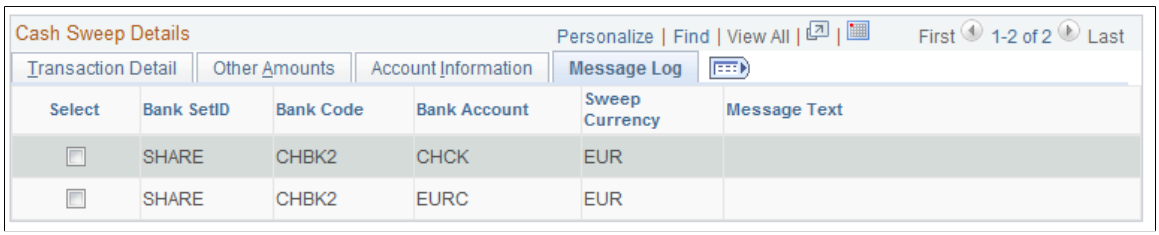
This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Results page – Other Amounts tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Results page – Account Information tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Results page – Message Log tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Select	This check box will only appear if the funds transfer still need to be generated, which means that the Auto Generate Transfers check box was not selected on the Cash Sweep Structure page of the associated cash sweep structure.
Generate Transfers	Click this button to generate either a bank transfer or an EFT request for the selected rows. Generating a bank transfer will update the Transfer ID field on the Transaction Detail tab with the Bank Transfer ID, and generating an EFT request will update the Transfer ID field with the EFT Request ID.

Transaction Detail Tab

Field or Control	*Description*
Recommended Transfer Amount	After comparing the minimum and maximum transfer limits, the Cash Sweep Calculations process adjust the transfer amount as necessary, sets this final recommended transfer amount and updates this field.
Actual Transfer Amount	The default value is the amount that appears in the Recommended Transfer Amount field. You can override the this default amount and perform the transfer.
Activity Type	Displays either Funding or Concentration at the grid level for a bidirectional cash sweep structure. **Note:** A bidirectional cash sweep structure enables you to override the activity type on the subaccount grid. This provides you with the flexibility to change the direction in the movement of funds and override the actual transfer amount.

Other Amounts Tab

Field or Control	*Description*
Target Balance	The Cash Sweep Calculations process retrieves the target balance and updates this field.
Cash Position	The Cash Sweep Calculations process retrieves the cash position for each subaccount and updates this field.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Account Information tab

This tab displays the sub bank account information that was entered on the Cash Sweep Structure – Accounts page.

Message Log tab

Field or Control	*Description*
	A warning or error icon appears before the **Select** column on each tab, which indicates there is a message on the Message Log tab.
Message Text	If the system issues a warning or error message and displays an icon, the text describing the warning or error appears in this field.

Generating Cash Sweep Reports

This topic describes the page navigation and usage of each cash sweep report.

Related Links

Cash Management Reports: A to Z

Pages Used to Generate Cash Sweep Reports

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Cash Sweep Structure Page	RUN_TRX5000	Run the Cash Sweep Structure report (TRX5000).
Cash Sweep Bank Accounts Page	RUN_TRX5001	Run the Cash Sweep Bank Accounts report (TRX5001).
Cash Sweep Summary Page	RUN_TRX5002	Run the Cash Sweep Summary report (TRX5002).
Denied Cash Sweep Payments Page	RUN_TRX5003	Run the Denied Cash Sweep Payments report (TRX5003).

Cash Sweep Structure Page

Use the Cash Sweep Structure run control page (RUN_TRX5000) to run the Cash Sweep Structure report (TRX5000).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Sweep >Reports >Cash Sweep Structure

This report lists detailed information for a cash sweep structure, includes the master bank account, overall cash sweep processing attributes, sub-accounts, sub-account processing attributes and audit information

You must select a **SetID** and an **As of Date** for report. You have the option of selecting a specific **Sweep ID** or leaving the field blank, which will include all cash sweep structures that were created with the specified SetID and as of the specified date.

Cash Sweep Bank Accounts Page

Use the Cash Sweep Bank Accounts run control page (RUN_TRX5001) to run the Cash Sweep Bank Accounts report (TRX5001).

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Sweep >Reports >Cash Sweep Bank Accounts

This report lists all of the cash sweep structures associated with a given bank account and whether the account is the master bank account or sub-account in the structure.

You must select a **SetID** and an As of Date for this report. You have the option of selecting a **Bank Code,** the **Business Unit** associated with the bank, and a **Bank Account** number, or you can leave one or all of these values blank and the system will list all cash sweep structures created with the specified SetID and as of the specified date and any bank values associated with a master bank account or sub-account in the structures.

Cash Sweep Summary Page

Use the Cash Sweep Summary page (RUN_TRX5002) to run the Cash Sweep Summary report (TRX5002).

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Sweep >Reports >Cash Sweep Summary

This report summarizes cash sweep amounts within a cash sweep structure by bank account.

You must select a SetID and select **From Date** and **To Date** values for this report. You can enter the same date in both fields to run the report as of that date only. You have the option of selecting a specific **Sweep ID** or leaving the field blank which will display a list of cash sweep amounts for all cash sweep structures that were created with the specified SetID within or on the specified dates.

Denied Cash Sweep Payments Page

Use the Denied Cash Sweep Payments page (RUN_TRX5003) to run the Denied Cash Sweep Payments report (TRX5003).

Navigation:

Cash Management >Cash Sweep >Reports >Denied Cash Sweep Payments

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This report lists all denied cash sweep payments.

You must select **SetID, From Date,** and **To Date** values for this report. You can enter the same date in both fields to run the report as of that date only. You have the option of selecting a specific **Sweep ID** or leaving the field blank which will display a list of all cash sweep payments that were denied that fall under the specified SetID within or on the specified dates.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 9

Transferring Funds

Understanding the Funds Transfer Process

Cash Management defines and supports these two funds transfer methods:

- Bank account transfers

  Bank account transfers are used by your organization to transfer money between banks that are on your organization's general ledger (from one of your organization's bank accounts to another bank account belonging to your organization). This could be a transfer between your internal bank accounts, between your external bank accounts, or between your internal and your external bank accounts. PeopleSoft defines the following two categories of bank account transfers:

  - External bank transfers are used by your organization to transfer money between banks that are on your organization's general ledger (from one of your organization's bank accounts to another bank account belonging to your organization).
  - Internal bank transfers are transfers between business units using internal banks and internal bank accounts that you have created for your organization.

- EFTs

  EFTs are used to transfer funds from your organization's bank to an external third party.

For bank account transfers and EFTs, you can send funds transfers from templates, as well as on an ad hoc basis. To minimize the amount of manual entry when sending these ad hoc funds transfers, you can complete recipient information from settlement instructions, such as when you are paying a supplier who provides occasional services.

Cash Management also includes repetitive transfer, drawdown transfer, and prenotification functionality. Repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers are preapproved agreements to transfer monetary amounts on a periodic basis. (The Federal Reserve Banks operate the Fedwire Funds Service, which supports four types of transfers: repetitive, semi-repetitive, non-repetitive or freeform, and drawdown. PeopleSoft funds transfer functionality supports all four transfer types.) There is not a funds transfer method as described above for bank account transfers and EFTs. The relationship of the involved parties determines whether a repetitive or drawdown transfer is in the form of a bank account transfer or EFT. A prenotification is a file sent to a debtor's bank to test if payments may be made to a creditor through a specified bank account. The creditor will not process a payment made through the debtor's bank account until a prenotification is sent and successfully processed.

Cash Management supports the following transfer types:

- A repetitive transfer is used when a company frequently makes a transfer between the same debit and credit parties.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The parties involved may be your organization and your bank—or your organization, your bank, and a third party. The Originating Depository Financial Institution (ODFI) has a record of the debit and credit parties and receives electronic and telephonic instructions to make the transfer. The ODFI also assigns a unique identifier to each instruction template. The items communicated to the ODFI as part of the transfer consist of the unique identifier, the date of the transfer, and the dollar amount. Of these three items, only the date and dollar amount may be changed, which decreases the risk of misdirected funds.

- A semi-repetitive transfers is similar to a repetitive transfer.

  The difference is that you can also modify the transfer description, in addition to the amount and date information.

- A non-repetitive or freeform transfer is used for ad-hoc transfers; you can edit all fields.

- A drawdown is a request sent by a company to an ODFI to initiate a wire transfer from its own account or another party's account at a Receiving Depository Financial Institution (RDFI).

  For drawdown transfers, the RDFI is the payor of funds. The RDFI requires that it have authorization for payment from the account holder—meaning the party being debited must preauthorize the transfer.

  Drawdown transfers are most frequently used as part of a company's cash concentration system. Organizations use cash concentration systems to consolidate many bank accounts (operated by individual areas in the organization) to a cash position in a single account.

  Drawdown transfers are also a subset of repetitive transfers. You can set up a drawdown transfer to be a repetitive transfer.

- A prenotification or "prenote" is an EFT Request used to verify that payments can be made to a creditor from the debtor's bank account. Prenotes are created using a transfer template. From the template you can create a prenote which is basically an EFT for a zero dollar amount. After settling the EFT, the prenote will then be processed via Financial Gateway like any other EFT. Prenotes can only be settled through Financial Gateway.

  In the case of ACH prenotes, if no return is sent back after a specified number of days, then the debtor can assume that it can send payments to the creditor's bank account. A back-end process updates the prenotes' status after the specified number of days has passed.

  If an ACH Return file is received from the creditor's bank, it will contain information that the prenote had errors that must be corrected before the creditor will accept payments from the debtor. The creditor must send a new, corrected prenote. If no return file is received after the defined number of days, then it can be assumed that the debtor's payments will be processed by the creditor's bank.

You can set up preapproved repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers in the Cash Management funds transfer pages, creating a template that stores the repetitive transfer agreement information. This information includes the unique identifier assigned by the bank that authorizes (or administrates) the transfer.

Note: As repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers are preapproved and preconfigured agreements, they cannot be initiated on an ad hoc basis.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Funds Transfer Business Process

To process funds transfers, you create the transfer (either ad hoc or using a template), select it for settlement, and if required, route it for settlement approval. After it is approved, the system forwards the transfer to either the Financial Gateway or obtained via Pay Cycle Manager depending on what you select on the Settle Through field on the External Accounts - Payment Methods page. Use the dispatch settlements functionality to transmit the transfer to the appropriate bank and bank account.

For repetitive and drawdown transfers, only the repetitive transfer code (for drawdown transfers, this is the third-party authorization code), amount, and date are transmitted to the ODFI.

Here is a general overview of the steps in the funds transfer process:

1. Create all of the templates required by your organization.

   Here are some possible combinations:

   - Bank account transfer.
   - Bank account transfer as a repetitive transfer.
   - Bank account transfer as a drawdown transfer.
   - Bank account transfer as a repetitive drawdown transfer.
   - EFT.
   - EFT as a repetitive transfer.
   - EFT as a drawdown transfer.
   - EFT as a repetitive drawdown transfer.
   - EFT as a prenotification.

2. Approve new and modified templates.
3. Create a bank account transfer or EFT request.
4. On the bank account transfer or EFT request, select the appropriate template to create the specific transfer needed and provide any necessary transfer information to complete the transfer instructions.

   You are not required to select a template if the transfer is considered a freeform transfer.

5. Select and approve transfers for settlement using the Settlement Manager.
6. Dispatch settlements to the appropriate banking institution for payment using Financial Gateway.

   Note: If the settlement is to be settled through Pay Cycle Manager, it will be picked up at a later time.

The system processes the approved funds transfers and generates the appropriate accounting entries. Accounting entries for EFT transfers may be generated only if an accounting template has been specified on the EFT transfer request. Accounting events for bank transfers are automatic and do not need an accounting template.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

If Financial Gateway is used as the settle-through option, you can, with the proper setup, get periodic updates to the original transaction until the settlement is paid. For wire transfers, the system can be configured to update the transaction with the Fed Wire ID generated by the bank for reference during inquiries.

Prenotification Process

To create a prenote:

1. Create a new EFT template on the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page using a payment method and a payment layout that will support prenotes and select the Prenote check box.

   See "Understanding the Layout Catalog" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway).

2. (Optional) Access the Prenotification Details page.

   The prenote status is assigned a status of "New." You can set the number of calendar days that must transpire after the prenote is sent to Financial Gateway before the prenote status changes to Confirmed by the system if no ACH Return file is received.

3. Approve the template on the Approve Transfer Templates page.

   Upon approval, the system will prompt you to create a zero-dollar EFT Request, which serves as the transaction representing the prenote.

4. Click Yes.

   The EFT Request page is displayed with the Prenotification field selected. All of the information from the template is transferred to this EFT Request transaction with a zero-dollar amount.

5. Select the prenote for approval from the Select Settlements page.

6. Approve the prenote EFT Request from the Approve Settlements page.

7. Dispatch the prenote in Financial Gateway just as you would any other payment.

   This changes the status from "New" to "Pending." If no return is sent back from the bank within the number of business calendar days specified on the Prenotification Details page, the prenote status changes to "Confirmed." The status change is performed by a batch process that checks the number of days that have transpired since the creation of the prenote and compares it with the number of days specified on the Prenotification Details page (see Step 2).

   If a return acknowledgment file is sent back from Financial Gateway, the prenote status changes to "Rejected" and the template will not be approved for use. If the errors in the prenote are correctable, a second prenote may be sent using this template. The status can be reset from "Error" to "New."

Related Links

Understanding the Settlements Payment Process

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Common Elements Used to Transfer Funds

Field or Control	*Description*
Payment Method	Indicate the method used to get the funds from the funding account. For example, select *ACH* if the funds are to be processed through an Automated Clearing House (ACH).
Repetitive Transfer Code	A code for any repetitive funds transfer type, assigned by a bank (or financial institution) to automatically initialize the bank's transfer process.
Drawdown Transfer	If selected, it indicates the transfer is a repetitive drawdown transfer.

Prerequisites for Transferring Funds

To process funds transfers:

- Configure banks.
- Configure bank branches.
- Configure bank accounts and account payment methods.

At this time, you can optionally:

- Define settlement instructions.
- Define bank account transfer templates.
- Define EFT request template instructions and field level security for templates.
- Define settlement approval options.

Related Links

"Account Settlement Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)
"Settlement Instructions Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)
"Setting Up the Bank Statement Import Process" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates

Pages Used to Create and Approve Funds Transfer Templates

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Enter Transfer Templates - Origin Page	TR_WR_TEMPLATE_FR	Enter template origin information. Set up the template for withdrawing funds from an account to transfer those funds.
Category Purpose Page	CAT_PURP_EFT_TPL	Identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name. See the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin Page for more information.
Prenotification Details Page	TR_WR_PRENOTE	Enter parameters for creating a template for prenotification requests.
Enter Transfer Templates - Destination Page	WR_TEMPLATE_FR	Specify template destination information. Set up templates to send wire transfers repeatedly to particular parties.
Identification Information Page	TR_WR_TPL_OID_SP	Provide other identification for Name1, Bank, and/or Bank Account values, respectively. See the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination Page for more information.
EFT Options Page	TR_EFT_OPT_SEC	Configure template EFT handling options. Values specified at the template level cannot be overwritten at the request level. See the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination Page for more information.
Enter Transfer Templates - Bank Routings Page	TR_INTR_TBL_SEC	Define template intermediary bank routings. Set up multiple routing information for a funds transfer.
Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description Page	TR_WR_DESC_SEC	Enter any of your in-house notes for the funds transfer. This information is not transmitted to the recipient.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda Page	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	Enter addenda information. This information is transmitted to the recipient.
Enter Transfer Templates - Beneficiary Address Page	WR_TEMPLATE_ADR	Set up address information for the recipient of the funds transfer.
Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security Page	WR_TMPLT_FLDLST	Select the active fields in your template, choose whether to enable accounting or to allow settlement instructions.

Understanding the Funds Transfer Template Component

To define transfer templates, use the Enter Transfer Templates component (TR_WIRE_TEMPLATES).

Use the pages in this component to do the following:

1. Enter template origin information.
2. Specify template destination information.
3. Configure template EFT handling options.
4. Define template intermediary bank routings.
5. Enter template transfer addenda.
6. Add template internal notes.
7. Record template beneficiary address information.
8. Define template field security.

Your organization may benefit from setting up transactions in advance with parties with which you conduct regular, specific transactions. For example, using template transactions can streamline the process of distributing quarterly payouts to clients or monthly or annual payments to suppliers.

You set up the template, specifying whether it is for bank account transfers or EFTs. You can then further specify if the template is a repetitive transfer or drawdown transfer. Page values established at the template level for repetitive and drawdown transfers cannot be changed by a user at the transfer request level. In addition, you can specify security at the field level for the template.

Note: Pages and fields in the funds transfer template become available or unavailable for entry, depending on the selected transfer class.

To create a funds transfer template:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Funds Transfer Templates search page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. Enter a **SetID** and **Transfer Template ID,** and specify a **Transfer Class** of *Bank Transfer* or *EFT Transfer.*

3. Complete the Origin, Destination, Beneficiary Address, and Template Field Security pages of the funds transfer template pages.

Enter Transfer Templates - Origin Page

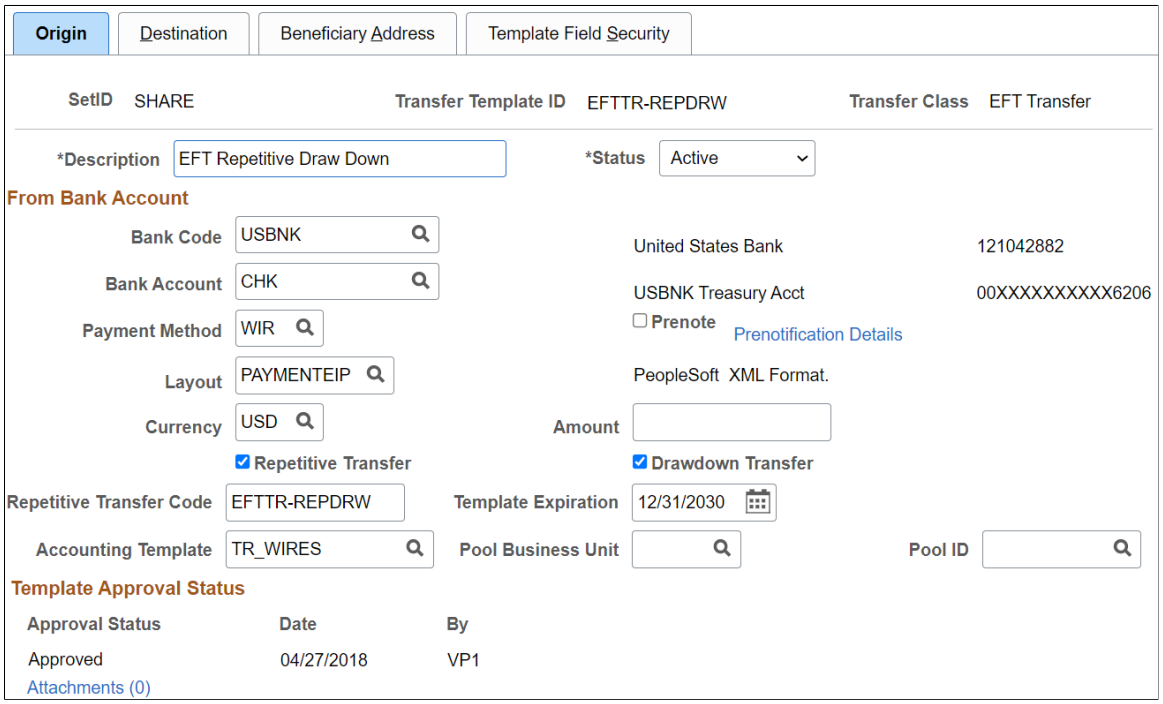
Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page (TR_WR_TEMPLATE_FR) to enter template origin information.

Set up the template for withdrawing funds from an account to transfer those funds.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **Enter Transfer Templates** > **Origin**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page.



All available fields on this page are required. They contain relevant information about the account from which you are transferring funds. Available fields depend on the selected transfer class.

Field or Control	***Description***
Status	Select *Active* or *Inactive.* If you mark a template *Inactive,* it is not available for use (it does not appear in the funds transfer pages).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Template Expiration	Enter a date that the repetitive transfer template expires. If you select an expired template for use—meaning, if the template status is set to *Active* and the system date is past the date entered in this field—the system displays a warning message that you have selected an outdated template.
Pool Business Unit and **Pool ID**	If this bank account is used for holding investment pool funds, enter the business unit and identifier of the pool.
Payment Method	Available payment methods are determined by the values that you define in the **Bank Code** and **Bank Account** fields.
Prenote	Select to create a prenotification.
Prenotification Details	Click to access the Prenotification Details page to set prenote status and confirmation parameters if the template being created is for a prenote.
Repetitive Transfer Code	Enter the repetitive transfer code that the bank assigned to this transfer. This field is required because the code is necessary to initiate the transfer process with the bank.
Repetitive Transfer	Select if this template is for a repetitive transfer.
Drawdown Transfer	Select if this template is for a drawdown transfer.
Accounting Template	For transfers of an *EFT Transfer* transfer class, specify the accounting template from which to generate accounting entries.
Approval Status	Displays *Pending* as the value when you first create a transfer. The status changes as activity occurs later in the workflow—for example, when a supervisor approves the entered funds.
Category Purpose	Click this link to access the Category Purpose page (CAT_PURP_EFT_TPL), where you can where you can identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.

Prenotification Details Page

Use the Prenotification Details page (TR_WR_PRENOTE) to enter parameters for creating a template for prenotification requests.

Navigation:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Click the **Prenotification Details** link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page.

Field or Control	*Description*
Prenotification Status	Defaults to New for first-time prenotes. If an initial prenote was rejected using this template, the status be changed to "Rejected." You can change the prenote status from here, however, if you modify the template, the system will recreate the prenote and a new settlement will be processed.
Confirm Prenote After [number of] **Days**	Select the number of calendar days that must transpire after the prenote is sent to Financial Gateway before the prenote status changes to Confirmed by the system if no ACH Return file is received back from Financial Gateway. The default setting is seven (7) days.
View Prenote	Click to access the EFT Request - Origin page and view the details of the prenote created using this template.

See Understanding the Funds Transfer Process.

Enter Transfer Templates - Destination Page

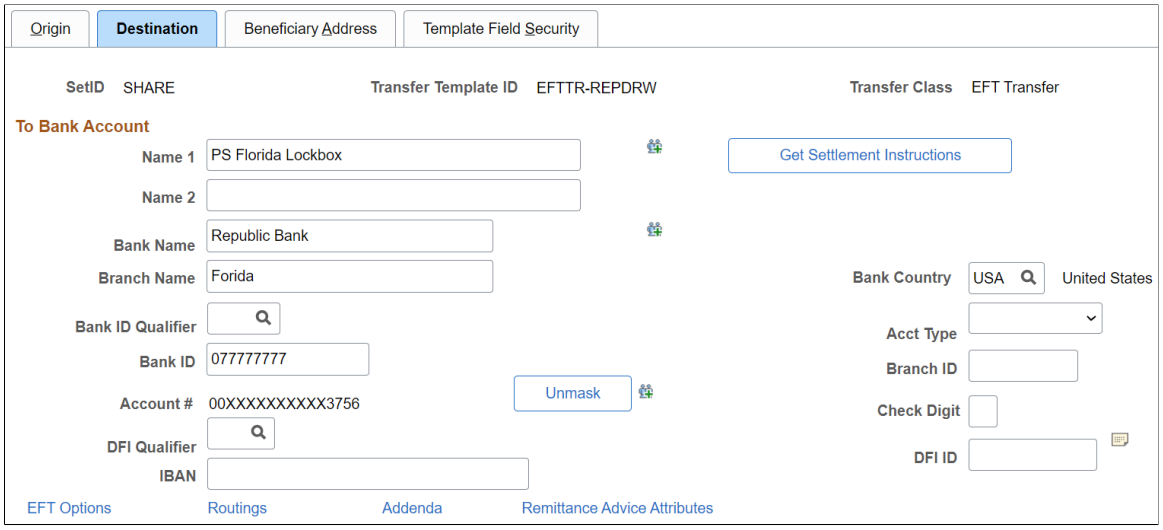
Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page (WR_TEMPLATE_FR) to specify template destination information.

Set up templates to send wire transfers repeatedly to particular parties.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **Enter Transfer Templates** > **Destination**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



For Bank Transfer templates, only the **Bank Code** and **Bank Account** fields are available for entry.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Complete all applicable and available fields for EFT Transfer classes.

Field or Control	*Description*
Get Settlement Instructions	Click to select settlement instructions and automatically populate fields. All page fields are overwritten with the settlement instruction information, including fields on the Beneficiary Address, EFT Options, Routings, and Detailed Description pages. Also, if a field is blank in the settlement instruction, the corresponding field on this page is also blank.
Name 1 and **Name 2**	Enter the recipient's name and other significant identifying information, for example, a company name, a DBA (doing business as), or joint payees.
	Click this icon to access the Identification Information page (TR_WR_TPL_OID_SP), where you can where you can provide other identification for Name1, Bank, and/or Bank Account values, respectively. Available only for a Partner Instructions/Pay Into settlement type.
Country	Select the destination country code, which also determines the selection of available **Bank ID Qual** (bank ID qualifier) values. Then specify a qualifier that determines which edit algorithm the system uses to check the bank ID number sequence.
Bank ID	Enter the routing number of your recipient's financial institution.
Branch ID	Enter the recipient's branch number.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Acct Type (account type)	Select the destination account type: • *Bond* • *Bus Acct* (business account) • *Check Acct*(checking account) • *Dem Dep* (demand deposit) • *Lf Ins-Net* (life insurance) • *Mutual* (mutual fund) • *Ret It-DDA* (returned item, demand deposit account) • *Ret It-Sav* (returned item, savings account) • *S&B Acct* (stocks and bonds account) • *Stock* • *Time Dep* (time deposit) • *Trust Fund*
Account # (account number)	Enter the account number that you are funding with this transaction. If you set up bank account encryption, account numbers are masked when you save the page. For more information about bank account number encryption and the National Automated Clearing House Association (NACHA) data security requirements, see "Understanding Bank Account Encryption" (Application Fundamentals) and "Setting Up Bank Account Encryption" (Application Fundamentals).
Unmask	Select to unmask the bank account number and IBAN.
Check Digit	This field is conditional and depends on the country that you selected.
	Click the **View Description** icon to add internal notes about the funds transfer. These notes are not transmitted to the recipient.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
IBAN Digit	Create an IBAN for this template to facilitate automated processing of cross-border transactions. See "Understanding IBAN" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing). Enter the check digit and click **View IBAN.** If the DFI qualifier for the specified country is IBAN enabled, and the system successfully validates the check digit, the IBAN for this account appears. This field and the View IBAN button appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is not selected on the IBAN Formats page. See "IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
IBAN (international bank account number)	Enter the IBAN. This field appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is selected on the IBAN Formats page. See "IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
DFI Qualifier (depository financial institution qualifier)	Select to identify the bank and enter the associated DFI ID (depository financial institution ID), if required. If you use intermediary routings, this bank represents the final bank into which funds are transferred. The DFI qualifier indicates what format—how many characters and numerics—are in the bank's DFI ID. Note that each type has a specific number of digits that you can enter. Values are: *Transit Number:* Exactly 9 numeric characters, plus check digit calculation. *Swift ID:* Once you select 02 for the DFI Qualifier, you can enter the BIC code in the DFI ID field, which can be 8 or 11 characters, where positions 5 and 6 must be a valid 2-character country code. *CHIPS Participant ID* (Clearing House Interbank Payments System participant ID): 3 or 4 numeric characters. *CHIPS Universal ID* (Clearing House Interbank Payments System universal ID): 6 numeric characters. *Canadian Bank Branch/Institute:* No validation. *Mutually Defined:* No validation.
EFT Options	Click the **EFT Options** link to access the EFT Options page (TR_EFT_OPT_SEC). Define specifics for EFT transmissions when using these settlement instructions. See "Defining Bank Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Routings	Click the **Routings** link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page to access the Routings page. See Enter Transfer Templates - Bank Routings Page.
Addenda	Click the **Addenda** link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page to access the Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda page. See Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda Page.
Remittance Advice Attributes	Click the **Remittance Advice Attributes** link to access the Remittance Advice Attributes page. See "Using Remittance Advice in Financial Gateway" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway).

Related Links

EFT Request - Destination Page
"International Bank Account Number (IBAN) Functionality" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Enter Transfer Templates - Bank Routings Page

Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Bank Routings page (TR_INTR_TBL_SEC) to define template intermediary bank routings.

Set up multiple routing information for a funds transfer.

Navigation:

Click the **Routings** link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.

Values specified at the template level can not be overwritten at the request level.

Field or Control	*Description*
Seq (sequence)	Enter a sequence number for the routing row. This sequence number determines in which order the system routes the message.
Routing	Select from *Bank* or *DFI.*

Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda Page

Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda page (STL_ADDENDA2_SP) to enter addenda information.

This information is transmitted to the recipient.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Click the **Addenda** link on the Enter Transfer Template - Destination page.

Values specified at the template level cannot be overwritten at the request level.

For funds transfers, direct debits, and treasury wires, this page consists of four 35-character lines. For Automated Clearing House transactions, this page is a free form, 80-character field.

Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description Page

Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description page (TR_WR_DESC_SEC) to enter any of your in-house notes for the funds transfer.

This information is not transmitted to the recipient.

Navigation:

Click the **View Description** button on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.

Values specified at the template level can not be overwritten at the request level.

Information recorded in the **Descr** (description) field is not transmitted with the funds transfer.

Enter Transfer Templates - Beneficiary Address Page

Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Beneficiary Address page (WR_TEMPLATE_ADR) to set up address information for the recipient of the funds transfer.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **Enter Transfer Templates** > **Beneficiary Address**

Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security Page

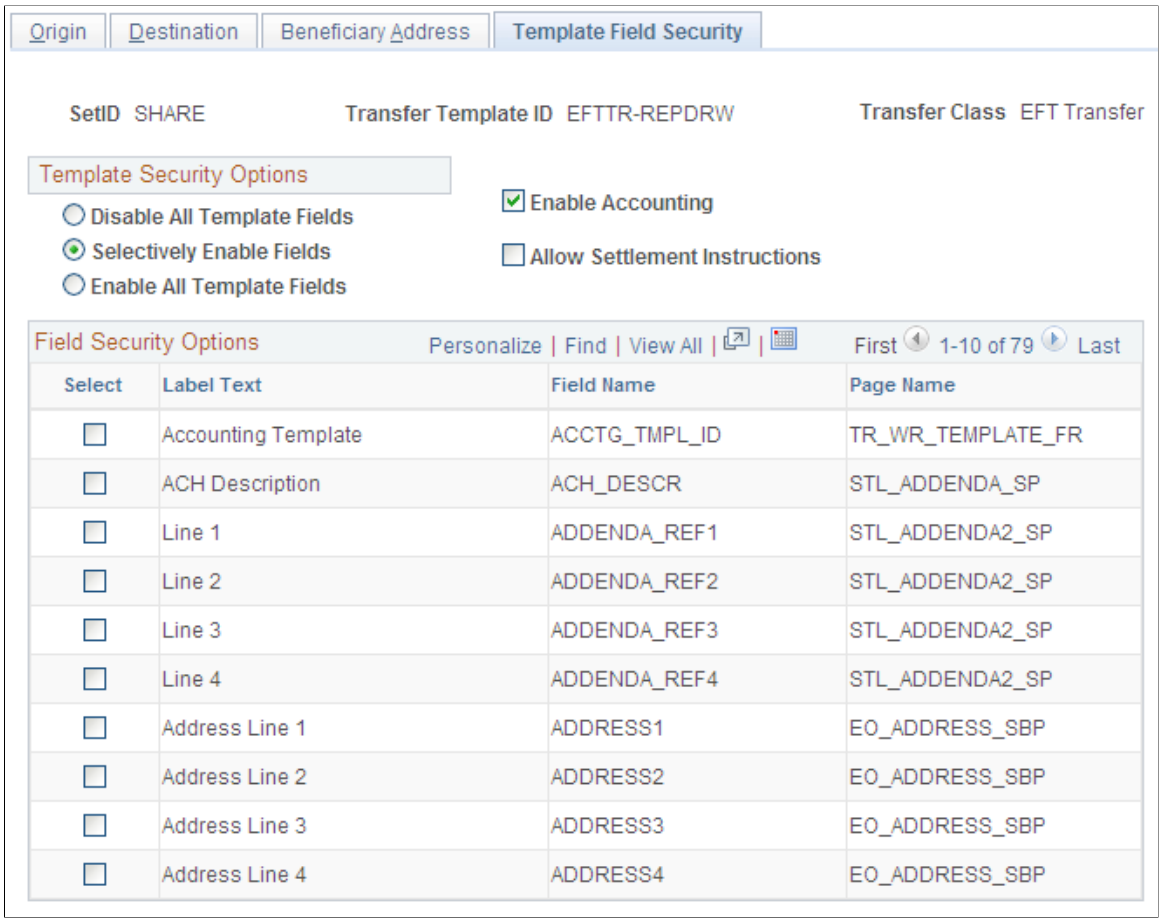
Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security page (WR_TMPLT_FLDLST) to select the active fields in your template, choose whether to enable accounting or to allow settlement instructions.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **Enter Transfer Templates** > **Template Field Security**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Template Security Options

Field or Control	*Description*
Disable All Template Fields	If selected, deselects all check boxes in the **Field Security Options** grid.
Selectively Enable Fields	If selected, more than one field security option is selected.
Enable All Template Fields	If selected, all field security options are selected.
Enable Accounting	Select to activate accounting from a template.
Allow Settlement Instructions	Select to leverage the EFT request into settlement instruction data.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Managing Funds Transfer Template Approval

This topic discusses how to approve funds transfer template changes.

Page Used to Manage Funds Transfer Template Approval

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Approve Transfer Templates Page	TR_WR_TMPLT_APPR	Approve or deny funds transfer template changes.

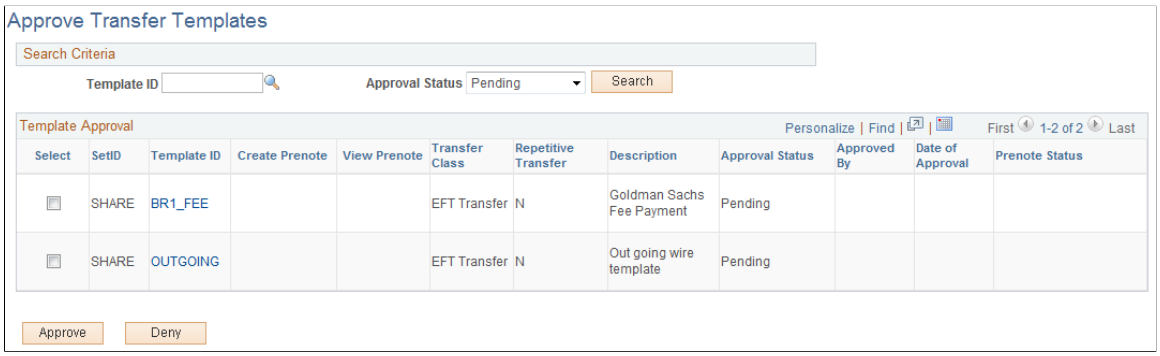
Approve Transfer Templates Page

Use the Approve Transfer Templates page (TR_WR_TMPLT_APPR) to approve or deny funds transfer template changes.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **Approve Transfer Templates**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Transfer Templates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Once transfer templates are created, or if existing templates are modified, you must approve templates prior to using them. This is true for funds transfers as well as prenotes. You can search for a specific template with a particular approval status and select to approve or deny items with your specified values.

To approve or deny transfer templates:

1. Enter your search criteria and click **Search.**
2. Click the template link in the **Template ID** column to view template information prior to approval or denial.
3. Select templates for approval or denial and click either **Approve** or **Deny.**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Prenote Status	Displays the current status of the prenotification. See Prenotification Details Page.

Beginning Transfer Funds Requests

Page Used to Begin a Transfer Funds Request

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Transfer Funds Page	TR_TRANSFER_PAGE	Select a funds transfer type. Begin the setup of a funds transfer request for an EFT, banks, or deals request.

Transfer Funds Page

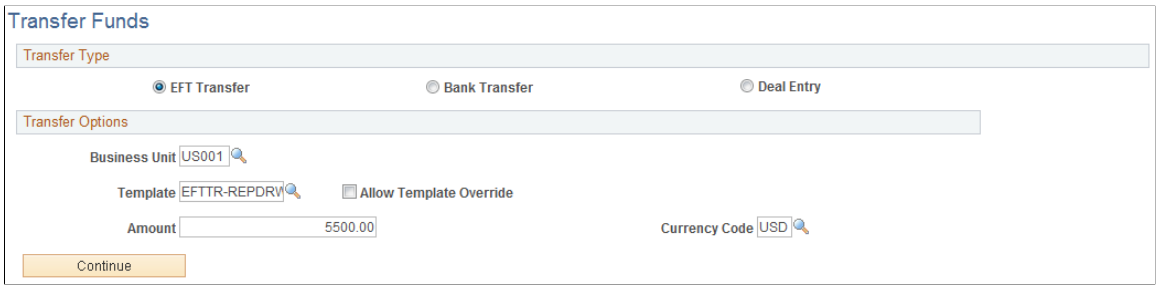
Use the Transfer Funds page (TR_TRANSFER_PAGE) to select a funds transfer type and begin the setup of a funds transfer request for an EFT, banks, or deals request.

You can create EFT, bank, and deals transfers from various locations in Cash Management. The Transfer Funds page acts as the first page of a multistep "wizard." Select options to create a particular funds transfer type, and the system then routes you to the correct pages to complete the transfer.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **Transfer Funds**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Transfer Funds page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Available fields on this page change depending on the transfer type that you select.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
EFT Transfer	Transfer money to a third party. Select **Template** to prepopulate the EFT Request Entry pages.
Bank Transfer	Move funds between accounts that you own. Select *External* or *Internal* in the **Transfer Type** field.
Deal Entry	Transfer funds using a deal (for example, an intercompany loan).
IBAN	Displays the international bank account number (IBAN) in addition to the local, domestic bank account number when the country has been set up to display the IBAN on the "IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Related Links

Creating EFT Requests
Creating Bank Account Transfers
Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates
Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security Page

Creating EFT Requests

You can use the pages in this topic to create an EFT request, whether your request is for a regular EFT request, or an EFT request involving repetitive transfer or drawdown transfer information.

Pages Used to Create an EFT Request

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
EFT Request - Origin Page	TR_WIRE_PNL	Enter transfer origin information. Capture data on the account from which funds will be furnished for the transfer
Category Purpose Page	CAT_PURP_EFT	Identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name. See the EFT Request - Origin Page for more information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
EFT Request - Destination Page	TR_WIRE_TO_PNL	Specify destination information by entering recipient information for a funds transfer.
Identification Information Page	TR_WR_OTHID_SP	Provide other identification for Name1, Bank, and/or Bank Account values, respectively. See the EFT Request - Destination Page for more information.
EFT Options Page	TR_EFT_OPT_SEC	Configure EFT handling options.
Routings Page	TR_INTR_TBL_SEC	Set up multiple routing information for a funds transfer.
EFT Request - Detailed Description Page	TR_WR_DESC_SEC	Enter any of your in-house notes for the funds transfer. This information is not transmitted to the recipient.
EFT Request - Addenda Page	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	Enter addenda information. The system transmits this information to the recipient. For funds transfers, direct debits, and treasury wires, this page consists of four 35-character lines. For ACH transactions, this page is a free form, 80-character field.
EFT Request - Beneficiary Address Page	TR_WIRE_ADDRESS	Capture the address and telephone information for the recipient of your funds transfers.

EFT Request - Origin Page

Use the EFT Request - Origin page (TR_WIRE_PNL) to enter transfer origin information.

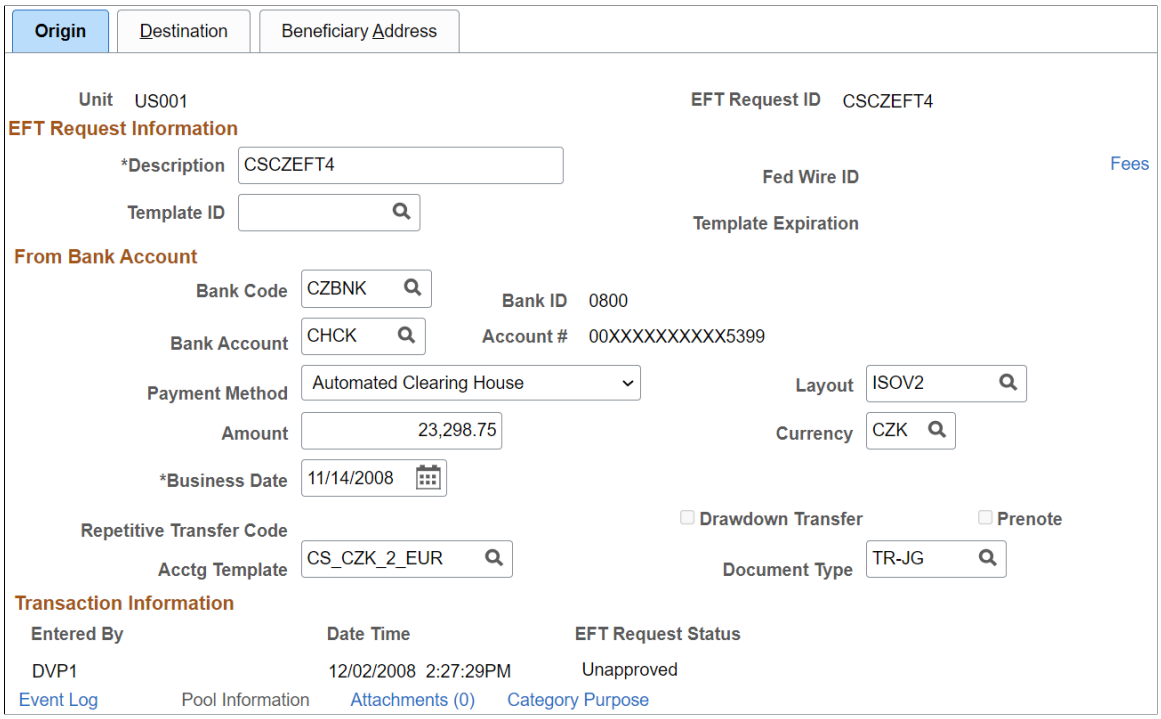
Capture data on the account from which funds will be furnished for the transfer

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **EFT Request** > **Origin**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the EFT Request - Origin page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Description	Enter a description. When you do not enter a description, the system populates the field with the description from the template assigned to the request. The system will not override a description that has been entered manually.
Template ID	Select the template, if you are executing the EFT requests from a template. **Note:** Expired templates are not available for selection.
Prenotification	This field is display-only and will appear selected for ACH prenotes. See Understanding the Funds Transfer Process.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Fed Wire ID (federal wire ID)	For EFT requests associated with federal fund transfers, the Federal Reserve agency assigns a Federal Wire ID code after receiving the request. Enter the code in this field for your reference. This field is automatically populated if the bank returns acknowledgements containing the Fed Wire ID. This field is used only as reference in Cash Management; it is not necessary for the accounting process. **Note:** The Federal Wire ID code is the only reference number that the Federal Reserve recognizes when handling issues or questions about the transfer.
Fees	Click to create fees for this EFT request. See Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests.
Payment Method	Select an available payment method (methods are determined by the values that you defined in the **Bank Code** and **Bank Account**fields). Values are *Automated Clearing House, Direct Debit, Electronic Funds Transfer,* or *Wire Transfer.* You cannot select a payment method for any type of repetitive transfer.
Business Date	Enter the business date on which the funds transfer is to occur. The date that you select carries over to the next business day, depending on: • Holiday lists associated with the currency of the nation funding the transaction. • Business day conventions established at your organization's Treasury Management implementation.
Acct Template (accounting template)	Select an accounting template if accounting is to be run for the transfer. Leave this field blank if the transfer is already accounted for in another PeopleSoft application (for example, Payables). **Note:** The **Acct Template** field is unavailable when the selected account in the **Account #** field is not enabled for cash clearing.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
IBAN	Displays the international bank account number (IBAN) in addition to the local, domestic bank account number when the country has been set up to display the IBAN on the "IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing). If you set up bank account encryption, IBAN is masked when you save the page. For more information about bank account number encryption and the National Automated Clearing House Association (NACHA) data security requirements, see "Understanding Bank Account Encryption" (Application Fundamentals) and "Setting Up Bank Account Encryption" (Application Fundamentals).

Transaction Information

Field or Control	*Description*
EFT Request Status	Displays a value of *Unapproved.* This value changes as activity occurs later in the workflow—for example, when a supervisor approves the entered funds.
Pool Information	Click to access the Pool Information page. If this bank account is used for holding investment pool funds, enter the business unit and identifier of the pool.
Category Purpose	Click to access the Category Purpose page (CAT_PURP_EFT), where you can identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name. Available only for SEPA transactions.

Related Links

"Defining External Account Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)
Creating Bank Account Transfers

EFT Request - Destination Page

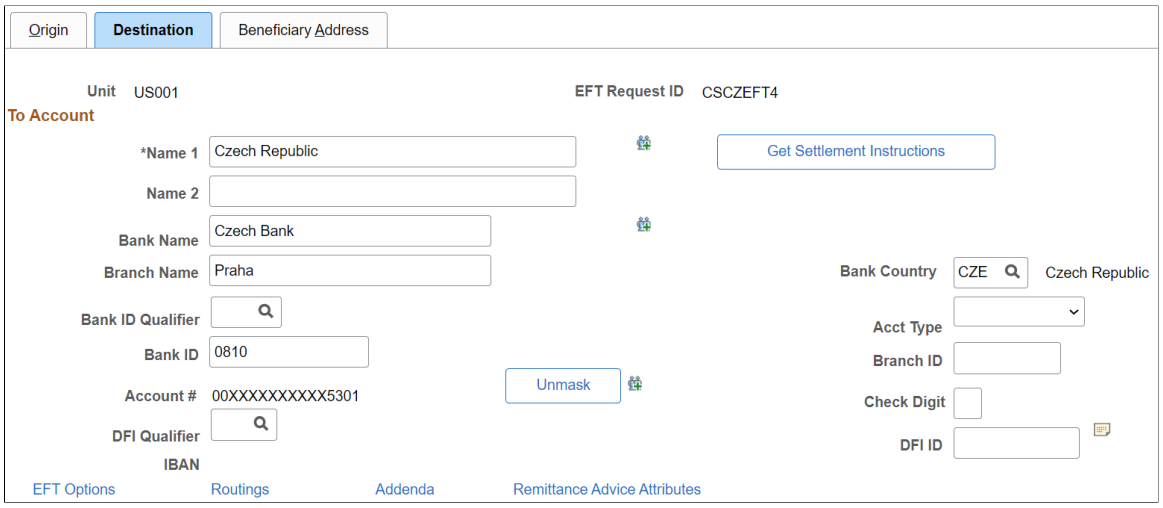
Use the EFT Request - Destination page (TR_WIRE_TO_PNL) to specify destination information by entering recipient information for a funds transfer.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **EFT Request** > **Destination**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the EFT Request - Destination page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Get Settlement Instructions	Click to select settlement instructions and automatically populate fields. All fields are overwritten with the settlement instruction information, including fields on the Beneficiary Address, EFT Options, Routings, and Detailed Description pages, which you can access through links at the bottom of the EFT Request - Destination page. Also, if a field is blank in the settlement instruction, the corresponding field on this page is also blank.
Name 1 and **Name 2**	Enter the recipient's name and other significant identifying information (for example, a company name, a DBA, or joint payees).
	Click this icon to access the Identification Information page (TR_WR_TPL_OID_SP), where you can where you can provide other identification for Name1, Bank, and/or Bank Account values, respectively. Available only for a Partner Instructions/Pay Into settlement type.
Country	Select the destination country code, which also determines the selection of available values in the **Bank ID Qual** (bank ID qualifier) values. Then specify a qualifier that determines which edit algorithm the system should use to check the bank ID number sequence.
Bank ID	Enter the routing number of your recipient's financial institution.
Branch ID	Enter the recipient's branch number.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Acct Type (account type)	Select the destination account type: • *Bond* • *Bus Acct* (business account) • *Check Acct* (checking account) • *Dem Dep* (demand deposit) • *Lf Ins-Net* (life insurance) • *Mutual* (mutual fund) • *Ret It-DDA* (returned item, demand deposit account) • *Ret It-Sav* (returned item, savings account) • *S&B Acct* (stocks and bonds account) • *Stock* • *Time Dep* (time deposit) • *Trust Fund*
Account # (account number)	Enter the account number that you are funding with this transaction. If you set up bank account encryption, account numbers are masked when you save the page. For more information about bank account number encryption and the National Automated Clearing House Association (NACHA) data security requirements, see "Understanding Bank Account Encryption" (Application Fundamentals) and "Setting Up Bank Account Encryption" (Application Fundamentals).
Unmask	Select to unmask the bank account number and IBAN.
Check Digit	This field is conditional and dependent on the selected country.
	Click the **View Description** button to add internal notes about the funds transfer. These notes are not transmitted to the recipient.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
DFI Qualifier (depository financial institution qualifier)	Select to identify the bank and enter the associated **DFI ID** (depository financial institution ID), if required. If you use intermediary routings, this bank represents the final bank into which funds are transferred. The DFI qualifier indicates what format—how many characters and numerics—are in the bank's DFI ID. Note that each type has a specific number of digits that you can enter. Values are: *Transit Number:* Exactly 9 numeric characters, plus check digit calculation. *Swift ID:* 8 or 11 characters; positions 5 and 6 must be a valid 2-character country code. *CHIPS Participant ID* (Clearing House Interbank Payments System participant ID): 3 or 4 numeric characters. *CHIPS Universal ID* (Clearing House Interbank Payments System universal ID): 6 numeric characters. *Canadian Bank Branch/Institute:* No validation. *Mutually Defined:* No validation.
IBAN (international bank account number)	Enter the IBAN. This field appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is selected on the IBAN Formats page.
IBAN Digit (international bank account number digit)	Define the account's IBAN for transmittal with other transfer information. Enter the check digit and click **View IBAN.** If the DFI qualifier for the specified country is IBAN enabled, and the system successfully validates check digit, the IBAN for this account appears. This field and the View IBAN button appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is not selected on the IBAN Formats page.
BIC (bank identifier code)	Enter the BIC code for the selected bank. This code is based on the ISO standard (9362), which is the universal method used to identify the financial institutions that enable automated processing of payments. A BIC code is used to route cross-border and some domestic payments to a bank branch or payments center. SEPA requires the use of BIC and IBAN codes to uniquely identify the creditor's and debtor's banks and bank accounts in all euro cross-border payments. It is imperative that the IBAN and BIC codes are correct to avoid repair fees that the bank charges due to processing errors, and to avoid delays in processing payments and collections due to the time-consuming correction of these errors. Once you enter a BIC code, the system validates the length and layout of the characters, and validates the BIC country code against the country code set up for the bank branch .

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Validating DFI Field Requirements for EFT Requests

The **DFI Qualifier** and **DFI ID** fields on the EFT Request - Destination page are by default not required fields, however, you can configure the system to return an error or warning in case these fields are not populated. PeopleSoft Cash Management provides two message numbers (9450, 3007 and 9450, 3008) for this purpose, where you can change the message severity to error or warning to get the following behavior:

- *Error* - An error message is displayed, processing terminates, and data cannot be saved until the DFI Qualifier and DFI ID values have been entered.
- *Warning* - A warning message is displayed. You can decide to either stop processing or continue processing without the DFI Qualifier and DFI ID values.

Related Links

"Understanding IBAN" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

"IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

"International Bank Account Number (IBAN) Functionality" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

"External Accounts Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

EFT Request - Beneficiary Address Page

Use the EFT Request - Beneficiary Address page (TR_WIRE_ADDRESS) to capture the address and telephone information for the recipient of your funds transfers.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **EFT Request** > **Beneficiary Address**

Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests

Pages Used to Create Fee Entries for EFT Requests

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Fee Codes Page	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Define fee codes for EFT requests. See Setting Up Fee Structures and the Fee Codes Page.
Enter Fees Page	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Create fee entries for EFT requests using previously defined fee codes. See Creating Fee Entries and the Enter Fees Page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Defining Fee Codes for EFT Requests

Use the Fee Codes page (FA_FEE_CD_PNL) to define fee codes for EFT requests.

Navigation:

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain > **Product Related** > **Treasury** > **Fee Codes** > **Fee Codes**

Using Fee Codes for EFT Requests

Use the Enter Fees page (FEE_GENERATOR_PNL) to create fee entries for EFT requests using previously defined fee codes.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **Enter Fees** > **Enter Fees**

Creating Bank Account Transfers

Pages Used to Create Bank Account Transfers

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Bank Account Transfer Page	BAX_TRANSFER_PNL	Initiate bank transfers for internal or external bank transfers.
Category Purpose Page	CAT_PURP_BAX	Identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.
Bank Transfer ChartFields Page	BAX_CF_ENTRY	View associated bank transfer ChartFields. See the Bank Account Transfer Page for more information.
Accounting Events Page	TRA_EVENT_CAL	View summary accounting event information generated from deals, facility fees, and bank transfers.

Understanding Bank Account Transfers

Transferring funds between bank accounts is a common requirement for cash managers. Typical tasks that require fund transfers are:

- Adjusting daily cash balances.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Making a trade payment or receipt on behalf of a business unit.
- Funding the internal accounts of other business units.

Note: Only corporate treasury-designated banks can initiate fund transfers. However, this rule does not apply when the transfer is between two bank accounts that belong to the same business unit.

The system schedules accounting events and updates bank balances. Bank transfer transactions are also available to the settlements module for all settlement-related processes and eventual payment. You can create templates for transfers that occur frequently; you can then recall the template and enter the amount and the date.

These transfer types are supported by the system:

- Internal bank transfers: from one internal account to another internal account.
- External bank transfers: from one external account to another external account.

Use pages discussed in this topic to do the following:

1. Process bank account transfers.
2. (Optional) View associated bank transfer ChartFields.
3. (Optional) View accounting events.
4. Process bank transfers using electronic settlements.

Related Links

"Defining Internal Account Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Prerequisites

You must set up internal bank accounts for internal transfers. For external transfers, external accounts must be created.

To set up internal bank accounts:

1. Define a bank with the **Type** set to *Internal* on the Bank Information page.
2. Create an internal bank account between two internal bank types.
3. Begin the setup of a bank transfer on the Transfer Funds page (TR_TRANSFER_PAGE).

Related Links

"Defining Internal Account Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Bank Account Transfer Page

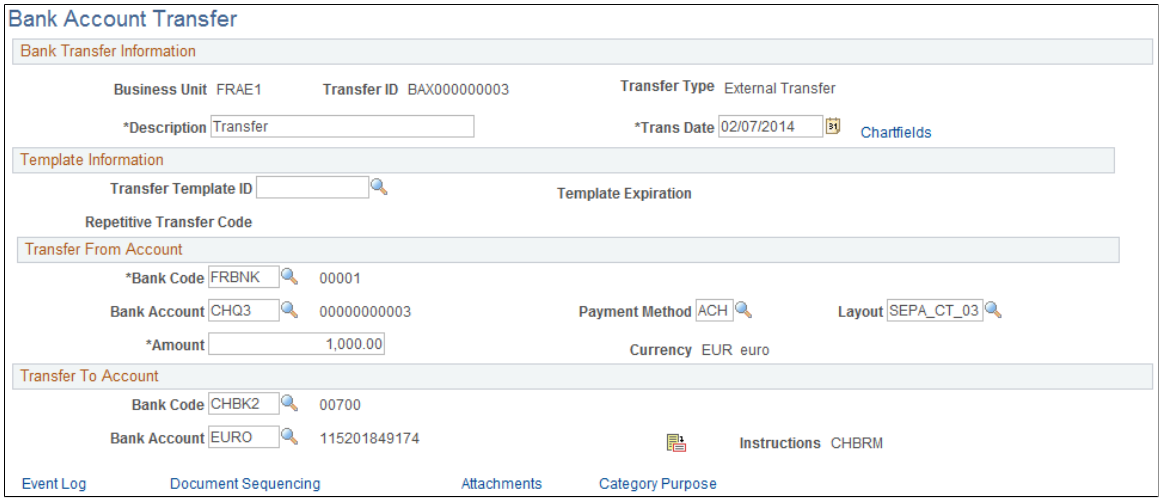
Use the Bank Account Transfer page (BAX_TRANSFER_PNL) to initiate bank transfers for internal or external bank transfers.

Navigation:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Cash Management > Fees and Transfers > Bank Account Transfer

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Bank Account Transfer page.



To create internal bank account transfers:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Bank Account Transfer search page.
2. Enter values in the **Business Unit** and **Transfer ID** fields, and specify a value of *Internal Transfer* in the **Transfer Type** field.
3. Click **Add.**
4. Enter a description.
5. Create internal bank account transfers from a template or on an ad hoc basis:
   - Click **Use Template** to select a defined template on which to base a transfer. This displays a list of templates from which you can select according to the business unit transfer ID and description. The system populates all of the fields except **Trans Date** (transaction date) and **Amount.** To create the transfer, complete those fields.

     Note: Expired templates are not available for selection.

   - Create an ad hoc internal bank account transfer by completing fields only in the **Transfer From Account** and **Transfer To Account** regions.

     If you anticipate that the ad hoc transfer will recur frequently, select the **Can be used as Template** check box to save it as a template.

   - Click the **Instructions** button to review the settlement instructions. The settlement instructions define how the payment or transfer is made—the system uses the deposit instructions from the bank account that is receiving funds (the **Transfer To Account** bank).
6. Save the transfer.

If you are creating external bank account transfers, you can specify a transfer template that may also include drawdown wire or repetitive wire information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

To create external bank account transfers:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Bank Account Transfer search page.
2. Enter values in the **Business Unit**and **Transfer ID** fields, and specify a value of *External Transfer* in the **Transfer Type** field.
3. Click **Add.**
4. Enter a description.
5. Create external bank account transfers from a template or on an ad hoc basis:
    - Select a transfer template ID to automatically populate the external bank account transfer with information. If you create an external bank account transfer from a template, you can also click the **Chartfields** link to edit the bank transfer ChartFields.
    - Leave the **Transfer Template ID** field blank to create an ad hoc bank account transfer. Complete the remaining fields on the page. If you create an ad hoc external bank account transfer, you cannot modify the bank transfer ChartFields.
    - Click the **Instructions** button to review the settlement instructions. The settlement instructions define how the payment or transfer is made—the system uses the deposit instructions from the bank account that is receiving funds (the **Transfer To Account** bank).
6. Save the transfer.

Transfer From Account

Describe the bank account that is serving as the fund source.

- For an external bank, select the bank and the bank account.
- For an internal bank, select the bank, and then specify the account customer and associated bank account. (The customer represents the business unit that is serving as the fund source.) Enter the monetary amount to transfer.

Transfer to Account

Indicate the bank account or internal account that is receiving the funds. Select a bank that is an appropriate match for the transfer from account only.

- If the transfer from account bank is an external bank, then the transfer to account bank must also be external. For an external bank, select the bank and bank account.
- For an internal bank, select the bank and then specify the customer and the associated bank account. (The customer represents the business unit that is receiving funds.)

For example, suppose that you want to move business unit UBUO3's balance from its account with TBU02 to TBU01's account with TBU02. This table lists the set up:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Group box	*Bank*	*Customer*
Transfer From Account	*TBU02*	*OBU03*
Transfer To Account	*TBU02*	*TBU01*

Note: External transfers must first be selected and approved before being processed through the Financial Gateway or Pay Cycle Manager.

For internal transfers, some restrictions are enforced:

- The customer specified as the Transfer From Account cannot be the same as the bank specified as the Transfer To Account for the same transaction.
- Similarly, the bank specified as the Transfer From Account cannot be the same as the customer specified as the Transfer To Account for the same transaction.

After you save the transfer, the system updates cash flows and generates an accounting event to create journal entries for this transaction.

Note: When internal accounts are established between two business units, you can specify a default internal account. If more than one account exists between two business units with the same currency, the default account is the one that is processed in bank transfer.

Related Links

Reviewing Accounting Information

"Understanding Electronic Banking" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway)

Category Purpose Page

Use the Category Purpose page (CAT_PURP_BAX) to identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.

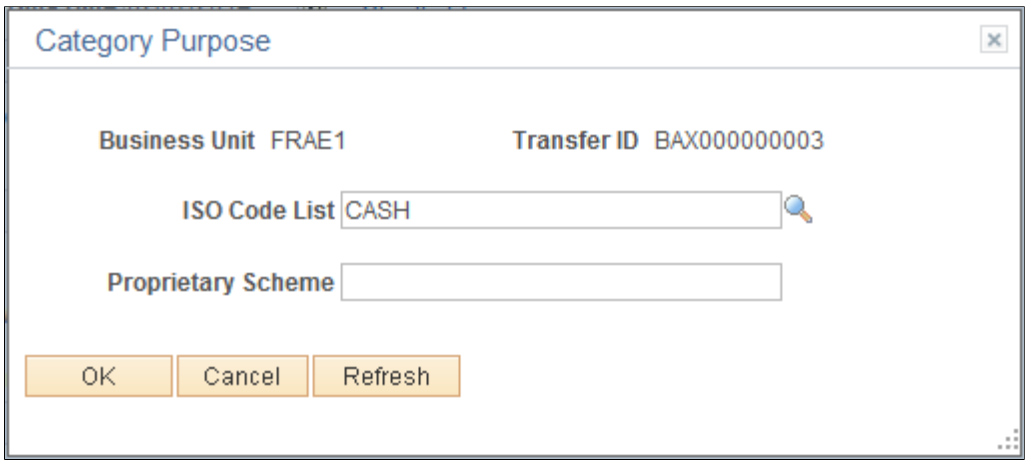
Available only for SEPA transactions.

Navigation:

Click the **Category Purpose** link on the Bank Account Transfer page for a SEPA transaction.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Category Purpose page.



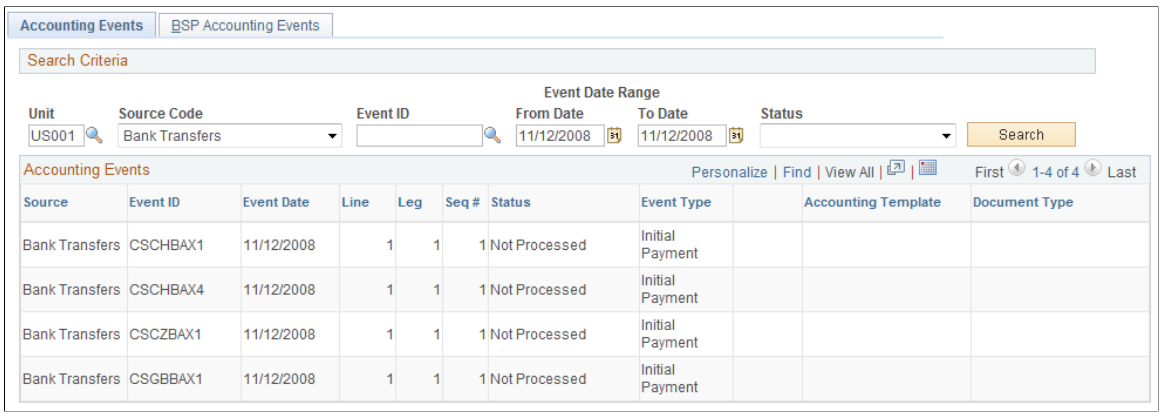
Accounting Events Page

Use the Accounting Events page (TRA_EVENT_CAL) to view summary accounting event information generated from deals, facility fees, and bank transfers.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **Accounting Events**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Events page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Enter *Bank Transfers* in the **Source Code** field to view the scheduled accounting event.

See Reviewing Accounting Information.

Working with Bank Transfers on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface

This topic discusses using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface to work with bank transfers. You can access bank transfer information through the Bank Transfer tile on the Cash Management home page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Pages Used to Work with Bank Transfers on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Bank Transfer Tile	EP_TR_BAX_CENTER_FL_GBL	View or update existing bank transfer details and create new bank transfers.
Bank Transfer Center Page	TR_BAX_CENTER_FL	Initiate bank transfers or view all the bank transfers with different status.
Bank Transfer Filters Page	TR_BAX_FLTR_SCF	Refine the results displayed in the Bank Transfer Center page.
Bank Transfer Review Page	TR_BAX_REVIEW_FL	Review, update, and submit bank transfers for new transactions. View the bank transfer details for pending, denied, paid, and approved transactions.
Bank Account Transfer Page	TR_BAX_SUMMARY_FL	Initiate bank transfers or update bank transfer details.

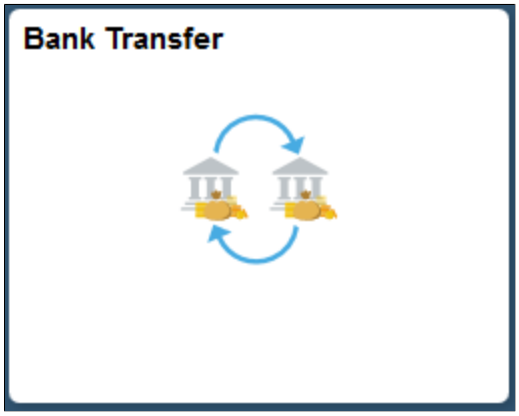
Bank Transfer Tile

Use the Bank Transfer tile (EP_TR_BAX_CENTER_FL_GBL) to initiate new bank transfers and view or update the details of the existing bank transfers.

Navigation:

View the tile on the Cash Management Home page.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Bank Transfer tile.



 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

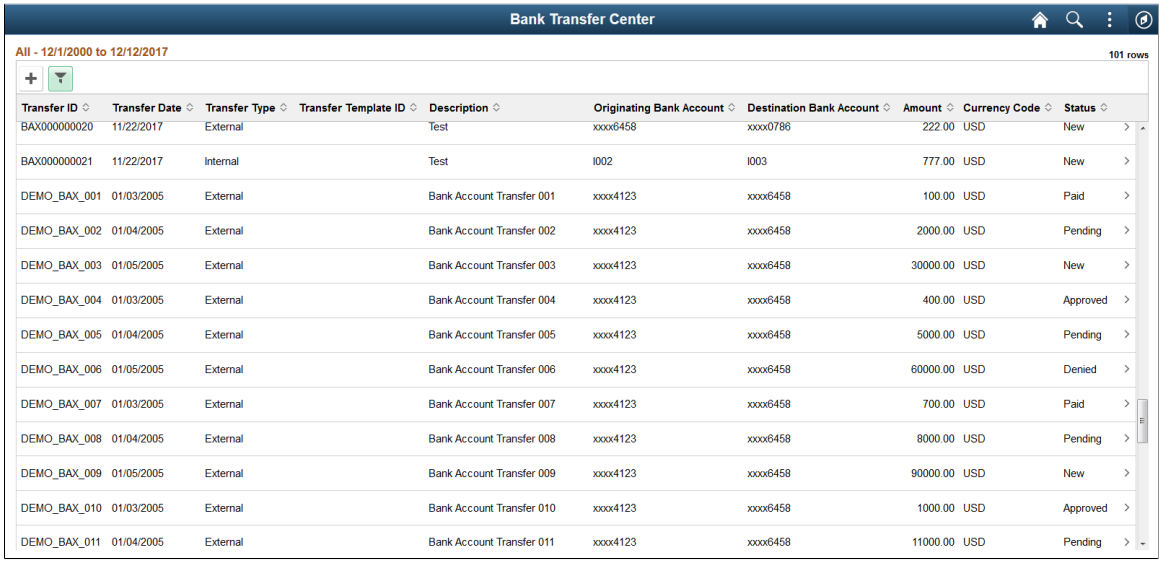
Bank Transfer Center Page

Use the Bank Transfer Center page (TR_BAX_CENTER_FL) to initiate bank transfers or view all the bank transfers with different status.

Navigation:

Select the Bank Transfer tile on the Cash Management home page.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Bank Transfer Center page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	***Description***
Add button	Select to initiate a new bank transfer. For details, see the Bank Account Transfer Page page.
Filter button	Select to filter the list of bank transfers. You can change the filter values to change the list of bank transfers to user preferred list of bank transfers based on the relative date or specific date.

Select a bank transfer row to view its details. The Bank Transfer Review page displays.

Bank Transfer Review Page

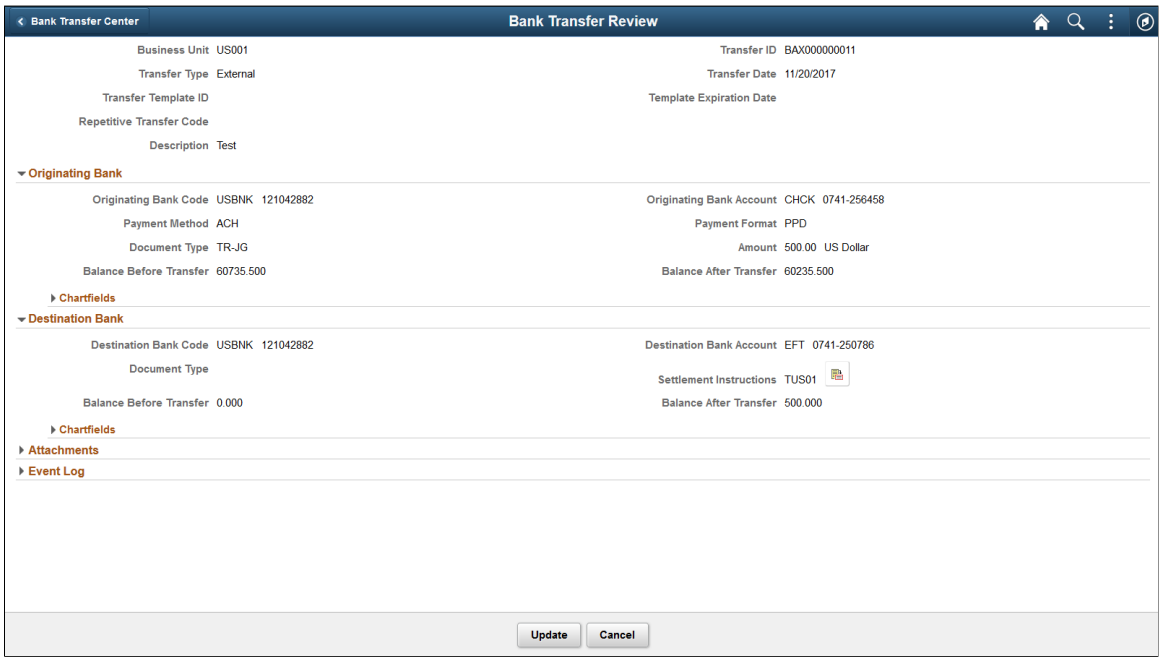
Use the Bank Transfer Review page (TR_BAX_REVIEW_FL) to view or update the details of your bank transfers. You can add attachments to bank transfers and view the details of bank transfers regardless of their status. But, to update the other details such as summary and bank information, the status of the bank transfer must be New.

Navigation:

Select a bank transfer row from the Bank Transfer Center page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Bank Transfer Review page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Update	Select to update the details of the bank transfer. The Bank Account Transfer page displays, where you can modify the details.
	Select to view settlement instructions.
Cancel	Select the Cancel button to return to the Bank Transfer Center page.

Bank Account Transfer Page

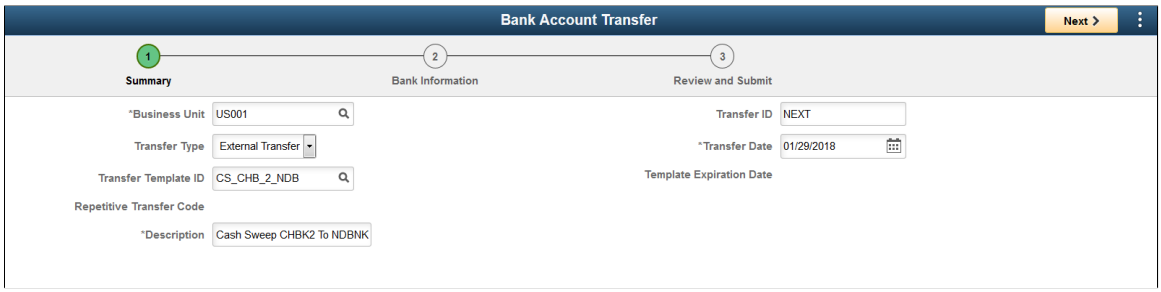
Use the Bank Account Transfer page (TR_BAX_SUMMARY_FL) to initiate internal transfer or external transfer.

Navigation:

Select the Add button from the Bank Transfer Center page. Or, select a bank transfer row with the status New and select the Update button to modify the existing bank transfers.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the External Bank Account Transfer - Summary Page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

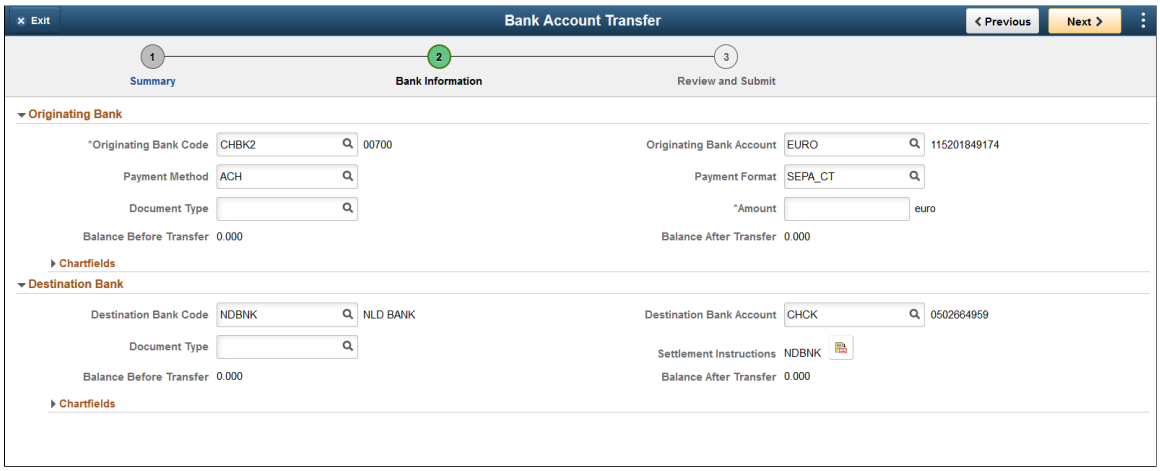


Note: In the Update mode, the Business Unit, Transfer Type, and Transfer ID fields are not editable.

Field or Control	***Description***
Business Unit	Select the business unit.
Transfer Type	Select the transfer type as Internal Transfer or External Transfer. • Internal Transfer: From one internal account to another internal account. • External Transfer: From one external account to another external account.
Transfer Template ID	Select a transfer template ID. It automatically populates the information for the external bank account transfer.
Repetitive Transfer Code	Displays the repetitive transfer code if this value is available in the template.
Description	Displays a description for the bank transfer.
Transfer ID	Displays NEXT as the default transfer ID. You can modify it if required.
Transfer Date	Displays the current date by default. You can modify the date if required.
Template Expiration Date	Displays the template expiration date if specified.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the External Bank Account Transfer - Bank Information Page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

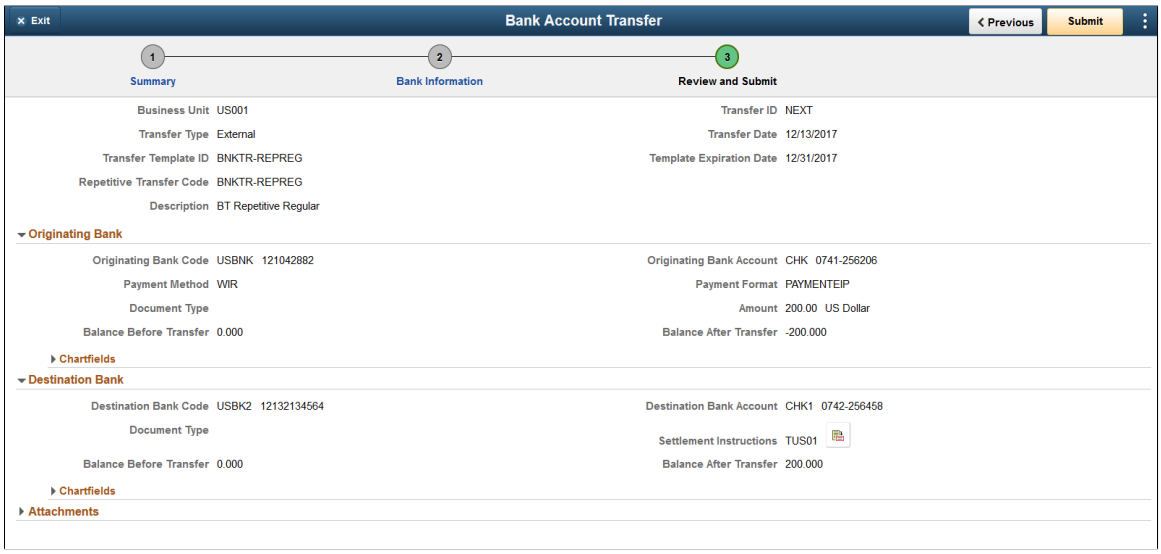


Field or Control	*Description*
Originating Bank	Displays the bank account that is serving as the fund source.
Destination Bank	Displays the bank account or internal account that is receiving the funds.
Chartfields	Enter the chartfield information for the originating and destination banks.

Note: For creating the current and future-dated BAX transaction, the Balance Before Transfer and Balance After Transfer is calculated based on the bank balance statements for the previous days and the treasury transactions for the current day.
For creating the backdated BAX transactions, the Balance Before Transfer and Balance After Transfer is calculated based only on the bank balance statements for the previous days.

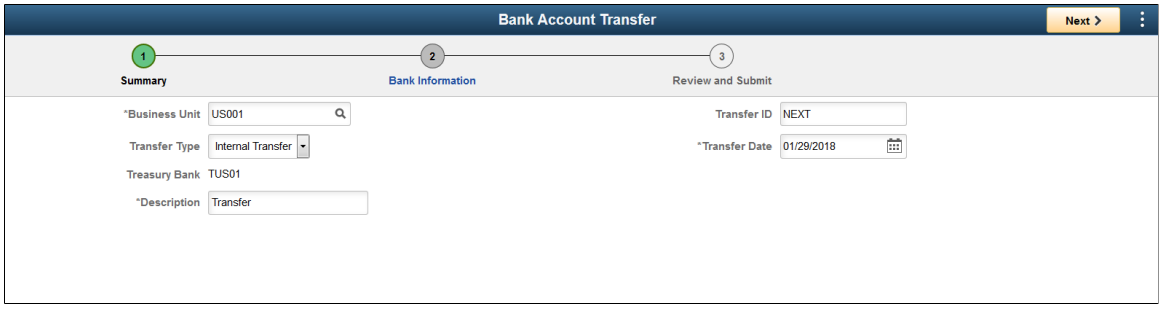
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the External Bank Account Transfer - Review and Submit page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



On this page, you can review the details of the new bank transfer and upload attachments related to the bank transfer. Finally, select the Submit button.

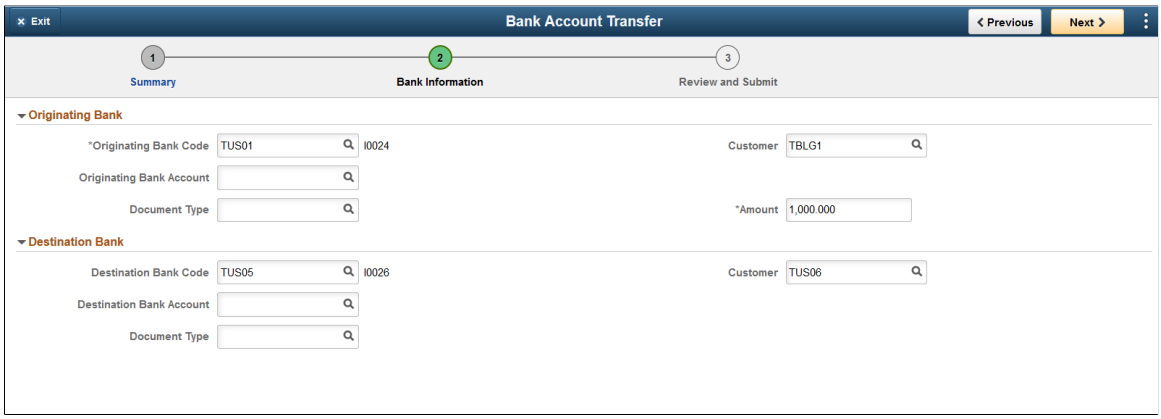
This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Internal Bank Account Transfer - Summary page.



Select the bank transfer type as Internal Transfer, and enter the description and transfer ID. By default, the current date displays. You can change the date if required. Select Next to navigate to the Bank Information page.

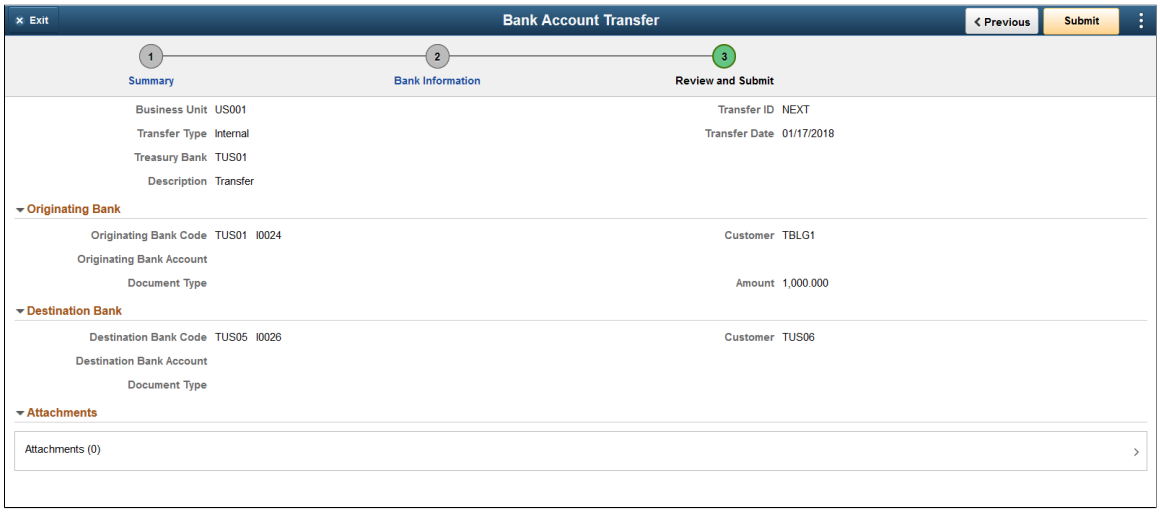
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Internal Bank Account Transfer - Bank Information page.



Enter the required information on this page, and select Next.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Internal Bank Account Transfer - Review and Submit page.



On this page, you can review the bank transfer details and make the required modifications by navigating to the previous pages. You can also upload any attachments related to the bank transfer. Finally, submit the details.

Note: For Originating bank, the customer represents the business unit that is serving as the fund source and for Destination Bank, the customer represents the business unit that is receiving funds.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Reviewing Repetitive Transfers

Page Used to Review Repetitive Transfers

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Review Repetitive Templates Page	TR_REPTVE_TRNF_PG	Search for and maintain your organization's repetitive transfer templates.

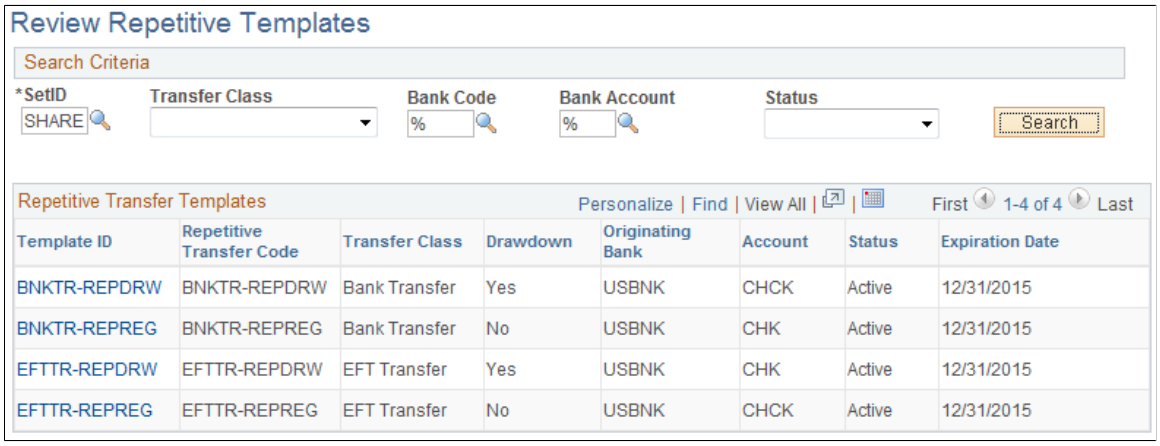
Review Repetitive Templates Page

Use the Review Repetitive Templates page (TR_REPTVE_TRNF_PG) to search for and maintain your organization's repetitive transfer templates.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Fees and Transfers** > **Review Repetitive Templates** > **Review Repetitive Templates**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Review Repetitive Templates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



To maintain your repetitive transfers:

1. Enter your search criteria, and click the **Search** button.
2. From the returned results, click a **Template ID** to access the specific transfer template's information.
3. If you edit any information on the transfer template:
   - Click **OK** to save your changes and return to the Review Repetitive Templates page.
   - Click **Cancel** to discard your changes without saving, and return to the Review Repetitive Templates page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Click **Apply** to save your changes without returning to the Review Repetitive Templates page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 10

Working with Settlements

Understanding the Settlements Payment Process

This section discusses the process for handling settlements within Treasury.

Settlements are cash flow transactions that the system transforms into payment instructions for different financial institutions. In Cash Management you can generate settlements from bank account transfers, electronic funds transfer (EFT) requests, and fee entries. You can also generate a settlement by entering a deal in Deal Management. The settlement process involves three steps: selection, approval (an optional step), and dispatch. You first select settlements that are to be processed as payments by using the Select Settlements page. Depending on system settings, certain selected settlements must be approved prior to being processed. You can establish one of three following settlement approval methods:

- No approval required.
- Manual settlement approval, performed by an authorized user (or users) by using the Settlement Approval page.
- Automatic settlement approval, performed by PeopleSoft Workflow.

If the financial sanctions service is enabled and the bank that is being used to pay requires validation, the system automatically performs a search for the matches between the names and addresses entered on the settlement with those on the financial sanctions list. This functionality is enabled on the Financial Sanctions Options page by selecting the Enable in Treasury Settlements check box.

See "Financial Sanctions Options Page" (Application Fundamentals).

Next, the Financial Sanction Validation check box must be selected on the Bank Information page. Settlements transacted through these banks will initiate the financial sanctions comparison upon there selection.

See "Bank Information Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Once the settlements are approved, they are either sent to Financial Gateway where they are dispatched to a financial institution using the Dispatch Payments page or obtained by the Pay Cycle Manager for processing. The system processes payments according to the pay method that is defined on the External Accounts - Payment Methods page. Depending on the payment method type, you can specify that the payment be settled through one of two methods: PeopleSoft Financial Gateway or the Payables Pay Cycle Manager. Within Financial Gateway, the dispatch process transforms these settlements into payment files, and submits them to the appropriate institution.

- For payments that are set to be processed through Financial Gateway, you use the pages and functionality that is discussed in the *PeopleSoft FSCM: Financial Gateway* documentation.

  See "Understanding the Payment Process in Financial Gateway" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- For payments that are set to be processed through Payables Pay Cycle Manager, you should refer to the *PeopleSoft FSCM: Payables* documentation about Processing Pay Cycles to process these types of payments.

Note: If deal approval is required, then related deal transactions do not appear for selection on the Select Settlements page until the deal is approved.

See "Understanding Pay Cycle Processing" (PeopleSoft Payables).

Related Links

"Understanding the Payment Process in Financial Gateway" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway)
"Understanding the Financial Sanctions Service" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Settlement Workflow

Settlement selection and settlement approval functionality are integrated with PeopleSoft Workflow. When you select or approve settlements, the system routes workflow notifications to defined user's worklists, alerting them that the settlements are being processed.

If you implement multiple levels of approval, the system automatically routes the approval through the levels until the appropriate user authorizes it.

For example, you establish the following two levels of approval:

- Administrator, with a 50,000 USD limit.
- Manager, with a 100,000 USD limit.

If the administrator approves a settlement of 75,000 USD, the system does not set the settlement status to approved as the amount is over the defined approval limit. Instead, the system routes the settlement to the manager's worklist for approval. The manager can then select settlement approval work items on the worklist to access the Settlement Approval page, and approve the settlement.

Related Links

Delivered Workflows for Cash Management

Settlement Approval

You use one of two approval methods: manual settlement approval or automatic settlement approval. When using automatic settlement approval, you choose between a PeopleTools Workflow process called Virtual Approver and the Approval Framework. Once authorized, whether manually or automatically, you process the settlements for payment.

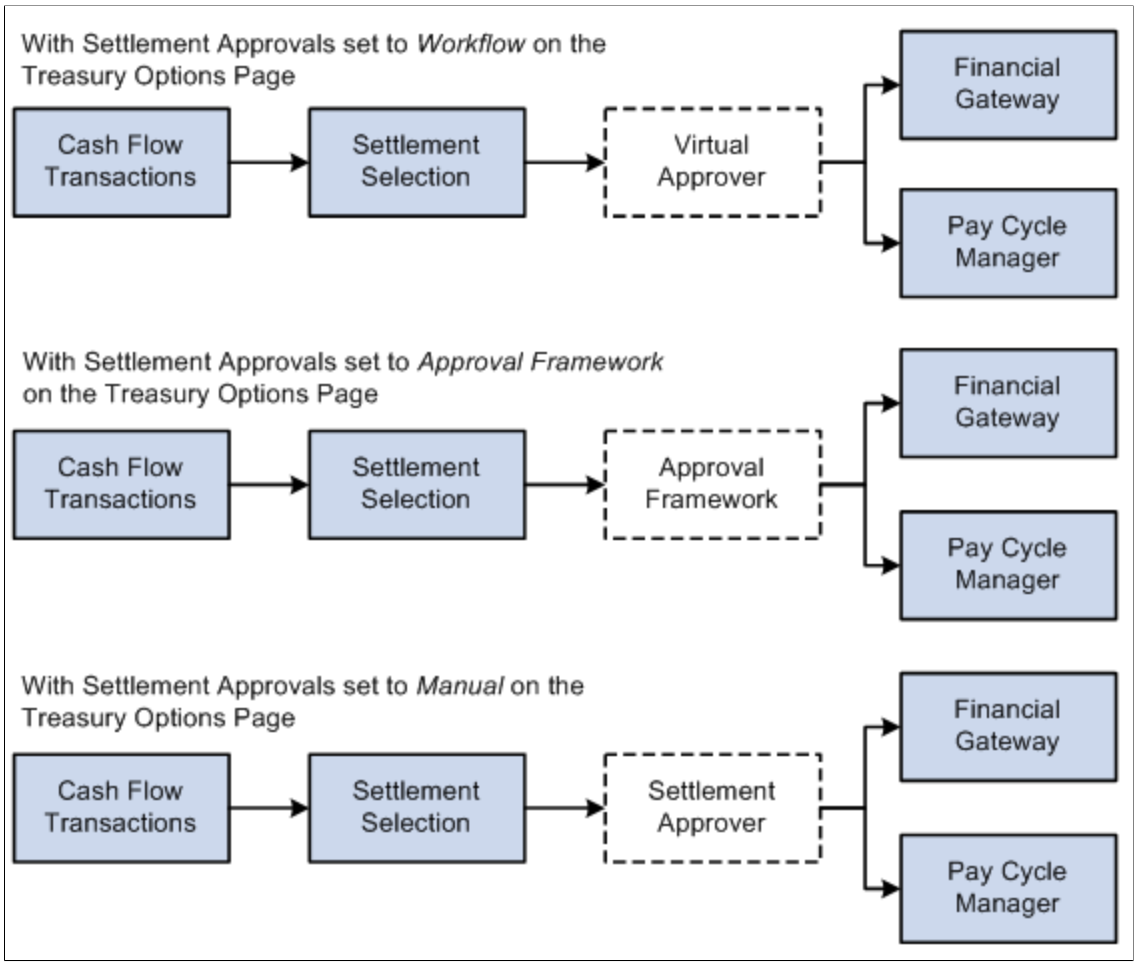
See the product information for *PeopleTools: Workflow Technology* "Defining Approval Processes," Understanding Virtual Approver.

See the product information for *PeopleSoft Approval Framework*.

This diagram illustrates the settlement process:

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The settlement process using automatic approval or manual approval, from cash flow transactions through Financial Gateway or Pay Cycle Manager



Note: If you're enabling automatic approvals, you must select the approval method on the Treasury Options page. Also, you can only authorize settlements up to the maximum approval limit with Virtual Approver.

Common Elements Used to Work with Settlements

Field or Control	***Description***
Account	Displays the account from which payment originates.
Bank	Displays the bank from which payment originates.
Cpty (counterparty)	Displays the counterparty receiving the payment.
Cutoff Time	Enter the time by which the payment must be received.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Cutoff Date	Enter the date by which the payment must be received.
Filter by Source	Select *Bank Fees, Bank Transfers, Deal Fees, Deals, Facility Fees, Hedges, Interest Calculated, Letter of Credit Fees, Treasury Wires,* or *Wire Fees* to limit the search results.
Preferences	Click to establish the default search criteria for settlement selection or settlement approval.
Stlmt Inst (settlement instructions)	Enter payment instructions for the settlement, including recipient address and bank information.
Sort By	You can also sort the results by *Account, Amount, Bank, Method,* or *Source ID,* using this field.
Src BU (source business unit)	Displays the Treasury Management source business unit.
Source Code	Displays the original Treasury Management source for the transaction. Source codes are represented by a single letter in the transaction results. Bank Transfers: *X* Deals: *D* Deal Estimated Maturity Accrual: *M* Deal Fees: *E* EFT Fees: *R* EFT Requests: *W* Facility Fees: *F* Hedges: *H* Interest: *I* Investment Pools: *P* LC Fees (letter of credit fees): *T* Netted Deal: *N*
Source ID	Displays the source identifier code for the specific transaction.
Status	Indicates the payment status: *Selected* for payment, *Unselected* for payment, or *Pending* approval. When you select a payment on this page, its status changes to *Pending*.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Total Payment Amount	Displays the sum of all payment results, and currency code.
View Payment Life Cycle	Click to access payment details and events in the settlement's life cycle. See Treasury Payment Life-Cycle Page.

Setting Up Settlement Approvals

Before you begin settlement approval, choose a method of approval (Workflow or Approval Framework) and complete configuration as discussed in this topic.

Configuring Workflow for Settlement Approvals

If you are implementing Workflow, you need to complete these steps to set up settlement approval settings:

1. Set up Workflow in PeopleSoft Application Designer.
2. Specify settlement approval options on the Treasury Options page at the business unit level.
3. Select *Workflow* in the Settlement Approval Method list.

See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Workflow Technology*.

See also Defining Treasury Business Unit Options.

Configuring the Approval Framework for Settlement Approvals

If you elect to use the Approval Framework for settlement approval, verify that the delivered Approval Framework setup uses the proper values for the following:

- Verify the Transaction Registry for the default Approval Component name. The graphical display of deal preview and approval routings on the monitor page is managed by the Thread Package and Class.
- Verify the delivered email notification templates for approval actions.
- Verify the Approval Component and settings in the Transaction Configuration.
- Set up the approval user lists.
- Set up the approval process definitions.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

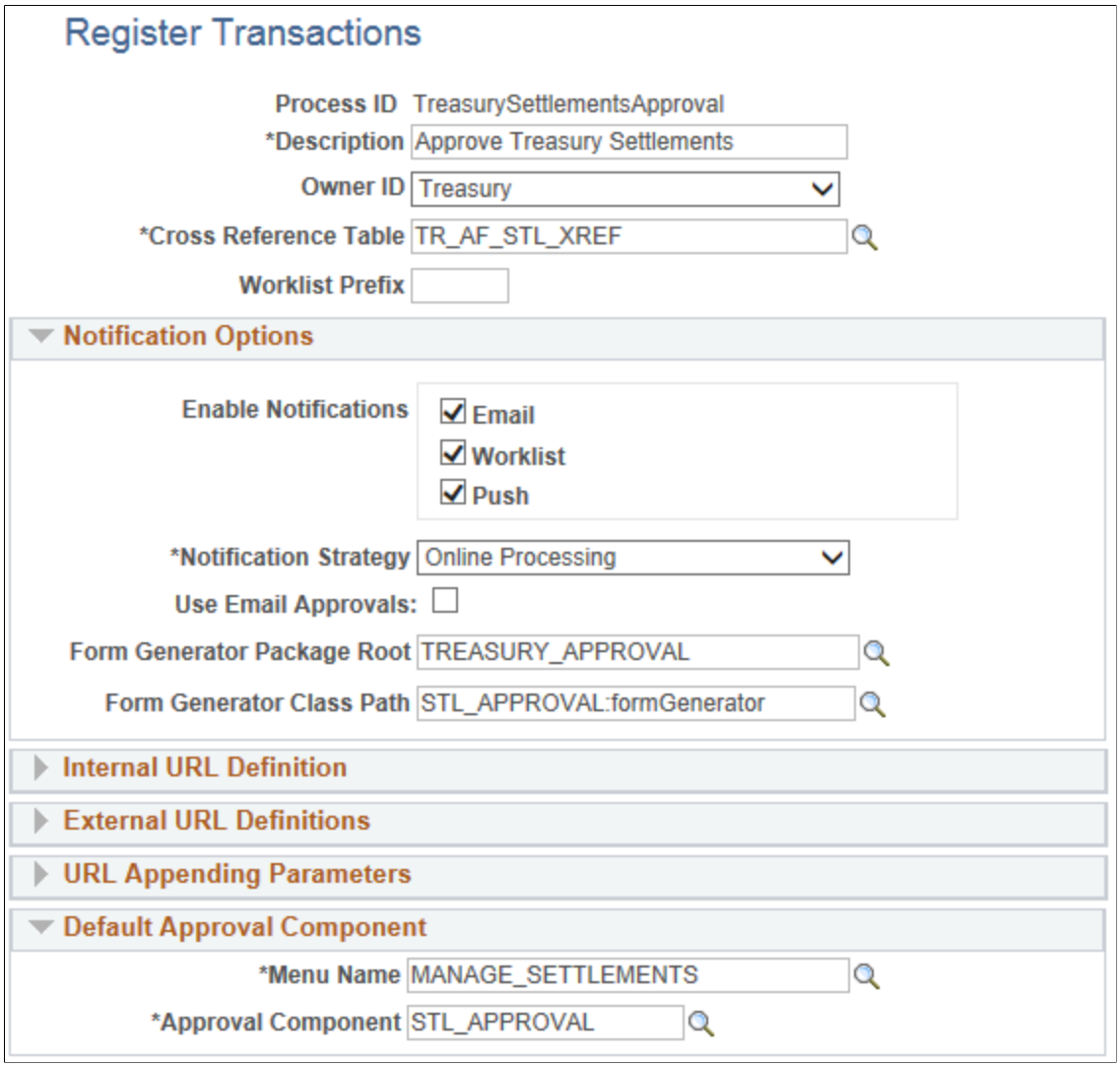
Verifying the Transaction Registry

Oracle's PeopleSoft delivers three Treasury transaction registry definitions as system data:

- Treasury Deal Approval
- Treasury Deal Confirmation
- Approve Treasury Settlements

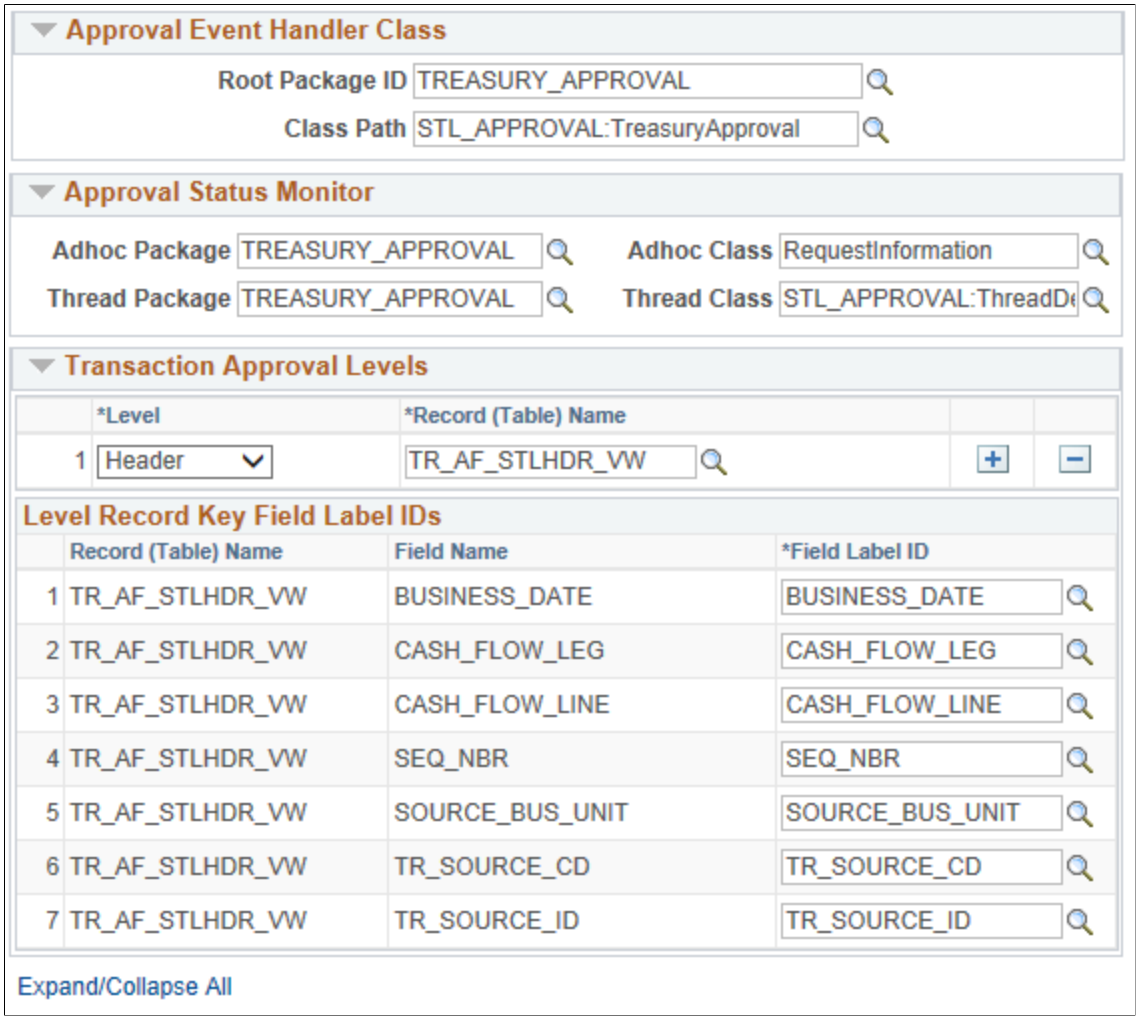
Oracle's PeopleSoft strongly advises against changing these definitions, in particular the table and application package names. However, you can configure the notification process to send email and/or worklist notifications. Navigate to the Register Transactions page (**Enterprise Components** >**Approvals** >**Approvals** >**Approval Registry**):

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Register Transactions page for Settlement Approvals (1 of 2).



 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Register Transactions page for Settlement Approvals (2 of 2). You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



See "Setting Up the Transaction Registry" (Approval Framework).

Verify that the following fields of the Register Transactions page include the proper values: **Approval Component**, **Thread Package**, and **Thread Class**. The graphical display of routings on the monitor page is managed by the Thread Package and Class.

Use the following fields to configure the notification process to send email and worklist notifications using Approval Framework:

Field or Control	***Description***
Enable Notifications	Select any or all check boxes from the following options: • **Email** • **Worklist** • **Push**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Notification Strategy	Select from the following options: • *Offline Processing* - Processes notifications offline through NEM (Notification and Escalation Manager). • *Online Processing* - Enables email notifications to be processed immediately.
Use Email Approvals	Select this check box to enable approvers to approve or deny the settlement directly via the email notification without logging into the system.

See the product documentation for *PeopleSoft Approval Framework*.

Verifying the Delivered Email Notification Templates for Settlements

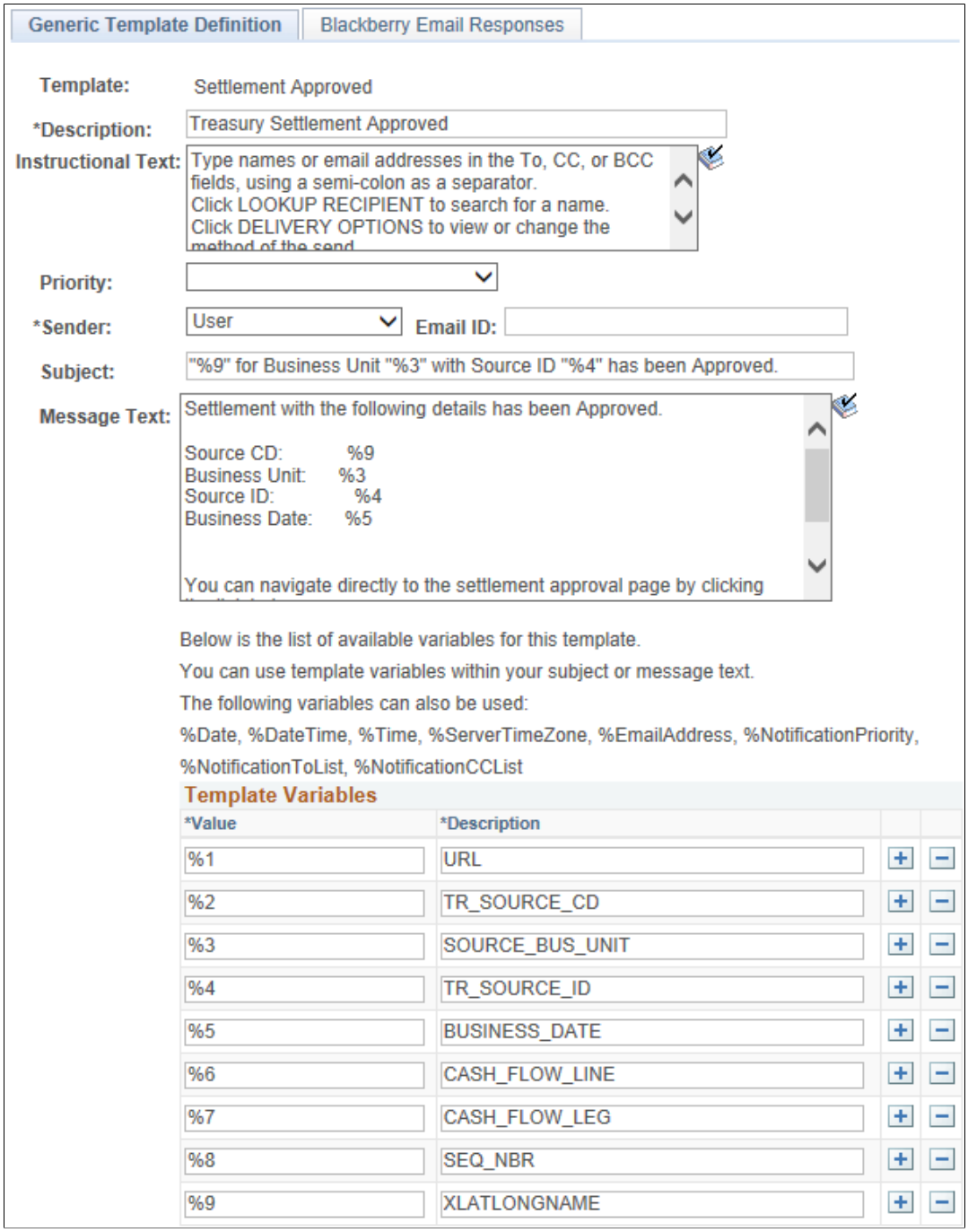
PeopleSoft delivers the following settlement notification templates:

- Settlement Approval (awaiting approval)
- Settlement Approved
- Settlement Denied
- Settlement Pushed Back

For example, see the Generic Template Definition page (**PeopleTools** >**Workflow** >**Notifications** >**Generic Templates** >**Generic Template Definition**):

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Generic Template Definition page for Settlement Approval.



See "Defining Notification Templates for Approval Framework" (Approval Framework).

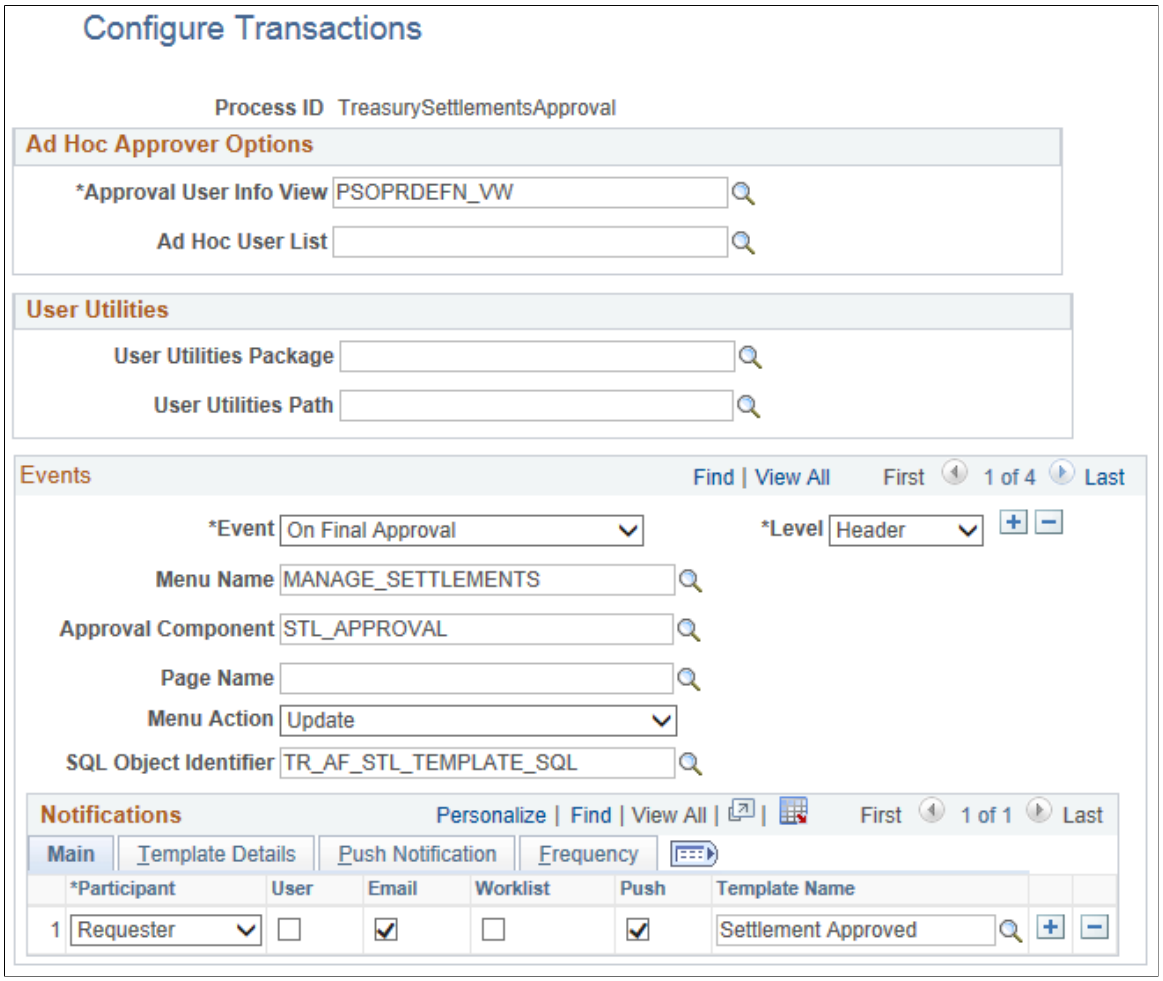
Modifying the Transaction Configuration for Settlement Approvals

If you elect to use the Approval Framework for settlement approval, you can modify values on the transaction configuration definition for the Treasury Settlements Approval process according to your approval requirements.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

For example, see the Configure Transactions page (**Enterprise Components >Approvals >Approvals >Approval Setup**):

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Configure Transactions page for Settlement Approvals.



See "Configuring Approval Transactions" (Approval Framework).

Use the following fields to modify the transaction configuration definition for the Treasury Settlements Approval process. You can change the Approval User Info View, user list for email approvals, and delivery method. You can also add more participants to receive the notification, change the notification channel and priority, replace the template, and add more events to trigger the notification generation process.

Field or Control	***Description***
Approval User Info View	Provides details about which view a user sees when using the Approval Monitor. Data in this view dictates what is displayed in the approver links.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Event	Select an event upon which action is taken: • *Ad Hoc Delete* • *Ad Hoc Insert* • *Hold Step* • *Locked Out* • *No Approver Necessary* • *On Error* • *On Escalate* • *On Final Approval* • *On Final Denial* • *On Process Launch* • *On Reactivate* • *On Reassign* • *On Step Complete* • *On Terminate* • *Processing Complete* • *Push Back* • *Request Information* • *Request Information Added* • *Route for Approval* • *Route for Review*
Level	Specify *Header* or *Line*.
Menu Name,**Approval Component**, and **Page Name**	Enter a menu name, approval component, and page name to which this event applies

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Menu Action	Enter one of the following values: • *Add* • *All* • *Correction* • *Data Entry* • *Update*
Participant	Select participants in this event from the list: • *A-Delegate* • *A-Proxy* • *Admin* • *Approvers* • *Dynamic* • *External* • *R-Delegate* • *R-Proxy* • *Requester* • *Reviewers* • *User List*
User, **Email**, **Worklist**, and **Push**	Select the channel or channels through which the notification will be sent.
Template Name	Select the generic template you want to use for the email content of this notification.

Setting Up the Treasury Approval User Lists

Approval User Lists define user sources for use with steps in the approval processes (rules). Treasury delivers demo user lists, but you must create your own approval user lists based on your own business structure. Treasury delivers the following sample user lists, based on roles:

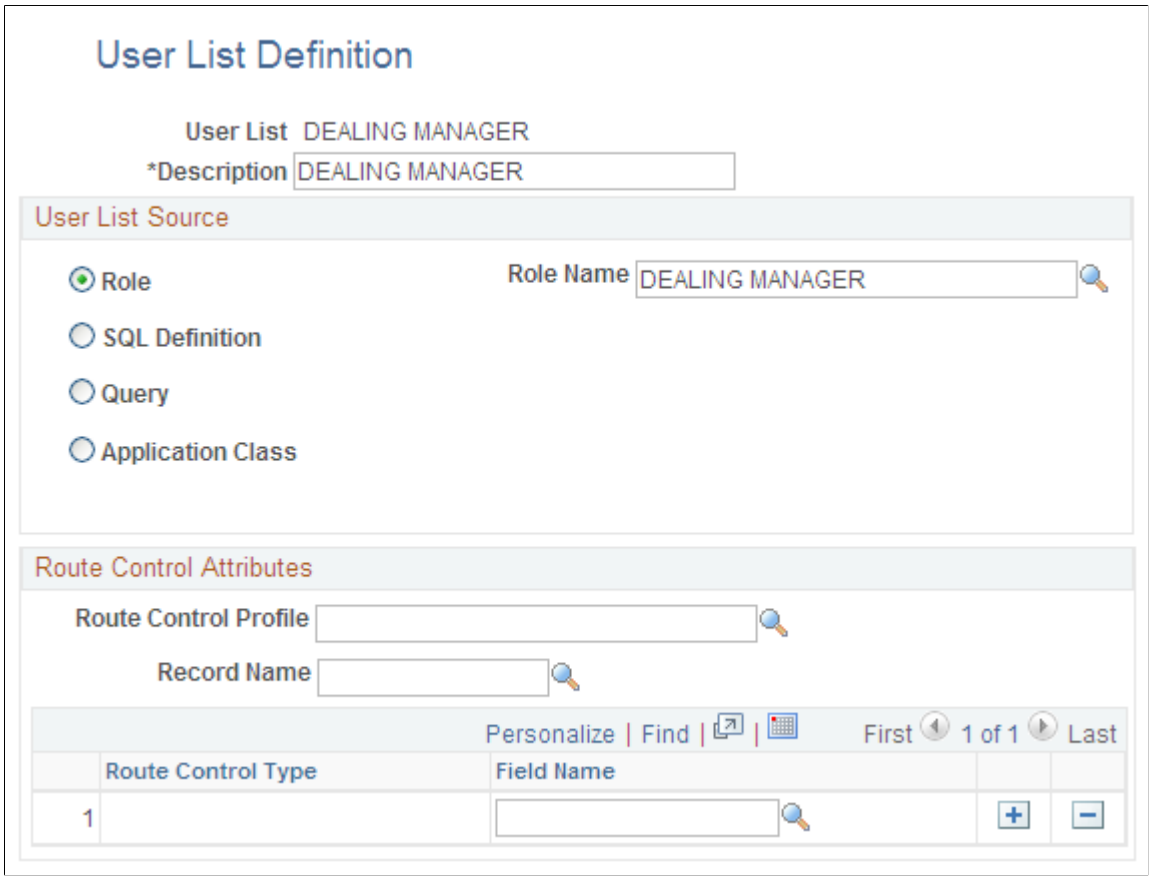
- CLERK

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- DEALING MANAGER
- SUPERVISOR
- VICE PRESIDENT

For example, see the User List Definition page (**Enterprise Components** >**Approvals** >**Approvals** >**User List Setup** >**User List Definition**):

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the User List Definition page for the Dealing Manager role.



See "User List Definition Page" (Approval Framework).

In addition, verify that the proper approval roles are assigned to the approvers on the User ID – Roles page (**PeopleTools** >**Security** >**User Profiles** >**User Profiles** >**Roles**).

See "Defining Users for Approval Framework" (Approval Framework).

See also the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Security Administration*.

Setting Up the Treasury Process Definitions

Treasury process definitions provide the details for application approval rules, which are equivalent to the Approval Rule Set for PeopleSoft Workflow. Treasury delivers deal approvals, deal confirmations, and settlements process definitions in the demo process setup.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

You can modify the delivered approval process definitions or create your own process definitions. The selection is done via an Approval Framework SQL object, PTAFDEFN_SEARCH_SQL, which is ordered by Priority, Definition ID, and Effective Date.

Use the Setup Process Definitions page to define approval definition processes. The process is made up of stages, their paths, and steps. The approval steps that you place on the approval path represent the approval levels that are required for a transaction.

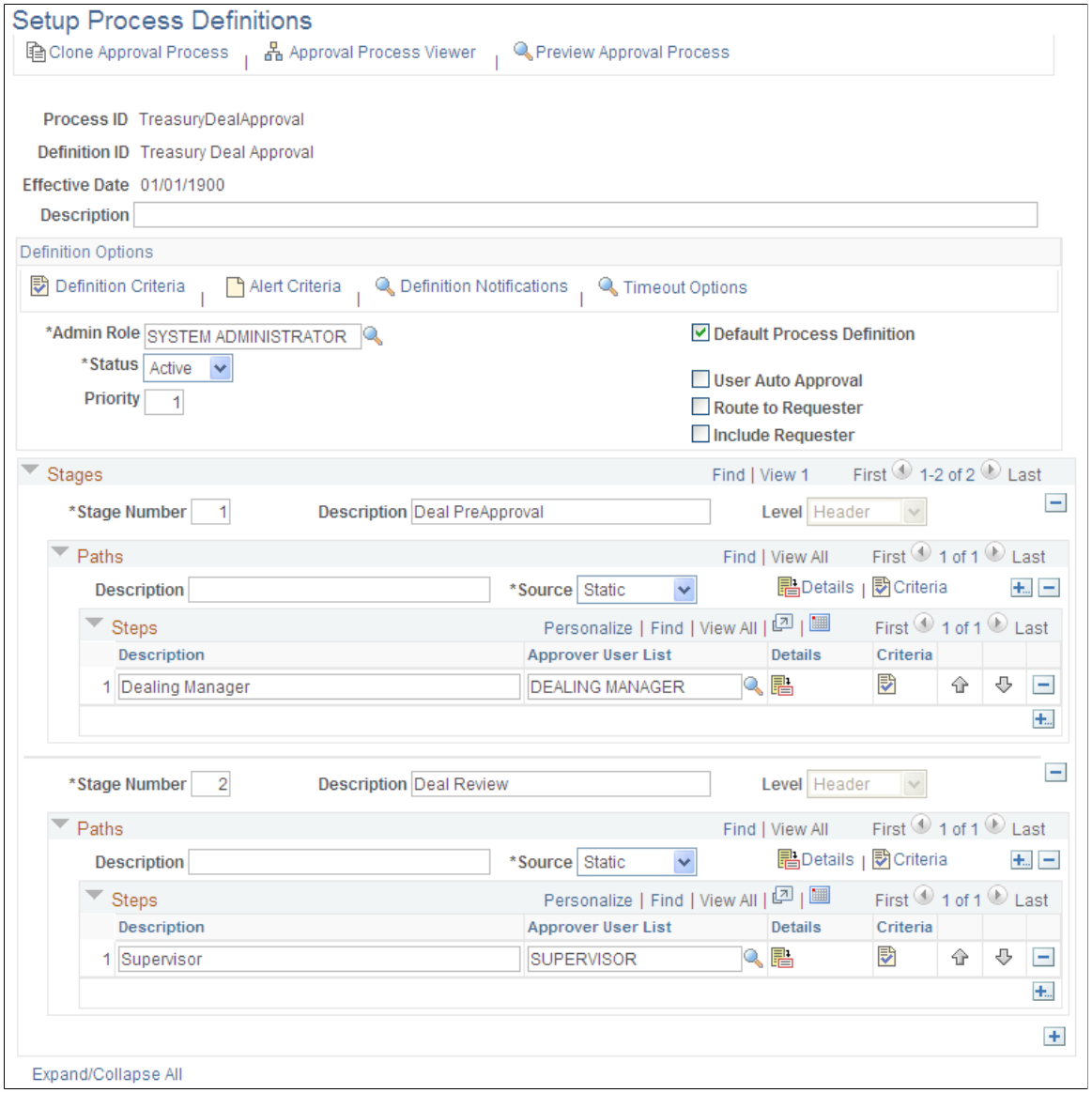
PeopleSoft Treasury delivers several definition IDs for the Treasury processes as a model for your setup, as follows:

Process ID	***Definition ID***
TreasuryDealApproval	Treasury Deal Approval
TreasuryDealconfirmation	Treasury Deal confirmation
TreasurySettlementsApproval	Cash - settlements Approval
TreasurySettlementsApproval	Deal - settlements Approval

For example, see the Setup Process Definitions page (Enterprise Components, Approvals, Approvals, Approval Process Setup, Setup Process Definitions):

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Setup Process Definitions page for Treasury Deal Approval.



See "Defining the Setup Process Definitions Component" (Approval Framework).

Related Links

"Setting Up the Notification Registry and Override Pages" (Events and Notifications Framework)

Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission

This topic discusses how to select settlements for outbound submission and use payment life-cycle functionality.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Pages Used to Select Settlements

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Select Settlements Page	STL_SELECTION	Review and select payments that are scheduled for outbound submission.
Settlements User Preferences Page	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Set up the default criteria for searching settlements. See the Select Settlements Page.
Sanction Review Page	STL_VIOLATIONS	Lists selected settlements where the names or addresses match those found on the list of Specially Designation Nationals (SDN) published by the US Department of the Treasury's Office of Foreign Asset Control (OFAC), the European Union, or an enterprise-defined list.
Treasury Payment Life-Cycle Page	PMT_LIFE_CYCLE_PG	View detailed and summary information for a payment, from the initial creation through payment and reconciliation.
Review Settlements Page	STL_INQUIRY	View the payments that are scheduled for authorization and release.

Select Settlements Page

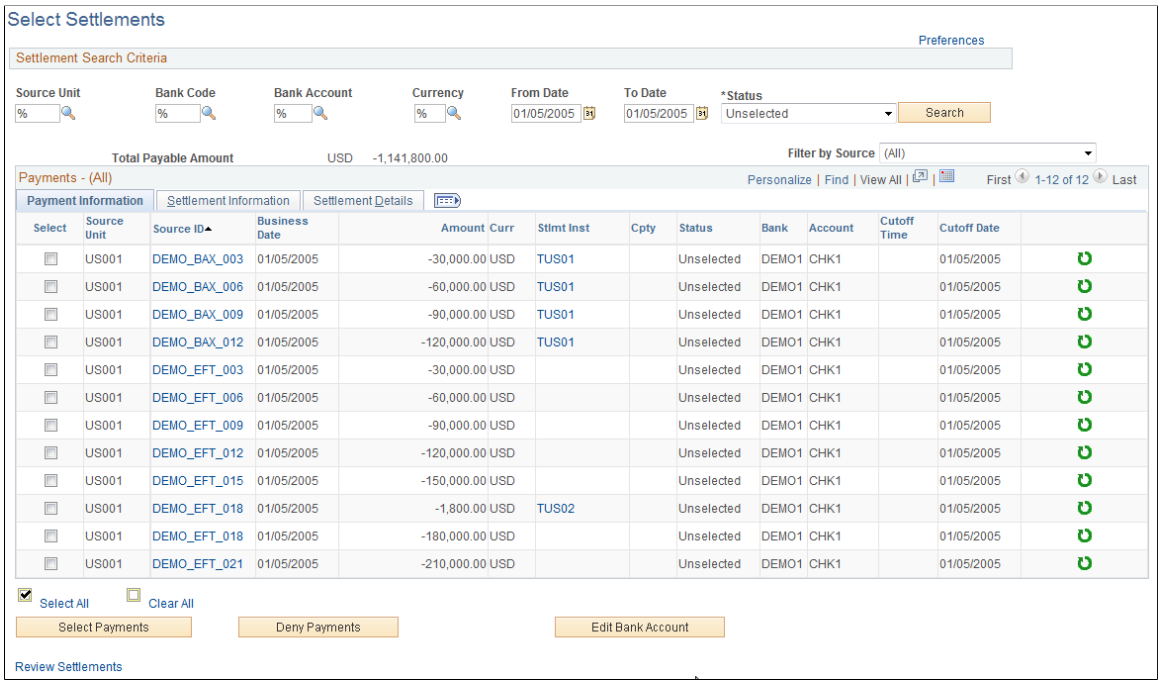
Use the Select Settlements page (STL_SELECTION) to review and select payments that are scheduled for outbound submission.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Settlements** > **Select Settlements**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Select Settlements page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Preferences	Click this link to set up the default criteria for searching settlements on the Settlements User Preferences page (STL_SELECTION_PREF).

Settlement Search Criteria

Enter the search criteria for payments and click **Search** to display a list of payments.

Field or Control	*Description*
Status	Select a status value of *Denied, Selected,* or *Unselected.* The selected value determines what settlement action buttons are available to you.

Payments - (All)

Field or Control	*Description*
Source ID	Click to view a settlement's details.
Stlmt Inst (settlement instructions)	Click to view the specified settlement instructions.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Cutoff Time and **Cutoff Date**	Payments arriving by this time and date are processed by the bank that day. Payments arriving afterwards are processed on the next business day.
Method	Displays the payment method for the settlement, as defined in the settlement instructions.
Select Payments	Select a payment and click to process. After you select a payment, the system changes the **Status** field to *Pending* (pending approval). If the payment is designated for financial sanctions validation, the system will compare the names and addresses of the financial sanctions list with those entered on the To Account for EFT Requests and the settlement instructions for all other settlements. If potential matches are found, the Sanction Review page appears displaying the payments that require a closer review. If you enable settlement authorization workflow, the system submits payments to the appropriate worklists for approval. If you enable auto approval, the system marks the payments as approved and ready for dispatch. If you enable manual settlement approval, you must manually approve the payments on the **Settlement Approval** page. If you do not enable automatic settlement approval, the system automatically marks the payments as approved and ready for dispatch. **Note:** Settlements associated with a deal that requires deal approval, will not be available for approval until the deal itself is first approved.
Deny Payments	Click to deny settlements for payment. After you deny a payment, the system changes the **Status** field to *Denied.* **Note:** You cannot deny a payment once the automated accounting process is run for the settlement. See Processing Accounting Entries.
Edit Bank Account	Select a payment and click to change the settlement bank account. If more than one payment is selected, the payments must be in the same currency.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
UnSelect Payments	Click to reverse the status of settlements that are pending approval. After you clear a payment, the system changes the **Status** field to *Unselected.*

The Settlement Details tab displays the international bank account number (IBAN) in addition to the local, domestic bank account number when the country has been set up to display the IBAN on the "IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Related Links

Delivered Workflows for Cash Management

Sanction Review Page

Use the Sanction Review page (STL_VIOLATIONS) to lists selected settlements where the names or addresses match those found on the list of Specially Designation Nationals (SDN) published by the US Department of the Treasury's Office of Foreign Asset Control (OFAC), the European Union, or an enterprise-defined list.

Navigation:

Select payments on the Select Settlements page that fail the financial sanctions validation.

This page displays settlements that have payees who potential match those listed on the financial sanctions list.

Field or Control	*Description*
Sanction Detail	Click to view details of the payee on the Financial Sanctions Entry page.
Clear Settlement	After selecting and reviewing the settlement, click to allow further processing of the settlement.
Deny Settlement	After selecting and reviewing the settlement, click to deny further processing of the settlement.
Return	Click to return to the Select Settlements page.

Treasury Payment Life-Cycle Page

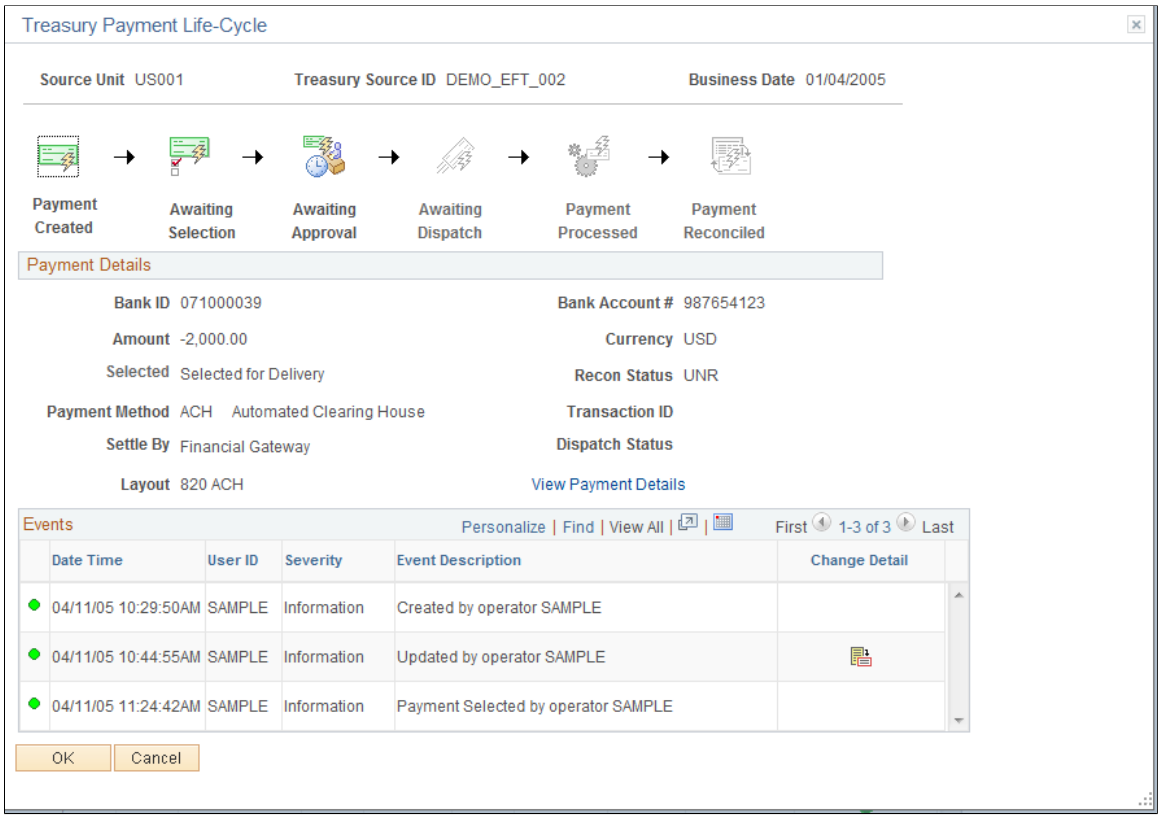
Use the Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page (PMT_LIFE_CYCLE_PG) to view detailed and summary information for a payment, from the initial creation through payment and reconciliation.

Navigation:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Click **View Payments Life Cycle** on the Select Settlements page.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



The buttons at the top of the page—**Payment Created, Awaiting Selection, Awaiting Approval, Awaiting Dispatch, Payment Processed,** and **Payment Reconciled**—become linked and change from black and white to color when that specific action occurs for the payment. Click a button to access the associated page and view the indicated life-cycle information.

Field or Control	***Description***
Payment Details	View summary information about the settlement. The **Status** and **Recon Status** field values change as you process the settlement.
Payment Events	View date, time, and descriptive information about each event that you perform on the settlement.

Related Links

Delivered Workflows for Cash Management

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Review Settlements Page

Use the Review Settlements page (STL_INQUIRY) to view the payments that are scheduled for authorization and release.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Settlements** > **Review Settlements**

Manually Approving Settlements

This topic discusses how to manually approve settlement payments. You need to manually approve or deny settlements if you do not configure automatic Settlement Approval Workflow.

Pages Used to Manually Approve Settlements

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Approve Settlements Page	STL_SELECTION	Authorize the release of scheduled treasury settlement transactions.
Settlement Approval - Preferences Page	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Set up the default criteria for searching for settlements for approval. See the Approve Settlements Page

Approve Settlements Page

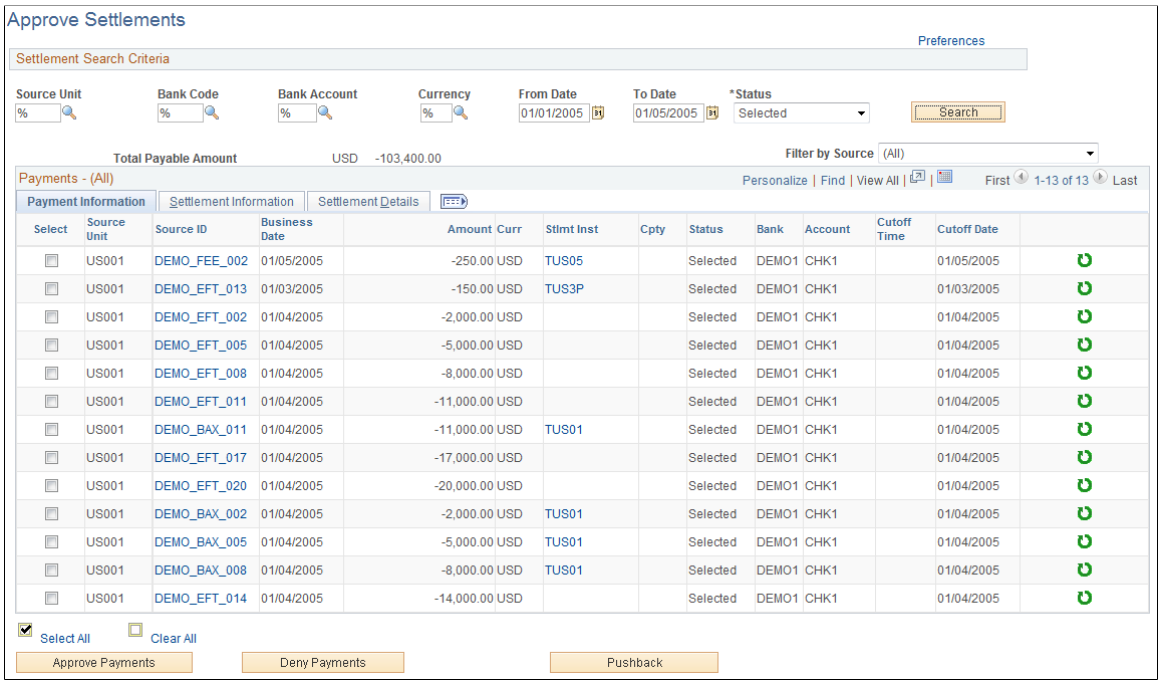
Use the Approve Settlements page (STL_APPROVAL) to authorize the release of scheduled treasury settlement transactions.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Settlements** > **Approve Settlements**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Settlements page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Preferences	Click this link to set up the default criteria for searching settlements on the Settlements User Preferences page (STL_SELECTION_PREF).

Settlement Search Criteria

Enter the search criteria and click **Search** to display a list of payments.

Field or Control	*Description*
Status	Select a status value of *Approved, Denied,* or *Selected.* The selected value determines what settlement action buttons are available to you.

Payments - (All)

The Settlement Details tab displays the international bank account number (IBAN) in addition to the local, domestic bank account number when the country has been set up to display the IBAN on the IBAN Formats page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Approve Payments	Select payments and click to approve settlements for payment processing. The **Status** of the payments changes to *Approved* and is sent to Financial Gateway. **Note:** The status will not change immediately to *Approved* if the system is configured to use workflow for settlements requiring additional approval based on the dollar amount. **Note:** Settlements associated with a deal that requires deal approval, will not be available for approval until the deal itself is first approved. See Delivered Workflows for Cash Management.
Deny Payments	Select payments and click to deny settlements for payment processing. The **Status** of the payments changes to *Denied.* **Note:** You cannot deny a payment once the automated accounting process is run for the settlement. See Processing Accounting Entries.

Note: You define settlement approval options on the Treasury Options page. If you enable settlement approval workflow, do not use this page to approve settlements. Instead, the system changes the settlement status to *Approved* when Virtual Approver finds that the item passes the approval rules that are defined under workflow.
You establish the workflow approval rule definition at implementation. PeopleSoft delivers a rule in the database for the Approval Rule Set called Execute Treasury Settlements.

See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Workflow Technology*.

Related Links

Settlement Workflow
Delivered Workflows for Cash Management

Using the Settlement Manager

This topic discusses how to use the Settlement Manager and set Settlement Manager preferences.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Pages Used with the Settlement Manager

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Settlement Manager Page	STL_MGR	Review and manage all settlement activity from a central location.
Settlement Manager Preferences Page	STL_MGR_PREF	Set up default search criteria for the Settlement Manager.
Cash Flow Settlements Page	RUN_TRC1014	Run the Cash Flow Settlements process (RUN_TRC1014) to generate the a report (TRX1014) that lists bank, account, and settlement information for cash flows of a specified business unit and time period. See the Settlement Manager Page and Cash Management Reports: A to Z.
Review Settlements Page	STL_INQUIRY	View the payments that are scheduled for authorization and release. See also Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission.
Settlements User Preferences Page	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Set up the default criteria for handling settlements. See the Settlement Manager Page.

Understanding the Settlement Manager

Use the Settlement Manager to review all of the settlements from a central location. You can see the gross daily exposure, make projections, and view exposures according to counterparty. In addition, you can select a settlement category to review and approve settlements from the same page.

Settlement Manager Page

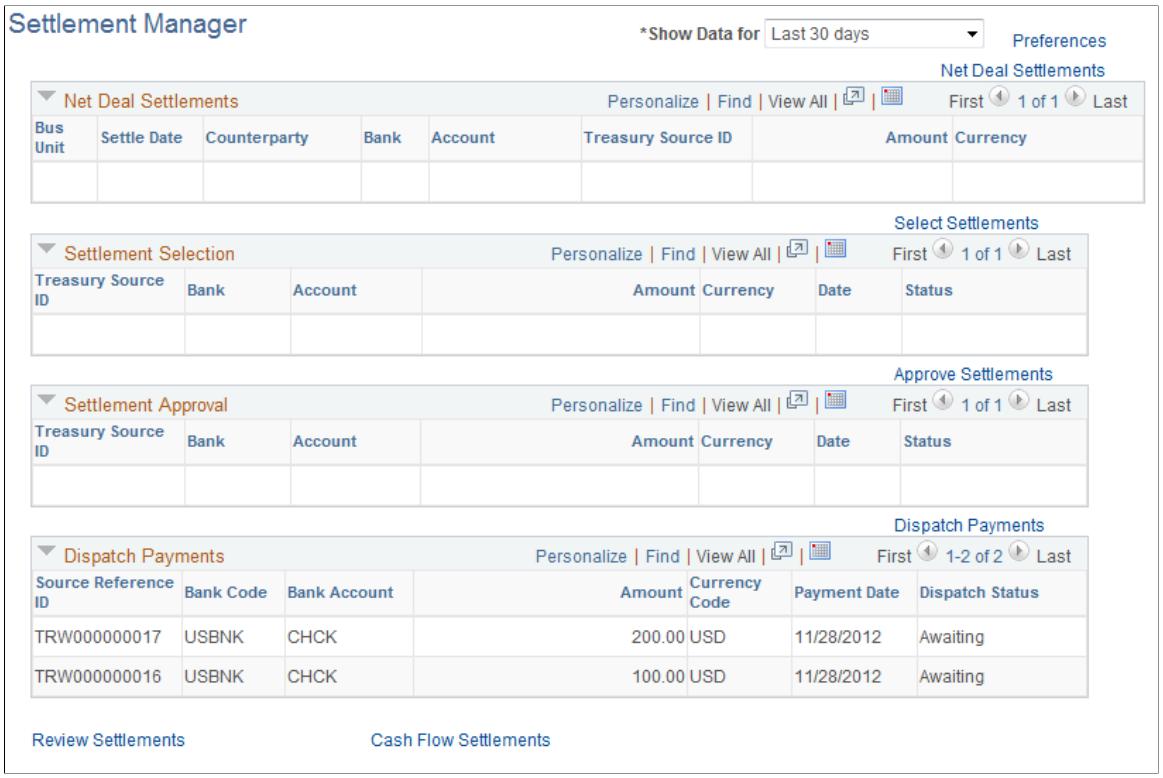
Use the Settlement Manager page (STL_MGR) to review and manage all settlement activity from a central location.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Settlements** > **Settlement Manager**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Settlement Manager page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



This manager displays settlement categories with summarized information. To view the content of a settlement category, click the link that is located on the right in each category.

Field or Control	***Description***
Show Data for	Select to view data of: • *Today* • *Last 7 Days* • *Last 30 Days* • *Next 7 Days* • *Next 30 Days*
Preferences	Click to establish the default search criteria for Settlement Manager on the Settlements User Preferences page (STL_SELECTION_PREF).
Net Deal Settlements	Click to access the Net Deal Settlements page, and view deal transactions that are coming up for netting.
Select Settlements	Click to access the Select Settlements page, and view which settlements are available for selection.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Approve Settlements	Click to access the Approve Settlements page, and view which settlements are coming up for approval.
Review Settlements	Click to access the Review Settlements page and review settlement information.
Cash Flow Settlements	Click to access the Cash Flow Settlements page (RUN_TRC1014) and generate the Cash Flow Settlement report.

Settlement Manager Preferences Page

Use the Settlement Manager - Preferences page (STL_MGR_PREF) to set up default search criteria for the Settlement Manager.

Navigation:

Click **Preferences** on the Settlement Manager page.

Field or Control	*Description*
Default Time Period	Select *Today, Last 7 Days,* or *Last 30 Days.*

Specifying Deal Settlement Netting

This topic discusses how to specify deal settlement netting and select payable and receivable cash flows.

Pages Used to Specify Deal Settlement Netting

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Deal Settlement Netting Page	STL_NETTING	Select which cash flows to net that resulted from deal transactions.
Settlement Details Page	STL_NETTING_DTL	Select to include or exclude payable and receivable cash flow actions for a deal settlement net.
Review Deal Netting Page	STL_NETTING_INQ	View the results of net-deal settlements (Deal Settlement Netting page).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Deal Settlement Netting Page

Use the Deal Settlement Netting page (STL_NETTING) to select which cash flows to net that resulted from deal transactions.

The Deal Settlement Netting page enables you to select which cash flows to net that results from deal transactions. You can view and offset cash flows by counterparty, categorized by bank account and currency per settlement date. This creates a netted cash flow record for each counterparty and currency combination by bank account.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Settlements** > **Net Deal Settlements**

Note: Transactions are netted depending on the settlement netting options that are set on the Counterparty Information page. For netted cash flows, you can view the transaction detail and clear any transactions that you want to exclude.

Search Criteria

Field or Control	*Description*
Netting Status	Displays *Do Not Net* or *Net Bulk.*

Cash Flow

Field or Control	*Description*
Detail	Click to see the individual transactions that compose the net amount. To modify which transactions are included in the net, select or clear them here.
Cpty Ref (counterparty reference)	Enter the reference ID that the counterparty provides referring to this netting transaction.
CP Nettor (counterparty nettor)	Enter the name of the person in the counterparty's organization that agreed to the net.
Net	Click to process the netting transaction.

Related Links

"Defining Netting Accounts" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)
"Understanding the Deal Capture Process" (PeopleSoft Deal Management)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Review Deal Netting Page

Use the Review Deal Netting page (STL_NETTING_INQ) to view the results of net-deal settlements (Deal Settlement Netting page).

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Settlements** > **Review Deal Netting**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 11

Using PeopleSoft Mobile Approvals for Treasury

Understanding PeopleSoft Mobile Approvals for Treasury

The PeopleSoft Mobile Approvals feature provides an option to approve transactions using a mobile device using the Fluid User Interface as opposed to using the Classic User Interface. Approvers continue to take Approval Workflow Engine (AWE) actions on PeopleSoft transactions pending their approval, but can do so using small or large form factors.

Mobile Approvals provides a convenient option to review and approve pending transactions from a mobile device. Approvals for Treasury in the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface include these:

- Settlement Approvals
- Deal Approvals
- Deal Confirmations

For information about approving deals and deal confirmations in Fluid, see "Approving Deals Using PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface" (PeopleSoft Deal Management) and "Confirming Deals Using PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface" (PeopleSoft Deal Management).

In order to use the Mobile Approval feature, applications must utilize the Approval Framework, also known as AWE. All transactions must be created in the database, and adhere to the Approval Framework logic and configuration within each application. For more information, see Setting Up PeopleSoft Mobile Approvals for Treasury.

PeopleSoft Treasury uses Enterprise Components - Fluid Approval Framework technology, which consists of Enterprise Objects Approval Workflow (EOAW), Application Workflow Engine (AWE), and Enterprise Objects Page Composer (EOPC). A minimum tools release of 8.55 is required for Fluid Approvals.

Related Links

"Understanding Mobile Approvals" (Application Fundamentals)

"Configuring Mobile Approvals" (Application Fundamentals)

Setting Up PeopleSoft Mobile Approvals for Treasury

This topic discusses how to set up approvals for Treasury Settlements, Treasury Deals, and Deal Confirmations using Enterprise Components - Fluid Approvals technology.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Enable Workflow on the Treasury Options Page

Enable the workflow for settlements and deals on the Treasury Options page (**Set Up Financials/Supply Chain** >**Business Unit Related** >**Treasury** >**Treasury Options**).

- Settlements: Select the **Settlement Approvals** check box and select *Approval Framework* in the **Settlement Approval Method** drop-down list.
- Deals: Select the **Enable Deal Preview/Approval** check box.

Set Up User Roles and Permissions

Define approval path steps by user role on the Setup Process Definitions page (**Enterprise Components** >**Approvals** >**Approvals** >**Approval Process** >**Setup Process Definitions**) for these process IDs:

- Settlement Approvals: TreasurySettlementsApproval
- Deal Approvals: TreasuryDealApproval
- Deal Confirmations: TreasuryDealconfirmation

To set up role permissions, go to the User Profiles - Roles page (**PeopleTools** >**Security** >**User Profiles** >**User Profiles** >**Roles**).

Set Up Approval Framework

Use the system-defined process IDs on Approval Framework setup pages:

- TreasurySettlementsApproval
- TreasuryDealApproval
- TreasuryDealconfirmation

Go to these setup pages:

- Register Transactions page (**Enterprise Components** >**Approvals** >**Approvals** >**Transaction Registry** >**Register Transactions**).
- Configure Transactions page (**Enterprise Components** >**Approvals** >**Approvals** >**Transaction Configuration** >**Configure Transactions**).

Verify Mobile Approval Options

Verify mobile approval options on the Transactions page (**Enterprise Components** >**Approvals** >**Approvals** >**Mobile Approval Options** >**Transactions**) for this these system-defined transaction IDs:

- Settlement Approvals: TRSTL
- Deal Approvals: TRDEAL
- Deal Confirmations: TRDEALCF

Verify setup on the transactions pages:

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Transactions tab: Select the **Include in Fluid** check box.
- Handlers tab: The Root Package ID is used to locate the Application Class. The Root Package ID is *TREASURY_APPROVAL* unless your company requires a customized implementation.
- Actions tab: Select the actions that you want to enable on the mobile approval page: **Approve**, **Deny**, **Pushback**, and **Hold** are selected by default for settlement and deal approvals. Only **Approve** and **Deny** are selected by default for deal confirmations.
- Images tab: You can accept the default images that show up on the mobile approval page or choose your own. For information about registering or adding an image on the page, see the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Mobile Application Platform,* "Dynamically Registering Images."

Set Up Common Fluid Approval Framework

The system delivers the following configuration IDs for attachments:

- Settlement Approvals: TREASURY_ATTACHMENTS
- Deal Approvals: DEAL_ATTACHMENTS
- Deal Confirmations: DEAL_CONF_ATTCH

For configuration details, see the CAVF Configuration Setup page (**Enterprise Components >CA View Framework >CAVF Configuration Setup >CAVF Configuration Setup**).

Configure Pages in Page Composer

PeopleSoft Treasury uses Enterprise Components – Fluid Approvals technology to deliver approval and confirmation pages in the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface. Composition pages are configured for extra-large and small form factors for these Fluid Approval Components:

- Settlement Approvals: TreasurySettlementsApproval
- Deal Approvals: TreasuryDealApproval
- Deal Confirmations: TreasuryDealconfirmation

Mobile approval pages may look different if a business has customized the page setup using Page Composer.

To access the Page Composer, go to the **Common Approvals Management Home Page >Page Composer Tile >Page Composer Search Page**.

Search for the *APPROVALS* definition to open the Fluid Approvals Component page, where you can select the desired composition ID.

Related Links

"Configuring Mobile Approvals" (Application Fundamentals)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Approving Settlements Using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface

This topic discusses settlements approvals using Enterprise Components - Fluid Approvals technology. Approvals for settlements using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface supports small (SFF) and large (LFF) form factor designs. Approvers can do the following:

- Review payment summary, transaction summary, and bank summary.
- Approve, deny, push back, or place the settlement on hold.
- Add comments for approval actions and view comments from previous reviewers.
- View attachments related to the settlement.
- View the approval chain.

Related Links

"Using Mobile Approvals" (Application Fundamentals)

Pages Used to Approve Settlements Using PeopleSoft Fluid Approval Framework

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Approvals Tile	HMAP_APPR_TILE_FL	Review pending and historical approval requests that are associated with the user who is logged in.
Treasury Settlements - Pending Approvals Page	EOAWMA_MAIN_FL	View a list of all transactions that apply to the selected transaction category and access the respective transactions that are pending your approval.
Filters Page	EOAWMA_FLTR_SCF	Refine the results displayed in the Pending Approvals page.
Treasury Settlements - Approval Header Detail Page	EOAWMA_TXNHDTL_FL	View payment, transaction, and bank summaries, and perform approval tasks.
Treasury Attachments Page	EOATT_VW4_SCF	View supporting documentation.
Approval Chain Page	EOAWMA_APPC_SCF	View and add to the approval chain.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Treasury Settlements - Pending Approvals Page

Use the Treasury Settlements - Pending Approvals page (EOAWMA_MAIN_FL) to view a list of all transactions that apply to the selected transaction category and access the respective transactions that are pending your approval.

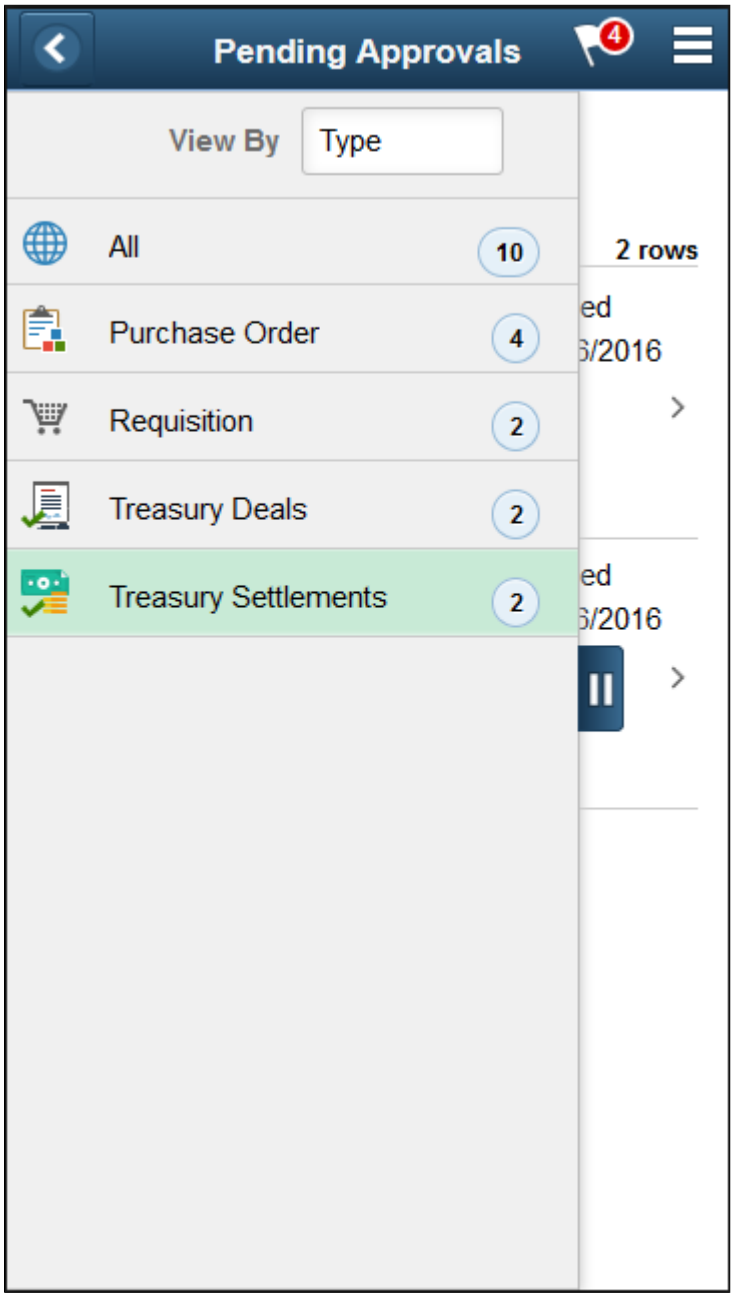
Navigation:

Select **Treasury Settlements** in the approval list panel on the left side of the page.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Settlements - Pending Approvals page as displayed on a desktop.

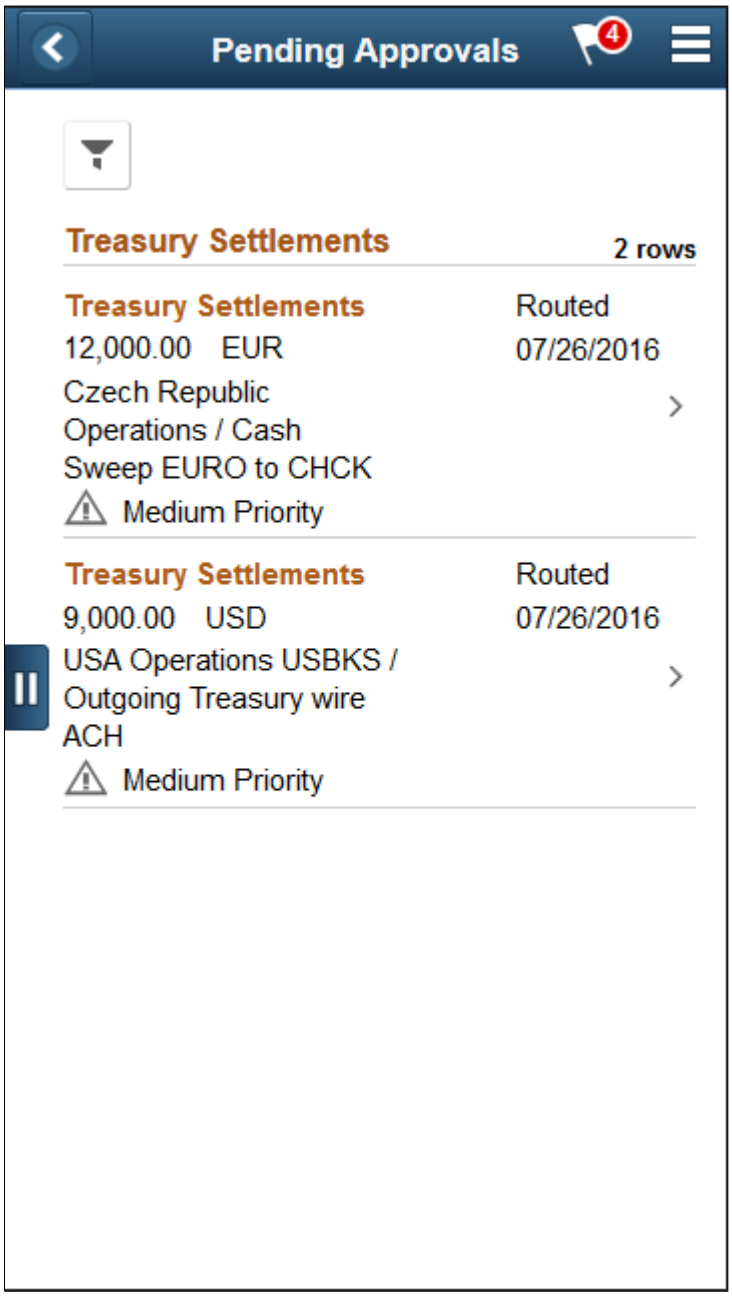
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Pending Approvals transaction type panel as displayed on a phone. Select **Treasury Settlements** in the transaction type list to open the list of settlements pending approvals.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Settlements – Pending Approvals list page as displayed on a phone.



Field or Control	***Description***
	Select the Filter button to access the Filters page. Use the filter to refine the results displayed in the pending approvals list.
	(SFF) Select the Navigation Panel Control button on the phone to hide or unhide the panel that shows available transaction types with pending approvals. Select the Treasury Settlements transaction type to view the pending approvals for settlements.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Treasury Settlements - Approval Header Detail Page

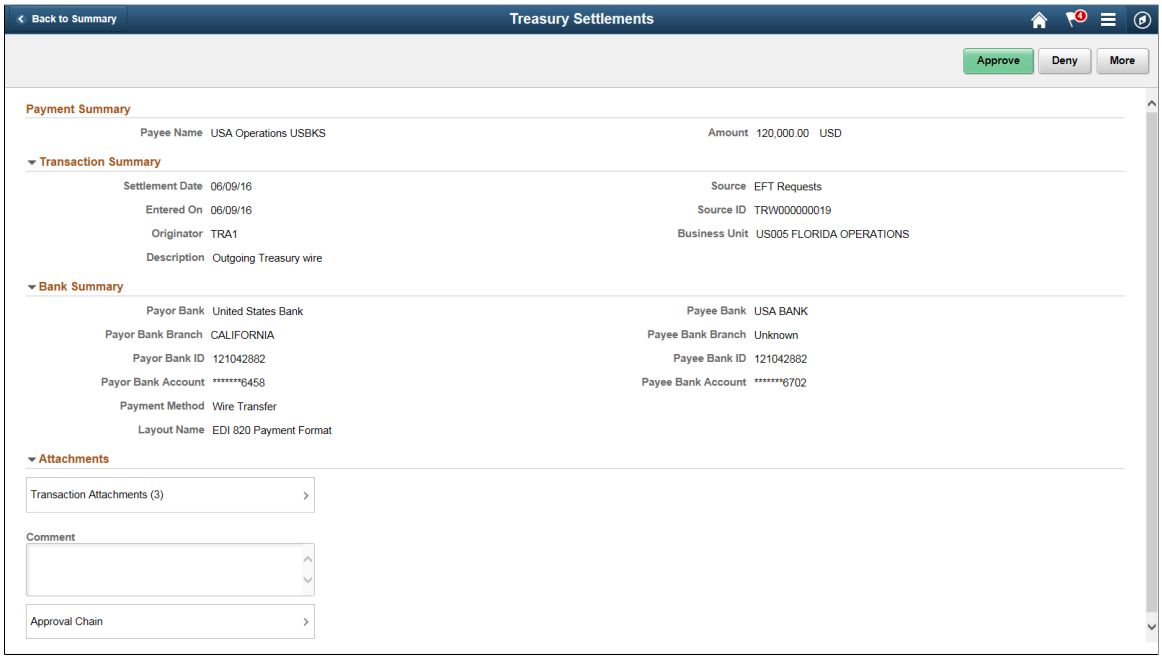
Use the Treasury Settlements - Approval Header Detail page (EOAWMA_TXNHDTL_FL) to view payment, transaction, and bank summaries, and perform approval tasks.

Access transaction attachments, if any.

Navigation:

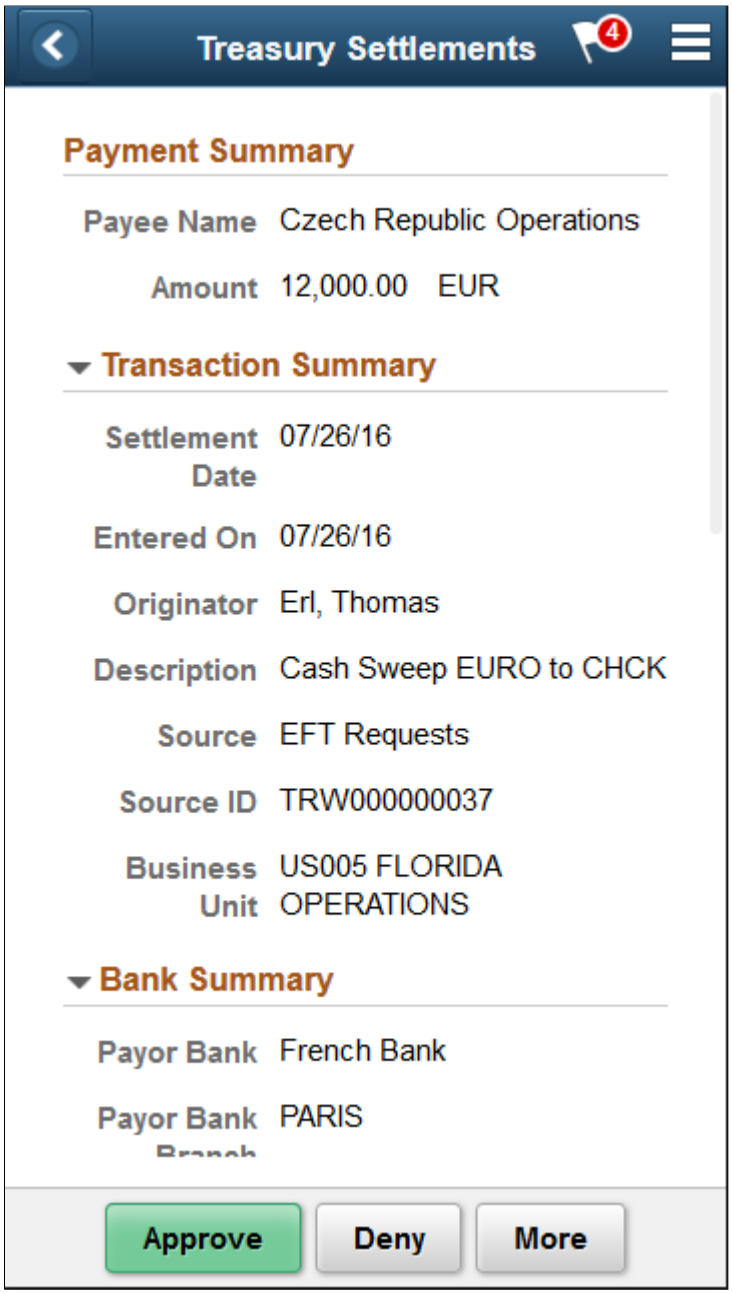
Select a settlement in the Pending Approvals list.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Settlements - Approval Header Detail page as displayed on a desktop.



 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Settlements - Approval Header Detail page as displayed on a phone.



Enter comments in the **Comment** field. Then select one of the following approval action buttons. The buttons available depend on the approvals setup in the Approval Framework.

Field or Control	***Description***
Approve	Select this button to approve the transaction. The system prompts you to provide comments and submit the approval. This action routes the approval to the next approver in the chain.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Deny	Select this button to deny the transaction. The system prompts you to provide comments and submit the denial. When you deny a transaction, that status changes to *Denied* and the transaction is removed from the approval queue.
More	Select this button to choose another available action. For a settlement approval, you can place the approval on hold or push back to the previous reviewer.
Pushback	Select this button to send the request back to the previous approver. This option is only available for second or subsequent approvers in a multiple-approver workflow path.
Hold	Select this button to place the settlement on hold. When a transaction is on hold, the approval remains pending until the approver selects further action, such as Approve, Deny, or Pushback.

Upon selecting an action, you have the option to select **Submit** to continue the action or **Cancel** to back out of the action. When you submit the action, the system generates a message that the action is successful.

Field or Control	*Description*
Transaction Attachments	Select the right arrow to open the Treasury Attachments page, where you can open and view attachments. The number of attachments for the transaction appears on the button. The attachment option appears only when the item has related attachments.
Comment	Enter comments in the text entry field. When viewing a settlement approval on a phone, you must scroll down to view the approver comments and approval chain.
Approval Chain	Select the right arrow to view the approval chain.

Treasury Attachments Page

Use the Treasury Attachments page (EOATT_VW4_SCF) to view supporting documentation.

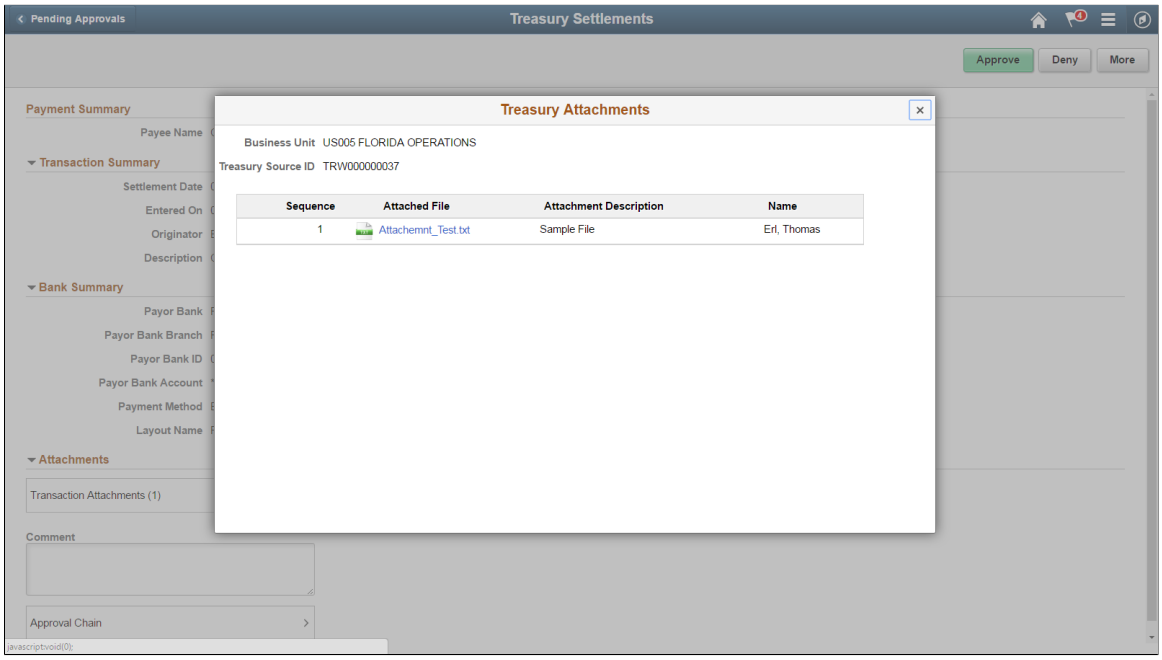
Attachments are added when the transaction was created.

Navigation:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Select the **Transaction Attachments** right arrow on the Treasury Settlements – Approval Header Detail page. The number of attachments for the transaction appears on the button.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Settlements - Treasury Attachments page as displayed on a desktop. Functionality for phones using the small form factor design is the same, except for size.



Functionality is the same for phones, using the small form factor design.

Approval Chain Page

Use the Approval Chain page (EOAWMA_APPC_SCF) to view and add to the approval chain. View approval comments.

Navigation:

Select the **Approval Chain** right arrow on the Treasury Settlements - Approval Header Detail page.

When viewing a settlement approval on a phone, you must scroll down to view the approver comments and approval chain.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 12

Managing Investment Pools

Understanding Investment Pools

Agencies and organizations use investment pools to collect and concentrate surplus funds from various departments and programs for investment purposes. The departments and programs that deposit their surplus funds into the investment pool are referred to as participants. Each participant is assigned an individual account number in order to track their fund transactions within the investment pool.

An investment pool administrator organizes the investment pool and manages the fund's investments similar to that of a portfolio manager. The funds in the investment pool are invested by either the pool administrator or by an external investment manager. The system stores only the investment manager's contact information.

Participants do not enter transactions into the investment pool system, but rather communicate their requests to deposit, withdraw, or transfer funds to the pool administrator. The pool administrator then enters the appropriate data—participant and transaction information—into the system. Participants may transfer funds from one account to another within the same investment pool, but may not transfer funds from one account to an account belonging to another investment pool.

If the pool is set up using share accounts, then shares are distributed to the participants pool account. Share balances are then updated periodically for deposits, withdrawals, and transfers.

Interest and fees are periodically distributed among the participants of the pool.

The method used for transferring funds depends on the structure of the organization and pool's participants. Funds can be transferred by way of accounting book entries or between the participant's bank and the investment pool's bank through electronic wire transfers and Automated Clearing House (ACH) transactions.

Periodically, the investment pool transfers funds to an external investment manager (if applicable) or to the internal investment system. The investment manager provides the pool with reports containing the current market value, income, interest and fees data. Using these data, the pool administrator updates the pool with this information by entering the market value information online and in turn updates the market value for the pool and each participant. The new share price (if applicable) is also computed based on the new market values and the number of shares in the pool.

Besides providing investment and fund management expertise to the participants, the pool administrator also provides accounting and financial reporting for each participant's funds as well as consolidated reporting for the entire investment pool.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Setting Up Investment Pools

Pages Used to Set Up an Investment Pool

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Pool Information Page	TRP_POOL_DEFN	Define the fee, interest, and accounting ChartField information of the investment pool.
Concentration Limits Page	TRP_POOL_LMT_SEC	Define the securities to which the investment pool funds will be invested, as well as the maximum percentage of the pool's funds that can be invested in each security.
Contact Information	TRP_POOL_CNT_SEC	Enter contact information for the external investment managers who are investing pool funds. See the Pool Information Page.

Understanding Setting Up Investment Pools

To define investment pool information, use the Investment Pool component (TRP_POOL_DEFN).

Use this component to:

- Set up an investment pool.
- Define pool investment limits.

Pool Information Page

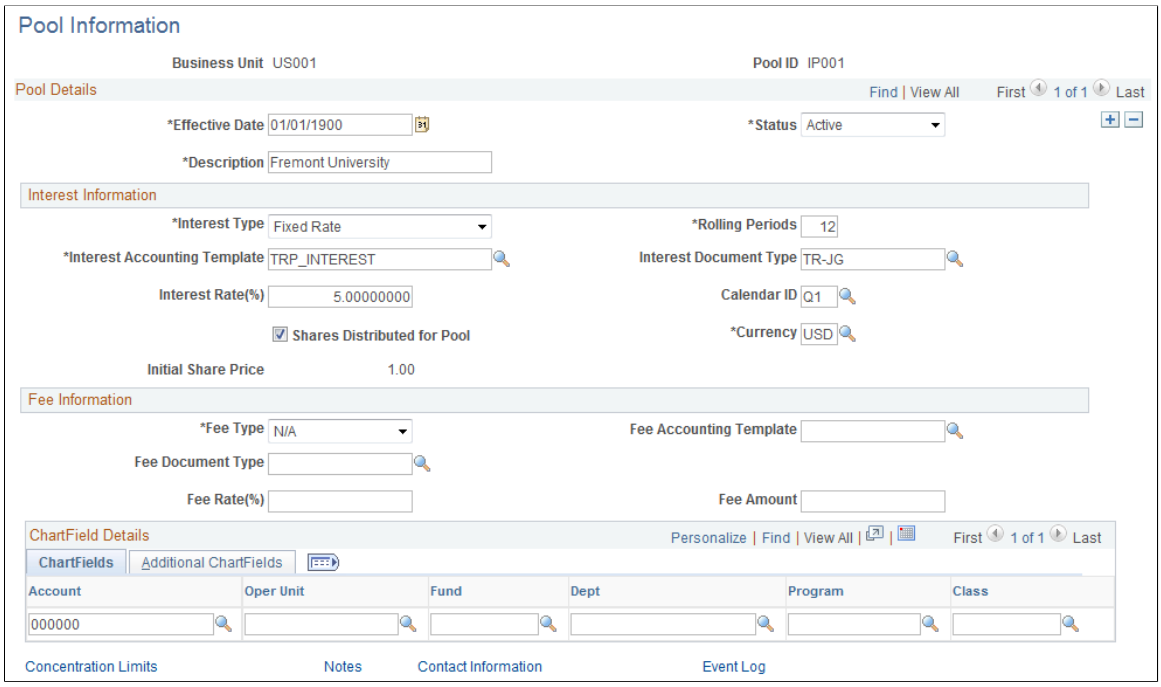
Use the Pool Information page (TRP_POOL_DEFN) to define the fee, interest, and accounting ChartField information of the investment pool.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Investment Pools** > **Pool Information**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Pool Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Fee Type	Specify how the fee charged to participants for maintaining the investment pool will be assessed. The options are: • *Fee Rate:* The fee is based on a percentage of the income transactions the participant has present in the pool. Selecting this option requires that a value be entered in the Fee Rate (%) field. • *Flat Fee:* Participants are charged a flat fee. Selecting this option requires that a value be entered in the Fee Amount field. • *N/A:* No maintenance fees are assessed.
Fee Accounting Template	Select an existing accounting template to enter the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for the maintenance fee.
Fee Document Type	If using document sequencing, select a document type for tracking maintenance fee transactions.
Fee Rate (%)	Enter the percentage rate for the maintenance fee charged to participants. This is a required field if *Fee Rate* was selected in the **Fee Type** field.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Fee Amount	Enter the amount for the maintenance fee charged to participants. This is a required field if *Flat Fee* was selected in the **Fee Type** field.

Interest Information

Field or Control	*Description*
Interest Type	Select how the interest on participants' pool investments is accrued. The options are: • *Fixed Rate:* Interest is accrued based on the amount of a participant's investment multiplied by an interest rate. Selecting this option requires a value be entered in the Interest Rate (%) field. • *Percentage in Pool:* Interest is accrued based on return on pool's investment multiplied by the percentage of the total investment funded by the participant.
Interest Rate (%)	Enter the rate at which income is allocated to the participants' pool account. A value is required here if fixed rate is selected in the Interest Type field.
Shares Distributed for Pool	Select if pool is based on share accounts. Share distribution is commonly used when the interest type is fixed rate.
Initial Share Price	If the investment pool issues shares, enter the initial share price. Most investment pools seek to maintain an initial net asset value of $1.00 USD per share.
Rolling Periods	Enter the number of periods, based on the calendar selected, for which to calculate the interest on the average participant position over the span of the number of periods entered. For example, using a monthly calendar with three rolling periods, the interest calculation is based on the average participant position over a span of three months.
Calender ID	Select the business calendar to be used for calculating accrued interest payments to the participants' pool account.
Interest Accounting Template	Select an existing accounting template to enter the correct accounting and debit/credit configuration for interest accruals.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Interest Document Type	If using document sequencing, select a document type to track interest accrual transactions.

ChartField Details

Enter the investment pool's ChartField information for accounting purposes.

Concentration Limits Page

Access the Concentration Limits page (click the **Concentration Limits** link on the Pool Information page.

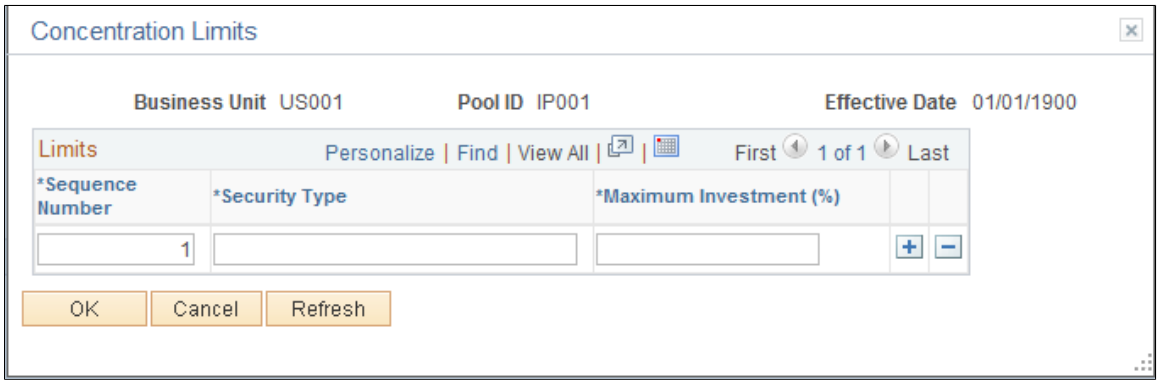
Use the Concentration Limits page (TRP_POOL_LMT_SEC) to define the securities to which the investment pool funds will be invested, as well as the maximum percentage of the pool's funds that can be invested in each security.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Investment Pools** > **Pool Information**

Click the Concentration Limits link on the Pool Information page.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Concentration Limits page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Use the Concentration Limits page to identify the securities to which the investment pool funds can be invested, and the maximum percentage of the pool's total investment that can be invested in the specified type of security. The Investment concentration limits are set to ensure investment diversity and are defined by the organization's investment policy.

Note: Concentration Limits page is for information only. There is no underlying functionality to enforce the maximum investment percentages for each security. Thus, the total maximum investment percentages can equal more than 100 percent.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Sequence Number	Enter the unique identifier for the security type.
Security Type	Enter a security to which to invest pool funds.
Maximum Investment	Enter the maximum percentage of the pool's total funds that can be investment in a particular security.

Adding Participants to an Investment Pool

This topic provides an overview of pool participant information and discusses how to add an agency or department as a participant of an investment pool, and view and add participants' contact information.

Pages Used to Add Participants to an Investment Pool

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Participant Information Page	TRP_PART_DEFN	Define the account details of a participant of an investment pool.
Contact Information Page	TRP_PART_CNT_SEC	View and modify a list of external investment managers responsible for investing the pool's funds.
Contact Information Page (Treasury contacts)	TR_CONTACT_PNL	Enter detailed contact information for an external investment manager. See also "Contact Information Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing) for more information.

Understanding Pool Participation Information

To define investment pool participant information, use the Participant Information component (TRP_PART_DEFN).

When an entity joins an investment pool, the organizational entity's name, and the person who is authorized to act on behalf of the entity must be recorded. In addition, the participating entity may have alternative pools in which to invest based on their investment objectives.

Each entity can have one or more accounts that tie them to a pool:

- One account that is used for making deposits to the investment pool. (required)
- One account that is used for tracking investment income. (optional)

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Participants typically set up both accounts—deposit accounts for the depositing new funds into the pool and income accounts for accruing income from the pool. Each pool account has at least one general ledger account and related fund.

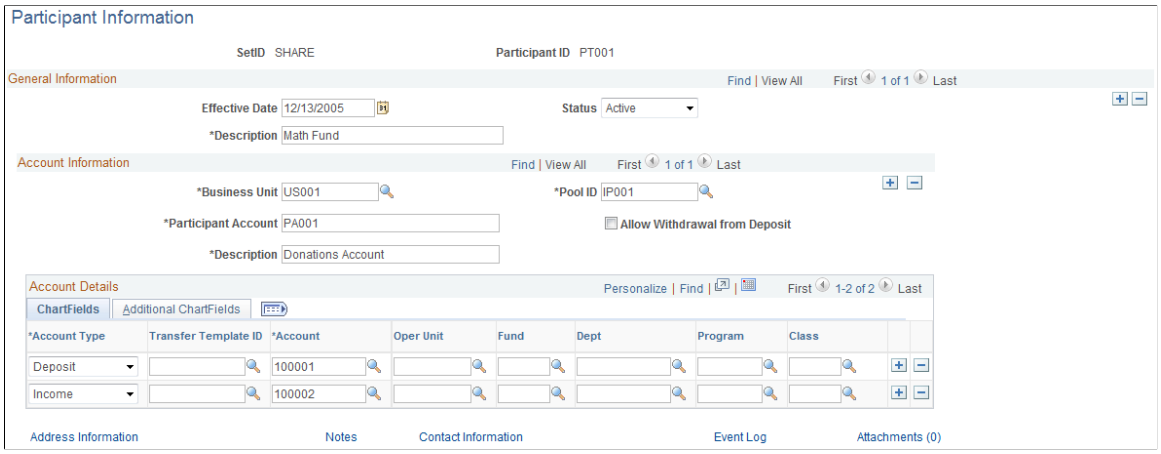
Participant Information Page

Use the Participant Information page (TRP_PART_DEFN) to define the account details of a participant of an investment pool.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Investment Pools** > **Participant Information**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Participant Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Note: You can import participant information by creating an ExcelToCI spreadsheet and using the TRP_PART_DEFN_CI component interface.

See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Component Interfaces*, "Using the Excel-to-Component Interface Utility."

Field or Control	***Description***
Effective Date	Date current status took effect.
Business Unit	Enter the business unit to which the investment pool account belongs.
Pool ID	Enter the pool identifier to which the entity will participate.
Participant Account	Enter the account identifier for the participant's account for the specified investment pool.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Allow Withdrawal from Deposit	Select to allow the withdrawal funds from the participant's investment pool deposit account. Left unchecked, withdrawals will be allowed only from the a participant's investment pool income account.

Field or Control	*Description*
Contact Information	Click this link to access the Contact Information page (TRP_PART_CNT_SEC), where you can view and modify a list of external investment managers responsible for investing the pool's funds. Click the **Add Pool Contact** link on the Contact Information page to enter detailed contact information for an external investment manager into the Treasury contacts.

Account Details

Enter ChartField information for a participant's investment pool deposit account, and, if required, its investment income account.

Managing Participants' Funds

This topic provides an overview on participant transactions, and discusses how to create a transaction between an investment pool and a participant and view and approve transactions between the pool and a participant.

Pages Used to Create Participant Transactions

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Participant Transactions Page	TRP_PART_TXN	Used by the pool administrator to record a participant's request to deposit, withdraw, or transfer funds among a participant's investment pool accounts.
Approve Transactions Page	TRP_TXN_APPR	Review and approve or reject transactions initiated by participants of an investment pool.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
View Transactions Page	TRP_TXN_INQ	View all investment pool transactions matching the defined search criteria. Provides a view of transactions related to an investment pool to users who do not have access to the Approve Transactions page because they are not authorized to approve or reject transactions. The View Transactions page is identical to the Approve Transactions page without the approval functionality.

Understanding Participant Transactions

A participant invests in a pool by moving cash into it's pool deposit account and making a request to pool administrator to deposit the cash into the pool. The pool administrator makes a record of this request using the Participant Transactions page. The actual cash transaction, however, is tracked outside of investment pools.

Because withdrawals entail an actual transfer of cash, participants have the option of creating an electronic fund transfer (EFT) for a withdrawal of funds from the bank. Clicking the Create EFT link on the Participant Transactions page accesses the EFT Request - Origin page that displays the key information required for the cash transaction. The pool administrator can save the EFT. The EFT is reconciled and accounted for in Cash Management. The relevant book entry is tracked in the investment pools component.

Deposit transactions created on the Participant Transactions page are saved as "pending" transactions. These transactions are approved on the Approve Transactions page by the pool administrator once it has been verified that the actual funds have been received through the EFT.

Besides deposits, the pool administrator also uses the Participant Transactions page to maintain records of all requests to withdraw, or transfer investment pool funds on behalf of its participants. All transactions are managed from within the pool by the pool administrator. Some of these transactions can be scheduled in advance. Records of recent pending activity and completed activity are retained. Participants can also view a listing of transactions on the View Transactions page, which is similar to the Approve Transactions page, but without the transaction approval functionality.

Participant Transactions Page

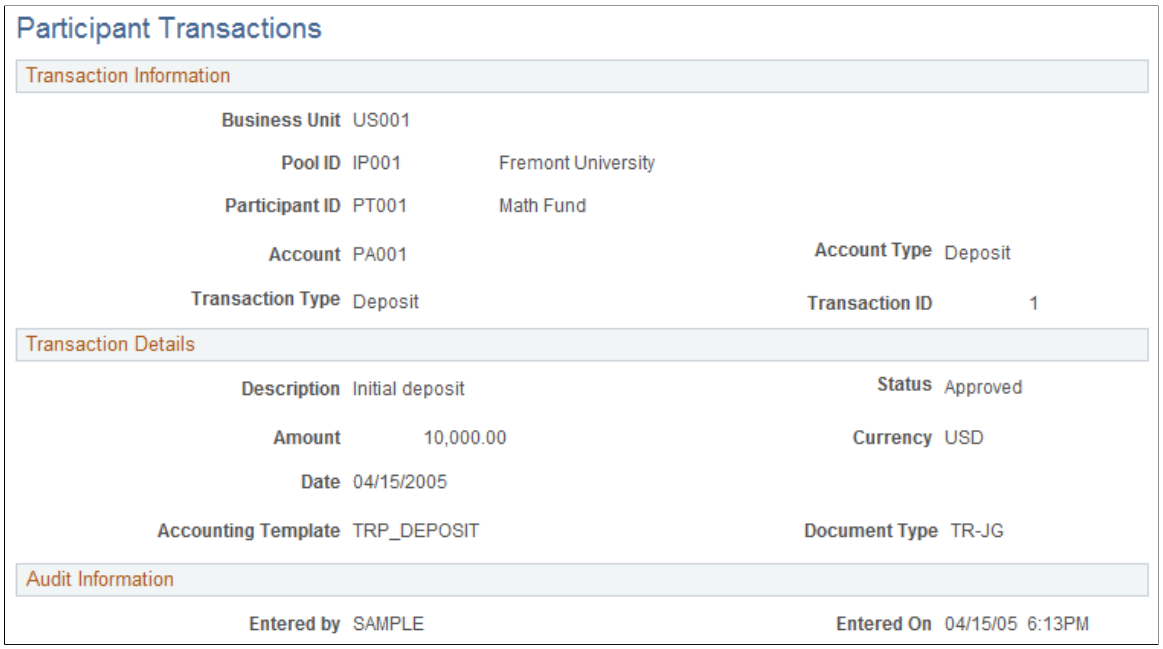
Use the Participant Transactions page (TRP_PART_TXN) to used by the pool administrator to record a participant's request to deposit, withdraw, or transfer funds among a participant's investment pool accounts.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Investment Pools** > **Participant Transactions**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Participant Transactions page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Note: You can import participant transactions by creating an ExcelToCI spreadsheet and using the TRP_PART_TXN_CI component interface.

See the product documentation for *PeopleSoft Enterprise Components* "Using the Excel-to-Component Interface Utility."

Field or Control	***Description***
Transaction Type	Displays the type of transaction being initiated by the pool participant. The options are: • *Deposit:* Participants can make a deposit only to a pool deposit account and selecting **Deposit** from the To Account Type field. • *Withdrawal:* Participants can withdraw funds from income accounts. They can also withdraw from a deposit account only if **Allow Withdrawal from Deposit** is selected on Participant Information page. • *Transfer:* Transfers are allowed between different accounts of a participant within the same pool, however, a participant cannot transfer funds from a deposit account to an income account.
Status	All newly created transactions are given a status of *Pending* until the pool administrator has approved or denied them. Pool administrators can *Deny* the transaction or *Approve* it. Approval for withdrawal transactions are contingent upon verification of the transfer of funds from the bank by the pool administrator.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
To Account	Used only for fund transfer requests. Enter an account to which to transfer the funds.
To Account Type	Used only for fund transfer requests. Select either Deposit or Income. Transferring funds from an deposit account to an income account are not allowed.
Date	Enter a date for completing the transaction. The transaction date must be after the last accounting date for transactions of the pool (viewable in the Position Details grid on the Participant Position page), or the transaction will be rejected.
Transfer Template ID	Select a transfer template to facilitate the transfer of funds with parties with which you conduct regular, specific transactions. Fields from the template selected here are used as default values when creating an EFT for withdrawal transactions. **Note:** Expired templates are not available for selection.
Transaction Accounting Template	Select the accounting template that depicts the correct accounting and debit/credit configuration for the particular transaction.
Document Type	Select the document type that the system uses to assign document sequence numbers.
Create EFT	Click to access the EFT Request - Origin page to request a physical transfer of funds—withdrawal—based on the parameters of the current participant transaction request defined on this page and fields from the selected transfer template. This link appears on the page only for withdrawal transactions.

Related Links

"Using Document Sequencing" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports)
Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates
Accounting Templates
"Understanding External, Internal, and Netting Accounts" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Approve Transactions Page

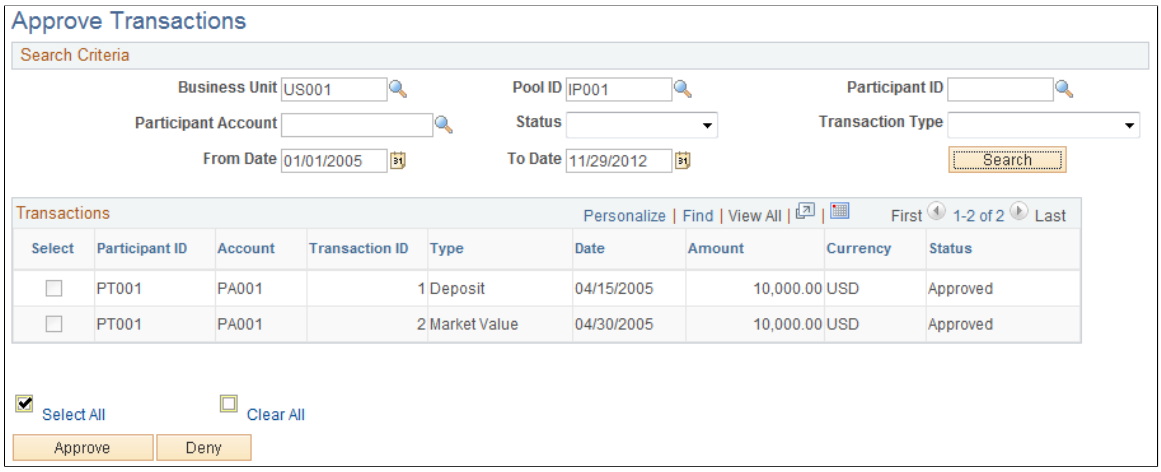
Use the Approve Transactions page (TRP_TXN_APPR) to review and approve or reject transactions initiated by participants of an investment pool.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Investment Pools** >**Approve Investment Transaction**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Transactions page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Use the Search Criteria to define the transactions related to a business unit and investment pool. To approve a transaction, check the corresponding **Select**box and click **Approve.** To deny the transaction, click **Deny.**

View Transactions Page

Use the View Transactions page (TRP_TXN_INQ) to view all investment pool transactions matching the defined search criteria.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Investment Pools > View Transactions

Viewing Investment Pool Positions

Pages Used to Manage Investment Pool Positions

Page Name	***Definition Name***	***Usage***
Pool Position Page	TRP_POOL_POS	View the current position of an investment pool.
Pool Position - Position History Page	TRP_POOL_POS_DTL	View the historical market values and income transactions of the investment pool. See the Pool Position Page.
Participant Position Page	TRP_PART_POS	View the cash investment, balances, and income of an investment pool's participants.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Participant Position - Position History Page	TRP_PART_POS_DTL	View the historical market values and income transactions of the pool participant. See the Participant Position Page
Position Details Page	TRP_PART_POS_DTL	If accessed from the Pool Position page, you can view the cash investment, balances, and income of a specified investment pool. If accessed from the Participant Position page, you can view the cash investment, balances, transactions, and income of a participant of a specified investment pool.
Participant Transaction Page	TRP_PART_TXN	View details of a specific transaction of a pool's participant.

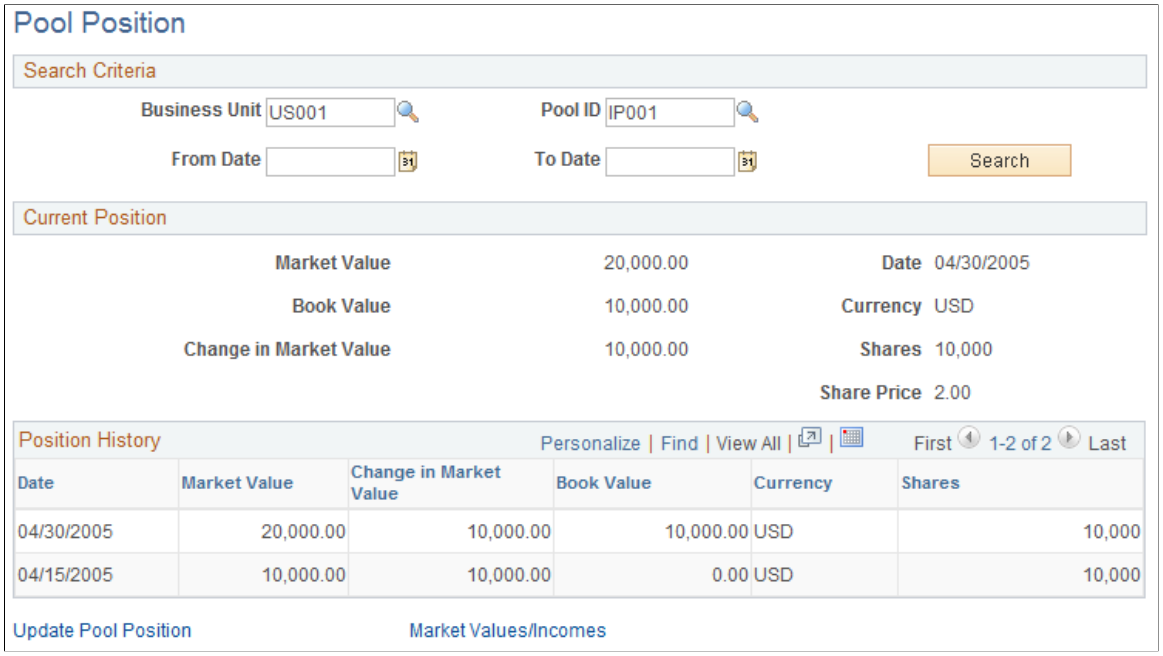
Pool Position Page

Use the Pool Position page (TRP_POOL_POS) to view the current position of an investment pool.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Investment Pools** > **Pool Position**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Pool Position page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Market Value	Displays the current value of the investment pool based on the last reported sale price of securities to which the pool funds are invested.
Book Value	Displays the previous market value of the pool.
Change in Market Value	Displays the change in the market value of the pool since the last time the pool position was updated.
Shares	If shares are used, this field displays the number of shares of the investment pool.
Share Price	Displays the current price of investment pool shares.
Update Pool Position	Click to access the Update Pool Position page to manually update the pool's cash position. See Update Pool Position Page.
Market Values/Incomes	Click to access the Position History page (TRP_POOL_POS_DTL) to view the historical market values and position updates of the investment pool.

You can generate a report of a pool's position as well as the positions of each pool's participants for a specified business unit.

Related Links

Cash Management Reports: A to Z

Participant Position Page

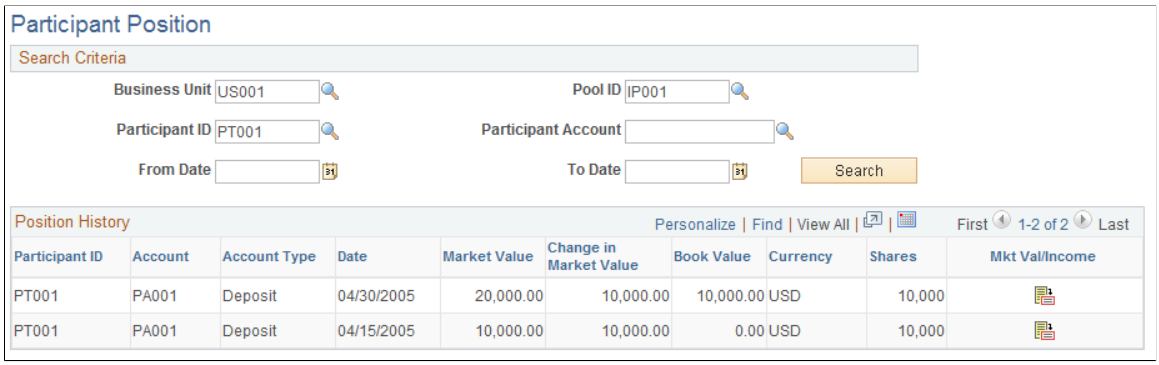
Use the Participant Position page (TRP_PART_POS) to view the cash investment, balances, and income of an investment pool's participants.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Investment Pools** > **Participant Position**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Participant Position page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



This page displays the position and information of all participants' accounts for a specified pool.

Field or Control	*Description*
Details	Click to access the Position Details page that lists the participant's transactions. Details of the transactions can be accessed from the Position Details page.
Mkt Val/Income	Click to access the Position History page (TRP_PART_POS_DTL) to view the historical market values and income transactions of the pool participant.

You can generate a report of a pool's position as well as the positions of each pool's participants for a specified business unit.

Related Links

Cash Management Reports: A to Z

Maintaining Pool Positions

This topic discusses how to import pool position data from an external investment management source, manually update pool positions, and distribute investment pool income.

Pages Used to Update Pool Positions

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Import Pool Position Page	BSP_IMPORT	Update an investment pool's position by importing data in a flat file format from an outside investment source.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Layout Catalog Page	PMT_FORMAT_CATLOG	Define and configure the files that will be used to import a flat file containing pool position data into the system. Modify the POOL file layout to define your pool position flat file. See the "Layout Catalog Page" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway) for more information.
Update Pool Position Page	TRP_POOL_POS_ADD	Manually update the pool's cash position with current values obtained from outside investment sources. Obtaining the updated pool data may require running the Import Pool Position process.
Income Distribution Page	TRP_INC_RUN	Run the Income Distribution Application Engine (TRP_INC_DIST) process to disburse investment pool income and maintenance fees among participants based on the parameters set on the Pool Information page.

Updating Investment Pools

In order to have an accurate view of an investment pool's position, as well as the position of its participants, you must periodically update the investment data. To do so requires importing income and fee data from external investment managers into the pool and distributing it among the pools participants.

There are two ways to update investment pool data:

- Import the data in a flat-file format from the Import Pool Position page.

  A file layout already provided will need to be modified along with its transformation code.

- Obtain a hard copy of the data and manually enter it using the Update Pool Position page.

Once the pool has been updated, run the Income Distribution Application Engine process (TRP_INC_DIST) to update the pool's participant positions by distributing the income and maintenance fees among them.

Import Pool Position Page

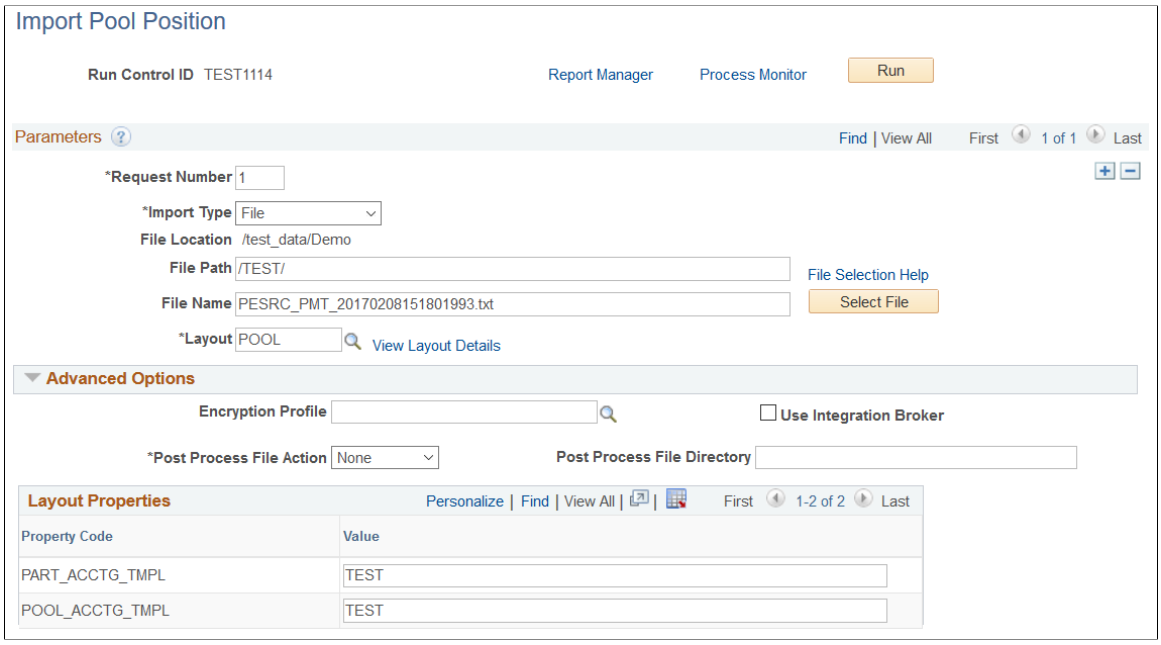
Use the Import Pool Position page (BSP_IMPORT) to update an investment pool's position by importing data in a flat file format from an outside investment source.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Investment Pools** > **Import Pool Position**

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Import Pool Position page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Parameters

Field or Control	*Description*
Import Type	Select the method for importing the data file. The options are: • *FTP:* Select if you are importing the file by using file transfer protocol, and enter a bank node through which to transfer the data. • *File:* Select if you are importing a file, and complete the **File Path** and **File Name** fields. • *HTTP:* Select if you are importing a file using a URL that is included as part of the node configuration. No file path or file name is required.
File Location	Appears when using the *File* import type only. Displays the file location entered on the configuration page by a bank integration administrator. Users have access only to the folders below the base path displayed in the File Location field. For more information, see Managing Import File Locations.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Integration Node	Enter the node to use to transfer the data. This field appears only if *FTP* or *HTTP* is selected as the import type. See "Setting Up PeopleSoft Integration Broker for Bank Statements, Payments, and Payment Acknowledgements" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway). See "Using Listening Connectors and Target Connectors," Working with AS2 Connectors; and "Configuring Nodes and Transactions" in PeopleTools: Integration Broker.
View Integration Node Details	Click to access the Node Details page and review property details of the selected node. This link appears only if *FTP* or *HTTP* is selected as the import type.
File Path	Enter a file path according to the import type selected: • *File* Import Type: Leave this field blank to select a file in the base path shown in the File Location field, or enter a folder name with trailing backslash below the base path, for example, /Bank02/. Wildcard characters are not supported when using the *File* import type. • *FTP* Import Type: Enter the complete file path location. To select files by using the **Select File** button, you must include a trailing backslash (\) in the file path. You can you can also load all files in a given directory by using the *.* notation or search for files of a specific type by entering an asterisk and the extension suffix. For example, to search all files with an .xxx suffix, enter *.xxx. • *HTTP* Import Type: Does not require a file path and the field is unavailable. **Note:** Be sure that the application server and the Process Scheduler have access to the directory, FTP node, or HTTP node where the files are staged for import.
File Selection Help	Click to view help information on specifying file paths and file names.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
File Name	Select the specific file to import. If you want to import multiple files based on extension for the *FTP* import type, leave this field blank.

Advanced Options

Field or Control	*Description*
Encryption Profile	Select an encryption profile to decrypt the data file. Encryption profiles contain both encryption and decryption information.
Use Integration Broker	Select this check box to format the files and publish the formatted document to PeopleSoft Integration Broker. Integration Broker then processes the formatted file accordingly. You select this option if you want to use the pool position information as a trigger for Integration Broker to perform other processes, or to integrate with other systems.
Post Process File Action	Select what action, if any, to be performed on the pool position data file after the data has been processed. The options are: • *Copy:* Copy the file to the directory entered in the Post Process File Directory field. • *Delete:* Delete the file after the data in it is processed. • *Move:* Move the file to the directory entered in the Post Process File Directory field. • *None:* Take no action. The data file remains unprocessed.
Post Process File Directory	Enter a file path to the directory to which the file will be moved or copied if either option is selected as the Post Process File Action.

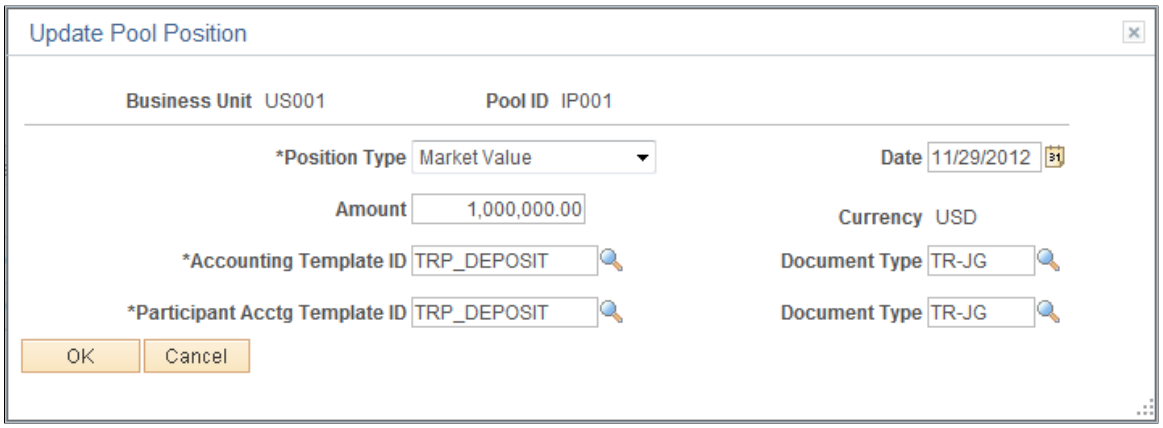
See also *PeopleTools: Integration Broker*, Configuring Nodes and Transactions.

Update Pool Position Page

Use the Update Pool Position page (TRP_POOL_POS_ADD) to manually update the pool's cash position with current values obtained from outside investment sources.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Update Pool Position page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Note: Obtaining the updated pool data may require running the Import Pool Position process.

Obtaining the updated pool data may require running the Import Pool Position process.

Field or Control	*Description*
Position Type	Select the type of position being updated. The options are: • *Market Value:* Update the current value of the investment pool based on the last reported sale price of securities to which the pool funds are invested. • *Interest:* Updated the interests accrued on the pool's investments.
Amount	Enter the new market value of the investment pool.
Accounting Template ID	Select the accounting template for the pool that depicts the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for this update transaction.
Document Type	Select the document type that the system uses to assign document sequence numbers.
Participant Acctg Template ID	Select the accounting template for the participants account that depicts the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for this update transaction.

Income Distribution Page

Use the Income Distribution page (TRP_INC_RUN) to run the Income Distribution Application Engine (TRP_INC_DIST) process to disburse investment pool income and maintenance fees among participants based on the parameters set on the Pool Information page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Investment Pools** > **Income Distribution**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 13

Managing Treasury Accounting

Understanding the Treasury Management Accounting Process

You use accounting templates to define the ChartFields to use for various kinds of accounting activities, called *accounting events.* By associating accounting templates with accounting events, you can automate most of the accounting process. In addition, you can also manually adjust accounting entries and create ad hoc entries.

Accounting Templates

The accounting template depicts the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for a given treasury transaction and business event. For example, the purchase of a U.S. Treasury bond may involve the construction of two debit lines, Bonds Receivable and Unamortized Bond Discount, as well as one credit line, Cash. The accounting template for this type of transaction would include three predefined records to depict this particular debit or credit configuration.

The accounting template contains the following characteristics:

- A unique template ID.
- Options that determine how the correct ChartField combination is selected.
- An attribute (calculation type) that describes how the accounting monetary amount is calculated or derived.
- An attribute that designates whether the accounting build requires review.

Accounting Events

An accounting event describes an event in the treasury business process that triggers the construction of a pending accounting build.

Oracle delivers the following treasury accounting event types with the system:

- Deal transactions.
- Facility, deal, wire, and letter of credit fees.
- Bank transfers.
- Bank statement processing transactions.
- Hedges.
- Electronic File Transfer (EFT) requests.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

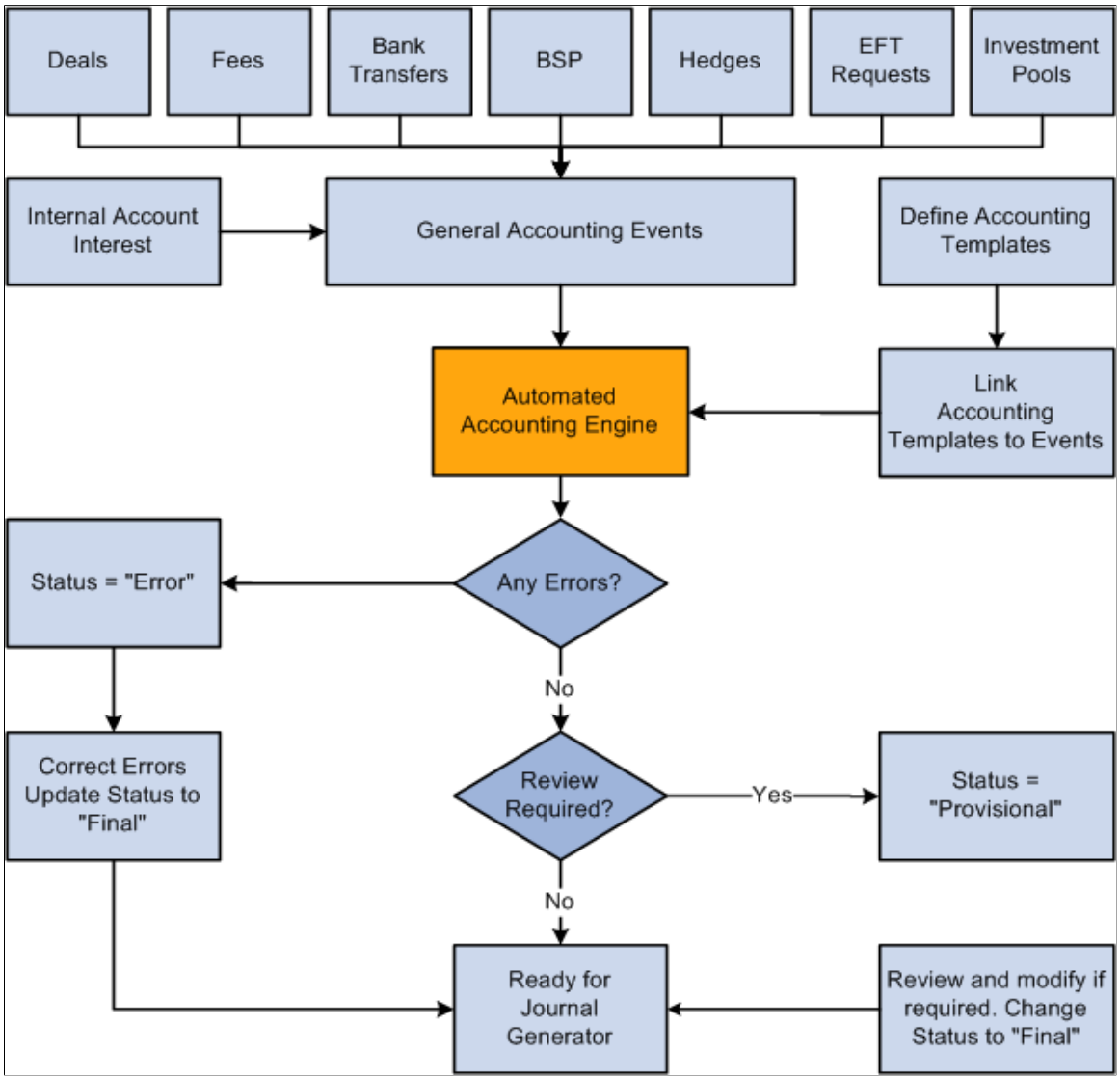
- Internal account interest.
- Investment pool transactions.

To automate accounting entries, you assign each accounting event type to a corresponding accounting template for all accounting events except bank transfers. Bank transfers do not have accounting templates because the accounting is derived from the bank and business unit of the bank. The template controls which ChartFields and monetary amounts to use in each accounting entry.

For treasury deals, you define the accounting event at the instrument level. You associate each instrument with various accounting events, depending on the instrument base type. In addition, you define each accounting event based on the accounting treatment (Held to Maturity, Available for Sale, Trading, or Other) and assign each accounting template to the appropriate accounting treatment. At deal entry, you select the appropriate accounting treatment. The system then automatically associates the appropriate accounting template, based on the accounting treatment of the instrument type.

The following diagram illustrates the process flow:

Process flow for treasury accounting from general accounting event to Journal Generator



 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Interunit and Intraunit Processing in Accounting

The PeopleSoft centralized processor generates the due-to and due-from entries for both interunit and intraunit balancing. PeopleSoft Treasury Management provides functionality to support interunit and intraunit processing using the centralized processor on the Accounting Template and Accounting Entries pages.

Interunit and Intraunit Balancing Methods

Interunit refers to balancing transactions that involve two general ledger business units. The bank accounts contain the ChartFields and the rules by which their values should be determined.

Intraunit refers to balancing transactions within the same general ledger business unit in which the transaction involves more than one value on the lower level balancing ChartField. For all transactions that Treasury Management generates, the system obtains the ChartFields from either the bank account or an accounting template. Inherited ChartFields obtain their values from the corresponding ChartField on the offsetting entry.

Treasury System Transaction Definitions

To facilitate interunit and intraunit processing, you segregate your interunit and intraunit payable and receivable accounts by the type of transaction. The interunit and intraunit system transactions are a predefined list of transactions, with one system transaction for each major type of Treasury transaction that generates interunit and intraunit entries. By defining transaction codes and associating them with system transactions, you control the level by which you segregate your Interunit and intraunit balances.

Important! Oracle delivers predefined system transactions, which you can view on the System Transaction Definition page. You should not change the information on this page because it affects the intraunit and interunit processing.

See "Running the Centralized Interunit and Intraunit Processor" (Application Fundamentals).

This table associates a system-defined transaction with a PeopleSoft accounting source:

Accounting Source	***System Transactions***
Deals	TRDEAL
Hedges	TRHEDGE
Letter of Credit, Deal, Facility, or EFT Fees	TRFEE
Bank Statement Items	TRBSP
EFT Requests	TREFT
Bank Transfers	TRBAX

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Accounting Source	*System Transactions*
Interunit Interest	TRIUINT
Manual Entry	TRMANUAL
Investment Pools	TRINPOOL

Intraunit and Interunit Accounting Entries Generation Using the Centralized Processor

Here is an overview of the process:

1. Specify an anchor entry in the accounting template as a model for any interunit and intraunit entries.

   The anchor entry cannot be a line where the ChartField is determined by Bank Account.

2. Process treasury accounting using the Automated Accounting process (TR_ACCTG), which invokes the centralized processor. The centralized processor automatically creates any necessary offset entries that are tagged with the source identifier label *System IU* (viewable on the Additional Details tab of the Accounting Entries page) and inserts these data into the accounting tables.

3. If you make any changes to an accounting entry line, you must click the **Update Accounting** button to invoke the centralized processor and regenerate accounting entries.

Related Links

Establishing Accounting Templates

Automated Accounting Page

"Product Interface and System Transaction Categorization" (Application Fundamentals)

Defining and Maintaining Accounting Substitution Rules

This topic discusses how to set up accounting substitution rule criteria and maintain accounting substitution rules.

Pages Used to Define and Maintain Substitution Rules

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Substitution Rule Definition Page	SUB_RULE_DEFN	Set up substitution criteria based on source attribute values and unique ChartField values.
Manage Substitution Rules Page	SUB_RULE_REQ	Run control to execute a process to copy, rename, or delete substitution rules.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Substitution Rule Definition Page	RUN_TRX1001	Generates a report (TRX1001) with detailed information for one or more substitution rules. See Running Accounting Substitution Rule Reports and Cash Management Reports: A to Z.
Substitution Rule Templates Page	RUN_TRX1002	Generates a report (TRX1002) of all accounting templates associated with one or more substitution rules. See Running Accounting Substitution Rule Reports and Cash Management Reports: A to Z.

Understanding Defining and Maintaining Accounting Substitution Rules

Accounting substitution rules can be created for Deals, Bank Statement Accounting, and Fees.

Use substitution rule functionality to make minor adjustments to templates without having to rebuild them. To define substitution rules that can be shared by multiple accounting templates, use the Define Substitution Rules component (SUB_RULE_DEFN) under Treasury Accounting. You can also maintain substitution rules by running reports and by copying, renaming, or deleting substitution rules under Treasury Accounting.

Substitution Rule Definition Page

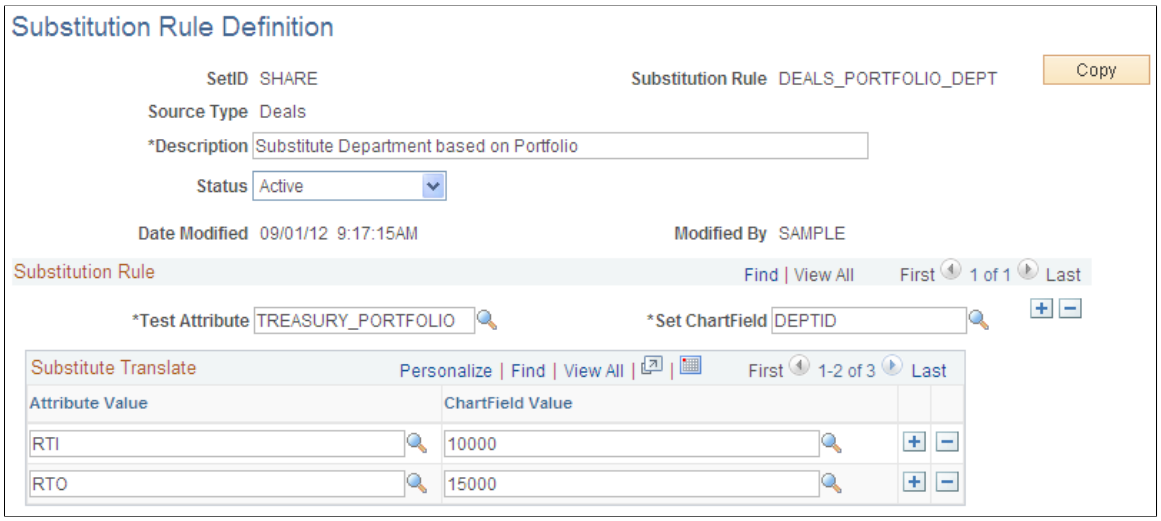
Use the Substitution Rule Definition page (SUB_RULE_DEFN) to set up substitution criteria based on source attribute values and unique ChartField values.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **Define Substitution Rules** > **Substitution Rule Definition**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Substitution Rule Definition page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



On this page, establish the Test Attribute field and the matching Attribute Values. In this example for the DEAL_OPRID_TO_DEPT rule, when the DEALER_OPRID equals a particular dealer, such as DVP1, then the department (DEPTID) ChartField value is set to 14000.

Field or Control	***Description***
Test Attribute and **Attribute Value**	Define the database object to test in. Your selection for this field determines the attribute values available in the Attribute Value field. For example, a Deal rule has different test attributes than a Fee or BSP rule. Each source has its own attribute values.
Set ChartField and **ChartField Value**	Select which ChartField to set against the test attribute, and enter the ChartField value in the ChartField Value field to substitute when the defined test attribute equals the specified attribute value You can have more than one substitute rule per definition, but additional rules must control a unique Set ChartField value.
Copy	Click this button to clone an existing Substitution Rule and make changes as appropriate.
Source Type	Select from these source types when creating a substitution rule: • *BSP*(bank statement accounting) • *Deals* • *EFT Requests*(electronic funds transfer requests) • *Fees*

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

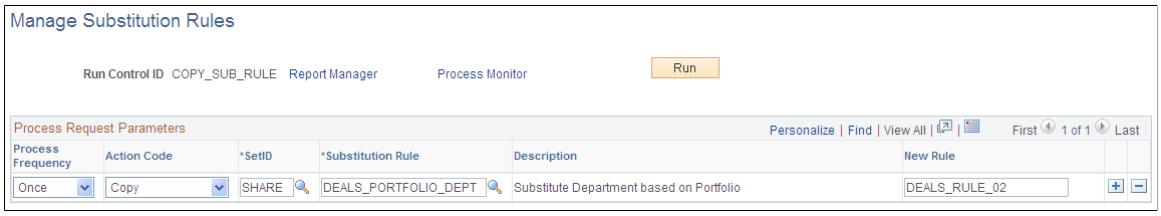
Manage Substitution Rules Page

Use the Manage Substitution Rules page (SUB_RULE_REQ) to run control to execute a process to copy, rename, or delete substitution rules.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Treasury Accounting > Manage Substitution Rules > Manage Substitution Rules

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Manage Substitution Rules page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Action Code	Select an action from the list. Choose from these values: • *Copy:* Creates a new substitution rule that is identical to the rule specified in the Substitution Rule ID field. The Substitution Rule ID and the New Rule value cannot be the same. You must enter a New Rule value that does not already exist. • *Rename:* Changes the name of the specified substitution rule. The Substitution Rule ID and the New Rule value cannot be the same. You must enter a New Rule value that does not already exist. When you rename a substitution rule, accounting templates where it is applied are updated with the new substitution rule ID. • *Delete:* Removes the specified substitution rule. If the Substitution Rule ID is associated with an active Accounting Template, the system generates a warning before deleting. When you delete a substitution rule, accounting templates where the rule was applied are updated to remove the substitution rule. You can request multiple actions for the same Substitution Rule ID. To add an action, click the Add a Row button.

Running Accounting Substitution Rule Reports

Substitution Rule Definition Report Run Control Page

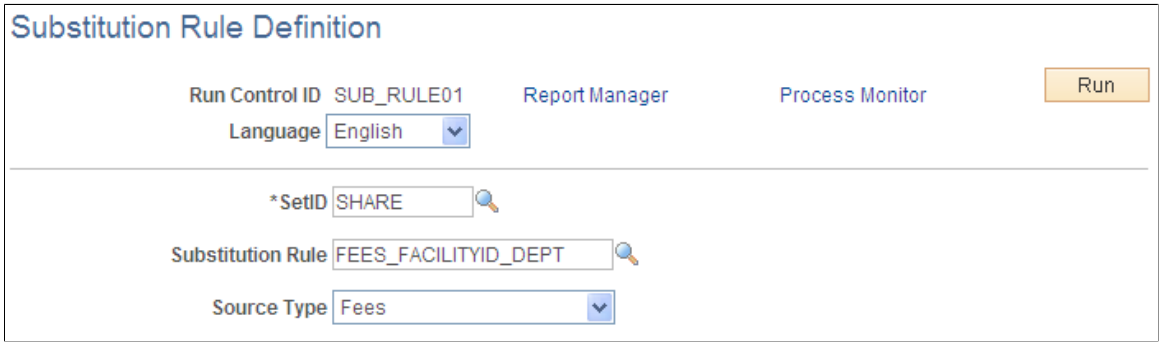
Use the Substitution Rule Definition report run control page (RUN_TRX1001) to generate a list with detailed information for one or more substitution rules.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Treasury Accounting > Reports > Substitution Rule Definition

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Substitution Rule Definition report run control page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



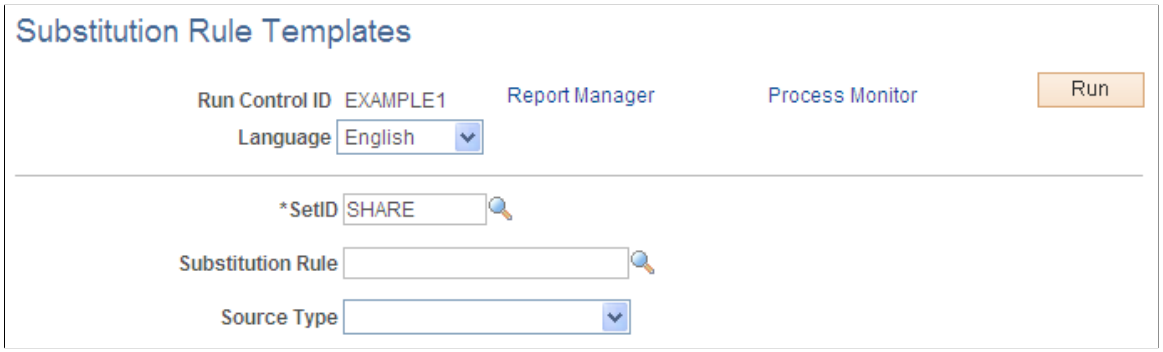
Field or Control	*Description*
Substitution Rule ID	(Optional) Enter an existing Substitution Rule ID or a wildcard.

Use the Substitution Rule Templates report run control page (RUN_TRX1002) to generate a list of all accounting templates associated with one or more substitution rules.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Treasury Accounting > Reports > Substitution Rule Templates

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Substitution Rules Templates run control page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Establishing Accounting Templates

Pages Used to Establish Accounting Templates

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Accounting Templates Page	TRA_TMPL_DETL	Enter general accounting template and template line information.
Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule Page	TRA_SUB_RULE	Associate a defined substitution rule with an accounting template line.
VAT Defaults Setup Page	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Define value-added tax (VAT) default processing options for the specified accounting template. See the Accounting Templates Page.

Understanding Establishing Accounting Templates

To define accounting templates, use the Accounting Templates component (ACCTG_TEMPLATES).

Use this component to:

1. Enter accounting template information.
2. Associate substitution criteria with accounting template lines.
3. Link templates with associated accounting events.

Accounting Templates Page

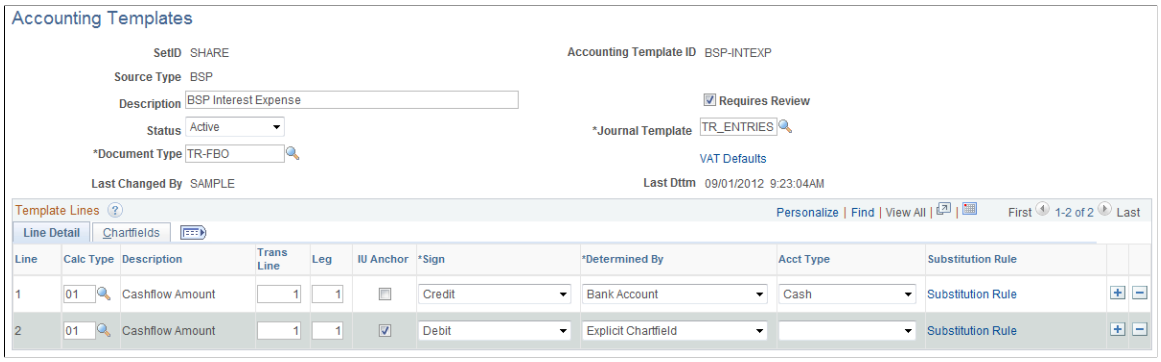
Use the Accounting Templates page (TRA_TMPL_DETL) to enter general accounting template and template line information.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **Accounting Templates**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Templates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	***Description***
Requires Review	Select to force review of the accounting transactions that use this template. When you select this check box, the system assigns error-free accounting entries and a status of *Provisional.* To finalize the provisional entry, use the View/Approve Entries page to review and change the status to *Final.* If you do not select this check box, the system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template and a status of *Final.*
Source Type	Displays the source of the accounting entry, which can be *BSP* (bank statement processing), *Deals, Fees, Hedge Accounting, Interest, EFT Requests,* or *Investment Pools.*
Status	Indicate whether this accounting template is *Active* or *Inactive.* This determines which templates are available to users. The system selects only active accounting templates for display and use. This feature enables you to: • Retain all the accounting templates that you create, both current and discontinued. • Research the accounting for all your accounting entries, whether the respective accounting template is active or not. When an accounting template is marked inactive, it is not available for processing, but is retained for historical reference. If you need to review accounting entries processed by an inactive accounting template, the template is still present in the system.
Document Type	Select the document type to use as the basis for assigning document sequencing numbers to these types of transactions.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
VAT Defaults (value-added tax defaults)	Click to access the VAT Defaults Setup page (VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL). The VAT Defaults Setup page is a common page used to set up VAT defaults for all PeopleSoft applications that process VAT transactions. On this page, you can define accounting template defaults as applicable. You must first specify one of the accounting lines as a VAT-applicable line to establish VAT defaults for this template.

Line Detail Tab

Select the **Calc Type** (calculation type) to use on each template line—this varies depending on the source type. For deal-related calculation types, you must also specify a transaction line and leg of the deal.

The following table lists each available calculation type by source type.

Source Type	*Available Calculation Types*
Bank Statement Processing (BSP)	Cashflow Amount
Fees	Cashflow Amount
Deals	Cashflow Amount
Deals	Deal Amount
Deals	Price
Deals	Purchased Interest
Deals	Interest Compounded into Principal
Deals	Interest Accrued
Deals	Mark to Market Gain
Deals	Mark to Market Loss
Deals	MTM Multi Currency Gain
Deals	MTM Multi Currency Loss

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Source Type	***Available Calculation Types***
Deals	Forward Points
Deals	FX Deal Cashflow Amount
Deals	Forward Points Accrued
Deals	Maturity Interest
Deals	Maturity Principal
Deals	Maturity Multi Currency Gain
Deals	Maturity Multi Currency Loss
Deals	Amortized Discount / Premium
Deals	Sale Current Accounted Value
Deals	Premium Accrued
Deals	Sale Settlement
Deals	Sale Price (Clean)
Deals	Sold Accrued Interest
Deals	Gain/Loss on Sale
Deals	Multi Currency Gain on Sale
Deals	Multi Currency Loss on Sale
Deals	Accumulated MTM Gain/Loss
Deals	Bond Discount / Premium
Deals	Principal Payment

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Source Type	***Available Calculation Types***
Deals	Interest Payment
Deals	Amounts Rolled Out
Deals	Principal Rolled Out
Deals	Interest Rolled Out
Deals	Amounts Rolled In
Deals	Principal Rolled In
Deals	Interest Rolled In
Deals	Write-Off Unamort Disc/Premium
Deals	Write-Off Unamort Fee
Deals	Day Delay Price
Deals	Day Delay Purchased Interest
Deals	Dividend Payment
Deals	FV Excluded Time Value G/L
Deals	CF Excluded Time Value G/L
Deals	FX Net Investment Excluded G/L
Deals	Fair Value Hedge Gain/Loss
Deals	Cash Flow Hedge Gain/Loss
Deals	FX Net Investment Gain/Loss
Deals	Not Hedge Designated Gain/Loss

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Source Type	*Available Calculation Types*
Hedges	Fair Value Hedged Item G/L
Hedges	Firm Commitment to Carrying
Hedges	Amortize Adj to Carrying
Hedges	De-recognize Firm Commitment
Hedges	AOCI Adjustments
Hedges	AOCI Reclassify
Hedges	Will Not Occur-AOCI Reclassify
Interest	Cashflow Amount
Investment Pools	Cashflow Amount
Investment Pools	Interest Payment
Investment Pools	Mark-to-Market Gain/Loss
EFT Requests	Cashflow Amount

Field or Control	*Description*
Trans Line (transaction line)	For Deals source type, indicates the line from the deal instrument. All other sources have a default of *1*.
Leg	Indicates the deal accounting leg number.
IU Anchor (interunit anchor)	Specify one line of the template as the anchor. This is a required field because the centralized processor uses it to generate interunit entries. The anchor line cannot be a line where the ChartField is determined by bank account.
Sign	Select the numerical sign for a transaction *Credit, Debit, Keep Sign,* or *Rev Sign* (reverse sign).

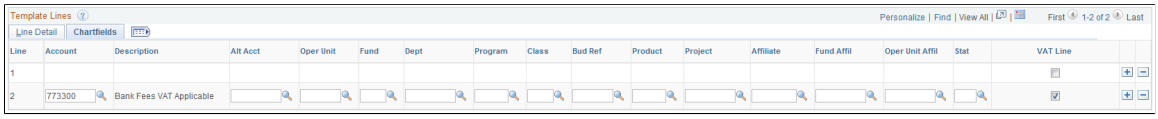
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Determined by	Indicate how to inherit ChartField values for the specified template line. Values are: *Bank Account:* ChartField values are inherited from the bank account that is specified by the source transaction. Fields on the ChartField tab for this line are then disabled. *Explicit ChartField:* You define specific ChartField values on the ChartField tab.
Acct Type (account type)	If the ChartField is determined by bank account, then you must choose the General Ledger account type. For Treasury, select *Cash Account.* If the ChartField is determined by Explicit ChartField, then leave this field blank.

ChartFields Tab

Enter the appropriate ChartField values.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Chartfields tab of the Accounting Templates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Stat (statistic)	Select a statistics code for the specific accounting line. This field can be edited on the accounting entry.
VAT Line (value-added tax line)	Click to specify that VAT is applicable for this accounting line. You can specify VAT options only for accounts with: • The **VAT Applicable Flag** check box selected on the Account page. See "Account Page" (Application Fundamentals). • Source types of *BSP* or *Fees.*

Related Links

Managing Accounting Entries

"Setting Up for Journal Entries Using Statistics" (PeopleSoft General Ledger)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

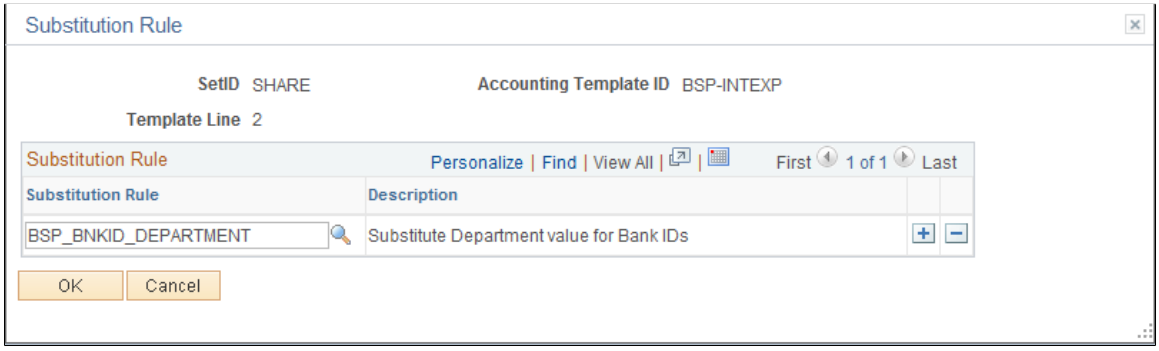
Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule Page

Use the Substitution Rule page (TRA_SUB_RULE) to associate a defined substitution rule with an accounting template line.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Treasury Accounting > Accounting Templates > Substitution Rule

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Use substitution rule functionality to make minor adjustments to templates without having to rebuild them. For example, you might require that certain departments perform deal accounting on deals by dealers by specifying criteria for each dealer's user ID. The substitution rule that addresses this need is assigned to the applicable accounting template lines here. In this example, the substitution rule ID applied is DEAL_OPERID_TO_DEPT, which was defined on the Substitution Rule Definition page.

Field or Control	*Description*
Substitution Rule	Enter a predefined substitution rule to apply to the template line. You can have more than one substitute rule per template line. Substitution rules are set up on the Substitution Rule Definition page (**Cash Management >Treasury Accounting >Define Substitution Rules >Substitution Rule Definition**). When multiple substitution rules are defined for a template line, the system validates that the Set ChartField value is unique within all of the associated substitution rules.

Linking Templates with the Associated Accounting Events

Accounting events are linked with their corresponding accounting templates on various pages, as defined in this table:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Accounting Event Source	*Page Name*	*Navigation*
Bank Statement items	External Transactions	**Banking** > **Reconcile Statements** >**External Transactions** Select the Transactions Detail tab, **Accounting Template ID** field.
Deals	Accounting Templates	**Deal Management** >**Administer Deals** > **Define Instruments** >**Accounting Templates**
EFT Requests	EFT Template	**Cash Management** >**Fees and Transfers** >**EFT Requests** Select the Origin tab, **Template ID** field.
Letter of Credit, Deal, Facility, or Wire Fees	Fee Codes	**Set Up Financials/ Supply Chain** >**Product Related** >**Treasury** >**Fee Codes** >**Fee Codes** Select the **Expense Template** or **Accrual Template** field.
Hedges	Deal Accounting	**Risk Management** >**Analyze Hedge** > **Hedges** >**Deal Accounting**
Hedges	Item Accounting	**Risk Management** >**Administer Risk** >**Hedged Item Sources**
Investment Pools	Pool Information Participant Transactions Pool Position	**Cash Management** > **Investment Pools** >**Pool Information** **Cash Management** >**Investment Pools** >**Participant Transactions** **Cash Management** >**Investment Pools** >**Pool Position**

Processing Accounting Entries

This topic presents a diagram of the inbound and outbound transaction process, provides an overview of the Automated Accounting Build process, and discusses how to process automated accounting.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Used to Process Accounting Entries

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Automated Accounting Page	TRA_ACCTG_REQ	Run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for the Journal Generator (FSPGJGEN) process.

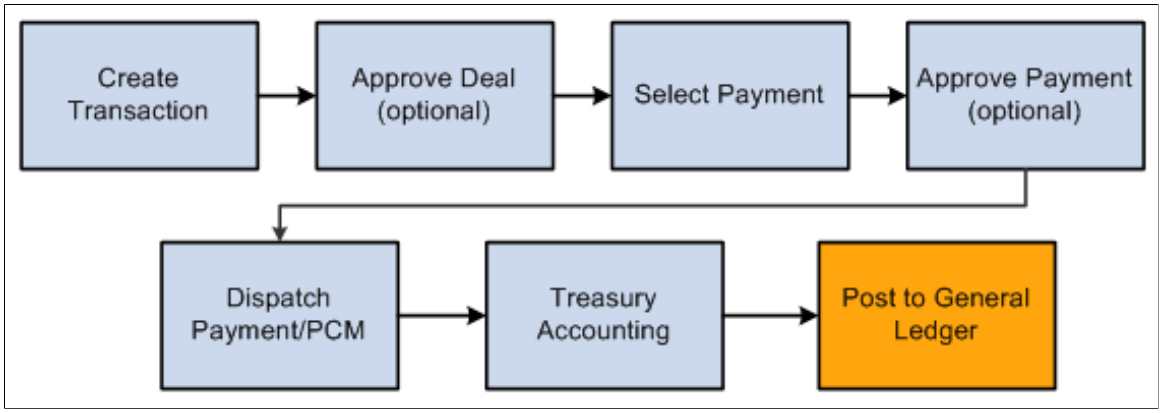
Understanding the Inbound and Outbound Transaction Process Flow

During processing, the program calls the centralized processor to generate interunit and intraunit balancing (IU_PROCESSOR).

These diagrams illustrate the inbound and outbound transaction processes.

Inbound process from importing a transaction to Treasury Accounting to posting to General Ledger

Outbound process from creating transaction through payment dispatch and Treasury Accounting to posting to General Ledger



Understanding the Automated Accounting Build Process

The Automated Accounting process populates the treasury accounting event calendar with transaction reference information, event type, event date, template ID, and processing state.

When specific processing events occur (as shown in the following table), the program that builds automatic accounting entries selects any unprocessed transactions from the treasury accounting event calendar and copies them into the Accounting Entries table.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Accounting Event Type	*Processing Event*
Treasury Deals	The open deal is saved and the **Cash Flows** button is clicked.
Bank Transfers, EFT transfers	The transaction is dispatched.
Fees and Charges	Fees are saved.
Mark to Market	During revaluation processing.
Investment Pools	• Participant transactions are approved. • Pool positions are updated. • Income Distribution Application Engine process (TRP_INC_DIST) is run.

When the underlying data are established, the Automated Accounting process works in the following way:

1. Selects unprocessed records with the correct event date from the Accounting Event table.
   - Processes inbound cash flows unconditionally upon receipt of cash.
   - Processes outbound cash flows after transactions have been approved and sent to the bank.
2. Constructs the ChartField combination according to the appropriate accounting template.

   If ChartField combination errors occur, the system will insert error details for each of the accounting entries. You can review and fix these ChartField combination errors by accessing the Accounting Entries component.
3. Retrieves the correct monetary amount according to the calculation type.

Automated Accounting Page

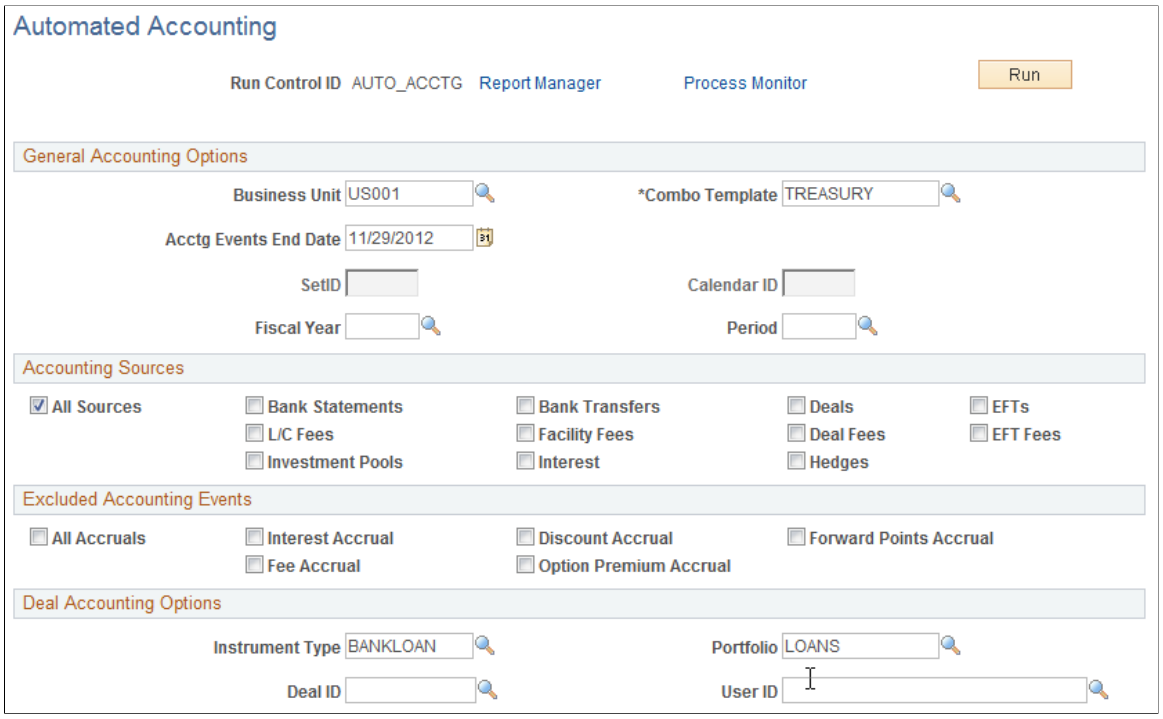
Use the Automated Accounting page (TRA_ACCTG_REQ) to run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for the Journal Generator (FSPGJGEN) process.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **Automated Accounting**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Automated Accounting page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Business Unit	Enter a value to process automated accounting for a specific business unit. You can also leave the Business Unit field blank to set up automated accounting for multiple business units. If you enter a business unit defined with a calendar ID on the Treasury Options page, the calendar ID appears on the page. **Note:** Your system administrator can set up the option to issue a warning instead of an error message (13550, 70) for processing a single business unit using an Accounting Events End Date when the selected Business Unit is defined with a Calendar ID. This table provides an overview of the selections a user can make on the run control page and the accounting entries that the Automated Accounting Engine processes.

Run Control Selections	*Processing Results*
Business Unit **Acctg Events End Date**	Specified business unit, must *not* be defined with a calendar ID.
Business Unit – *None* (leave field blank) **Acctg Events End Date**	All business units that are *not* defined with a calendar ID.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Run Control Selections	*Processing Results*
Business Unit **Fiscal Year** **Period** **Note:** When Fiscal Year and Period are populated, leave Acctg Events End Date blank.	Specified business unit, must be defined with a calendar ID.
Business Unit – *None* (leave field blank) **Fiscal Year** **Period** **Note:** When Fiscal Year and Period are populated, leave Acctg Events End Date blank.	

Field or Control	*Description*
Combo Template	Enter a template ID for the combination of business unit and general ledger.
Acctg Events End Date	Enter an accounting events end date. The system processes all associated accounting events on or before the specified date. If a business unit has a calendar associated with it, you must leave this field blank and enter Fiscal Year and Period values.
SetID	Displays the SetID value associated with the Calendar ID that controls the Fiscal Year and Period.
Calendar ID	Displays the Calendar ID value that controls the Fiscal Year and Period. If you enter a business unit associated with a calendar ID on the Treasury Options page, that calendar ID will appear here. If the business unit has a calendar associated with it, you must enter Fiscal Year and Period values and leave the Acctg Events End Date field blank.
Fiscal Year and **Period**	Enter the Fiscal Year and Period values that will be used to determine the accounting events to be processed by Automated Accounting process.

Note: The process creates accounting entries even if errors occur. Use the Accounting Entries page to correct any errors, and then change the status from *Error* to *Provisional.* Use the View/Approve Entries page to change the status from *Provisional* to *Final.* The accounting entries are then ready for General Ledger. You do not have to rerun the Automated Accounting process.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Managing Accounting Entries

Pages Used to Manage Accounting Entries

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Accounting Entries Page	TRA_ACCTG_LINE	• Review and adjust automated accounting entries. • Create manual accounting entries online.
Treasury VAT Information Page	TRV_ACCTG_LINE_VAT	Review VAT information for a VAT-applicable accounting entry line. See the Accounting Entries Page.
View/Approve Entries Page	TRA_ACCTG_LINE	Approve accounting entries that are awaiting review.
Accounting Summary Page	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	View line-by-line accounting events. You can retrieve information according to ad hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.
Reverse Accounting Request Page	REV_ACCTG_REQ	Run a process to create reversal accounting entries. **Note:** Accounting entries can be reversed only one time.

Common Elements Used to Manage Accounting Entries

Field or Control	*Description*
Created By	Displays the userID of the user who created the entry.
Created Dttm (created date and time)	Displays the entry creation date and time.
Last Changed By	Displays the userID of the most recent user to edit the entry.
Last Dttm (last updated date and time)	Displays the most recent modification date and time.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Source Code	Indicates the source for the accounting entry or fee. Values are: • *(none)* • *BSP* (bank statement processing) • *Bank Xfers* (bank transfers) • *Deal Fees* • *Deals* • *EFT Fees* (electronic funds transfer fees) • *EFTs* (electronic funds transfers) • *Fac Fees* (facilities fees) • *Hedges* • *Interest* • *LC Fees* (letter of credit fees) • *Other* • *Pools* • *Securities*

Accounting Entries Page

Use the Accounting Entries page (TRA_ACCTG_LINE) to review and adjust automated accounting entries.

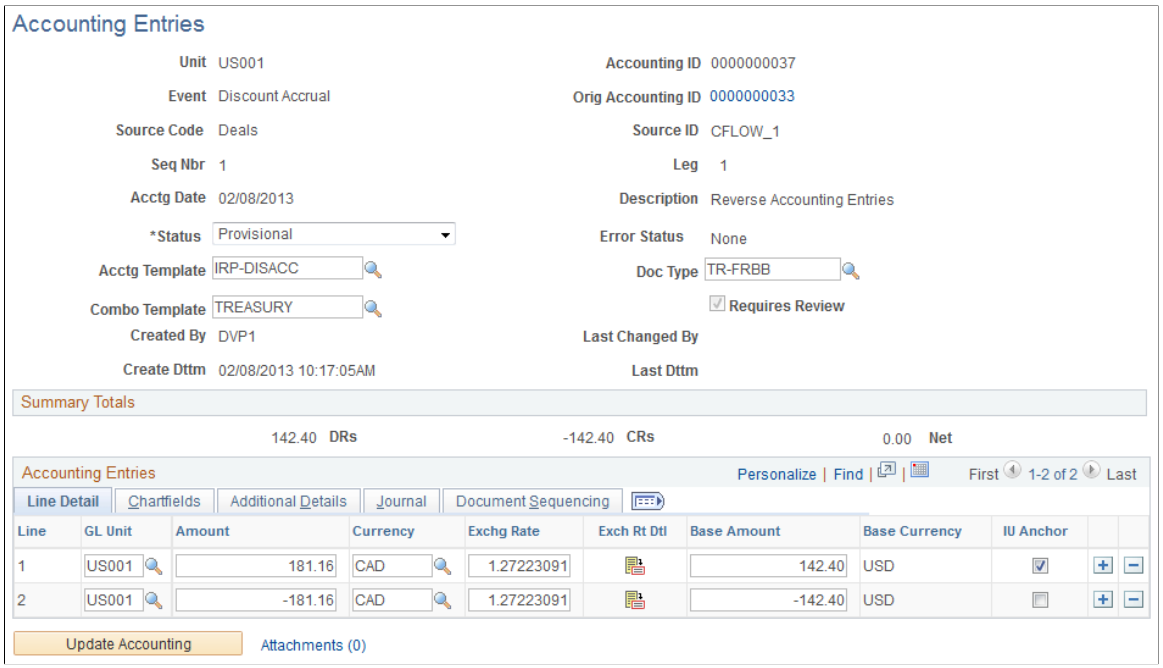
Create manual accounting entries online.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **Accounting Entries**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Entries page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	***Description***
Accounting ID	Displays the ID of the accounting entry.
Orig Accounting ID	Indicates the entry is a reversal entry. Click the link to view the original accounting entry in a separate window. The **Description** field also identifies whether the entry is a Reversal Accounting Entry.
Event	Displays a descriptive label for the accounting entry, based on the source code value.
Source Code	Displays the accounting entry source, as processed by the Automated Accounting process, or entered on a manual accounting entry.
Source ID	Displays the unique identification number on the source side for the accounting entry.
Acctg Date (accounting date)	Displays the date that the entry was processed through Automated Accounting, or entered as a manual accounting entry.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Status	Indicates the current condition of the accounting entry. Values are: *Provisional:* The entry is not finalized. You can make any required changes. *Error:* An error exists within the accounting entry. The system assigns this status—you cannot select it. When you correct an error, change the status to *Provisional.* After the status has been changed to *Provisional,* use the View/Approve Entries page to change the status to *Final.* The entry is then ready for the Journal Generator process—you do not need to reprocess it. *Final:* The entry is ready for Journal Generator processing and is free from errors. Until the entry is processed through the Journal Generator process, you can continue to make changes to it, even if the status is *Final.* When the Journal Generator processes the entry, the distribution status changes to *Distributed,* indicating that it has been posted to a General Ledger journal and no further modifications can be made.
Acctg Template (accounting template)	Displays the name of the accounting template that is attached to the accounting entry. If the accounting template is missing or inactive, Automated Accounting sets the accounting event status to *Error*. You can reset the *Error* status for accounting events that have valid templates and reprocess the accounting entries. **Note:** If you use General Ledger, you can automatically reverse any unrealized gain/loss accounting that is generated by Treasury Management at the next accounting period. You need to create a journal template for this type of treasury accounting and enable the feature for automatic journal reversal. You must assign this journal template to the treasury accounting template for General Ledger to perform the automatic reversals.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Error	Indicates the error source of an automated accounting entry. Values are: *None:* No error condition exists. This appears when the status is provisional or final. *Unbalanced:* Debits do not equal credits, or debits and credits are not equal, but refer to different General Ledger business units. *CF Combo Error* (ChartField combination error): The ChartField generated is invalid. *No Exchange Rate:* The currency exchange rate for the applicable currency pair is missing. The base amount could not be converted to the accounting entry currency. *Account Not Specified:* The account was undefined, and the amounts cannot be distributed. *IU Processor Error:* The centralized processor encountered an error. Review the accounting entries, correct any errors, and click the **Update Accounting** button to regenerate accounting.
Requires Review	Select this check box to require review of the accounting entries. A check box that is selected and grayed-out indicates that the **Review Required** check box was already selected on the Template page on which this was based *or* the **Review Manual Updates** check box was selected on the Treasury Options page for the Treasury business unit and the accounting entry has been manually updated.
Update Accounting	Click this button if you edit any of the information in the Accounting Entries grids to run the centralized interunit processor. **Note:** If you are editing information only in the page header (**Status** field or **Requires Review** check box), do not click the **Update Accounting** button. When you click the Update Accounting button on the Accounting Entries page, the system determines whether the Review Manual Updates check box has been selected on the Treasury Options page associated with the Treasury Business Unit. If the Review Manual Updates check box is selected for the business unit, the system sets the accounting event status to *Provisional* and selects the Requires Review check box.
VAT (value-added tax)	Click this link to access the Treasury VAT Information page (TRV_ACCTG_LINE_VAT). The VAT link appears for VAT-applicable accounting entries.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Integration Status	Displays the status of the integration between Treasury and JD Edwards General Accounting. This field appears only if the integration is enabled on the Installation Options - Treasury page. Values are: • *Pending:* The entry is ready to be sent to the Integration Broker for transmission to JD Edwards General Accounting. • *Sent:* The entry has been sent to the Integration Broker. • *Received:* The accounting entries have been loaded into the JD Edwards staging table. • *Loaded:* The accounting entries have been loaded into the JD Edwards application tables. • *Posted:* The accounting entries have been posted to JD Edwards General Accounting. • *Error:* Indicates that the accounting entry contains erroneous data or an error occurred during the data transmission process and must be resent. **Note:** If an entry must be resent, the integration status can be changed to *Pending* unless the integration status is already displayed as *Posted.* See "Installation Options - Treasury Page" (Application Fundamentals). See *JD Edwards Application Integrations with PeopleSoft Applications,* "Using the PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting Integration."

Line Detail Tab

Field or Control	*Description*
Line	Displays the line number of the automated accounting process.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Error	Displays this column and an *X* link next to the lines with ChartField combination editing errors. Click the *X* link to access an Accounting Entries secondary page, which contains a Line Errors grid that has these fields: • **Line #** identifies the accounting entry transaction line number. You can click a line number for an error and the system returns you to the specific line containing the error. You can correct the error and click the **Update Accounting** button on the Accounting Entries page to run the centralized interunit processor again. • **Message Set Number** identifies the message set to which the error message belongs. • **Message Number** identifies the specific number of the error message within the message set. • **Message Text** describes information about the error. **Note:** The Errors column only appears in the Accounting Entries page when there is a ChartField combination editing error. A ChartField combination error does not stop the Accounting Entries creation process (ACCOUNTING_BUILD). You can review and fix the errors after the process has finished.
GL Unit	Displays the associated General Ledger unit.
	Click the **Exchange Rate Detail** button to view currency exchange rate information on the Exchange Rate Detail page (EXCH_RT_DTL).
Base Amount	Displays the **GL BU** (General Ledger business unit) amount in the base system currency.
IU Anchor (interunit anchor)	Specify one line of the template as the anchor. This is a required field, because the centralized processor uses it to generate interunit entries.

The system resets manually entered exchange rates when you change the business unit, foreign currency, or accounting date on the accounting entry page. The system resets the exchange rate as follows:

- On all accounting lines when the accounting date is changed.

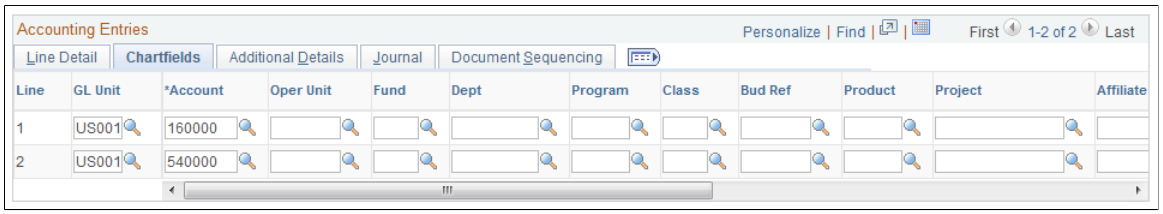
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- On an individual line when the business unit or foreign currency is changed for that line.

ChartFields Tab

Select the ChartFields tab.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Entries page - Chartfields tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Stat (statistic)	If a statistics code is set for this accounting line on the template, the code appears here. You can edit this field. Select a statistics code—the associated unit of measure (UOM) appears for the selected code. You must also enter a statistic amount with which to measure the statistic.
IBAN	Displays the international bank account number (IBAN) in addition to the local, domestic bank account number when the country has been set up to display the IBAN on the "IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Important! If a ChartField combination editing error occurs, an **Errors** column will appear after the **Line #** column. An *X* link will appear next to an transaction line with a ChartField combination error. You click the *X* link to access an Accounting Entries secondary page, which contains a grid that describes the error message for each transaction. You can click on a transactions **Line #** link and access the accounting transaction with the ChartField combination error, and fix the problem. See the Accounting Entries subtopic in this section for additional details.

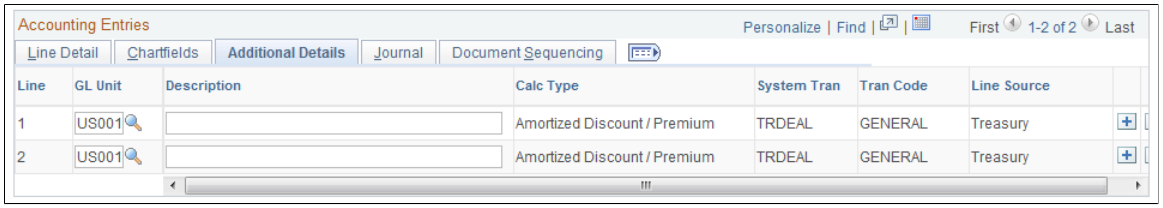
See "ChartField Values" (Application Fundamentals).

Additional Details Tab

Select the Additional Details tab.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Entries page - Additional Details tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

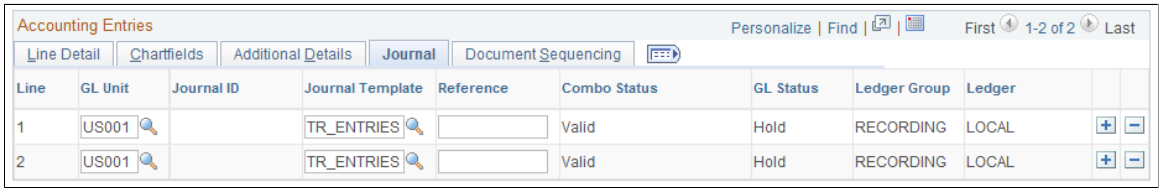


Field or Control	*Description*
Line Source	Displays either *Treasury* for accounting lines that are generated by the treasury accounting program, or *System IU* for accounting lines that are generated by the centralized processor.

Journal Tab

Select the Journal tab.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Entries page - Journal tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Combo Status	Indicates whether the ChartField combination that the system built based on the accounting template is *Valid* or *Invalid.*
GL Status (General Ledger status)	Provides information about the posting status of the entry. Possible values include: • *Distributed:* Distributed to a General Ledger journal. • *Hold:* An error condition exists, the entry must be corrected before Journal Generator can process it, or the entry requires review. • *None:* The entry has been created without errors, but has not been processed by the Journal Generator process.
Ledger Group	Indicates the general ledger group that is associated with the General Ledger Unit on the accounting line.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Ledger	Indicates the general ledger that is associated with the General Ledger Unit on the account line.

Related Links

Establishing Accounting Templates
Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries

Creating Ad Hoc Accounting Entries

On the Accounting Entries page, the **Source Code, Source ID, Event,** and **Accounting Template** fields are optional.

- If you complete the **Source Code, Source ID,** and **Event** fields, the system can create a link between the manual and the automated accounting results.
- If you enter entries manually on a recurring basis, you can create and use an accounting template to minimize the data entry process for these entries. Any template that you create appears in the **Accounting Template** field. When you select an accounting template for this ad hoc entry, the system automatically populates the accounting lines with the template data.

To create ad hoc accounting entries:

1. Enter the business unit and optionally, an accounting ID. Click **Add.**
2. Select an accounting event from the following values:
    - *(none)*
    - *AOCI Adjustment*
    - *AOCI Reclassify*
    - *Amortize Adj of Carrying*
    - *Barrier Rebate Payment*
    - *Commodity Cash Difference*
    - *Commodity Settlement*
    - *Deal Booking*
    - *Deal Maturity*
    - *Derecognize Firm Commitment*
    - *Discount Accrual*
    - *Fair Value Hedged Item G/L*

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- *Fee Accrual*
- *Firm Commitment to Carrying*
- *Forward Points Accrual*
- *Generic Cash Flow*
- *Initial Payment*
- *Interest Accrual*
- *Interim Principal Payment*
- *Mark to Market*
- *Maturity Payment*
- *Option Cash Difference*
- *Option Exercise*
- *Option Premium Accrual*
- *Periodic Payment*
- *Premium Payment*
- *Sell / Buyback*
- *Transaction Fee*
- *Will Not Occur - AOCI Reclassify*

3. Specify a source code.
4. Select a specific source ID of the selected source code.
5. Review the accounting date for accuracy.
6. Leave the default status for ad hoc entries as *Provisional.* Do not change this setting.
7. The **Require Review** check box is automatically selected for ad hoc entries. You cannot deselect this check box.
8. (Optional) Enter a description.
9. Select an accounting template.
10. Enter at least one debit and one credit line to balance the entry, and select one line as the IU anchor.
11. Enter an account and any other ChartFields for each line.
12. Select *TR_ENTRIES* for the journal template.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

13. Click **Update Accounting** to run the centralized processor function, which creates any necessary offset entry lines and saves the manual accounting entry.

If the debits and credits do not balance, you receive an error message and the accounting entry is not saved. Make the necessary corrections, and then save the page.

Note: When the Journal Generator processes the entry, the distribution status changes from *None* to *Distributed,* and no further changes can be made.

Related Links

Accounting Entries Page

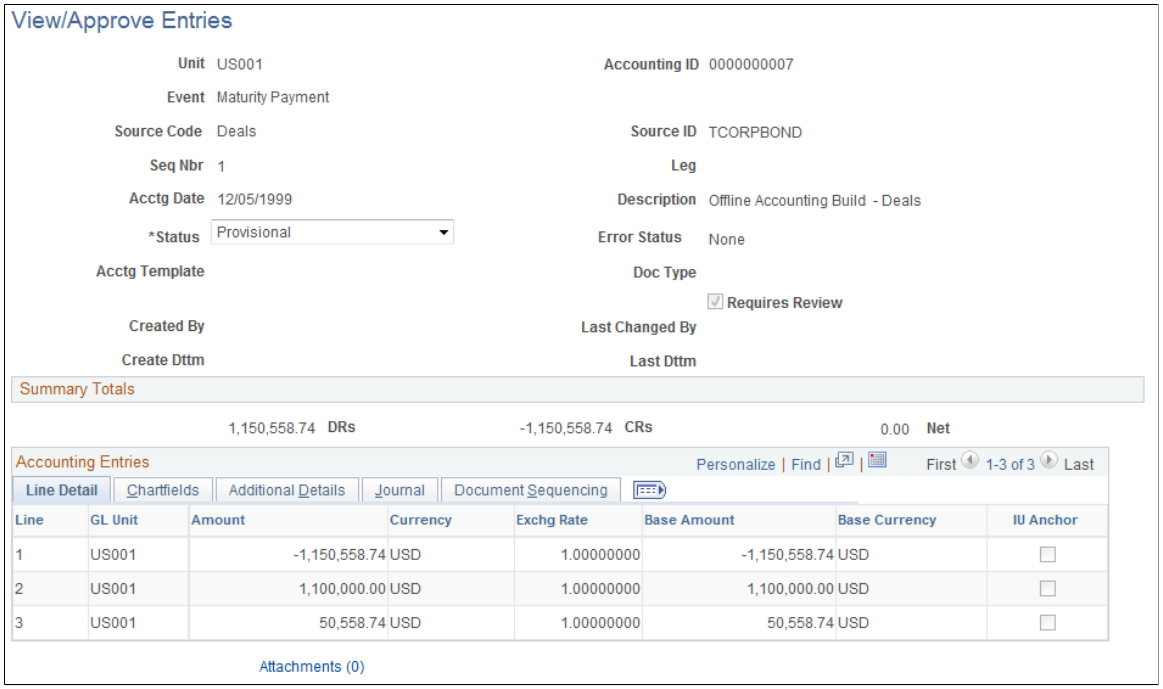
View/Approve Entries Page

Use the View/Approve Entries page (TRA_ACCTG_LINE) to approve accounting entries that are awaiting review.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **View/Approve Entries**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the View/Approve Entries page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Status	Initially displays the status of accounting entries that are displayed in the Accounting Entries grid. Values are: • *Error:* Accounting entries are in error and must be corrected before they can be posted to the general ledger. Possible causes of errors include unbalanced entries, currency exchange rate cannot be found, accounting template cannot be found, interunit errors, and so forth. Error status can be set only by the Automated Accounting process. • *Needs Correction:* Accounting entries are in error. Needs Correction status can only be set manually. • *Provisional:* Accounting entries passed system verifications, but require visual inspection. You can review the entry and save it with a new status of *Final* or *Needs Correction.* • *Final:* Accounting entries are ready to be posted to the general ledger.

Note: Use PeopleSoft Security functionality to identify which users have access and approval privileges to provisional accounting entries. You can define permission lists and accessible pages for a specific userID. See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Security Administration*.

Accounting Summary Page

Use the Accounting Summary page (TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL) to view line-by-line accounting events.

You can retrieve information according to ad hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **Accounting Summary**

Field or Control	*Description*
Acctg Date (accounting date)	Displays the creation date of the accounting transaction.
Status	Select *Error, Final,* or *Provisional.*
Line	Click a link to access the Accounting Entries page for that event.
Event ID	Click to navigate back to the source transaction.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding Reverse Accounting

Accounting entries that need to be reversed can be identified using various identifiers, such as Accounting ID, Source, and Payment ID. The Reverse Accounting Entries Application Engine process (TR_RVSL_DRVR) does the following:

- Selects the accounting data (header, lines, and VAT).

  The reversal accounting entry is not linked to a fiscal period.

- Reverses the amounts and reset certain statuses and fields (for example, Journal Generator links).
- Assigns a new accounting ID to each selected header, lines, and VAT.

  The process does not reset the accounting event status associated to the original accounting entry.

- Calls document sequencing and ChartField combination editing, when applicable.
- Populates the accounting tables with the new data (header, lines, and VAT).
- Checks for errors (for example, combination edit, unbalanced entries) and updates the accounting header.
- Logs messages summarizing the entries (including type of errors, number of entries created).

When deactivating a deal, you can automatically reverse the accounting entries on the Undo Deal Utility page. When you select the **Reverse Accounting** check box, you can use additional options to specify the Reversal Date Option and Combo Edit Template. The TRX_UNDO_DEAL Application Engine process uses the entered parameters and calls the Reverse Accounting process. When you create cumulative MTM accounting entries for deals, the Treasury Accounting Application Engine program (TR_ACCTG) processes cumulative fair value adjustments then initiates reverse accounting to reverse previous fair value adjustment accounting entries. For more information, see the documentation for the Deal Analytics page.

When an already accounted external transaction is unreconciled using semi-manual reconciliation, the system triggers the TR_RVSL_DRVR process to reverse the accounting entries. The external transaction status is set as Void to ensure that there is only one valid BSP transaction corresponding to the source Bank Statement transaction.

Related Links

"Reevaluating Deals Analytics" (PeopleSoft Risk Management)
"Deactivating Deals" (PeopleSoft Deal Management)
"Understanding ChartField Combination Editing" (Application Fundamentals)
"Defining General Ledger Business Units" (PeopleSoft General Ledger)

Reverse Accounting Request Page

Use the Reverse Accounting Request page (REV_ACCTG_REQ) to run a process to create reversal accounting entries.

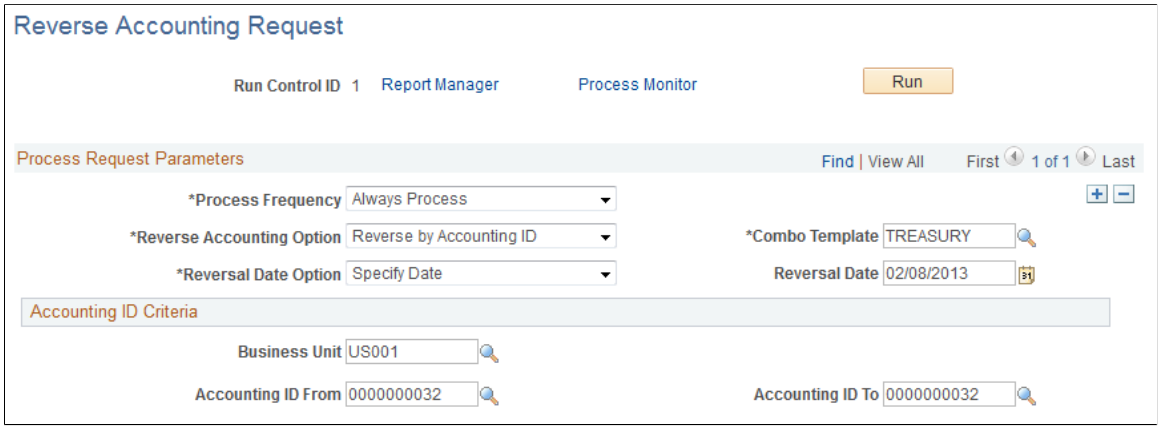
Note: Accounting entries can be reversed only one time.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Cash Management > Treasury Accounting >Reverse Accounting Request >Reverse Accounting Request

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Reverse Accounting Request page.



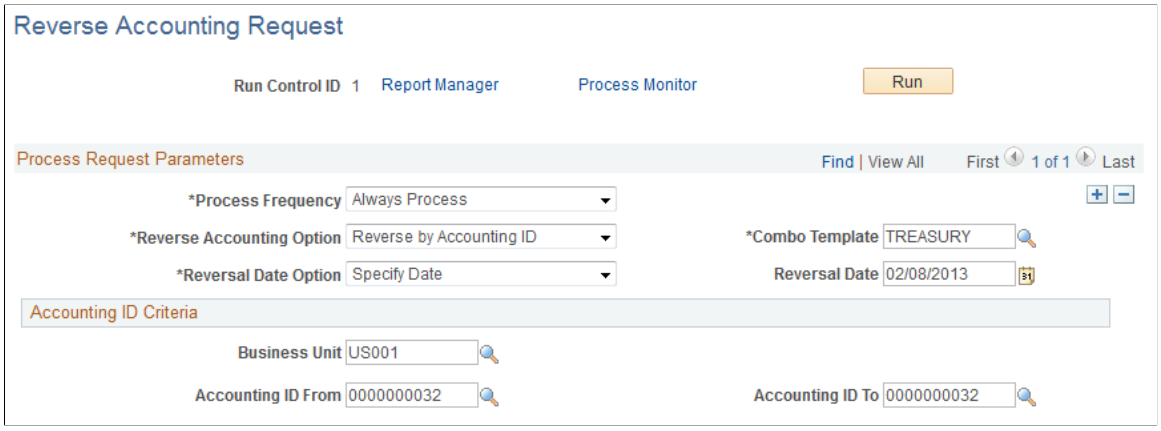
Field or Control	*Description*
Reverse Accounting Option	Select from these values: • *Reverse by Accounting ID* • *Reverse by Payment ID* • *Reverse by Source* The page will render differently depending on the selected **Reverse Accounting Option**. Each option has different criteria for identifying the accounting entries to be reversed.
Combo Template	Specify a combination editing template. See "Setting Up Combination Editing" (Application Fundamentals).
Reversal Date Option	Select the date to use as the accounting date for the reversal accounting entries. The **Reversal Date** field is available for input when the reversal date option is *Specify Date*. Select a reversal date from these values: • *Current Date*- Select to use the current date as the accounting date for the reversal accounting entries. • *Specify Date* - This option requires a value in the **Reversal Date** field, where you can enter a specific accounting date.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Accounting ID Criteria

This section appears when you select *Reverse by Accounting ID* in the **Reverse Accounting Options** field.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Reverse Accounting Request page to reverse by Accounting ID.

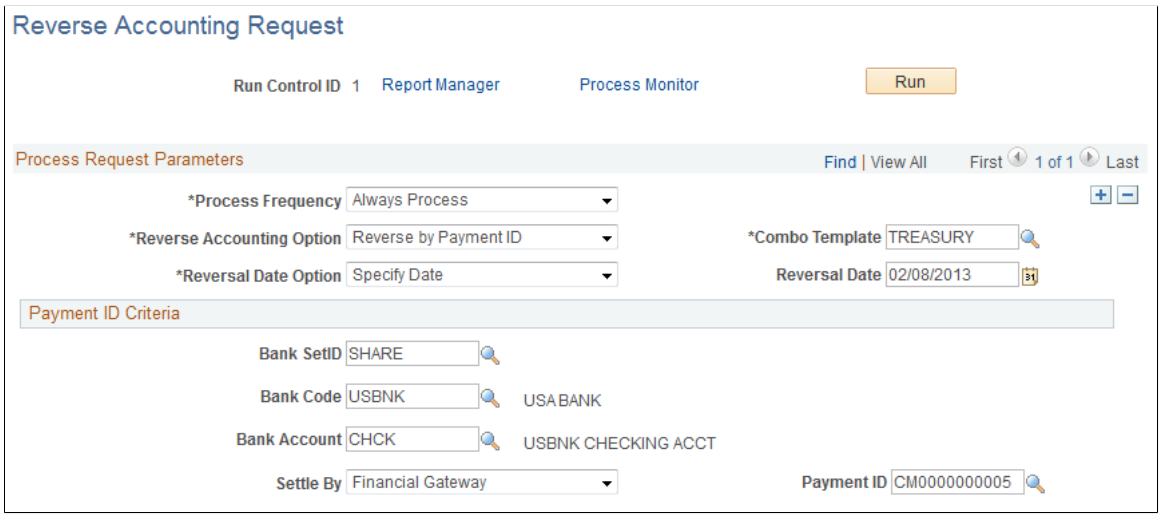


Field or Control	*Description*
Business Unit	Enter a business unit. This is a required field.
Accounting ID From and **Accounting ID To**	Identify one or more accounting IDs to be reversed. Accounting entries for the accounting ID range will be reversed. **Accounting ID From** is a required field.

Payment ID Criteria

This section appears when you select *Reverse by Payment ID* in the **Reverse Accounting Options** field.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Reverse Accounting Request page to reverse by Payment ID.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The following fields are required:

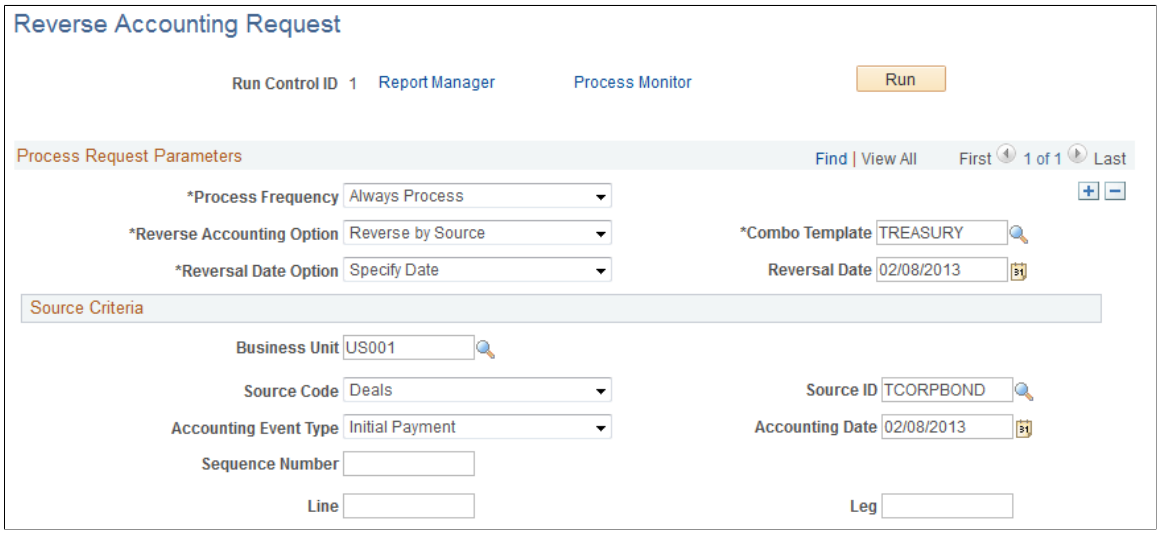
Field or Control	*Description*
Bank SetID	Enter the bank SetID.
Bank Code	Enter the bank code.
Bank Account	Enter the bank account.
Settle By	Select from these values: • *Financial Gateway* • *Pay Cycle*
Payment ID	Enter the ID for the payment to be reversed.

Source Criteria

This section appears when you select *Reverse by Source* in the **Reverse Accounting Options** field.

Accounting entries created for a source for a specific accounting date can be reversed.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Reverse Accounting Request page to reverse by source values. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Business Unit, **Source Code**, and **Source ID** are required fields for all sources.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Business Unit	Enter a business unit.
Source Code	Select from the values that appear in the following table.

Source Code Values	*Criteria Used Identify Accounting Entries*
Bank Transfers *EFT Requests* *Hedges* *Interest*	**Source ID** **Accounting Event Type** **Accounting Date**
Deal Fees *EFT Fees* *Facility Fees* *Investment Pools* *LC Fees*	**Source ID** **Accounting Event Type** **Accounting Date** **Sequence Number**
Deals	**Source ID** **Accounting Event Type** **Accounting Date** **Sequence Number** **Line** **Leg**

Field or Control	*Description*
Source ID	Enter the source ID.
Accounting Event Type	Select an accounting event type from the list. The values available in the Accounting Event Type list depend on the Source Code selected.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Accounting Date	Enter the accounting date.
Sequence Number	Enter a sequence number. The **Sequence Number** value is for multiple like events on the same date (that is, same Business Unit, Source Code, Source ID, Accounting Event Type, and Accounting Date). For example, two Deal Interim Principal Payments or two Deal Fees.
Line	Enter a deal line to be reversed, if desired.
Leg	Enter a deal leg, if desired.

Reviewing Accounting Information

You can inquire on various aspects of your accounting activity. This section lists common elements used in this section and lists the pages used to review accounting information.

Pages Used to Review Accounting Information

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Accounting Events Page	TRA_EVENT_CAL	View accounting events generated from deals, facility fees, and bank transfers. See the Accounting Events Page for more information.
BSP Accounting Events Page	TRA_EVENT_CAL_2	View accounting events generated from bank statement processing. See the "BSP Accounting Events Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing) for more information.
Accounting Summary Page	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	View line by line accounting entries. You can retrieve information according to ad hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting. See the Accounting Summary Page for more information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Treasury Journal Drill Page	TR_DRILL_PNL	View accounting entries and associated General Ledger journal data. A link to the General Ledger Journal page enables you to view the journal in greater detail.

Common Elements Used in Accounting Information

Field or Control	*Description*
Event ID	Displays the source identifier mapped by the originating source transaction.
Status	Select *Accruing, Deactiva'd* (deactivated), *Error, In Process, Not Proc* (not processed), or *Processed.*
Template	Displays the associated accounting template. For events that have not been processed yet, or are only partially accrued, you can modify the template. However, for BSP and Fee accounting events, if VAT is associated with the source transaction, you cannot change the template. You must adjust VAT charges at the source transaction level—this ensures that the VAT accounting is kept in synchronicity in the system.
	Click to access a specific Accounting Template page.

Treasury Journal Drill Page

Use the TR Journal Drill page (TR_DRILL_PNL) to view accounting entries and associated General Ledger journal data.

A link to the General Ledger Journal page enables you to view the journal in greater detail.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **Journal Drill**

This page displays the international bank account number (IBAN) in addition to the local, domestic bank account number when the country has been set up to display the IBAN on the "IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

See also "Securing ChartFields for PeopleSoft Treasury" (Application Fundamentals) for more information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure

This topic provides an overview of the Fiscal Period Summary page, lists prerequisites, and discusses how to maintain fiscal period closure functionality.

Page Used to Maintain Fiscal Period Closure

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Fiscal Period Summary Page	TR_FISCPRD_CLS	Close or "lock down" the accounting for a specified fiscal period, in preparation for end-of-period financial report generation and analysis. This prevents other users from rerunning Treasury Management accounting processes for the closed fiscal period. You can also reset a fiscal period that has been closed in error.

Understanding the Fiscal Period Summary Page

The Fiscal Period Summary page enables you (or those users with end-of-period accounting responsibilities) to manage your fiscal period close process and the integrity of closed fiscal periods. When you close a fiscal period, system processes prevent users from running Treasury Management accounting processes for that period. This helps ensure accurate end-of-period reporting and analytical results, because any additional accounting for the period is transferred to and handled by the next accounting cycle. This type of fiscal period close is considered a *soft-close* of your accounting ledger, because the closure occurs only in the Treasury Management product, not the General Ledger product.

If another user (such as an accounting clerk) attempts to run accounting on entries of the closed fiscal period, the system will not run the accounting request. Functionality on the Automated Accounting and the Process Scheduler pages prevents the process request from occurring.

When you close or reset an entry or entries in a series of entries, the system enforces closing or resetting the entries in a certain logical order. This is to maintain the integrity of your Treasury Management accounting entries. You can also reset (open) any fiscal period that may have been closed in error. The system tracks and displays your most recent action for each fiscal period row on the Audit Detail page, providing an activity log.

In addition, individual business units can maintain their own Treasury Management close cycle calendars, independent of the close cycle performed for the general ledger. This means that one of your Treasury business units can close using a weekly calendar, while another Treasury business unit can close using a monthly calendar.

Prerequisites

Before configuring the Fiscal Period Accounting Summary page:

- Confirm that only those users who need access to this page have access permission, as defined in the permission lists associated with their user profile.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Verify that the Treasury business units that you will use in this page are defined with a calendar ID on the Treasury Options page (BUS_UNIT_OPT_TR).

See also the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Security Administration*.

Related Links

"Defining Business Calendars" (Application Fundamentals)
Defining Treasury Business Unit Options

Fiscal Period Summary Page

Use the Fiscal Period Summary page (TR_FISCPRD_CLS) to close or lock down the accounting for a specified fiscal period, in preparation for end-of-period financial-report generation and analysis.

This prevents other users from rerunning Treasury Management accounting processes for the closed fiscal period. You can also reset a fiscal period that has been closed in error.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **Fiscal Period Summary**

When you add rows to existing fiscal period information, the system automatically populates the **Fiscal Year** and **Period** fields with the next chronological period.

Note: Rows must be closed in ascending entry order, from first entered row to last entered row. For example, if you want to close Fiscal Year 2002, Period 2, you must first close Fiscal Year 2002, Period 1. Conversely, rows must be reset in descending entry order. In the previous example, you need to reset (or open) Fiscal Year 2002, Period 2, before you can reset Fiscal Year 2002, Period 1.

To close a fiscal period:

1. Enter the business unit and a **calendar ID.** Click **Add.**
2. Select a fiscal year.
3. Select an accounting period.
4. If you want to close this fiscal period, select the **Close Acctg** (close accounting) check box.

To reset a closed fiscal period:

1. Click **Reset.** The system enables the**Fiscal Year** and **Period** fields, and automatically deselects the **Close Acctg** (close accounting) check box.
2. In **Reset Reason,** overwrite any existing text with the reason for the fiscal period reset.

The Audit Detail page lists audit information for each row.

Field or Control	*Description*
Create Dttm (creation date and time)	Indicates the entry creation date and time.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Last Dttm (last changed by date and time)	Indicates the most recent edit date and time of the entry.
Reset Dttm (reset date and time)	Indicates the most recent reset date and time of the entry.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 14

Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management

Understanding VAT Processing in Treasury Management

The VAT functionality in Treasury Management enables you to automatically process VAT accounting entries for VAT applicable transactions. Your use of VAT in Treasury Management deals in large part with setting defaults and applying these at the business unit, bank, bank branch, and accounting template levels. The objective is to calculate and create a variety of VAT accounting entries to record not only the tax, but also simultaneously record the recoverable, nonrecoverable, and rebate portions of the VAT at the accounting line level.

For PeopleSoft applications, primarily all of the VAT calculation values are derived from the VAT global defaulting architecture. The VAT defaulting architecture uses VAT Drivers, which are certain information elements on a VAT transaction that determine or "drive" the VAT processing for that transaction. (See the section Treasury Management VAT Drivers Table in this topic for a list of Treasury specific VAT drivers.) To establish a VAT defaulting hierarchy, you must first define the overall VAT environment for your system, and then define Treasury Management VAT driver defaults on the global setup pages. For Treasury Management VAT processing, these global setup pages are accessed from the Bank Information, Bank Branch Information, Accounting Templates, and Treasury Options pages.

Treasury Management transaction sources affected by VAT are fees and interest sources. You generate or enter these transactions on the External Transactions - Treasury VAT Processing page or the Enter Fees (Fee Generator) page. When force reconciling transactions in the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions (Bank Statement Processing) page, VAT transactions are created, where applicable, as the balancing external transaction is created (likewise, in the Bank Statement Accounting process, VAT transactions are created for any applicable external transaction created).

Though VAT is applicable to both goods and services, Treasury Management records VAT only on service transactions. As such, the **Physical Nature** field shown on certain pages always displays the value *Services*.

Once the setup, transactional, and accounting information is in the system, you can also run inquiries and reports on your VAT information.

As shown in the illustration, the four Treasury Management setup pages derive VAT calculation values from the primary default architecture. These VAT values are then used by the system when calculating VAT for Treasury Management accounting entries.

Important! Refer to the following documentation before establishing the primary VAT defaulting hierarchy for your system and setting up VAT for calculating Treasury Management transactions.

See "Understanding VAT" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports).

Here's how to work with VAT in Treasury Management, from start to finish:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. Define all VAT setup information, both on general system and Treasury Management specific pages.
2. Create VAT entries on either the External Transactions or Fee Generator pages (or automatically through the Automatic Reconciliation Exception page or the Bank Statement Accounting process).
3. Process VAT accounting through the Automated Accounting page.
4. View VAT information on VAT Accounting Summary or VAT Inquiry pages.
5. Process VAT transactions through the system using the VAT Transaction Loader page.
6. Create VAT reports.

Prerequisites for VAT Processing in Treasury Management

You need to establish VAT processing options in both your PeopleSoft system and in General Ledger.

Related Links

"Understanding General Ledger VAT Setup and Processing" (PeopleSoft General Ledger)

Setting Up VAT for Treasury Management

Pages Used to Set Up VAT for Treasury Management

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Treasury - VAT Options Page	TRV_BU_UNIT_OPT_TR	Define specific VAT processing options for a Treasury business unit. The **Treasury VAT Options** link is enabled only if the General Ledger business unit representing the Treasury business unit is linked to a VAT Entity.
VAT Defaults Setup Page (for Treasury business units)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Specify default VAT options for a Treasury business unit. The **VAT Defaults** link on the Treasury Options page is enabled only if the General Ledger business unit representing the Treasury business unit is linked to a VAT entity. See the Treasury Options Page.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
VAT Defaults Setup Page (for banks)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Specify VAT default options at the bank level. See "Defining Bank Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing) and the "Bank Information Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
Bank Branch Information Page	BANK_BRNCHPNL	Set up the bank branch and define VAT registration options. See "Defining Bank Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing) and the "Bank Branch Information Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
VAT Defaults Setup Page (for bank branches)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Specify default VAT information for a bank branch. See "Defining Bank Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing) and the "Bank Branch Information Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
Accounting Templates Page	TRA_TMPL_DETL	Define general accounting template and template line information, including VAT template line information. See Establishing Accounting Templates and Accounting Templates Page.
VAT Defaults Setup Page (for accounting templates)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Define VAT default processing options for a Treasury Management accounting template. The Treasury VAT Defaults link is enabled only for BSP and Fee source type accounting templates. See Establishing Accounting Templates and Accounting Templates Page.

Understanding Setting Up VAT for Treasury Management

Although the **Treasury VAT Options** and **VAT Defaults** links display on the Treasury VAT setup pages (the VAT Defaults link on the Bank Information, Bank Branch Information, and Accounting Template pages; both links on the Treasury Options page), you can access the Treasury VAT Options and VAT Defaults pages only when the selected business unit is VAT-enabled.

Use Treasury VAT setup pages to:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. Define Treasury business unit VAT processing defaults.
2. Define bank VAT processing defaults.
3. Define bank branch VAT processing defaults.
4. Define Treasury accounting template VAT processing defaults.

Prerequisites

Before specifying Treasury Management VAT options for a treasury management business unit, you must enable VAT for that business unit. A treasury management business unit is VAT-enabled after you link the general ledger business unit representing the treasury business unit to a VAT Entity.

Related Links

"Understanding General Ledger VAT Setup and Processing" (PeopleSoft General Ledger)
"Understanding VAT" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports)

Treasury - VAT Options Page

Use the Treasury - VAT Options page (TRV_BU_UNIT_OPT_TR) to define specific VAT processing options for a Treasury business unit.

Navigation:

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain > **Business Unit Related** > **Treasury** > **Treasury Options**

Click **Treasury VAT Options** on the Treasury Options page.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury - VAT Options page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
VAT Edit Msgs (VAT edit messages)	VAT edit messages are used to indicate if VAT tolerance messages are errors, warnings, or not displayed. This is a business unit-only default and applies directly to a transaction. • *Error Message:* A message displays, and you must correct the tolerance error to proceed with a transaction. • *Warning:* A message displays indicating a transaction exceeds tolerance settings. • *None:* No message displays.
Prorate Non-Recoverable VAT	Select this check box to record non-recoverable VAT amounts to an expense account.
Allocate Non-Recoverable VAT	Select this check box to allocate non-recoverable VAT using ChartField Inheritance logic.

Note: You can select either to allocate or prorate nonrecoverable VAT transactions, but you cannot select both check boxes.

Editing VAT External Transaction Details

This topic discusses how to edit VAT external transaction details.

Pages Used to Edit VAT External Transaction Details

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
External Transactions Page	BNK_RCN_TRAN_UPDT	Enter external transaction information and VAT information. See also "Reconciling Externally Generated Transactions" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing) and the "External Transactions Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
Treasury VAT Processing Page	TRV_VAT_TRAN_SEC	Specify VAT transaction details for an external transaction.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding Editing VAT on Treasury External Transactions

Using the External Transactions page, you can add VAT-applicable external transactions, and specify VAT options for those transactions on the Treasury VAT Processing page. To access this page, you must complete the following fields on the External Transactions page:

- Bank ID
- Account # (account number)
- Transaction amount
- Transaction code
- Transaction date
- Transaction reference ID
- Accounting template ID

See "External Transactions Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

When you click the VAT link, the system verifies that the business unit is VAT enabled, the Tran Code (transaction code) is *Fee,* and a VAT applicable accounting template is selected. (The system determines the default business unit and bank branch information for VAT by the specified bank account number, and uses this information to populate the Business Unit field on the External Transactions page.) The Treasury VAT Processing page displays only if these conditions are met.

Effects of Changing VAT Defaults

The Treasury VAT Processing page displays VAT Defaults in descending order of impact. When you change multiple VAT defaults and click the **Adjust Affected VAT Defaults** button, specific fields will or will not be adjusted. You should work top-down, clicking **Adjust Affected VAT Defaults** at the appropriate time(s) to avoid adjustments to VAT Defaults that you overrode but not did not memorize.

For example, if you override **Supplier Registration Country** and click **Adjust Affected VAT Defaults,** the system adjusts all VAT Defaults except **Supplier Registration Country** and **Supplier Registration ID.** Then you override **Place of Supply Driver** and click **Adjust Affected VAT Defaults** again. The system adjusts all VAT Defaults except **Service Type, Place of Supply Driver, Supplier Registration Country,** and **Supplier Registration ID.**

Treasury VAT Processing Page

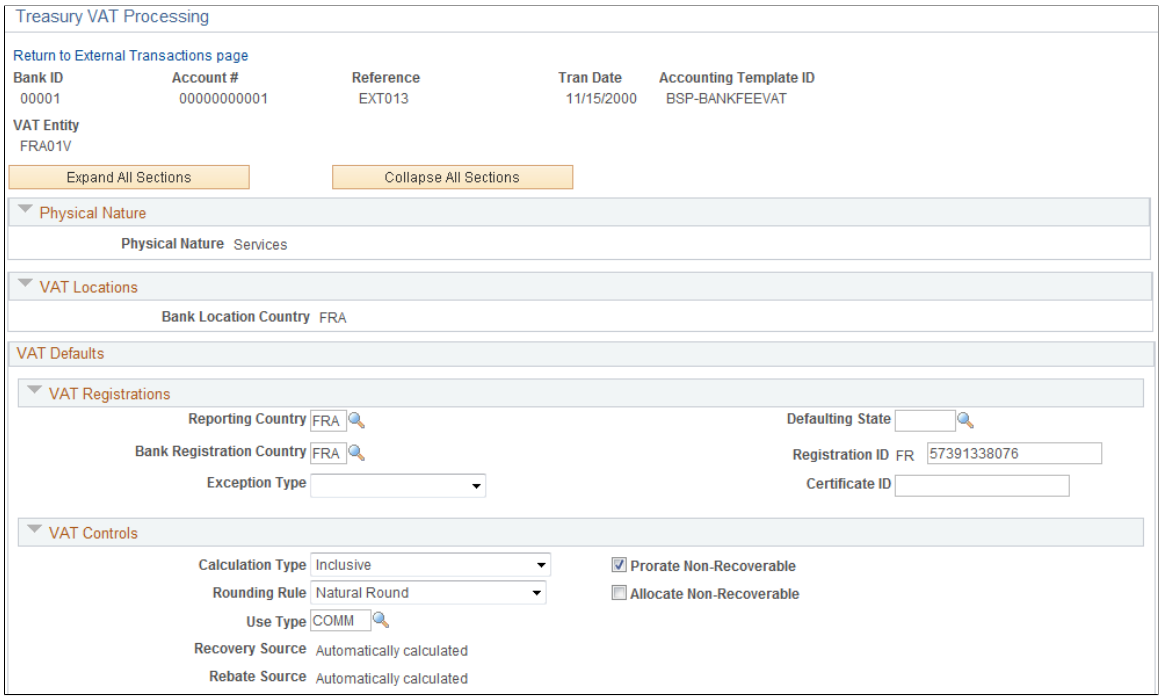
Use the Treasury VAT Processing page (TRV_VAT_TRAN_SEC) to specify VAT transaction details for an external transaction.

Navigation:

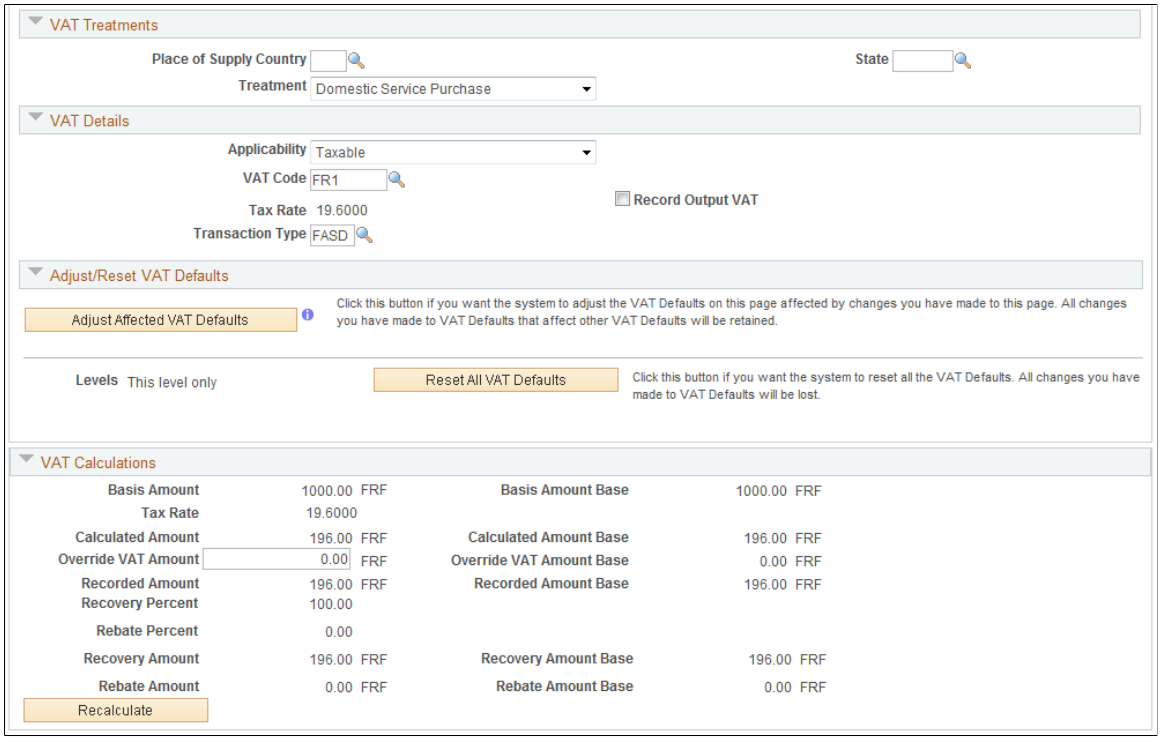
Click the **VAT** link on the Transactions Detail tab of the External Transactions page.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury VAT Processing page (1 of 2). You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury VAT Processing page (2 of 2). You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Note: You can edit fields on this page only if the accounting entry has not been reconciled.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
IBAN	Displays the international bank account number (IBAN) in addition to the local, domestic bank account number when the country has been set up to display the IBAN on the "IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Expanding and Collapsing Sections

To manage your VAT data more efficiently, you can expand and collapse sections on this VAT page.

Field or Control	*Description*
Expand All Sections	Click the expand button to scroll to and access every section on the page. You can also expand one or more sections by clicking the arrow next to the section's name.
Collapse All Sections	Click to collapse all sections displaying only the header information. If you expand one or more sections, you can click the arrow next to the section's name to collapse the section.

Drivers

Field or Control	*Description*
Physical Nature	Displays *Services,* as all Treasury VAT processing is only performed on services.
Bank Location Country	Displays the country in which the bank is located. The default value is the country that you specified for the bank branch location. This is analogous to the Ship From country.

Registrations

Field or Control	*Description*
Reporting Country	Displays the VAT registration country of the beneficiary *(buyer)* of the service. The VAT defaulting routine retrieves the country value from the VAT entity, as either the service country, the business unit location country, or the country set as the home country.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Defaulting State	Specify a state within the **Reporting Country.** If the Reporting Country tracks VAT by state, then VAT default values may be defined at the state level.
Bank Registration Country	Displays the VAT registration country of the provider *(seller)* of the service—the registration country of the bank branch. The default value comes from the bank branch.
Bank Registration ID	Displays both the country code and VAT registration number. The two-character country code for the VAT registration country is display only. In addition to the three-character code (for example, Bank's Country) this two-character code is often required as part of the actual registration ID. The system derives the default VAT registration ID number from the applicable bank branch. You can override this number. However, PeopleCode validation routines ensure the number is valid according to country-specific checksum algorithms.
Exception Type	Select from the following: • *Exonerated:* Select if the VAT entity is permanently excused from paying VAT. • *None:* • *Suspended:* Select if the VAT entity is temporarily excused from paying VAT.
Certificate ID	Enter the VAT certificate ID number issued by certain governments to show proof of an exception.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

VAT Controls

Field or Control	*Description*
Calculation Type	Indicates whether the amount that you enter on a transaction is *Inclusive* (default value) of the VAT or *Exclusive.* If *Exclusive* is selected, the system calculates the VAT charge and adds it to the transaction amount. However, if the calculation type is *Exclusive,* and if you change the VAT amount on the detail transaction, the system changes the transaction amount according to the calculation type. The system retrieves the field value using the VAT default hierarchy, but you can override it.
Rounding Rule	Specify the rule you want to use: • *Nat Rnd* (natural rounding): Amounts are rounded normally (up or down) to the precision specified for the currency code. For example, for a currency defined with two decimal places, 157.4659 would round up to 157.47, but 157.4649 would round down to 157.46. • *Up*: Rounds up and limits the rounding precision to one additional decimal place. For example, for a currency defined with two decimal places, 157.4610 would round up to 157.47, but 157.4609 rounds to 157.46. • *Down*: Rounds down. The VAT rounding rule you specify affects the currency numbers stored in the database as well as how currency numbers print on the reports. The VAT rounding rule affects only VAT amounts.
Allocate Non-Recoverable VAT	If selected, indicates that the system allocates nonrecoverable VAT using ChartField Inheritance logic.
Prorate Non-Recoverable VAT	If selected, indicates that the system records nonrecoverable VAT to an expense account.
Use Type	Defaults from the VAT defaulting hierarchy. You can override the values in this field. The field is mandatory when **Applicability** is set to *Taxable.*

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Recovery Source	Options specified on the VAT Default Setup page at the business unit level determine if you can edit this field. • If the displayed value is *Automatic,* this VAT percentage is automatically calculated by the system. You can not override this value. • If *Manual,* you can edit the **Recovery Percent** field in the **Calculations** group box.
Rebate Source	Options specified on the VAT Default Setup page at the business unit level determine if you can edit this field. • If the displayed value is *Automatic,* this VAT percentage is automatically calculated by the system. You can not override this value. • If *Manual,* you can edit the **Rebate Percent** field in the **Calculations** group box.

See Treasury - VAT Options Page.

VAT Treatments

Field or Control	*Description*
Place of Supply Country	Displays the country that is the supplier of record for the service.
State	Select a state within the defined **Place of Supply Country.** If the Place of Supply Country tracks VAT by state, then VAT default values may be defined at the state level.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Treatment	VAT treatment determines which default values should be applied, and also controls, to some extent, the availability of some VAT-related fields. See "VAT Defaults" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports). Select from the following: • *Domestic Service Purchase* • *EU Service Purchase* • *Outside Scope* • *Self-Assess Service Import*

VAT Details

Field or Control	*Description*
Applicability	Displays a default value derived from the accounting template. You can override the values in this field. See "Taxable Status and VAT Rates" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports). • *Exempt* • *Exonerated* • *N/A* • *Outside* • *Suspend* • *Taxable* • *VAT Only*
VAT Code	Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy depending on the defined **Treatment** and/or defined **Applicability.** You can override the values in this field. When you click the **Recalculate** button, the system uses the VAT defaulting hierarchy to update fields in the **Calculations** group box.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Record Output	The default comes from the accounting template. You can edit this field. Select this option to record and report one or more types of output VAT (Output, Output Intermediate, Output for Purchases) on transactions containing this VAT driver value.
Transaction Type	Displays the assigned VAT transaction type. VAT transaction types classify and categorize transactions at a more detailed level for both VAT reporting and accounting.

See "VAT Reporting and Accounting" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports).

See "Reviewing VAT Field Descriptions by VAT Driver" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports).

See "Defining VAT Transaction Types" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports).

Adjust or Reset VAT Defaults

Adjusting or resetting VAT defaults will only affect the fields within this VAT Defaults group box:

- **Adjust Affected VAT Defaults**

  If you changed any fields on this page, these changes may impact VAT defaults on this page. For accuracy and consistency, click this button if you want the system to adjust the VAT defaults that are affected by your changes. All changes you have made to VAT Defaults on this page that affect other VAT Defaults on this page will be retained.

  Click the **i** (information) button to list the fields that will be adjusted.

  Note: PeopleSoft recommends that you always click the **Adjust Affected VAT Defaults** button after changing any defaults on the VAT page.

- **Levels**

  The levels affected when you click the **Reset All VAT Defaults** button may be different depending the application you are working with and the type of VAT page you are working on.

  Select the level:

  - *All lower levels*

    Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults at lower levels for this page.

    Note: Reset completely redetermines the VAT defaults. This does not necessarily mean they will be reset to their original values. For example, the user may not have changed any VAT default values, but if a VAT driver field was changed, pressing Reset will redetermine all defaults based on the new driver value.

  - *This and all lower levels*

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults on this VAT page and at any lower levels of this page.

- *This level only*

  Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults on this VAT page.

- **Reset All VAT Defaults**

  Click this button if you want the system to reset the VAT defaults based the **Levels** value you selected. Any changes you have previously made to VAT defaults will be lost.

VAT Calculations

Except for **Entered Amount,** all fields in this section are display only and the **Recalculate** function populates them.

Field or Control	*Description*
Basis Amount	Displays the VAT basis amount in transaction currency.
Basis Amount Base	Displays the VAT basis amount in the base currency.
Tax Rate	Displays the VAT tax rate.
Calculated Amount	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the transaction currency.
Calculated Amount Base	Displays the calculated VAT amount in base currency. The system uses the transaction currency for the entered VAT amount, based on the exchange rate that is applicable to the transaction.
Override VAT Amount	Enter the override amount to recalculate the VAT amount. This amount displays in the transaction currency.
Override VAT Amount	Displays the recalculated override VAT amount in the base currency.
Recorded Amount	Displays the transaction currency amount stored in the system VAT tables.
Recorded Amount Base	Displays the base currency amount stored in the system VAT tables.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Recovery Percent	Displays a system-calculated value, based on the selected **Use Type.**
Rebate Percent	Displays a system-calculated value, based on the selected **VAT Use Type.**
Recovery Amount	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the transaction currency.
Recovery Amount Base	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the base currency
Rebate Amount	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the transaction currency.
Rebate Amount Base	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the base currency.

See "VAT Recoverability" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports).

Creating VAT Transactions for Fees

Pages Used to Create VAT Transactions for Fees

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Fee Codes Page	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set up fee codes. See Setting Up Fee Structures and the Fee Codes Page.
Enter Fees Page	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Create fees for deal, facility, EFT, and letter of credit sources. See Creating Fee Entries and the Enter Fees Page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Treasury VAT Processing Page	TRV_VAT_FEE_SEC	Specify VAT transaction details for a fee. This page displays only when the specified fee code is VAT applicable. This page is the same as the Treasury VAT Processing page for external transactions. See Creating Fee Entries and the Enter Fees Page.

Understanding Creating VAT Transactions for Fees

The Enter Fees page generates various types of fees, as opposed to the External Transactions page, which only generates bank statement fees. To generate VAT, you first define VAT options for specific fee codes. When you create fee entries with the VAT-enabled fee codes, the system automatically generates VAT accounting and displays it on the fee entry's Treasury VAT Processing page.

To create VAT transactions for fees:

1. Define VAT-applicable fee codes.
2. Enter fees.
3. View VAT options for a fee entry.

Creating VAT Transactions Using Automatic Reconciliation

This topic discusses creating VAT using PeopleSoft Automatic Reconciliation.

Page Used to Create VAT Using Automatic Reconciliation

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions Page	BNK_RCN_VUE_UNR	Force an automatic reconciliation to process VAT-applicable transactions. See Forcing the Reconciliation of VAT-Applicable Transactions and the "Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Understanding Creating VAT Transactions Using Automatic Reconciliation

The system creates VAT automatically when you force reconcile a fee or interest through reconciliation, if the accounting template has a VAT applicable line. The force reconciliation function inserts

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

transactions into the Bank Reconciliation Transaction table (BNK_RCN_TRAN) and the VAT record (TRV_VAT_TRAN). It also generates a Treasury accounting event. For VAT fees to be reconciled on the bank side and system side, you must select a statement activity type for the bank statement processing template.

Note: For VAT applicable fees to display on the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions page, you must first process the transactions using the Automatic Reconciliation Manager page.

Related Links

"Automatic Reconciliation Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Forcing the Reconciliation of VAT-Applicable Transactions

Use the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions page (BNK_RCN_VUE_UNR) to force an automatic reconciliation to process VAT-applicable transactions.

Navigation:

Banking > **Analyze Exceptions** > **Auto Reconciliation Exceptions**

Note: For VAT applicable fees to be created and reconciled on the Automatic Reconciliation Exception page, the VAT **Treatment** must be *Inclusive.* Reconciliation does not occur if the system algorithm determines the VAT **Treatment** is *Exclusive.* To reconcile these types of fees, you must enter them on the External Transactions page, and then use the Semi Manual Reconciliation page to complete the reconciliation.

Related Links

"Understanding Reconciliation Exceptions" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Managing VAT Accounting

Pages Used to Manage VAT Accounting

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Automated Accounting Page	TRA_ACCTG_REQ	Run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for Journal Generator process (FSPGJGEN). See Processing VAT with Automated Accounting and the Automated Accounting Page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Accounting Summary Page	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	View line by line accounting events. You can retrieve information according to ad-hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting. See the Accounting Summary Page for more information.
Accounting Entries Page	TRA_ACCTG_LINE_1	Review and possibly adjust automated accounting entries, or create manual accounting entries online. See Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries and the Accounting Entries Page.
Treasury VAT Information Page	TRV_ACCTG_LINE_VAT	Use the Treasury VAT Information page to view VAT information for a specific accounting line.

Understanding Managing VAT Accounting

The only VAT accounting activity you need to perform is setting the VAT option on the accounting template. To enable automated VAT processing, VAT attributes and VAT amounts are recorded on a shadow table (VAT Transaction Record table, TRV_VAT_TRAN) associated with the VAT accounting lines. This process works in the background. Once you process VAT transactions through Automated Accounting process (TR_ACCTG), the system automatically generates the necessary accounting entries and VAT accounting lines based on data in the VAT Transaction Record.

To manage VAT accounting:

1. Process VAT entries with Automated Accounting.
2. Review VAT accounting entries.
3. Review Treasury VAT information.

Processing VAT with Automated Accounting

Use the Automated Accounting page (TRA_ACCTG_REQ) to run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for Journal Generator process (FSPGJGEN).

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **Automated Accounting**

To process VAT:

1. Specify the **Business Unit** and **Template.**
2. Enter a **Fiscal Year** and **Period,** or specify an **Acctg Events End Date** (accounting events end date).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. Select the **Bank Stmt/Trans** (bank statement/transaction), **Facility Fees, Deal Fees, L/C** (letter of credit), or **EFT Fees** check boxes.

Related Links

"Automatic Reconciliation Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries

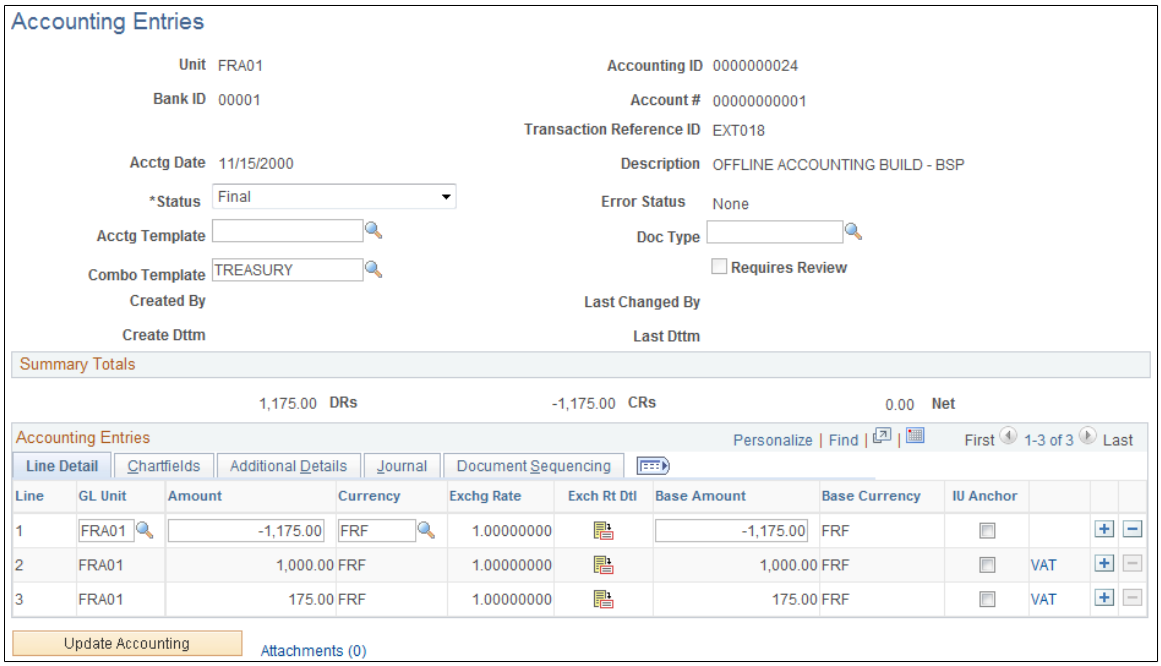
Use the Accounting Entries page (TRA_ACCTG_LINE_1) to review and possibly adjust automated accounting entries, or create manual accounting entries online.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **Treasury Accounting** > **Accounting Entries**

Click **VAT** on the Accounting Entries tab.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Line Detail tab - Treasury Accounting Entries page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



When the Automated Accounting process is complete, you can review the created accounting entries and VAT transactions. The **VAT** link displays on the Accounting Entries page when the accounting line has VAT information.

Field or Control	*Description*
Line	As the example above shows, the Automated Accounting process created three accounting entries. Line *3* is the VAT amount. Click a **Line** link to access the Accounting Entries page and review the VAT transaction detail.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note: The number of VAT accounting lines created varies, depending on the accounting scenario.

Note: The number and types of accounting entries depends on the VAT Treatment and whether or not any of the VAT is recoverable or subject to rebate.

The system obtains the ChartFields used to create each accounting entry from the VAT accounting template (which is defined by VAT Code, VAT Transaction Type, and optionally the General Ledger business unit). Additionally, for nonrecoverable VAT, the ChartFields used are also dependent upon whether or not the nonrecoverable amount is being prorated or allocated to the associated expense account. If the nonrecoverable amount is not prorated or allocated to the associated expense account, the system obtains the non-account ChartFields from the VAT accounting template.

In situations when the VAT accounting entries have two different business units—one for the Transaction General Ledger business unit **(Unit** field in the Accounting Entries page header), and one for the Distribution General Ledger business unit (**GL Unit** field in Accounting Entries - Line Detail tab), you can direct the system to inherit either business unit. You specify this option during implementation on the VAT Business Unit Option page (VAT_BU_OPT). During the Automated Accounting process, if the system registers two different business units in use, it refers to the options specified on this page. The system then enters the correct inherited business unit into the GL Unit field of each entered distribution line of the system generated VAT accounting entries.

Note: Accounting entries that the Automated Accounting process creates and distributes to General Ledger are display only and you *cannot* adjust them on this page. You must adjust VAT accounting through the General Ledger journal.

Related Links

Automated Accounting Page

"Understanding General Ledger Journal Entries" (PeopleSoft General Ledger)

"Understanding VAT" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports)

Treasury VAT Information Page

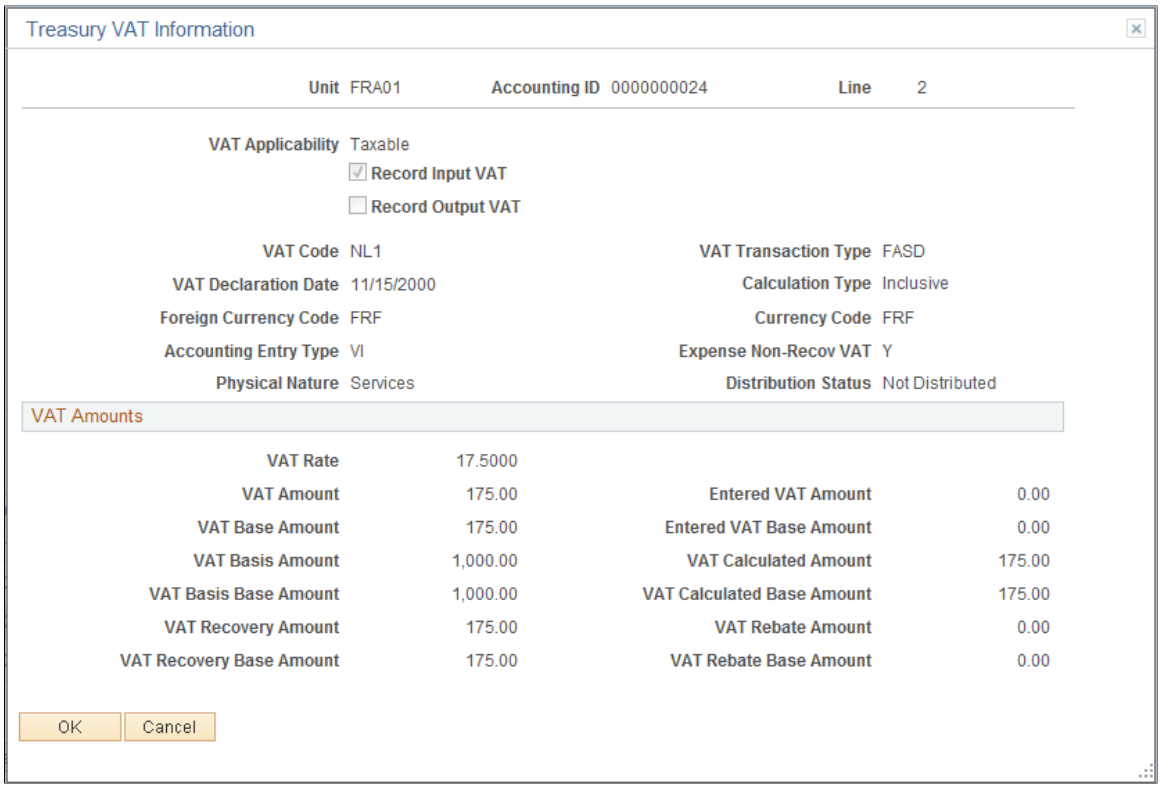
Use the Treasury VAT Information page (TRV_ACCTG_LINE_VAT) to use the Treasury VAT Information page to view VAT information for a specific accounting line.

Navigation:

Click **VAT** on the Accounting Entries − Accounting Entries tab.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury VAT Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Note: Treasury Management VAT functionality is currently limited to VAT on bank fees and other fees, recording only input VAT or the combination of input and output VAT. As such, it is unlikely that you will be using either the *VO* or *VONT* types for your VAT transactions.

Field or Control	***Description***
VAT Applicability	Displays the default value derived from the accounting template.
Record Input VAT	This field is based on the defined VAT treatment. This check box is selected by default.
Record Output VAT	This check box is selected by default if the defined VAT treatment is *EU Services Purchases* or *Self-Assessed Services Imports*.
VAT Code	Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy—this is also dependent on the VAT **Treatment** and/or VAT **Applicability.**
VAT Transaction Type	Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy—this is also dependent on the VAT **Treatment** and/or VAT **Applicability.**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
VAT Calculation Type	Displays *Inclusive* or *Exclusive.*
VAT Declaration Date	Displays the default value derived from the transaction date.
Accounting Entry Type	Displays the VAT accounting entry type. VAT distribution account types define the different types of VAT accounting entries that may be required. Treasury Management only uses the following VAT distribution account types: • *VI:* VAT Input • *VIR:* VAT Input Recoverable • *VIN:* VAT Input Non-Recoverable • *VIB:* VAT Input Rebate • *VINT:* VAT Input Non-Taxable • *VOP:* VAT Output on Purchase • *VO:* VAT Output • *VONT:* VAT Output Non-Taxable.
Expense Non-Recov VAT (expense nonrecoverable VAT)	Displays one of the following values: • *Y* (yes): Indicates the system expenses nonrecoverable VAT to the expense account. • *N* (no): Indicates the system separates nonrecoverable VAT.
Distribution Status	Indicates if the transaction has been loaded to the VAT Transaction Loader. Displays one of the following values: • *DISTRIBUTED:* Indicates the transaction has been loaded. • *IGNORE:* Indicates the system is not to load the transaction. • *NOT DISTRIBUTED:* Indicates the transaction is eligible to be loaded, but has not yet been loaded. • *UNDEFINED:* Indicates the transaction requires additional processing before the system transfers it to the loader.
VAT Rate	Displays the VAT percentage that is applied to the transaction.
VAT Amount	Displays the VAT amount in the transaction currency.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
VAT Base Amount	Displays the VAT amount in the base currency.
VAT Basis Amount	Displays the VAT basis amount in transaction currency.
VAT Basis Base Amount	Displays the VAT basis amount in the base currency.
VAT Recovery Amount	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the transaction currency.
VAT Recovery Base Amount	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the base currency.
Entered VAT Amount	The default value is zero *(0)*. If either the VAT calculation type is *Inclusive,* or both **Record Input VAT** and **Record Output VAT** check boxes are selected, this field is set to zero and unavailable. You can override this default value by selecting *Exclusive* for the calculation type. This is the actual VAT amount in transaction currency that prints on the external document. If it is not equal to the calculated VAT amount (and not equal to zero), tolerance checking is performed.
Entered VAT Base Amount	Displays the entered VAT amount in base currency. The system uses the transaction currency for the entered VAT amount, based on the exchange rate that is applicable to the transaction.
VAT Calculated Amount	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the transaction currency.
VAT Calculated Base Amount	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the base currency.
VAT Rebate Amount	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the transaction currency.
VAT Rebate Base Amount	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the base currency.

Note: This page is display-only. Once the Automated Accounting process creates the VAT accounting entries and distributes them to General Ledger, you cannot adjust the entries on a Treasury application page. You must use the General Ledger Journal Entry page to adjust VAT accounting entries.

Related Links

Editing VAT External Transaction Details

"Editing Journal Entries" (PeopleSoft General Ledger)

"VAT Environment Setup" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Processing Final Treasury Management VAT Transactions

Once you have run all the individual processes to finalize the transactions, you should:

1. Run the VAT Transaction Loader process (FS_VATUPDFS) to load the VAT information into the VAT Transaction Table.
2. Run the VAT Report Extract process (VAT1001) to extract the data from the VAT Transaction Tables to reporting tables, where the data are available for final reporting to the tax authorities.

Once the VAT Report Extract process is complete, you are ready to create a variety of reports on your VAT information. See the information in the *PeopleSoft FSCM: Global Options and Reports* documentation.

Related Links

"Loading the VAT Transaction Table" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports)
"Generating VAT Reports" (PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 15

Performing In-House Banking Activities

Prerequisites for Performing In-House Banking Activities

Before you can perform in-house banking (IHB) activities, you must first:

- Set up internal banks for each business unit you intend to use to internally exchange funds.
- Define internal account information. On the Internal Account Information page you must:
  - Generate the schedule defined on Internal Account Information page (required to run interest accrual calculation process).
  - Specify both debit and credit rate index information (required to run interest accrual calculation and interest schedule generation processes).
  - Adjust the opening balances for both Service and Owner of an internal account, as needed. (The opening balances default to zero on setup.)
- Check that an accounting template that is setup for internal account interest accruals is installed.

Related Links

"Defining Internal Account Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing)

"Setting Up Bank Statement Processing" (PeopleSoft Financial Gateway)

Managing In-House Banking Activities

This topic discusses how to automatically calculate interest accruals using the IHB Interest Accruals (in-house banking interest accruals) Application Engine process (TR_TRINTACU), view activity on your internal accounts, and generate schedules for interest accrual.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Pages Used to Manage In-House Banking Activities

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Generate Schedules Page	SCHEDULE_CREATE	Create an interest accrual schedule. The frequency of the schedule determines the frequency with which the interest is posted to the internal account balance. See "Defining Internal Account Information" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing) and the "Generate Schedules Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).
Calculate Interest Accruals Page	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Run the IHB Interest Accruals process to calculate the amount of interest.
Internal Account Activity Page	BNK_INT_ACCT_BAL	View data that are related to activity on your internal accounts.

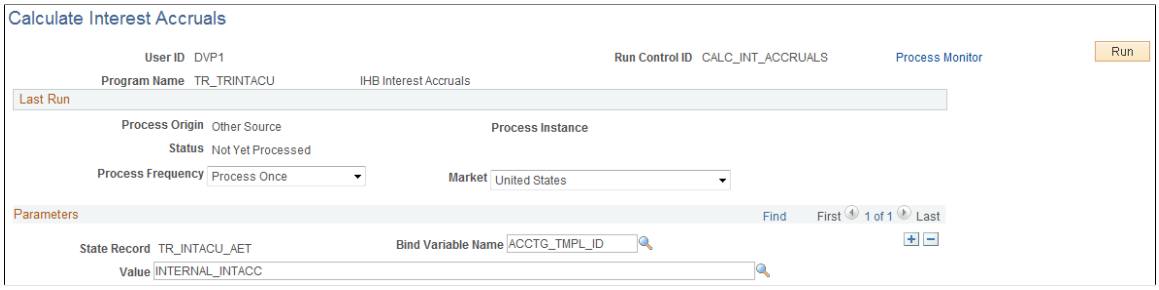
Calculate Interest Accruals Page

Use the Calculate Interest Accruals page (TR_AE_RUNCNTL) to run the IHB Interest Accruals process to calculate the amount of interest.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **In-House Banking** > **Calculate Interest Accruals**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Calculate Interest Accruals page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Bind Variable Name and **Value/Date**	In the Parameters grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job. • *ACCT_TMPL_ID*: When you use this bind variable name, enter an accounting template in the corresponding **Value** field. PeopleSoft provides *INTERNAL_INTACC* as a default accounting template. • *END_DT*: When you use this bind variable name, enter an end date in the **Date** field. Accounting events and cash flow entries will be created with the specified end date. The system processes and updates records only once for the end date.

Internal Account Activity Page

Use the Internal Account Activity page (BNK_INT_ACCT_BAL) to view data that are related to activity on your internal accounts.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **In-House Banking** > **Review Internal Account Activity**

Generating the In-House Bank Statement Report

This report shows balance, debit, credit, and activity information for a selected bank over a specified date range.

Page Used to Generate the In-House Bank Statement Report

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
In-House Bank Statement Page	RUN_TRC3005	Run a report that lists transaction and interest accrual activity for a specified bank and account during a defined time frame. See also Cash Management Reports: A to Z.

In-House Bank Statement Page

Use the In-House Bank Statement run control page (RUN_TRC3005) to generate a report (TRX3005) that lists transaction and interest accrual activity for a specified bank and account during a defined time frame.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Cash Management > **In-House Banking** > **In-House Bank Statements**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 16

Using the Treasury WorkCenter and Manager Dashboard

Understanding the Treasury WorkCenter and Manager Dashboard

The Treasury WorkCenter is a central navigational component that is designed for the end user. The goal of the WorkCenter is to help an end user become more efficient by accessing frequently used pages and pagelets. For more information about WorkCenters, see "Understanding PeopleSoft Classic WorkCenters and Dashboards" (Application Fundamentals).

Each pagelet contains links—subdivided into functional groupings—that assist users in completing their everyday work. Typically, each link is followed by a number, which indicates how many rows match the filter criteria for the grid. If no data exist for a link, the link is inactive. When a user clicks a pagelet link, a results grid appears with filtered data that pertains specifically to the user. The Treasury WorkCenter is configurable by organization and function to support different requirements.

All WorkCenters are comprised of two parts: the WorkCenter shells, or pages, delivered as system data and the WorkCenter links. When applied to a customer database, the WorkCenter does not come preconfigured with all the delivered MyWork links. It is the responsibility of the system administrator from your organization to design and add the My Work links from the delivered system data to the My Work pagelet so that users can view the links and access specific pages and pivot grids on the Treasury WorkCenter.

PeopleSoft Cash Management delivers the Treasury WorkCenter with a default Assigned User filter value, VP1, for the My Work pagelets, but your business or organization defines the filter values for each user, changing this to the appropriate value. Depending on the WorkCenter configuration in your organization, each user may be set up to change or remove filters as necessary to customize data for their specific tasks.

For information about setting up PeopleTools options for the WorkCenter, see *PeopleTools: Global Technology*.

The Treasury WorkCenter can include these primary tabs and sections:

- Main tab:
    - My Work
    - Links
- Reports/Queries tab
    - Queries

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Reports and Processes

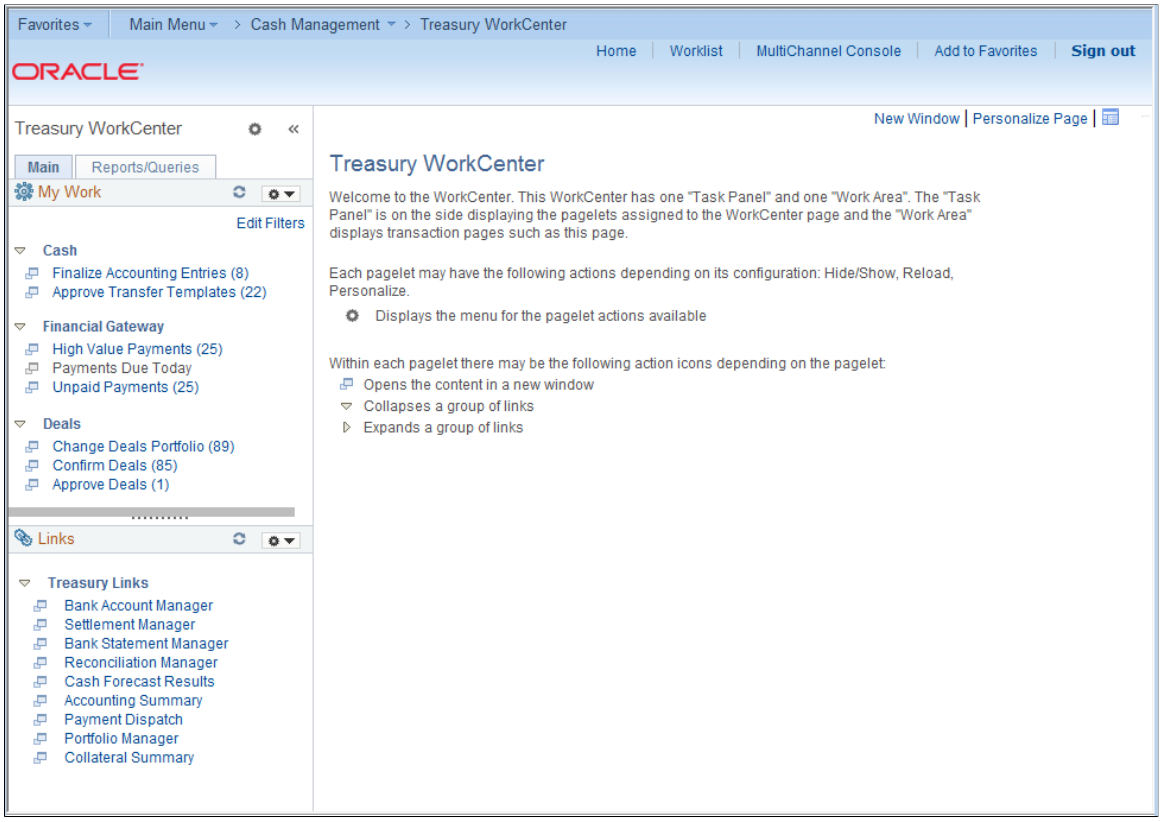
Example: Treasury WorkCenter

Use the Treasury WorkCenter Home page (CM_WORKCENTER) to manage Treasury activities in one location.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury WorkCenter home page.



The WorkCenter navigation is located on the left side of the page and includes two main tabs: Main and Report/Queries. Some WorkCenter pagelets are common to multiple applications, and some pagelets are unique to individual applications.

For more information about the links that appear on the My Work pagelet, see Using the Treasury WorkCenter - My Work.

For more information about the links that appear on the Links pagelet, see Using the Treasury WorkCenter - Links.

For more information about the links that appear on the Queries pagelet, see Using the Treasury WorkCenter - Queries.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

For more information about the links that appear on the Reports/Processes pagelet, see Using the Treasury WorkCenter - Reports and Processes.

Dashboards and Pivot Grids

Setting up PeopleSoft Dashboards is similar to setting up Classic WorkCenters because you use the same pages in Enterprise Components. However, Dashboards can display pivot grids that can also appear on a user's Home page.

Pivots grids are based on PSQueries and can display the results in a grid format, a chart format, or both. You use the Pivot Grid Wizard (**Reporting Tools** >**Pivot Grid** >**Pivot Grid Wizard**) to design how the page will appear to the user.

Pivot Grids can be added as pagelets (on a user's Home page or in a Dashboard), to the Queries tab in a Classic WorkCenter, and more.

For more information about WorkCenters, see the documentation for "Understanding WorkCenters and Dashboards" (Enterprise Components).

For more information about setting up pivot grids, see *PeopleTools: Pivot Grid*

Setting Up the Treasury Manager Dashboard

Manager-facing pagelets are delivered with the Treasury Manager Dashboard and can be accessed if PeopleSoft Financials applications are installed. These banking pagelets are available for your use:

- Bank Contacts
- Reconciliation Aging

You can add these pagelets to the Treasury WorkCenter as links. See "Configuring Pagelets" (Enterprise Components). Or you can add them to your PeopleSoft main home page by clicking the **Personalize Content** link in the upper right corner under the Oracle banner.

For a complete list of the cross-supply chain pagelets that you can add to the Treasury Manager Dashboard, refer to the documentation for the SRM Dashboard and pagelets.

Related Links

"Understanding the SRM Dashboard" (PeopleSoft Source to Settle Common Information)

"Viewing SRM Dashboard Pagelets" (PeopleSoft Source to Settle Common Information)

Setting Pagelet Options in the Treasury WorkCenter

Use the Pagelet Personalization pages to minimize a pagelet or to customize viewing options for links in each pagelet.

For example, you can set any link in a pagelet to appear on your Treasury WorkCenter start page.

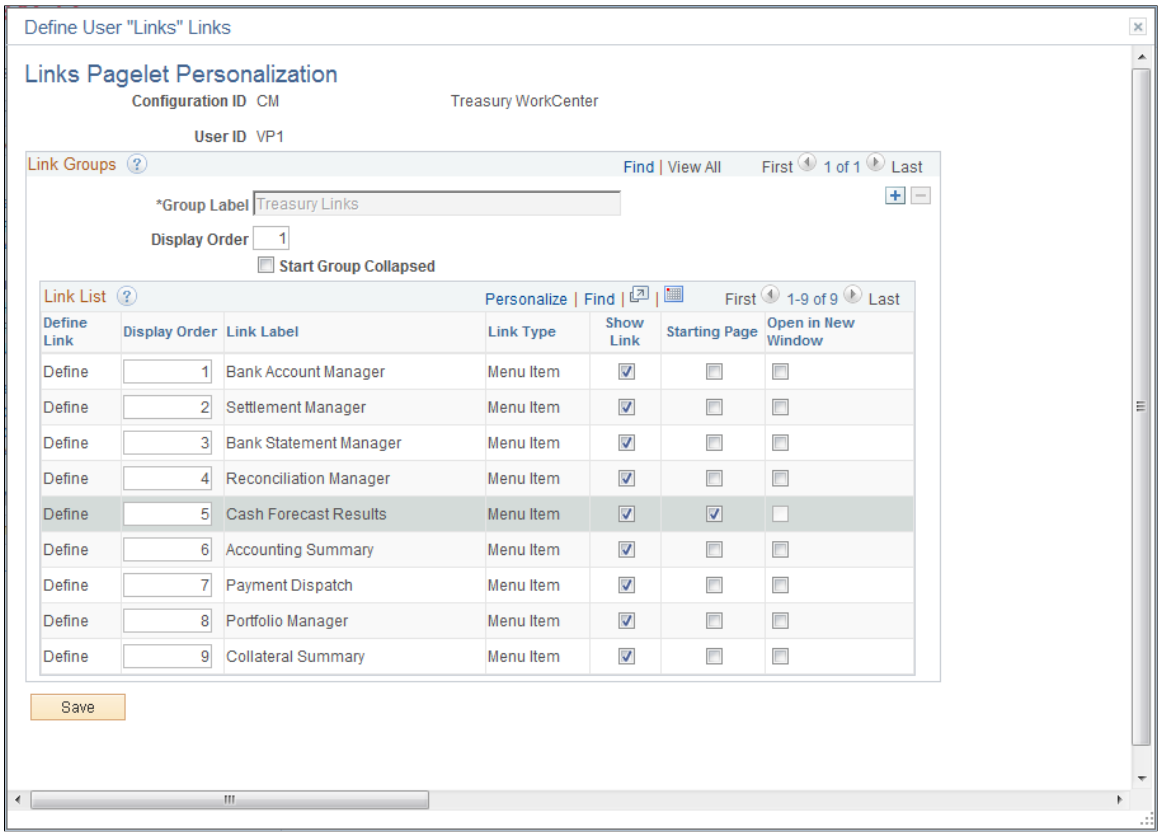
Navigation:

Accounts Receivable >**Receivables WorkCenter**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Click the **Pagelet Settings** icon in the pagelet header, and select **Personalize**.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Links Pagelet Personalization page for Treasury WorkCenter.



In the example shown for the Links pagelet, the Cash Forecast Results page has been selected. Upon opening the Treasury WorkCenter, the Cash Forecast Results page will appear in the transaction pane of the workcenter for this user.

Field or Control	***Description***
Starting Page	Select this check box to set the link destination to appear on your workcenter upon startup.
Open in New Window	Select this check box to launch the link destination in a new window when you click the pagelet link.

Using the Treasury WorkCenter - My Work

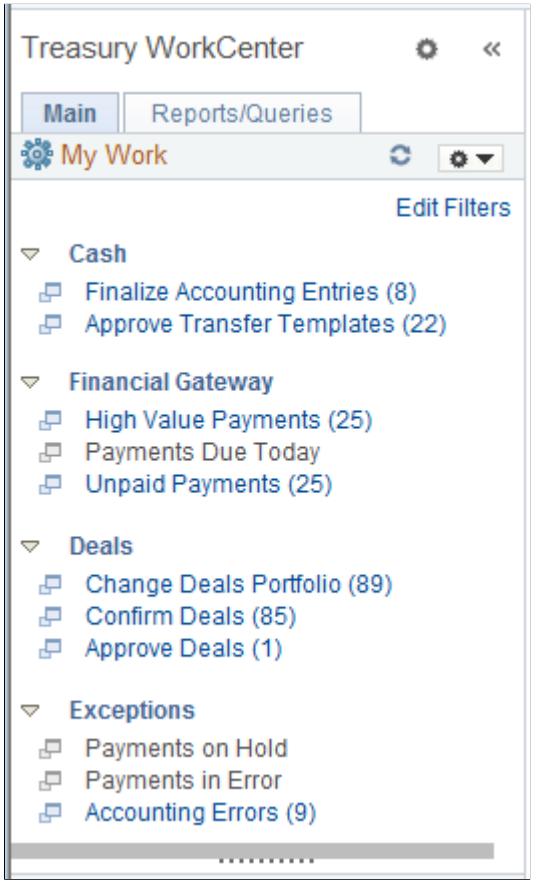
The My Work pagelet provides links that consolidate a user's actionable tasks, using the user ID as the Assigned User ID to show only items in their own queue.

The My Work pagelet includes these functional groupings for links:

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Cash
- Financial Gateway
- Deals
- Exceptions

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury WorkCenter - My Work pagelet.



Cash

The Cash group level includes these links to transaction areas:

- Finalize Accounting Entries
- Approve Transfer Templates

Page Name	*Definition*	*Alternate Navigation*	*Usage*
Finalize Accounting Entries	TR_APP_WC_GRID	**Cash Management** >**Treasury WorkCenter** >**My Work pagelet.**Click the **Cash: Finalize Accounting Entries** link.	Display and finalize accounting entries with a Provisional status.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition*	*Alternate Navigation*	*Usage*
Approve Transfer Templates	TR_WR_TMPLT_APPR	**Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet.**Click the **Cash: Approve Transfer Templates** link. Or **Cash Management > Fees and Transfers >Approve Transfer Templates**	Search for and approve or deny transfer templates.

Finalize Accounting Entries Page

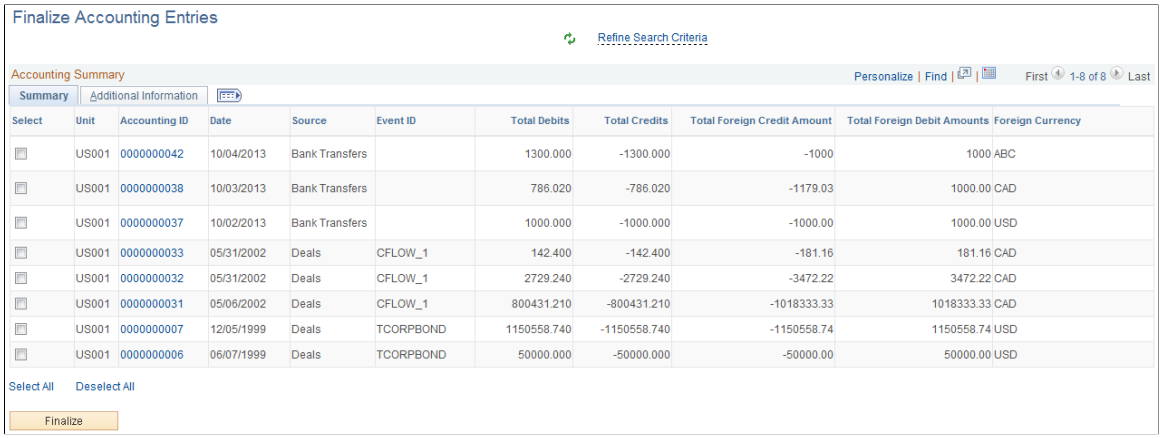
Use the Finalize Accounting Entries page (TR_APP_WC_GRID) to display and finalize accounting entries with a Provisional status.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

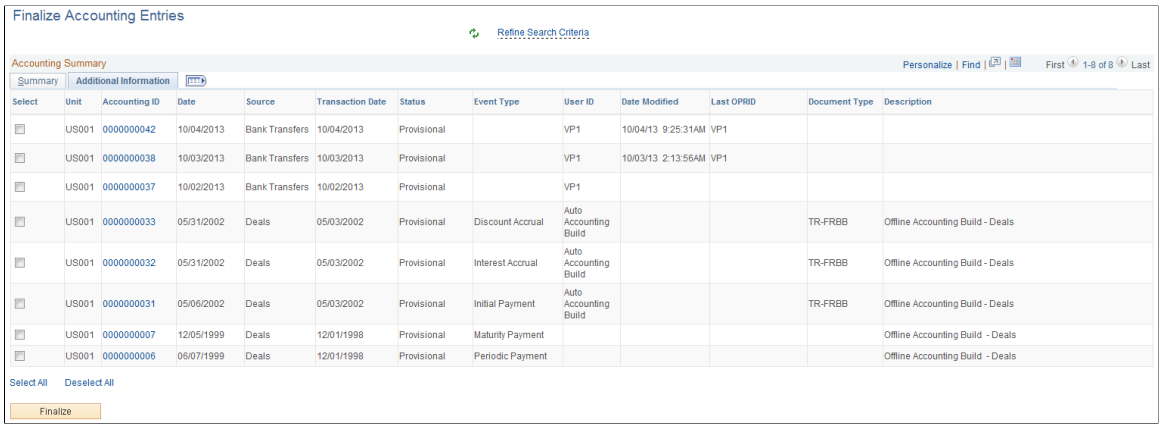
Click the **Cash: Finalize Accounting Entries** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Finalize Accounting Entries page - Summary tab.



 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Finalize Accounting Entries page - Additional Information tab.



Field or Control	*Description*
Refine Search Criteria	Hover the cursor over this link to view filters currently in use in the grid. Click the link to enter filter values on the Refine Search Criteria page. This grid uses the Accounting Filter View (CM_ACCTG) filter and you can change these filter values to display results in the grid: • Accounting Date • Business Unit • Source Code
Accounting ID	Click the Accounting ID value to open the View/Approve Entries page
Finalize	Click this button after selecting one or more accounting entries to finalize the selected entries.

Approve Transfer Templates Page

Use the Approve Transfer Templates page (TR_WR_TMPLT_APPR) to search for and approve or deny transfer templates.

Navigation:

- **Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet**

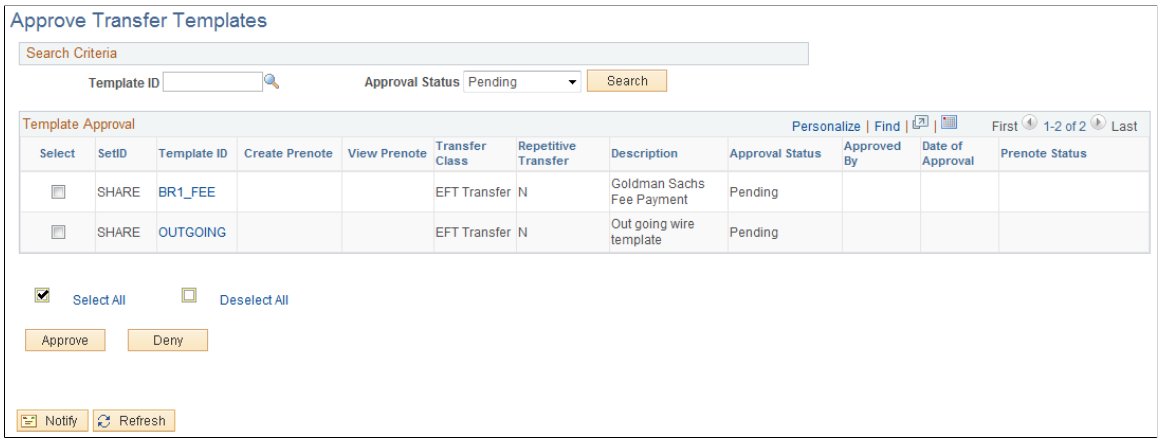
  Click the **Cash: Approve Transfer Templates** link.

- **Cash Management > Fees and Transfers >Approve Transfer Templates**

Note: When you click the WorkCenter link, the system takes you to the Approve Transfer Templates page located in the Fees and Transfers component. WorkCenter filters are not available on this page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury WorkCenter - Approve Transfer Templates page.



Financial Gateway

The Financial Gateway group level includes these links to transaction areas:

- High Value Payments
- Payments Due Today
- Unpaid Payments

Page Name	*Definition*	*Alternate Navigation*	*Usage*
High Value Payments	TR_WC_FG_GRID	**Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet.**Click the **Financial Gateway: High Value Payments** link.	Display high value payments awaiting dispatch; dispatch or flag selected payments for hold.
Payments Due Today	TR_WC_FG_GRID	**Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet.**Click the **Financial Gateway: Payments Due Today** link.	Display payments awaiting dispatch with today's date.
Unpaid Payments	TR_WC_FG_GRID	**Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet.**Click the **Financial Gateway: Unpaid Payments** link.	Display all unpaid payments that are awaiting dispatch.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

High Value Payments Page

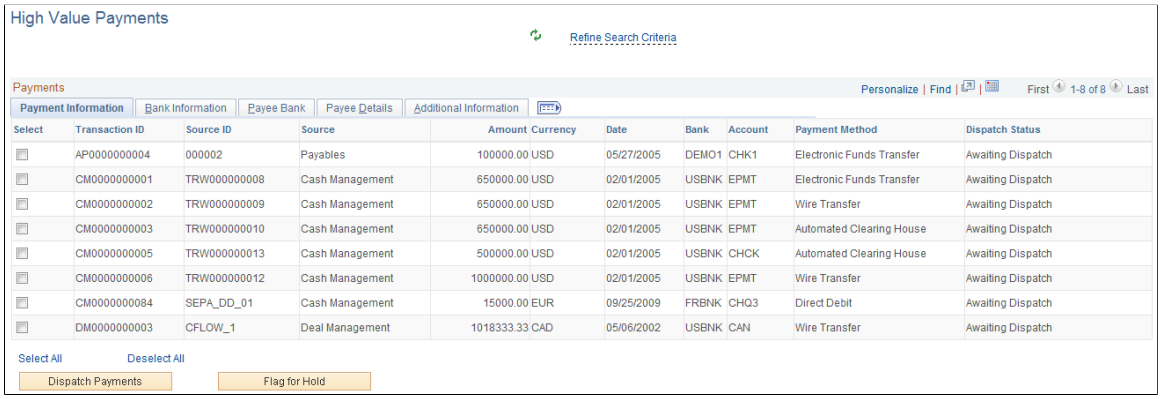
Use the High Value Payments page (TR_WC_FG_GRID) to display high value payments awaiting dispatch; dispatch or flag selected payments for hold.

Navigation:

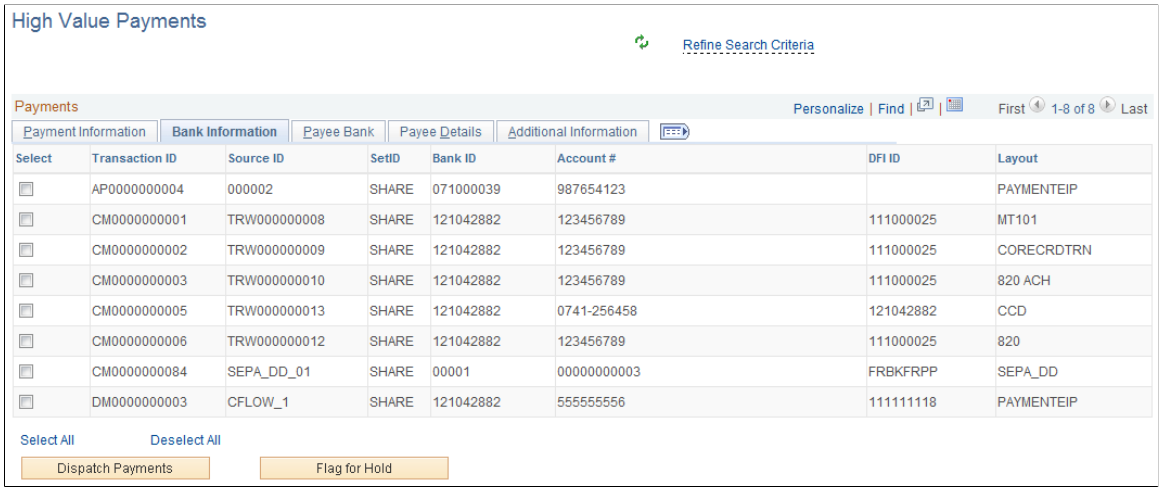
Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

Click the **Financial Gateway: High Value Payments** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the High Value Payments page - Payment Information tab.

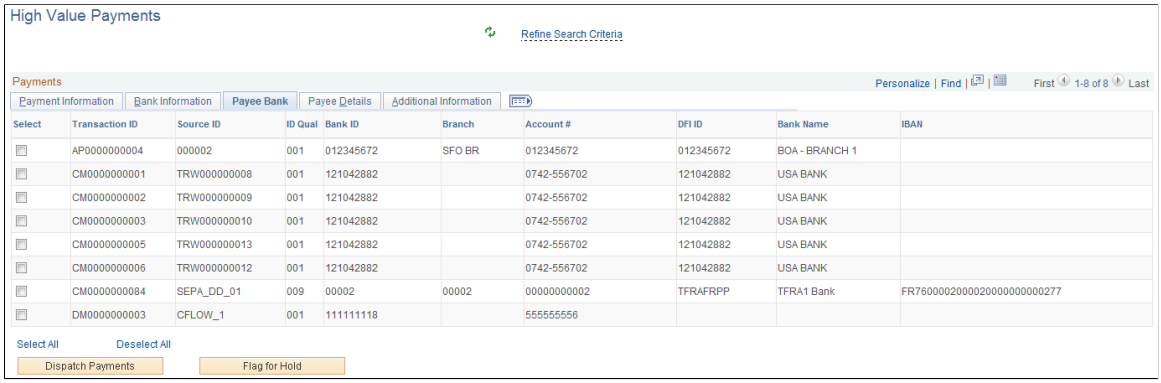


This example illustrates the fields and controls on the High Value Payments page - Bank Information tab.

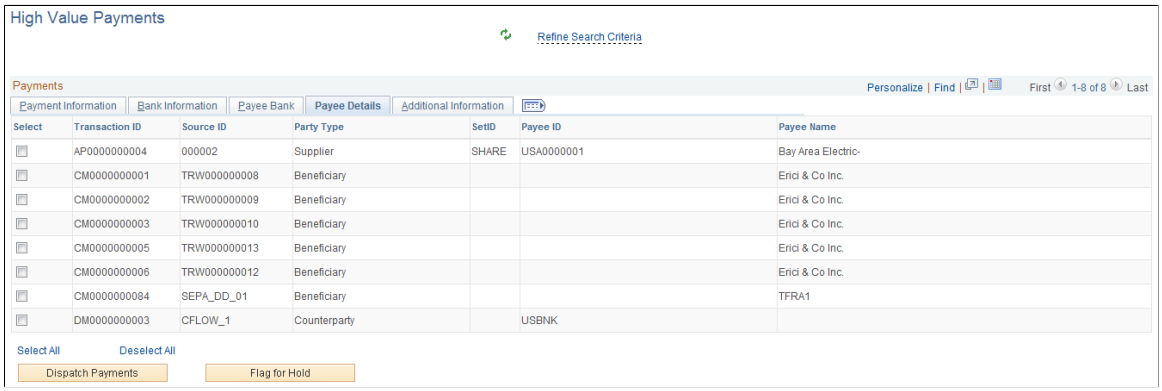


Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

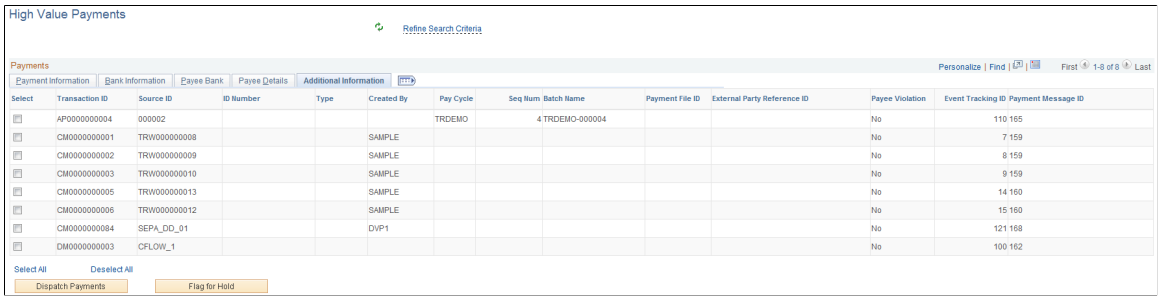
This example illustrates the fields and controls on the High Value Payments page - Payee Bank tab.



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the High Value Payments page - Payee Details tab.



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the High Value Payments page - Additional Information tab.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Refine Search Criteria	Hover the cursor over this link to view filters currently in use in the grid. Click the link to enter filter values on the Refine Search Criteria page. This grid uses the High Value Payments (FG_HVP) filter and you can change these filter values to display results in the grid: • Amount • Payment Source • Dispatch Status • Payment Date • Payment Method
Dispatch Payments	Click this button after selecting one or more payments to dispatch the selected payments.
Flag for Hold	Click this button after selecting one or more payments to place a hold on the selected payments.

Payments Due Today

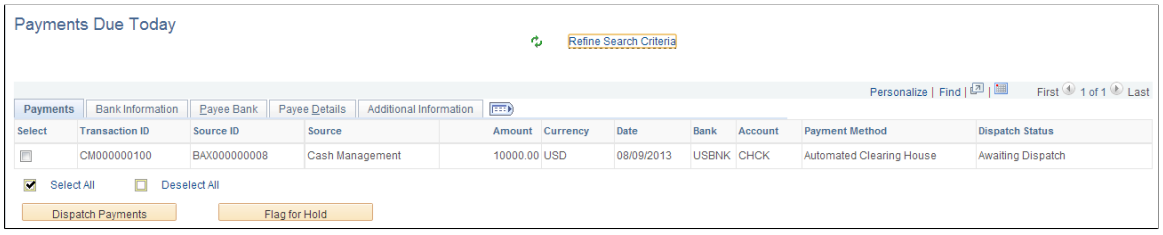
Use the Payments Due Today page (TR_WC_FG_GRID) to display payments awaiting dispatch with today's date.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

Click the **Financial Gateway: Payments Due Today** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Payments Due Today page - Payment Information tab.



Note: See the High Value Payments page for examples of the fields on the Bank Information, Payee Bank, Payee Details, and Additional Information tabs. Grids for High Value Payments, Payments Due Today, and Unpaid Payments display the same fields.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Unpaid Payments Page

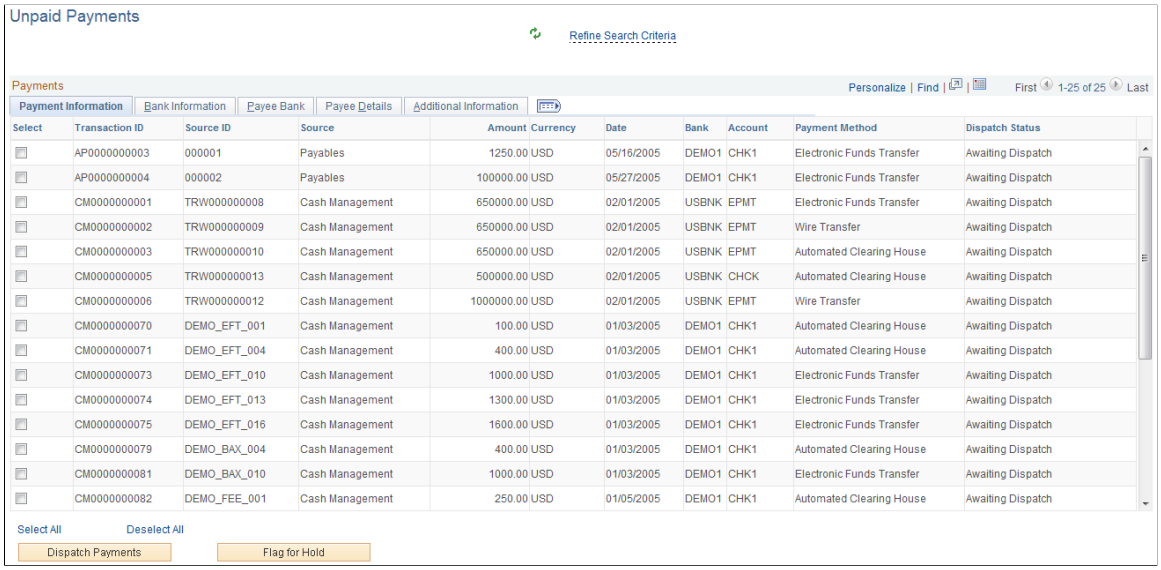
Use the Unpaid Payments page (TR_WC_FG_GRID) to display all unpaid payments that are awaiting dispatch.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet.

Click the **Financial Gateway: Unpaid Payments** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Unpaid Payments page - Payment Information page.



Note: See the High Value Payments page for examples of the fields on the Bank Information, Payee Bank, Payee Details, and Additional Information tabs. Grids for High Value Payments, Payments Due Today, and Unpaid Payments display the same fields.

Field or Control	*Description*
Refine Search Criteria	Hover the cursor over this link to view filters currently in use in the grid. Click the link to enter filter values on the Refine Search Criteria page. This grid uses the All Payments (TR_FG _ALL) filter and you can change these filter values to display results in the grid: • Bank Code • Bank Account • Payment Source • Business Unit • Payment Method

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Dispatch Payments	Click this button after selecting one or more payments to dispatch the selected payments.
Flag for Hold	Click this button after selecting one or more payments to place a hold on the selected payments.

Deals

The Deals group level includes these links to transaction areas:

- Change Deals Portfolio
- Confirm Deals
- Approve Deals

Page Name	*Definition*	*Alternate Navigation*	*Usage*
Change Deals Portfolio	TR_DEAL_WC_GRID	**Cash Management** >**Treasury WorkCenter** >**My Work pagelet.**Click the **Deals: Change Deals Portfolio** link.	Display open and matured deals; select deals and update portfolio.
Confirm Deals	TR_DEAL_WC_GRID	**Cash Management** >**Treasury WorkCenter** >**My Work pagelet.**Click the **Deals: Confirm Deals** link. Or **Deal Management** >**Confirm Deals** > **Confirm Deals Manually** >**Deal Confirmation**	Display open or matured deals with pending confirmation; select deals and confirm.
Approve Deals	TR_DEAL_WC_GRID	**Cash Management** >**Treasury WorkCenter** >**My Work pagelet.**Click the **Deals: Approve Deals** link. Or **Deal Management** >**Capture Deals** >**Preview/Approve Deals** >**Deal Preview/ Approval**	Display open deals that are pending review; select deals and approve.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Change Deals Portfolio Page

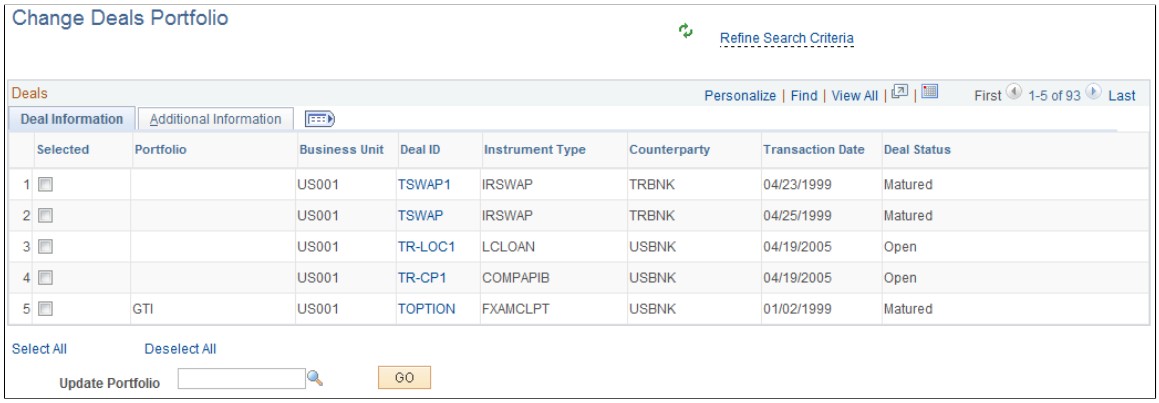
Use the Change Deals Portfolio page (TR_DEAL_WC_GRID) to display open and matured deals; select deals and update portfolio.

Navigation:

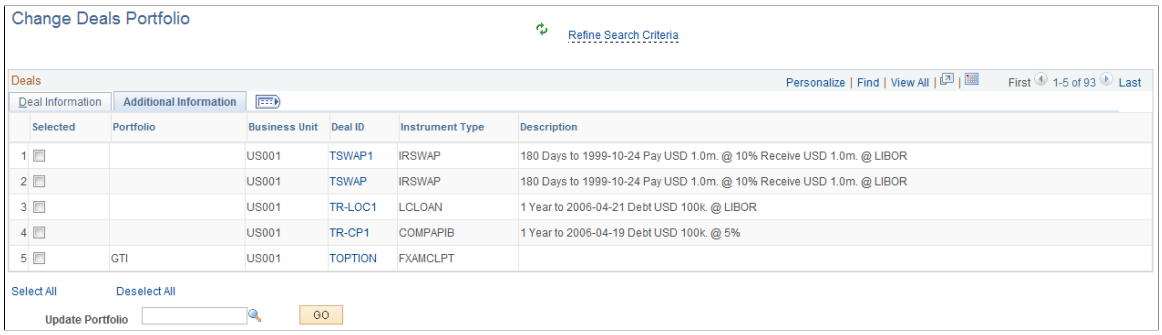
Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

Click the **Deals: Change Deals Portfolio** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Change Deals Portfolio page - Deal Information tab.



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Change Deals Portfolio page - Additional Information tab.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Refine Search Criteria	Hover the cursor over this link to view filters currently in use in the grid. Click the link to enter filter values on the Refine Search Criteria page. This grid uses the Treasury Deals (TR _PORTFOL) filter and you can change these filter values to display results in the grid: • Business Unit • Instrument Type • Counterparty • Deal Status • Portfolio
Deal ID	Click the Deal ID value link to open the Deal Detail page for the deal.
Update Portfolio	After selecting one or more deals, select a portfolio and click the Go button to update the portfolio for the deals.

Confirm Deals Page

Use the Confirm Deals page (TR_DEAL_WC_GRID) to display open or matured deals with pending confirmation; select deals and confirm.

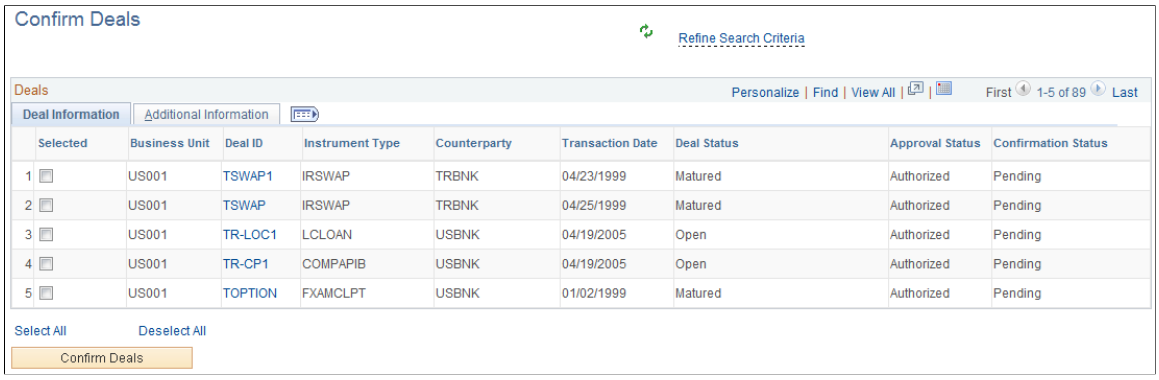
Navigation:

- **Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet**

  Click the **Deals: Confirm Deals** link.

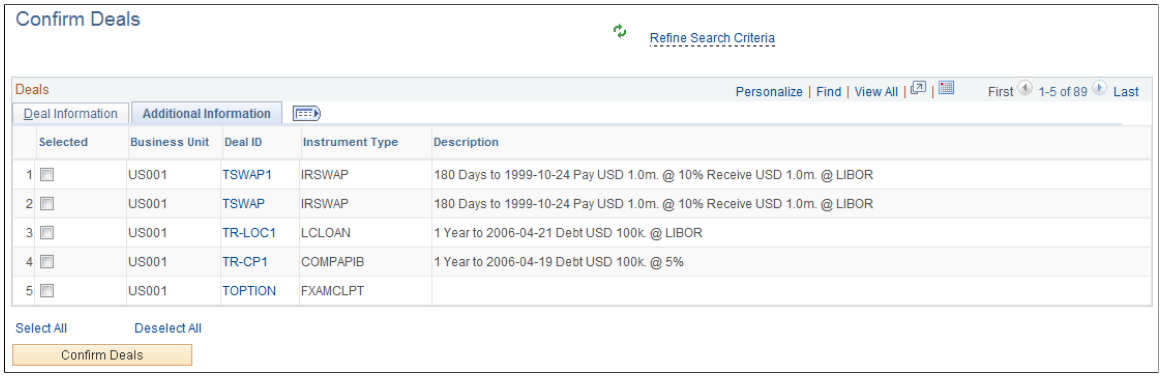
- **Deal Management >Confirm Deals > Confirm Deals Manually >Deal Confirmation**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Confirm Deals page - Deal Information page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Confirm Deals page - Additional Information page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Refine Search Criteria	Hover the cursor over this link to view filters currently in use in the grid. Click the link to enter filter values on the Refine Search Criteria page. This grid uses the Treasury Deals (TR _PORTFOL) filter and you can change these filter values to display results in the grid: • Business Unit • Instrument Type • Counterparty • Deal Status • Portfolio
Deal ID	Click the Deal ID value link to open the Deal Confirmation page for the deal, where you can manually confirm the deal.
Confirm Deals	Click this button after selecting one or more deals to confirm the selected deals.

Approve Deals Page

Use the Approve Deals page (TR_DEAL_WC_GRID) to display open deals that are pending review; select deals and approve.

Navigation:

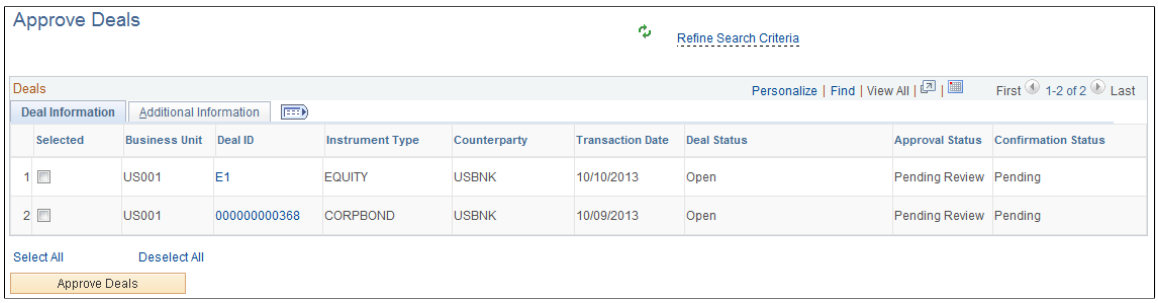
- **Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet**

  Click the **Deals: Approve Deals** link.

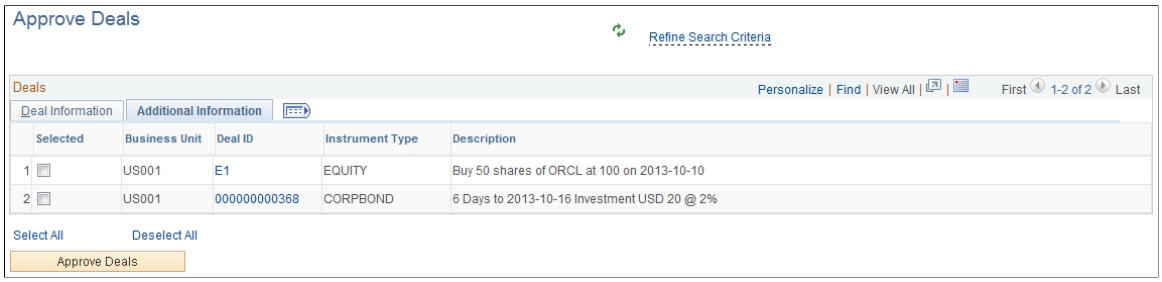
- **Deal Management >Capture Deals >Preview/Approve Deals >Deal Preview/Approval**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Deals page - Deal Information page.



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Deals page - Additional Information page.



Field or Control	***Description***
Refine Search Criteria	Hover the cursor over this link to view filters currently in use in the grid. Click the link to enter filter values on the Refine Search Criteria page. This grid uses the Treasury Deals (TR _PORTFOL) filter and you can change these filter values to display results in the grid: • Business Unit • Instrument Type • Counterparty • Deal Status • Portfolio
Deal ID	Click the Deal ID value link to open the Deal Preview/ Approval page for the deal.
Approve Deals	Click this button after selecting one or more deals to approve the selected deals.

Exceptions

The Exceptions group level includes these links to transaction areas:

- Payments on Hold
- Payments in Error

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

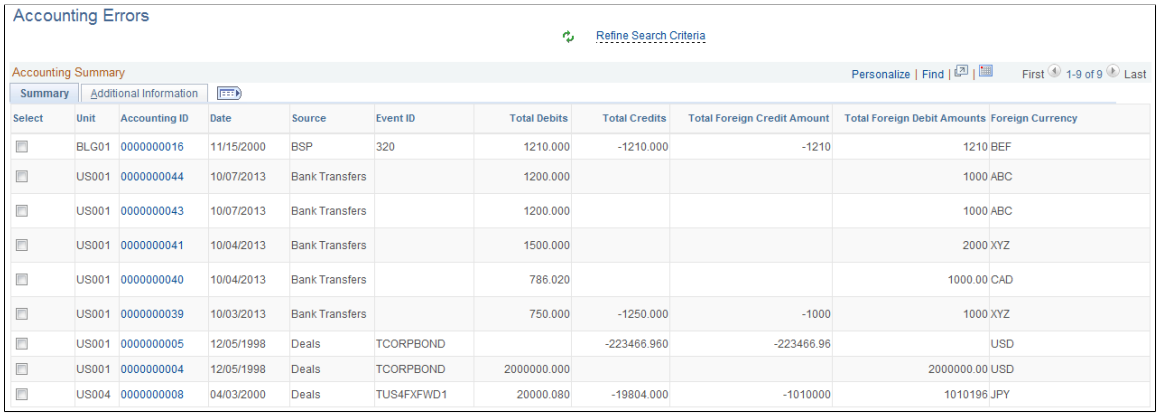
- Accounting Errors

Page Name	*Definition*	*Alternate Navigation*	*Usage*
Payments on Hold	TR_APP_WC_GRID	**Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet.** Click the **Exceptions: Payments on Hold** link.	View payments on hold.
Payments in Error	TR_APP_WC_GRID	**Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet.** Click the **Exceptions: Payments in Error** link.	View payments in error.
Accounting Errors	TR_APP_WC_GRID	**Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet.** Click the **Exceptions: Accounting Errors** link.	View a summary list of accounting errors.

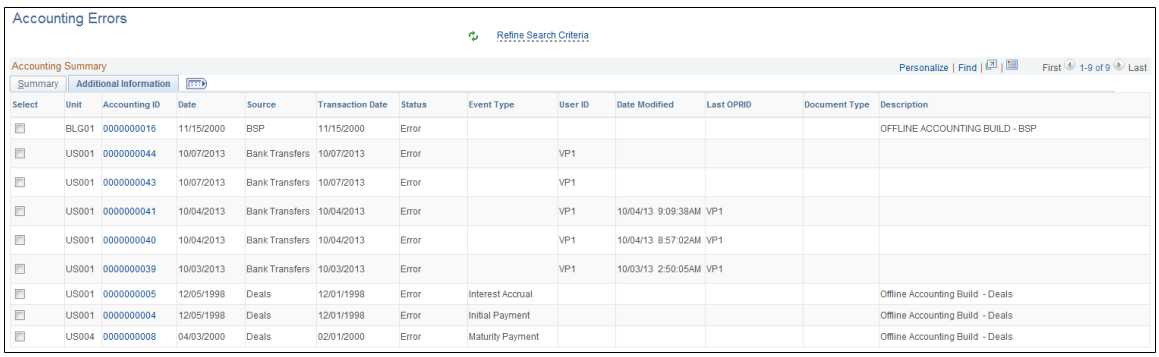
Accounting Errors Page

Use the Accounting Errors page (TR_APP_WC_GRID) to view a summary list of accounting errors.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Errors page - Summary tab.



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Errors page - Additional Information tab.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Refine Search Criteria	Hover the cursor over this link to view filters currently in use in the grid. Click the link to enter filter values on the Refine Search Criteria page. This grid uses the Accounting Filter View (CM_ACCTG) filter and you can change these filter values to display results in the grid: • Accounting Date • Business Unit • Source Code
Accounting ID	Click the Accounting ID link to open the Accounting Entries page (TRA_ACCTG_LINE).

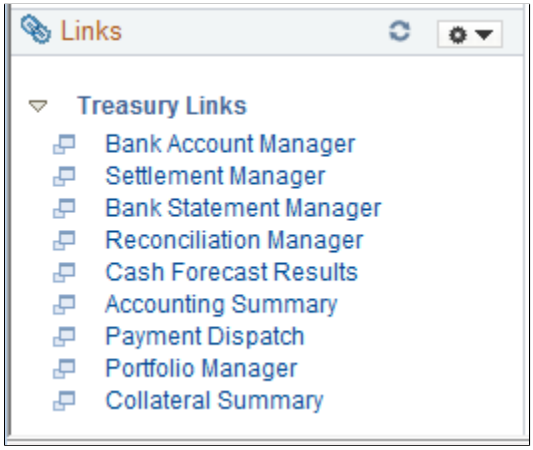
Using the Treasury WorkCenter - Links

Use the Treasury WorkCenter - Links pagelet to view Treasury-related links. The primary purpose of this pagelet is to minimize the number of clicks to access critical path components and pages. Click any of the links on the pagelet to display the destination page in the transaction area.

The Links pagelet can provide access to internal links and external links.

This example illustrates how the Links pagelet in Treasury WorkCenter can be set up using preconfigured links:

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury WorkCenter - Links pagelet. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



The Links pagelet can provide access to internal links and external links.

To set up WorkCenter pagelets as a system administrator, see "Configuring Pagelets" (Enterprise Components).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

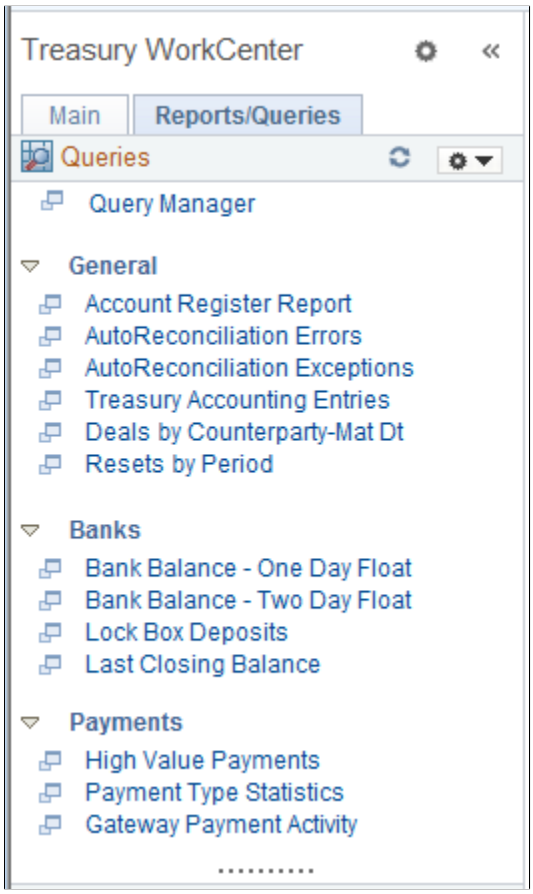
Related Links

"Working With and Personalizing the Classic Links Pagelet As an End User" (Application Fundamentals)

Using the Treasury WorkCenter - Queries

The Queries section of the Reports/Queries tab can include links to Query Manager, public queries, private queries, and actionable operational analytics (such as grids and graphs). Click on any link in the Queries pagelet to display the query or analytics in the transaction area of the WorkCenter.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury WorkCenter - Queries pagelet.



The Queries pagelet can provide access to public queries, private queries, and Pivot Grids.

To set up WorkCenter pagelets as a system administrator, see "Configuring Pagelets" (Enterprise Components).

Related Links

"Working With and Personalizing the Classic Queries Pagelet As an End User" (Application Fundamentals)

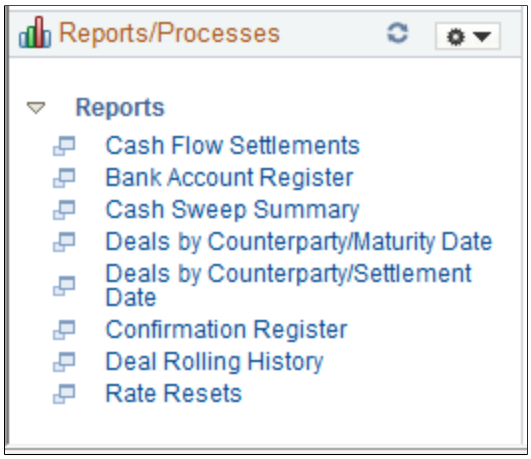
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Using the Treasury WorkCenter - Reports and Processes

The Reports/Processes pagelet can provide access to system-defined reports and processes for which you have appropriate permissions.

This example illustrates how the Reports/Processes pagelet in the Treasury WorkCenter can be set up using preconfigured links:

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury WorkCenter - Reports/Processes Pagelet.



To set up WorkCenter pagelets as a system administrator, see "Configuring Pagelets" (Enterprise Components).

Related Links

"Working With and Personalizing the Classic Reports and Processes Pagelet As an End User" (Application Fundamentals)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 17

Using the Treasury Dashboard

Understanding the Treasury Dashboard

Organizations face complex challenges in controlling and streamlining financial processes in order to improve the bottom line. The lack of visibility into cash positions and daily operational tasks on the part of Treasury managers has created a need for a dashboard to efficiently manage their return on cash. The Treasury Dashboard will provide managers with a unique view of the cash position for the organization. The dashboard provides the cash position by bank or by currency, investment mix, department mix and payment by source. The Treasury Dashboard is a necessary business intelligence tool that enables managers to effectively manage cash within their organizations, saving them time and money. Dashboards streamline the work of the treasurer by providing enormous value as well as a central place to monitor the cash position, payments and investments.

The Treasury Dashboard consists of a series of components which display cash management, deal management, and operational data in summary, detail, and chart formats. These components enable executives and managers to gain a clear visual concept of the financial state of the organization in order to manage and monitor spending in real time. The Treasury Dashboard consists of these dashboards:

- Cash Management Dashboard
    - Cash Position by Bank
    - Cash Position by Transaction Currency
    - Cash Position by Source Set
    - Cash Position by Business Unit
    - Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item
- Deal Management Dashboard
    - Investment Mix
    - Debt Mix
    - Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments
    - Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt
    - Open Foreign Exchange Contracts
- Payments Dashboard
    - Payments by Source

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Payments by Status
- Payments by Bank
- Payments by Payment Method

- Bank Statement Load Dashboard

Cash Management Dashboard

The Cash Management Dashboard hosts the following charts:

- Cash Position by Bank
- Cash Position by Transaction Currency
- Cash Position by Source Set
- Cash Position by Business Unit
- Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item

To display the Cash Position data, you set up a configuration to identify the worksheet, date range, position source set, and position currency.

Cash Position chart displays data that are available for the configured values. It does not run the cash position process.

Cash Position by Bank

Cash Position by Bank chart displays cash position amounts for each bank. Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Cash Position by Transaction Currency

The Cash Position by Transaction Currency chart displays the cash position amounts based on each type of currency. Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Cash Position by Source Set

The Cash Position by Source Set chart displays the cash position amount for the source set for a period of time. Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Cash Position by Business Unit

Cash Position by Business Unit chart displays cash position amounts for each Business Unit. Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item

Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item chart displays cash position amounts for each line item. Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Deal Management Dashboard

The Deal Management Dashboard hosts the following charts:

- Investment Mix
- Debt Mix
- Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments
- Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt
- Open Foreign Exchange Contracts

You access the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page to identify the type of data that you want to display on Deal dashboards. This configuration requires that you enter a start and end date and then select a previously defined time interval. You select the time interval and apply a previously defined calendar to this interval. You also enter the number of days that would classify an investment/debt as short term, select the currency that you want to display on each of the Deal Management dashboards, and select the exchange rate information.

Investment Mix

The Investment Mix chart can be used to compare the amounts of an organization's long and short term investments based on the time interval selected and the number of days that classify an investment as short term entered when you set up the configuration for this dashboard. An organization's investments may include long and short term investment deals in various forms of securities. These data are derived from investments that are set up for an organization in PeopleSoft Deal Management.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Debt Mix

The Debt Mix chart can be used to compare the amounts of long term and short term debt held by your organization based on the time series that you select and the number of days that you enter that qualify a debt as short term on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments

An investment that earns money based on a fixed interest rate means that the amount of interest earned on the investment by the organization is based on an interest rate that typically stays the same over the life of the investment. An investment that earns money based on a floating interest rate means that the amount of interest earned on the investment over the life of the investment changes periodically.

The Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments chart displays the organization's investments in fixed interest rate earning investments, and floating interest rate earning investments over a specific period of time. This time period is based on a time series that you select for this dashboard on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt

The Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt chart displays an organization's borrowings on fixed rate basis and floating rate basis over a specified period of time. This time period is based on a time series that you select for this dashboard on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Open Foreign Exchange Contracts

A foreign exchange contract is a commitment to buy or sell a specified amount of foreign currency on a fixed date and rate of exchange. These contracts are used usually by importers as a hedge against exchange rate inflation. The Open Foreign Exchange Contracts chart displays the amount of open foreign currency exchange contract bought or sold by an organization.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

See "Entering Foreign Exchange Deals Examples" (PeopleSoft Deal Management).

Operational Dashboards

The operational dashboards include these:

- Payments Dashboard
- Bank Statement Load Dashboard

The Payments Dashboard displays total payment amounts based on a specified payment source, payment status, bank, and payment method.

Payments by Source Chart

The Payments by Source Dashboard enables you to select a business unit and specify a date or range of dates on the Dashboard Configuration - Payments by Source page and display the total amount of payments depending on whether the source of the payments in the system is AP (accounts payable), AR (accounts receivable), BPEL (BPEL source), CM (cash management), DM (deal management), or Expenses.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Payments by Status Chart

The Payments by Status chart enables you to select a business unit and specify a date or range of dates on the page and display the total amount of payments based the payment status of each payment.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Payments by Bank Chart

The Payments by Bank chart enables you to select a business unit and a date or range of dates and display the total amount of payments based on each bank affiliated with your organization.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Payments by Payment Method Chart

The Payments by Payment Method chart enables you to select a business unit and a date or range of dates and display the total amount of payments based on the payment method used, such as ACH (Automated Clearing House), EFT (electronic file transfer), and wire transfer.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Status of Bank Statement Load Chart

The loading of bank statement information is an integral part of the reconciliation, bank statement accounting, and cash position processes. The system processes previous day statements that are used for reconciliation and accounting, current day statements for cash position worksheets, and account analysis statements for bank fee analysis. The configuration page allows you to exclude a Bank Statement Type or Bank Information.

The Status of Bank Statement Load chart displays the status of Bank Statements by bank that are not loaded, ready to be reconciled, and completed reconciliation.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

Configuring and Displaying the Cash Management Dashboard

Page Used to Configure and Display the Cash Management Dashboard

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position Page	TR_DASH_CP_CFG	Configure the Cash Management dashboard to display cash position data in these charts: • Cash Position by Bank • Cash Position by Transaction Currency • Cash Position by Source Set • Cash Position by Business Unit • Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item

Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position Page

Use the Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Bank page (TR_DASH_01_CFG) to configure the Cash Management dashboard to display cash position data.

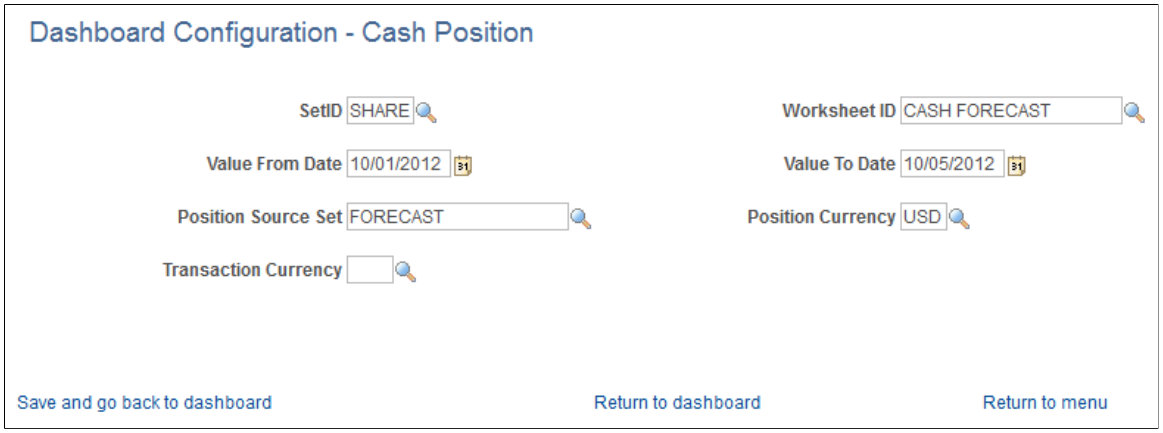
Navigation:

Treasury Dashboards

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Click the **Cash Forecast Trend** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position page.



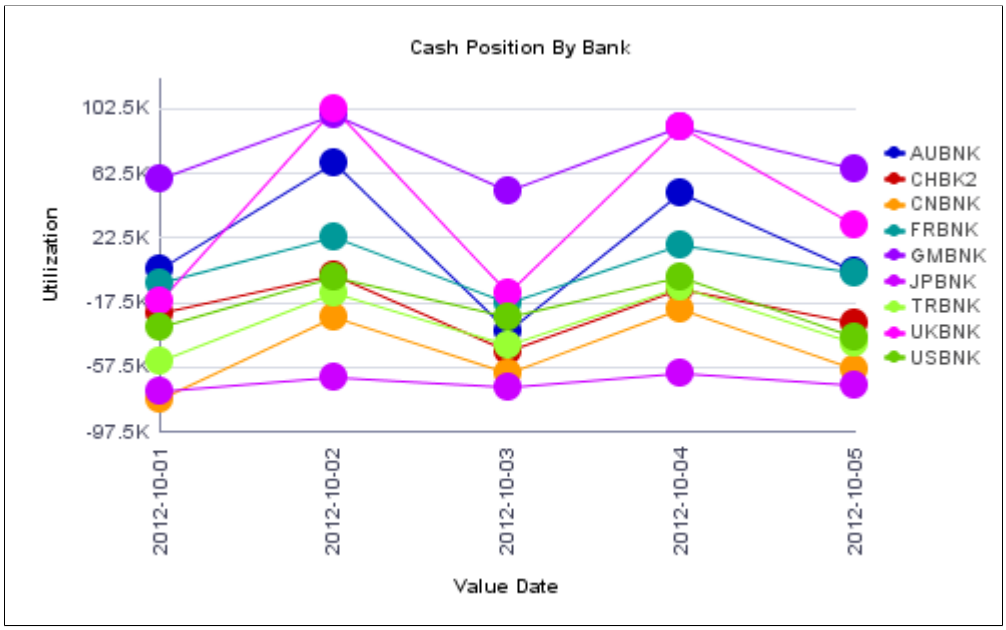
Field or Control	*Description*
Worksheet ID	Identify the worksheet.
Value From Date and **Value To Date**	Identify the date range.
Position Source Set	Enter the position source set.
Position Currency	Enter the position currency.
Transaction Currency	Select the currency that you want to appear on the Cash Position by Bank or Cash Position by Transaction Currency chart.
Save and go back to dashboard	Click this link to save the configuration and return to the Treasury Dashboards page to display the selected dashboard based on the configuration.
Return to dashboard	Click this link to return to the selected dashboard on the Treasury Dashboards page after the configuration has been saved.
Return to menu	Click this link to return to the Treasury Dashboards menu.

Cash Position By Bank Chart

Use the Cash Position By Bank chart to see the cash position by bank.

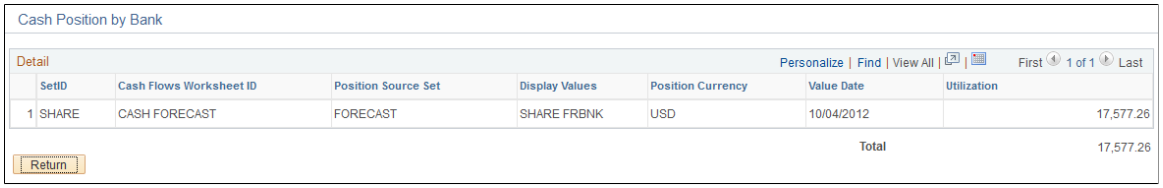
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Position By Bank chart.



Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Position by Bank detail grid.



Cash Position by Bank

Detail Personalize | Find | View All | First 1 of 1 Last

	SetID	Cash Flows Worksheet ID	Position Source Set	Display Values	Position Currency	Value Date	Utilization
1	SHARE	CASH FORECAST	FORECAST	SHARE FRBNK	USD	10/04/2012	17,577.26
						Total	17,577.26

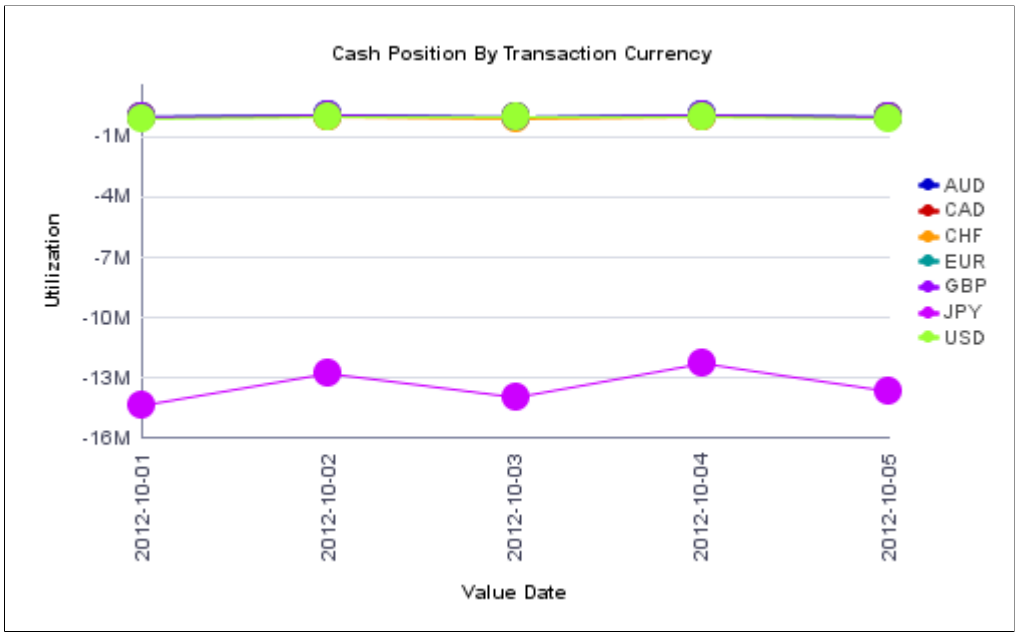
Return

Cash Position by Transaction Currency Chart

Use the Cash Position by Transaction Currency chart to see the cash position by transaction currency.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Position By Transaction Currency chart.



Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Dashboards - Cash Position by Currency page (2 of 4).

Cash Position by Source Set Chart

Use the Cash Position by Source Set chart to see the cash position amount for the source set for a period of time.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Cash Position by Business Unit Chart

Use the Cash Position by Business Unit chart to see cash position amounts for each Business Unit.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item Chart

Use the Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item chart to see cash position amounts for each line item.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Configuring and Displaying the Deal Management Dashboard

Pages Used to Configure and Display the Deal Management Dashboard

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Dashboard Configuration - Deals Page	TR_DASH_03_CFG	Configure the Deal Management dashboard to display these charts: • Investment Mix • Debt Mix • Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments • Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt • Open Foreign Exchange Contracts
Dashboard Configuration - Time Series Page	TR_DASH_03_CFG2	Select a time series to apply to the Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments and Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt charts.

Dashboard Configuration - Deals Page

Use the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page (TR_DASH_03_CFG) to configure to display the investment mix, debt mix, fixed versus floating rate investments, fixed versus floating rate debt, and open foreign exchange contracts dashboards.

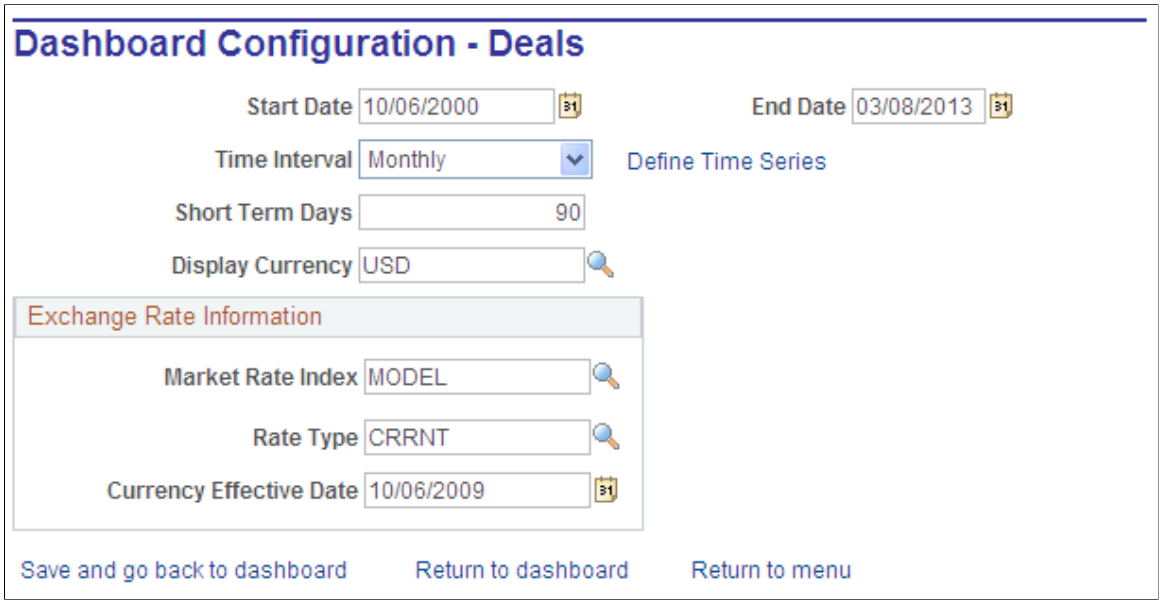
Navigation:

Treasury Dashboards

Click the **Deals** link, or after displaying the charts, click the Update Configuration link on the Treasury Dashboards page.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Start Date and **End Date**	Select a start and end date to apply to the data that appears on the Fixed Rate vs. Floating Rate chart.
Time Interval	Select the appropriate time interval for which you want the chart to see data.
Define Time Series	Define monthly, quarterly, half-yearly or yearly time intervals based on business calendars.

Important! Open Foreign Exchange Contracts do not use time intervals.

Investment Mix Chart

Use the Investment Mix chart to view short-term and long-term investments.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Debt Mix Chart

Use the Debt Mix page (TR_DASH_DEAL) to display the investment mix deals detail and summary data.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments Chart

Use the Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments chart to view fixed versus floating rate investments.

This chart displays the fixed rate versus the floating rate investment amounts within a selected time series.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt Chart

Use the Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt chart to view fixed versus floating rate debts.

This chart compares the total amount of debt accumulated based on a fixed interest rate versus a floating interest rate within a selected time series.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Open Foreign Exchange Contracts Chart

Use the Open Foreign Exchange Contracts page to view open FX contracts.

This chart displays the amount of open foreign currency exchange contract bought or sold by an organization on a given date.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Dashboard Configuration - Time Series Page

Use the Dashboard Configuration - Time Series page (TR_DASH_03_CFG2) to select a time series to apply to the Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments and Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt dashboards.

Navigation:

Click the **Define Time Series** link on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.

Configuring and Displaying the Payments Dashboard

Page Used to Configure and Display the Payments Dashboard

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source Page	TR_DASH_02_CFG	Configure the Payments dashboard to display these charts: • Payments by Payment Source • Payments by Payment Status • Payments by Bank • Payments by Payment Method

Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source Page

Use the Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page (TR_DASH_02_CFG) to configure the payments charts

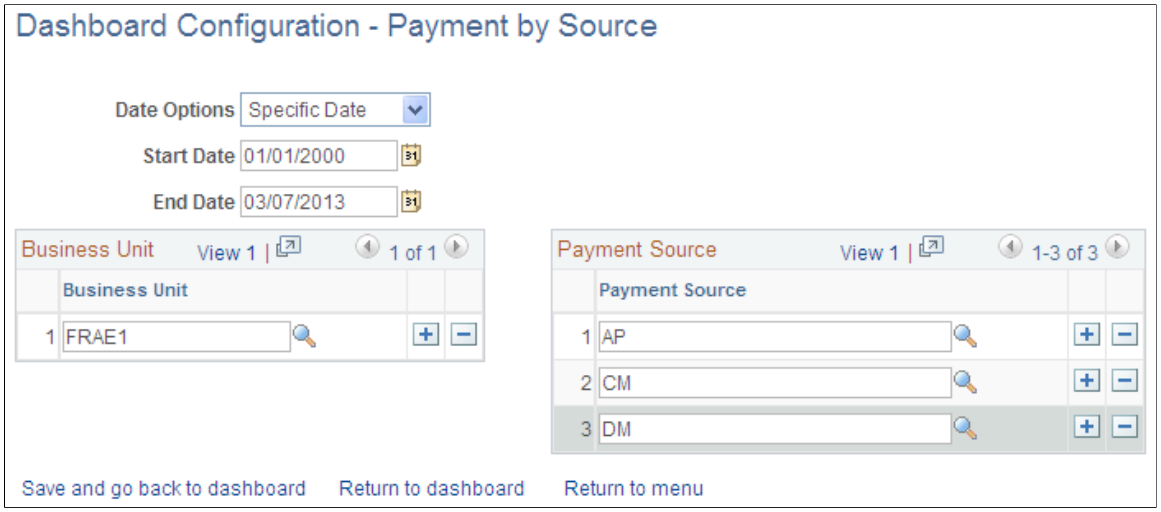
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Navigation:

Treasury Dashboards

Click the **Payments** link or, after displaying the charts, click the **Update Configuration** link on the Treasury Dashboards page.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Date Options	Select one of these values. • *Today* Payments by source display on the chart based on your system's current date. • *Specific Date* Select this option and the **Start Date** and **End Date** fields are enabled. Select the start and end dates to which the payment data applies.
Business Unit	Select one or more business units to which the payment data that appears on the dashboard applies. Leave this field blank and the system will display payment data on the dashboard for all business units in your system.
Payment Source	Select one or more payment sources to which the payment data that appears on the dashboard applies. Leave this field blank and the system will display payment data on the dashboard for all payment sources.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Payments by Payment Source Chart

Use the Payments by Payment Source chart to view payments by source.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Payments by Payment Status Chart

Use the Payments by Payment Status chart to view payments by status.

This chart uses the Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page to display the total payment amount based on the status of the payments.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Payments by Bank Chart

Use the Payments by Bank to view payments by bank.

This chart uses the Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page to configure the data for Payments by Bank to display the total payment amounts for each of your organization's banks that have payments associated with them.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

Payments by Payment Method Chart

Use the Payments by Payment Method chart to view payments by method of payment, for example, EFT, direct debit, or wire transfer.

Configuring and Displaying the Bank Statement Load Chart

Page Used to Configure and Display the Bank Statement Load Chart

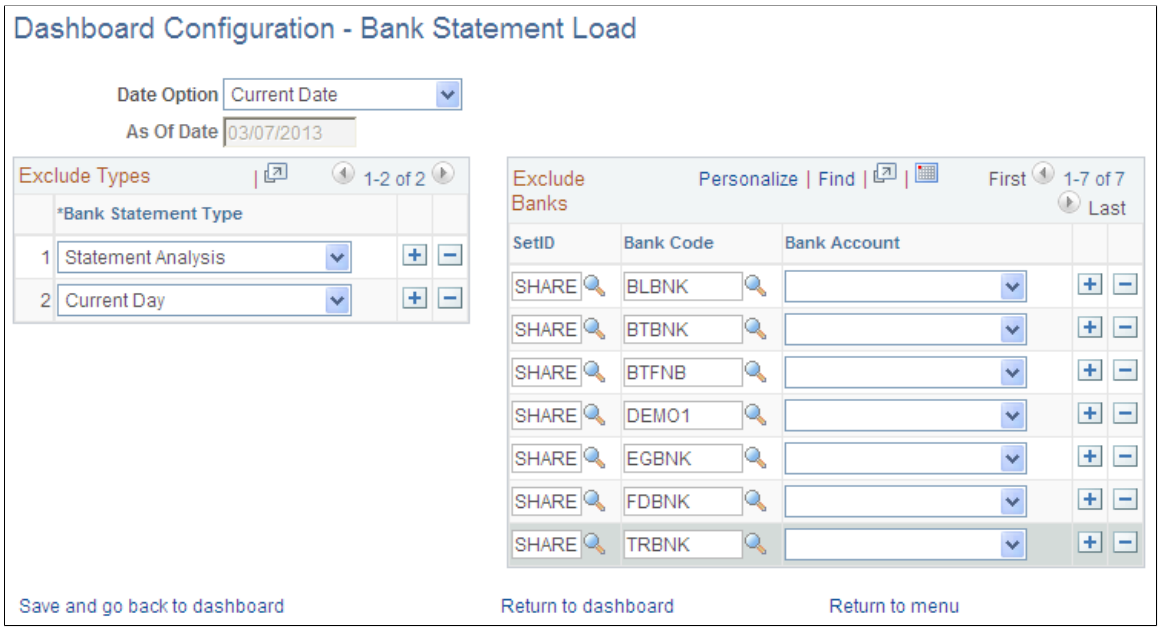
Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Dashboard Configuration - Bank Statement Load Page	TR_DASH_BSL_CFG	Configure the dashboard to display the Status of Bank Statement Loads chart.

Dashboard Configuration - Bank Statement Load Page

Use the Dashboard Configuration - Bank Statement Load page (TR_DASH_BSL_CFG) to configure the dashboard to display the Status of Bank Statement Loads chart.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Dashboard Configuration - Bank Statement Load page.



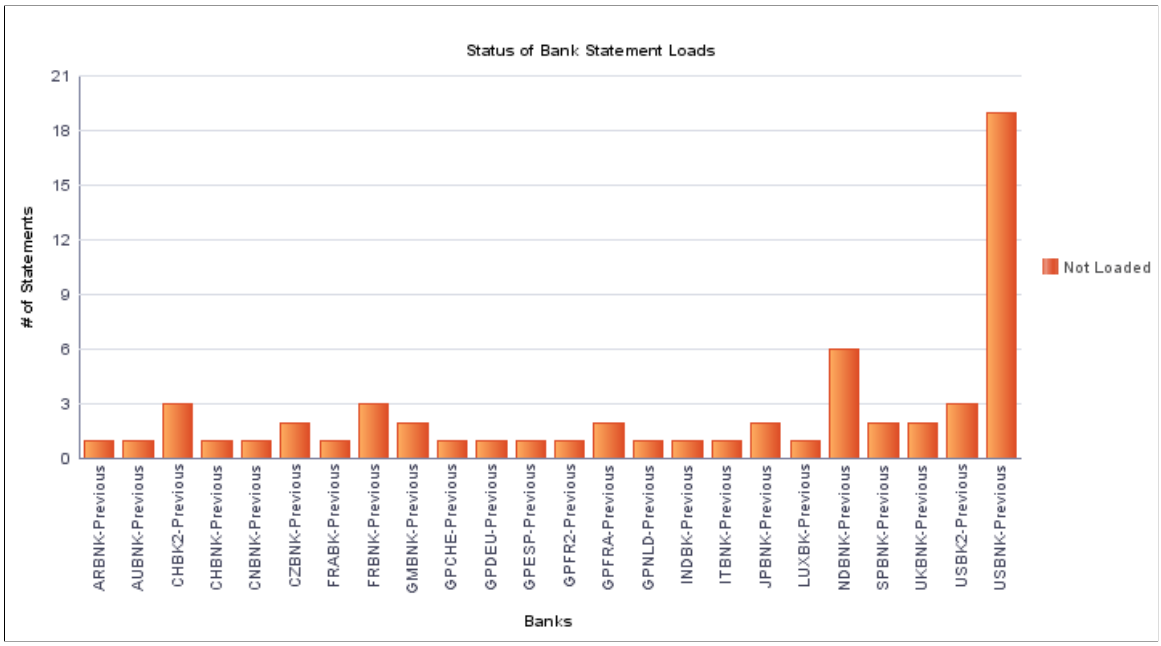
Field or Control	***Description***
Date Option	Select one of these options. • *As of Date* The As of Date field is enabled so that you can select the date that the statement loads that appear on the dashboard start from. • *Current Date* Displays statement loads as of your current system date.
Exclude Types	Add and select the types of bank statements that you want to exclude from displaying on the Bank Statement Load dashboard.
Exclude Banks	Add and select the bank codes and bank accounts that you want to exclude from displaying on the Bank Statement Load dashboard.

Status of Bank Statement Loads Chart

Use the Status of Bank Statement Loads chart to see the number of Bank Statements by bank that are not loaded, ready to be reconciled, and completed reconciliation.

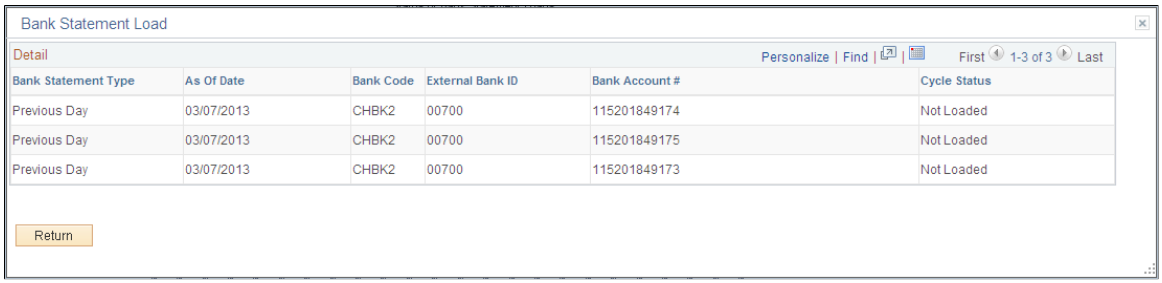
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Status of Bank Statement Loads chart.



Click on a chart bar to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Bank Statement Load detail grid for a bank. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	***Description***
IBAN	Displays the international bank account number (IBAN) in addition to the local, domestic bank account number when the country has been set up to display the IBAN on the "IBAN Formats Page" (PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing).

Reviewing Investment and Debt on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface

This topic discusses using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface to review your organization’s investment and debt mix. Access investment and debt information through the Investment and Debt tile on the Cash Management homepage.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Click to watch a short video about the PeopleSoft Cash Management Homepage on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface.

Pages Used to Review Investment and Debt on the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Investment and Debt Tile	EC_HOME_TILE_FL	Review total debt and investments on the Cash Management homepage. Access the Investment and Debt page.
My Preferences - Investment and Debt Page (Fluid)	TR_USER_PREF_FL	Set up user preferences for the Investment and Debt tile and page.
NavBar: Investment and Debt Page	TR_ID_GRID_FL	Review information about the market value of various portfolios and bank balance.
Investment and Debt Page	TR_ID_DETAIL_FL	Review investment portfolio information, investment and debt types, and investment and debt holdings.

Investment and Debt Tile

Use the Investment and Debt tile (EC_HOME_TILE_FL) to review total debt and investments.

Navigation:

View the tile on the Cash Management homepage.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Investment and Debt tile.

For more information about the tiles available on the Cash Management homepage, see Understanding The Cash Management Fluid Homepage.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

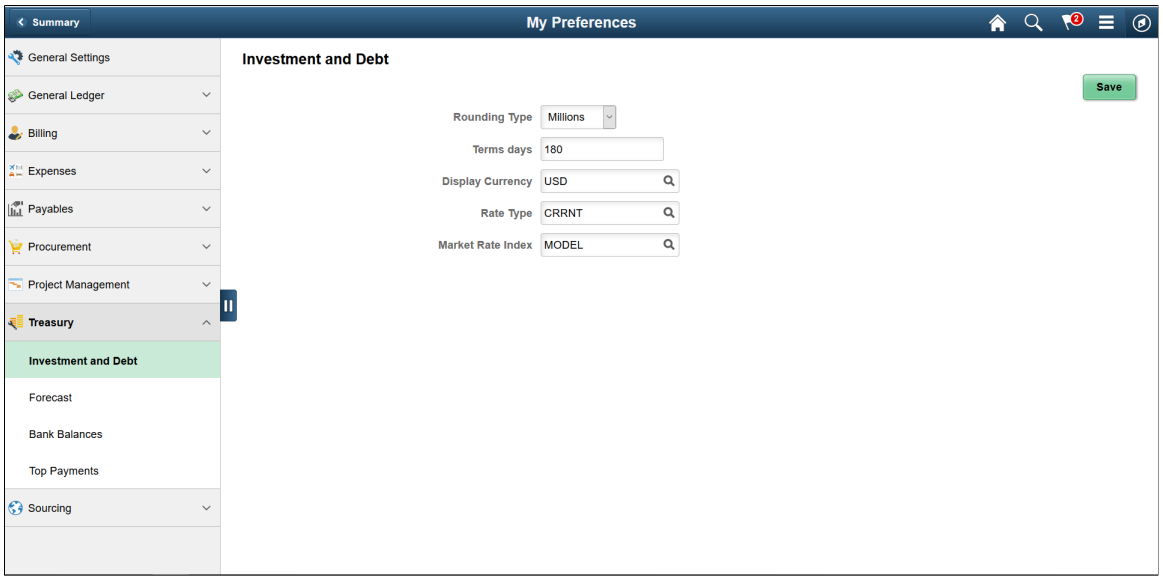
My Preferences - Investment and Debt Page (Fluid)

Use the My Preferences - Investment and Debt page (TR_USER_PREF_FL) to set up user preferences for the Investment and Debt tile and page.

Navigation:

- From any Fluid homepage, select the **Actions List** button, then select *My Preferences*. Select Treasury in the left panel and select the **Investment and Debt** link.
- On the Cash Management homepage, select the Investment and Debt tile. Select the **Actions List** button, then select *My Preferences* from the list.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the My Preferences - Investment and Debt page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Rounding Type	Select from *Billions*, *Millions*, or *Thousands*.
Term days	Enter the number of days to identify the short-term period.
Display Currency	Enter a currency for display on the Cash Management Investment and Debt tile and Investment and Debt page.
Rate Type	Enter the market rate type.
Market Rate Index	Enter the market rate index.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

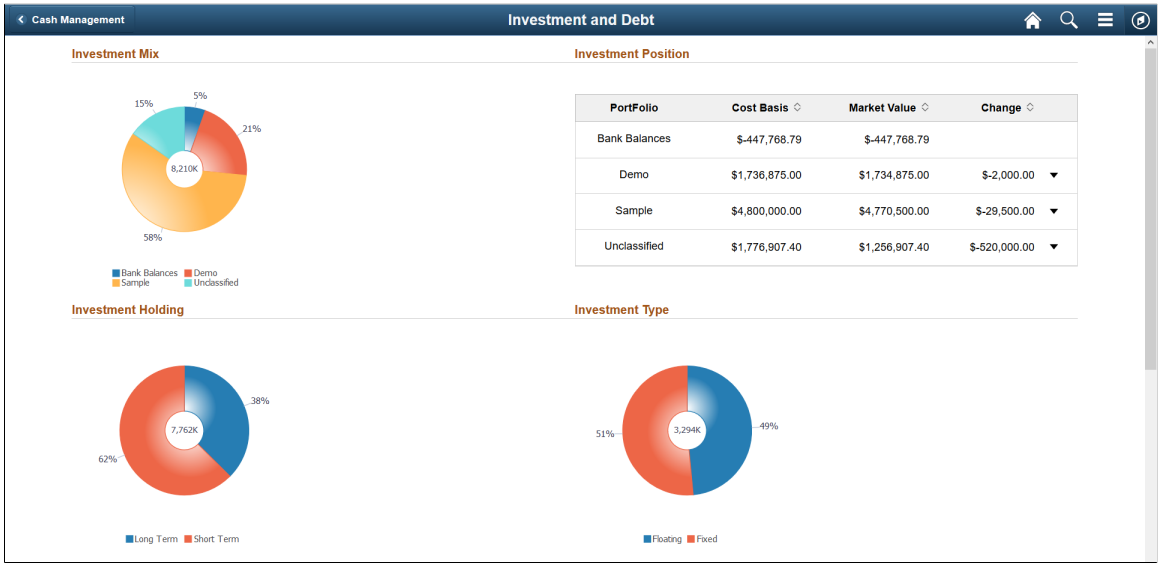
Investment and Debt Page

Use the Investment and Debt page (TR_ID_DETAIL_FL) to review investment portfolio information, investment and debt types, and investment and debt holdings.

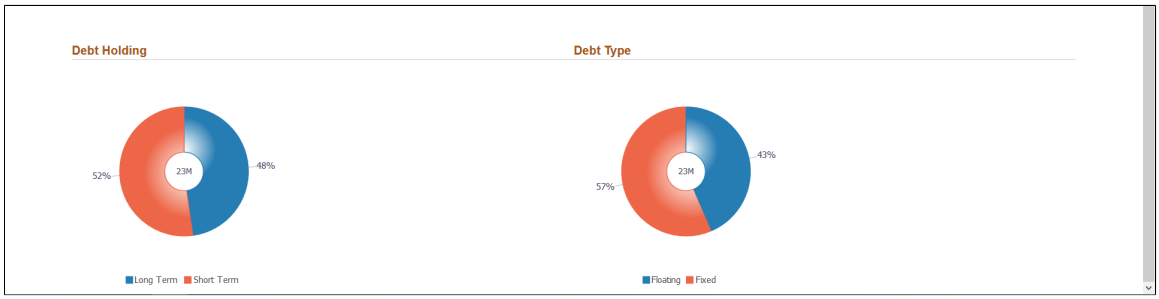
Navigation:

Select the Investment and Debt tile on the Cash Management homepage.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Investment and Debt page (1 of 2). You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Investment and Debt page (2 of 2). You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



The Investment and Debt page includes the following table and ring charts. Each ring chart includes a legend by color and percentage designation.

Investment Mix

The Investment Mix ring chart shows the portfolios by percentage and the total market value. You can view details by selecting a section of the ring.

- Select a portfolio in the ring to access the Investment Mix DrillDown page (TR_INV_MIX_DR_SCF), where you can view deals that make up the portfolio and the total market value.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

View these details for each deal:

- Business Unit
- Deal ID
- Instrument Type
- Transaction Date
- Ticker Symbol
- Counterparty
- Currency Code
- Deal Status
- Cost Basis
- Market Value
- Variance

- Select the bank balances section to access the Bank Balances Detail page (TR_BANK_BAL_SCF), where you can view bank account balances in the investment mix.

  View these bank account details:

  - Business Unit
  - Bank Name
  - Bank Account Number
  - Date
  - Currency Code
  - Closing Balance

Investment Position

The Investment Position table shows the portfolio names, cost basis, market value, and the difference between cost amount and market value. A positive change is indicated by an upward-pointing triangle icon, whereas a negative change is indicated by a downward-pointing triangle icon.

You can view details by selecting a row in the table:

- Select a portfolio row to access the Investment Mix DrillDown page (TR_INV_MIX_DR_SCF), where you can view deals that make up the portfolio and the total market value. Details are the same as for the Investment Mix ring chart.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Select the bank balances row to view bank account details on the Bank Balances Detail page (TR_BANK_BAL_SCF). Details are the same as for the Investment Mix ring chart.

Investment Holding

The Investment Holding ring chart shows the percentage outstanding investment by length of investment and the total market value. The length of investment is divided into these time periods: short-term and long-term.

Select a section in the ring chart to access the Investment Holding Details page (TR_INV_HOLD_DR_SCF).

View these asset details:

- Business Unit
- Deal ID
- Settlement Date
- Maturity Date
- Instrument Base Type
- Portfolio
- Bank
- Account
- Currency
- Cost Basis
- Market Value
- Variance

Investment Type

The Investment Type ring chart shows the outstanding investments by type of interest rate and the total market value. Rate types are fixed and floating.

Select a section in the ring chart to access the Investment Type Details page (TR_INV_TYPE_DR_SCF). Details for fixed and floating assets are the same as for the Investment Holding ring chart.

Debt Holding

The Debt Holding ring chart shows the outstanding debt by length of debt and the total market value. The length of debt is divided into these time periods: short-term and long-term.

Select a section in the ring chart to access the Debt Holding Details page (TR_DEB_HOLD_DR_SCF). Details for short-term and long-term liabilities are the same as for the Investment Holding ring chart.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Debt Type

The Debt Type ring chart shows the outstanding debt by type of interest rate and the total market value. Rate types are fixed and floating.

Select a section of the ring chart to access the Debt Type Details page (TR_DEB_TYPE_DR_SCF). Details for fixed and floating liabilities are the same as for the Investment Type ring chart.

NavBar: Investment and Debt Page

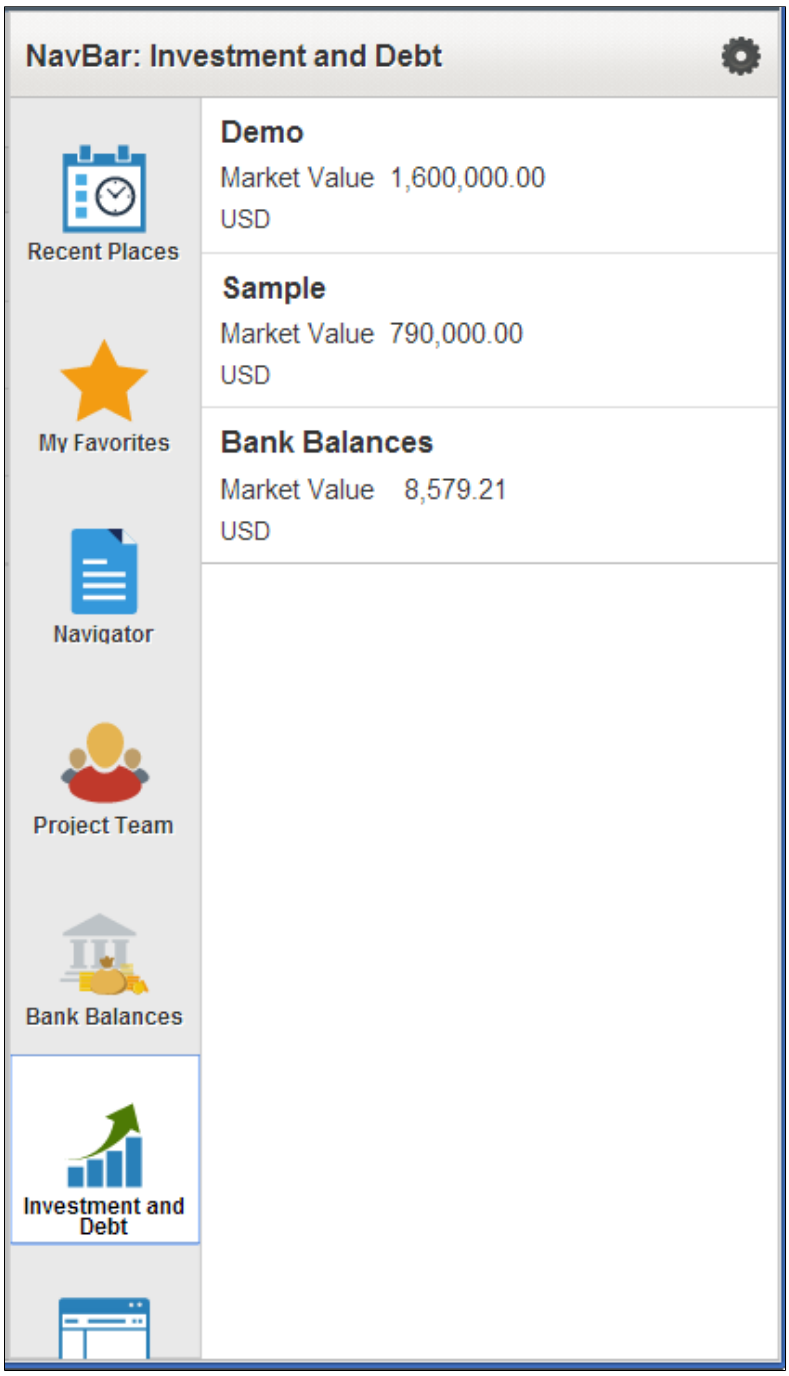
Use the NavBar: Investment and Debt page (TR_ID_GRID_FL) to review information about the market value of various portfolios and bank balance.

Navigation:

Select the NavBar button on the Oracle banner of any homepage to expand the navigator pane, then select the Investment and Debt tab.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the NavBar: Investment and Debt page.



Fields include the portfolio name or Bank Balances, the market value, and currency.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 18

Using the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter

Understanding the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter

The PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter is similar to the PeopleSoft Classic Treasury WorkCenter, but has all the advantages of PeopleSoft Fluid technology. Fluid users can review and take actions on Treasury activities, using a mobile device.

Prerequisite

PeopleTools 8.55 is required for the PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters.

Setting Up and Personalizing the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter

To personalize the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter, see "Setting Up and Personalizing PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters" (Application Fundamentals)

Related Links

Understanding the Treasury WorkCenter and Manager Dashboard

"Understanding PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface" (Application Fundamentals)

"Understanding How to Set Up PeopleSoft Classic and Fluid WorkCenters As a System Administrator" (Application Fundamentals)

"Understanding Delivered WorkCenters and Dashboards" (Application Fundamentals)

Using the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter

Pages Used with the PeopleSoft Fluid Treasury WorkCenter

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Treasury Workcenter Tile	TR_WORKCENTER_FL	Access the Treasury WorkCenter page in the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Usage*
Treasury WorkCenter page	TR_APP_WC_GRID_FL	Access the My Work, Links, Queries and Reports/Processes group boxes using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface.

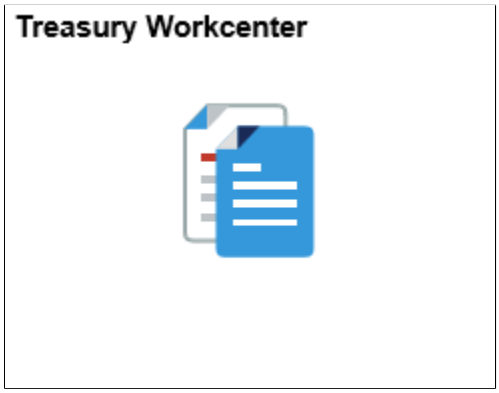
Treasury Workcenter Tile

Use the Treasury WorkCenter Tile (TR_WORKCENTER_FL) to access the Treasury WorkCenter page in PeopleSoft Fluid.

Navigation:

This tile can be placed on any PeopleSoft Fluid Home page. For additional information about how to add a tile to a PeopleSoft Fluid Home page, see *PeopleTools: Application User's Guide*, "Working With PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface", Working With Fluid Homepages, Managing Tiles, Adding Tiles to a Fluid Homepage.

This example illustrates the Treasury Workcenter Tile.



Treasury WorkCenter page

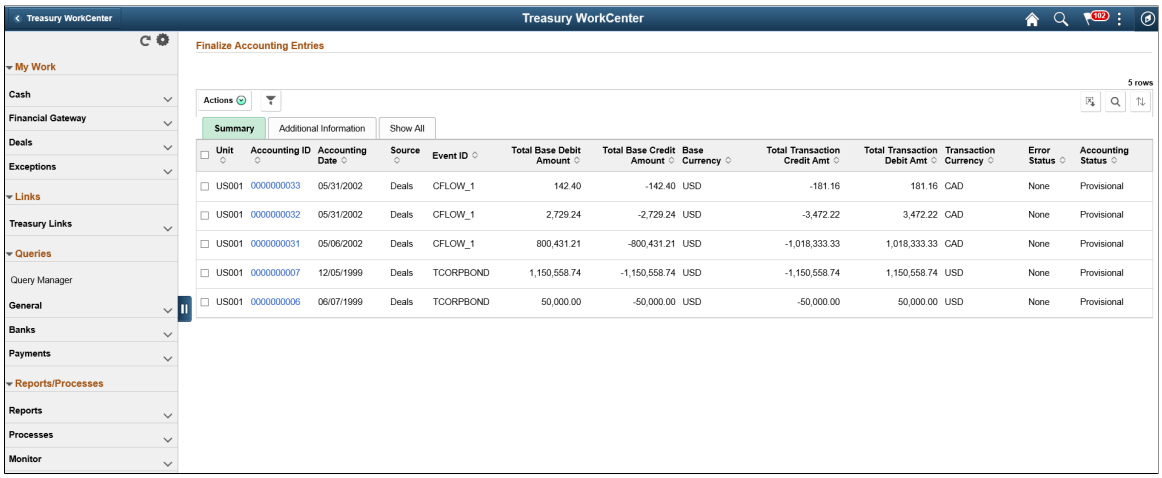
Use the Treasury WorkCenter page (TR_APP_WC_GRID_FL) to access the My Work, Links, Queries and Reports/Processes group boxes using the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface.

Navigation:

Select the Treasury WorkCenter tile.

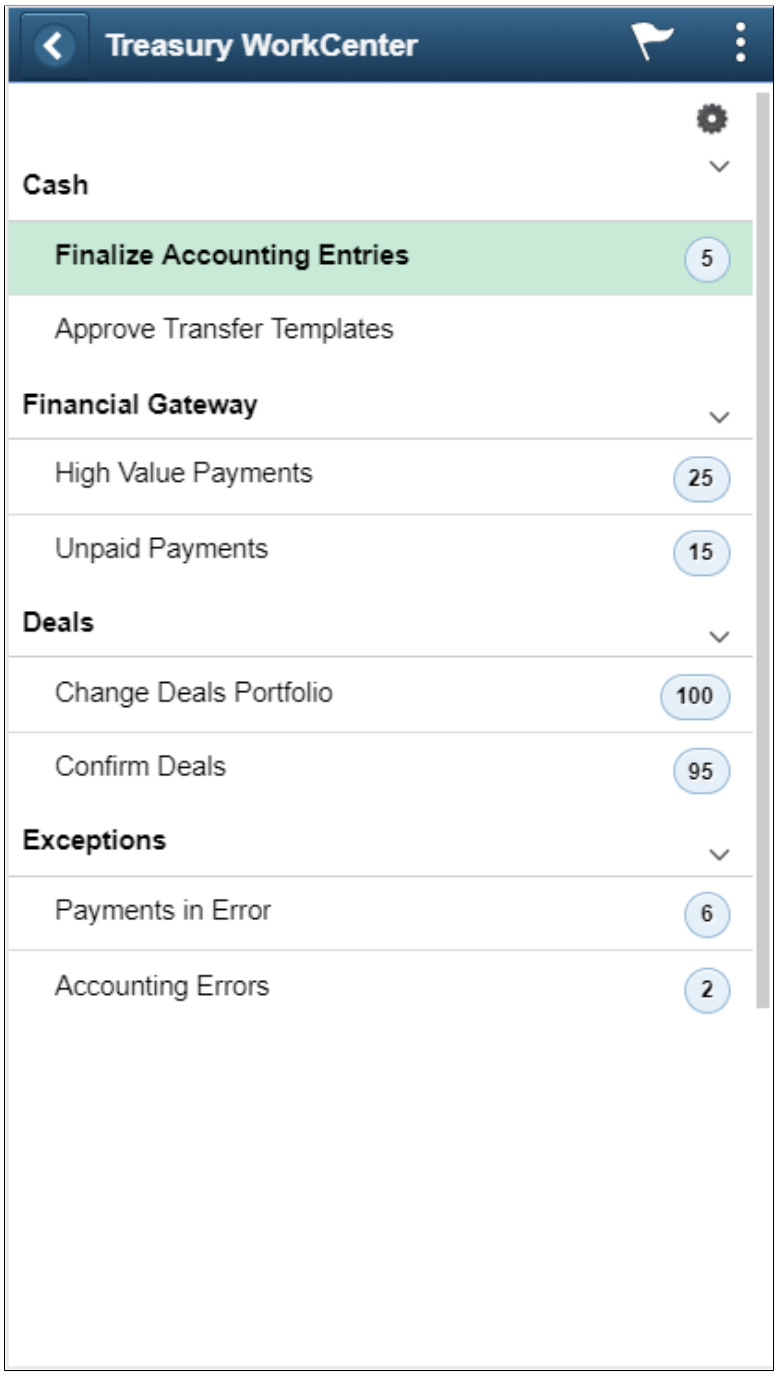
Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury WorkCenter Page (Fluid) as displayed on a desktop. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury WorkCenter Page (Fluid) as displayed on a smartphone. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
	Click the Personalize icon to access these options: • *Personalize*: Click to access the "Personalize Page (Fluid)" (Application Fundamentals) • Edit Filters: Click to access the "Edit Filters Personalize Page (Fluid)" (Application Fundamentals). This option is not available in small form factor.

Using the Fluid Treasury WorkCenter - My Work

The My Work pagelet provides links that consolidate a user's actionable tasks, using the user ID as the Assigned User ID to show only items in their own queue.

The My Work pagelet includes these functional groupings for links:

- Cash
- Financial Gateway
- Deals
- Exceptions

Finalize Accounting Entries Page

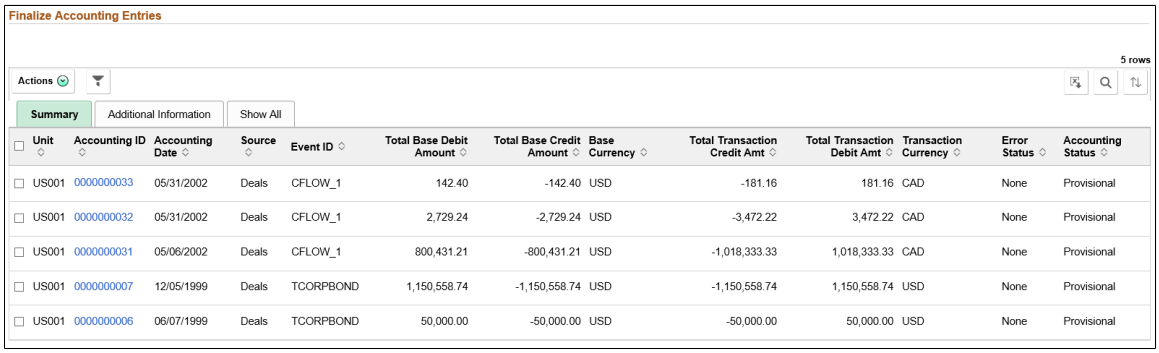
Use the Finalize Accounting Entries page (TR_APP_WC_GRID_FL) to display and finalize accounting entries with a Provisional status.

Navigation:

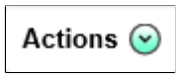
Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

Click the **Cash: Finalize Accounting Entries** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Finalize Accounting Entries page - Summary tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
	The available actions are the following: • *Finalize*: Finalize the selected accounting entries which are in provisional state. • *Finalize and Generate Journals*: Finalize the selected accounting entries which are in provisional state and generate corresponding journals (by invoking the Journal Generator process). • *Email Notification*: Send email notification for the selected transaction. See "Setting Up and Personalizing PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters" (Application Fundamentals) for additional information.
	Click to refine filter criteria.
	Click to download data from the current grid into an Excel file.
	Click to search for a desired value in the current grid.
	Click to sort current grid data by one of the grid columns.
Accounting ID	Click the Accounting ID value to open the View/Approve Entries page
	Click to view Accounting Details page that contains additional data regarding the accounting entries. This icon is available only for the small form factor.

Approve Transfer Templates Page

Use the Approve Transfer Templates page (TR_WR_TMPLT_APP_FL) to search for and approve or deny transfer templates.

Navigation:

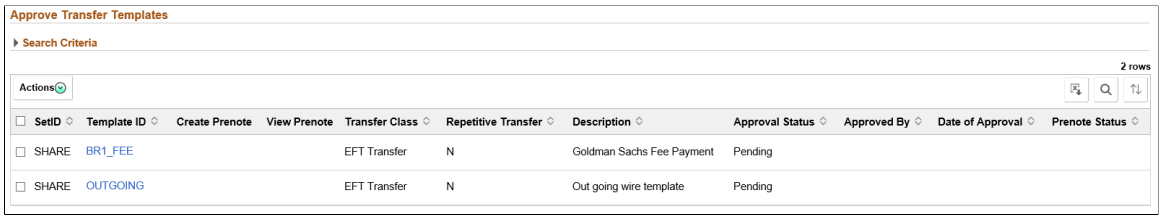
- **Cash Management** >**Treasury WorkCenter** >**My Work pagelet**

  Click the **Cash: Approve Transfer Templates** link.

- **Cash Management** > **Fees and Transfers** >**Approve Transfer Templates**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fluid Treasury WorkCenter - Approve Transfer Templates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Actions	The available actions are the following: • *Approve*: Approve templates which are in pending approval state. • *Deny*: Deny templates which are in pending approval state. • *Email Notification*: Send email notification for the selected transfer templates. See "Setting Up and Personalizing PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters" (Application Fundamentals) for additional information.

High Value Payments Page

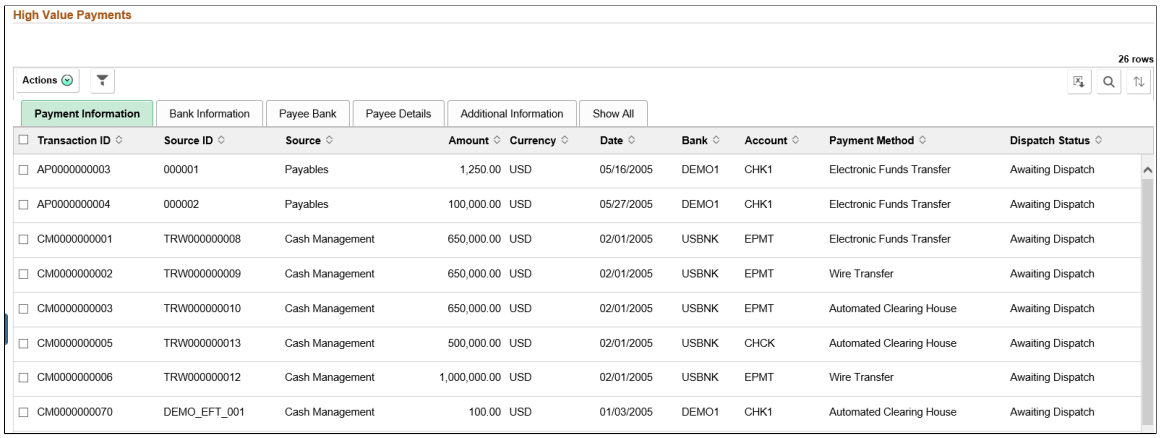
Use the High Value Payments page (TR_WC_FG_GRID_FL) to display high value payments awaiting dispatch; dispatch or flag selected payments for hold.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

Click the **Financial Gateway: High Value Payments** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the High Value Payments page - Payment Information. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	Description
Actions	The available actions are the following: • *Dispatch Payments*: Dispatch the selected payments. • *Hold Payments*: Place a hold on the selected payments • *Email Notification*: Send email notification for the selected transaction. See "Setting Up and Personalizing PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters" (Application Fundamentals) for additional information.

Payments Due Today

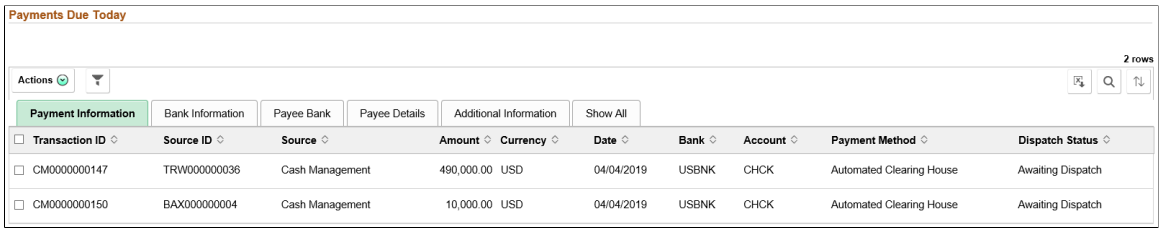
Use the Payments Due Today page (TR_WC_FG_GRID_FL) to display payments awaiting dispatch with today's date.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

Click the **Financial Gateway: Payments Due Today** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Payments Due Today page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Note: See the High Value Payments page for examples of the fields on the Bank Information, Payee Bank, Payee Details, and Additional Information tabs. Grids for High Value Payments, Payments Due Today, and Unpaid Payments display the same fields.

Field or Control	Description
Actions	The available actions are the following: • *Dispatch Payments*: Dispatch the selected payments. • *Hold Payments*: Place a hold on the selected payments • *Email Notification*: Send email notification for the selected transaction. See "Setting Up and Personalizing PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters" (Application Fundamentals) for additional information.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Unpaid Payments Page

Use the Unpaid Payments page (TR_WC_FG_GRID_FL) to display all unpaid payments that are awaiting dispatch.

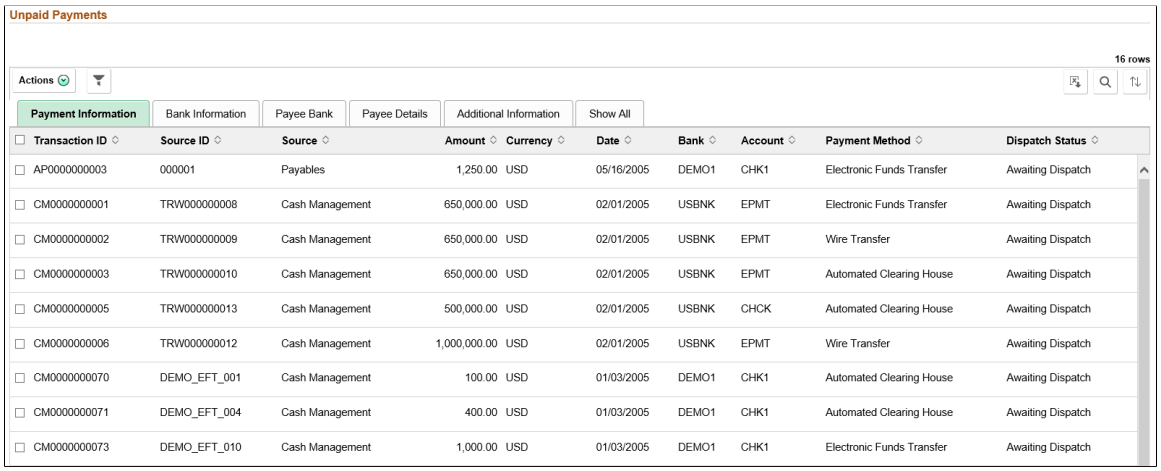
Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet.

Click the **Financial Gateway: Unpaid Payments** link.

Note: See the High Value Payments page for examples of the fields on the Bank Information, Payee Bank, Payee Details, and Additional Information tabs. Grids for High Value Payments, Payments Due Today, and Unpaid Payments display the same fields.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Unpaid Payments page - Payment Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Transaction ID	Source ID	Source	Amount	Currency	Date	Bank	Account	Payment Method	Dispatch Status
AP0000000003	000001	Payables	1,250.00	USD	05/16/2005	DEMO1	CHK1	Electronic Funds Transfer	Awaiting Dispatch
CM0000000001	TRW000000008	Cash Management	650,000.00	USD	02/01/2005	USBNK	EPMT	Electronic Funds Transfer	Awaiting Dispatch
CM0000000002	TRW000000009	Cash Management	650,000.00	USD	02/01/2005	USBNK	EPMT	Wire Transfer	Awaiting Dispatch
CM0000000003	TRW000000010	Cash Management	650,000.00	USD	02/01/2005	USBNK	EPMT	Automated Clearing House	Awaiting Dispatch
CM0000000005	TRW000000013	Cash Management	500,000.00	USD	02/01/2005	USBNK	CHCK	Automated Clearing House	Awaiting Dispatch
CM0000000006	TRW000000012	Cash Management	1,000,000.00	USD	02/01/2005	USBNK	EPMT	Wire Transfer	Awaiting Dispatch
CM0000000070	DEMO_EFT_001	Cash Management	100.00	USD	01/03/2005	DEMO1	CHK1	Automated Clearing House	Awaiting Dispatch
CM0000000071	DEMO_EFT_004	Cash Management	400.00	USD	01/03/2005	DEMO1	CHK1	Automated Clearing House	Awaiting Dispatch
CM0000000073	DEMO_EFT_010	Cash Management	1,000.00	USD	01/03/2005	DEMO1	CHK1	Electronic Funds Transfer	Awaiting Dispatch

Field or Control	*Description*
Actions	The available actions are the following: • *Dispatch Payments*: Dispatch the selected payments. • *Hold Payments*: Place a hold on the selected payments • *Email Notification*: Send email notification for the selected transaction. See "Setting Up and Personalizing PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters" (Application Fundamentals) for additional information.

Change Deals Portfolio Page

Use the Change Deals Portfolio page (TR_DEAL_WC_GRID_FL) to display open and matured deals; select deals and update portfolio.

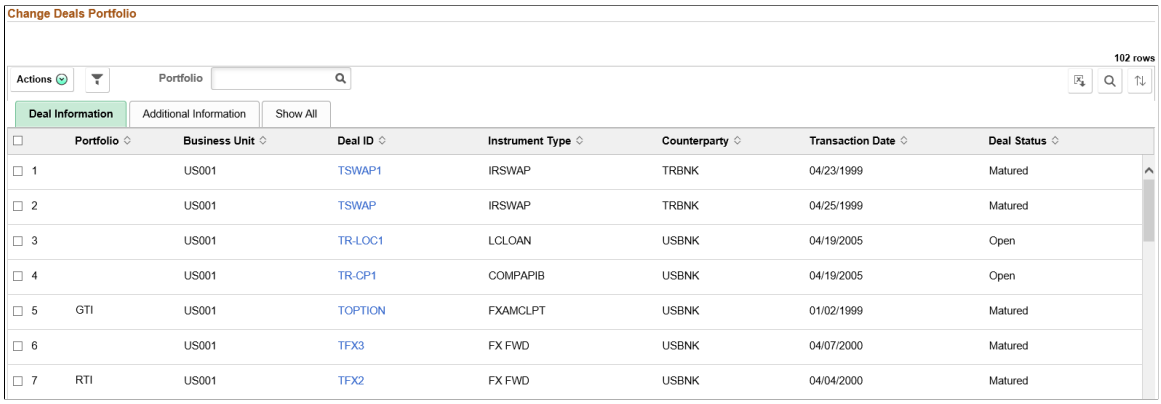
Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Click the **Deals: Change Deals Portfolio** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Change Deals Portfolio page - Deal Information tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Deal ID	Click the Deal ID value link to open the Deal Detail page for the deal.
Change Portfolio	After selecting one or more deals, select a portfolio and click the Change Portfolio option in Related Actions to update the portfolio for the deals.
Email Notification	After selecting one or more deals, click the Email Notification option in Related Actions to send email notification for the selected transaction. See "Setting Up and Personalizing PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters" (Application Fundamentals) for additional information.

Confirm Deals Page

Use the Confirm Deals page (TR_DEAL_WC_GRID_FL) to display open or matured deals with pending confirmation; select deals and confirm.

Navigation:

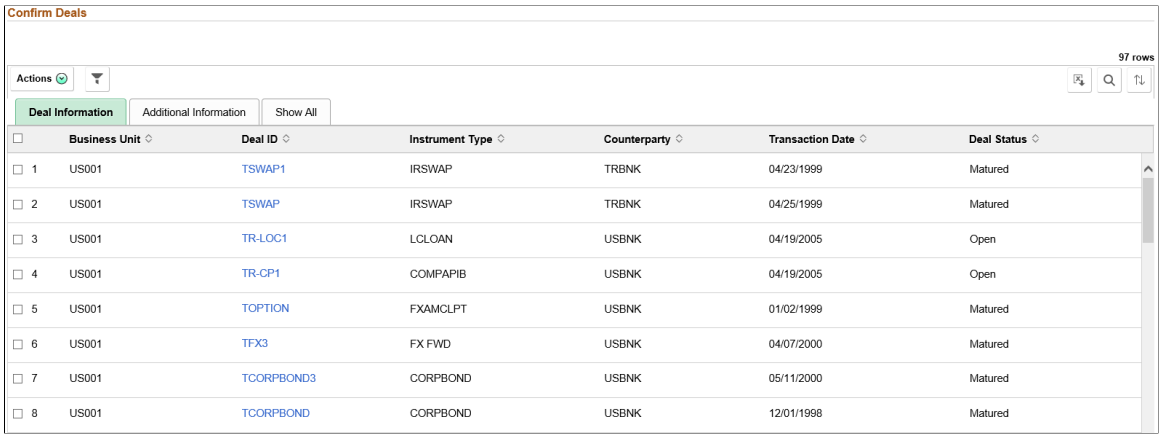
- **Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet**

  Click the **Deals: Confirm Deals** link.

- **Deal Management >Confirm Deals > Confirm Deals Manually >Deal Confirmation**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Confirm Deals page - Deal Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Deal ID	Click the Deal ID value link to open the Deal Confirmation page for the deal, where you can manually confirm the deal.
Actions	The available actions are the following: • *Confirm*: Confirm the selected deals. • *Email Notification*: Send email notification for the selected transaction. See "Setting Up and Personalizing PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters" (Application Fundamentals) for additional information.

Approve Deals Page

Use the Approve Deals page (TR_DEAL_WC_GRID_FL) to display open deals that are pending review; select deals and approve.

Navigation:

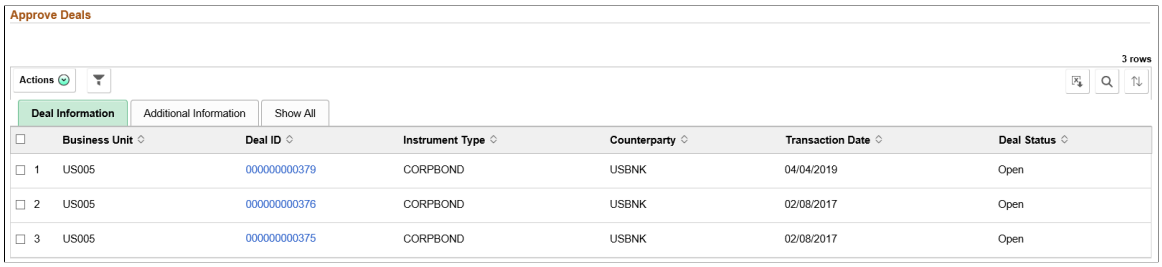
- **Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet**

  Click the **Deals: Approve Deals** link.

- **Deal Management >Capture Deals >Preview/Approve Deals >Deal Preview/Approval**

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Deals page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Actions	The available actions are the following: • *Approve*: Approve deals which are in pending approval state. • *Email Notification*: Send email notification for the selected transaction. See "Setting Up and Personalizing PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters" (Application Fundamentals) for additional information.

Payments on Hold Page

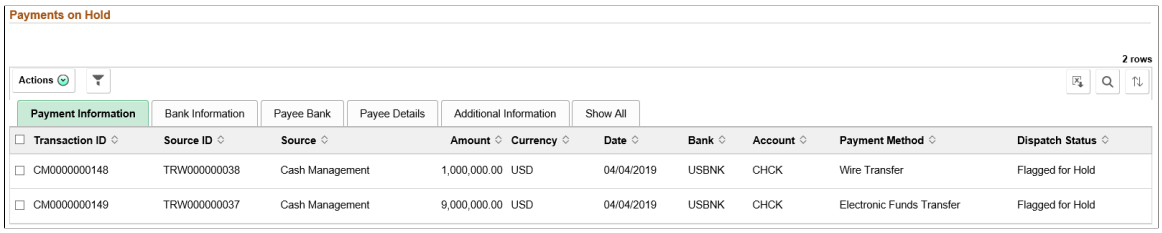
Use the Payments on Hold page to view a summary list of payments on hold.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

Click the **Exceptions: Payments on Hold** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Payments on Hold page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Field or Control	*Description*
Actions	The available actions are the following: • *Clear Payments*: Clear the payment hold. • *Email Notification*: Send email notification for the selected transaction. See "Setting Up and Personalizing PeopleSoft Fluid WorkCenters" (Application Fundamentals) for additional information.

Payments in Error Page

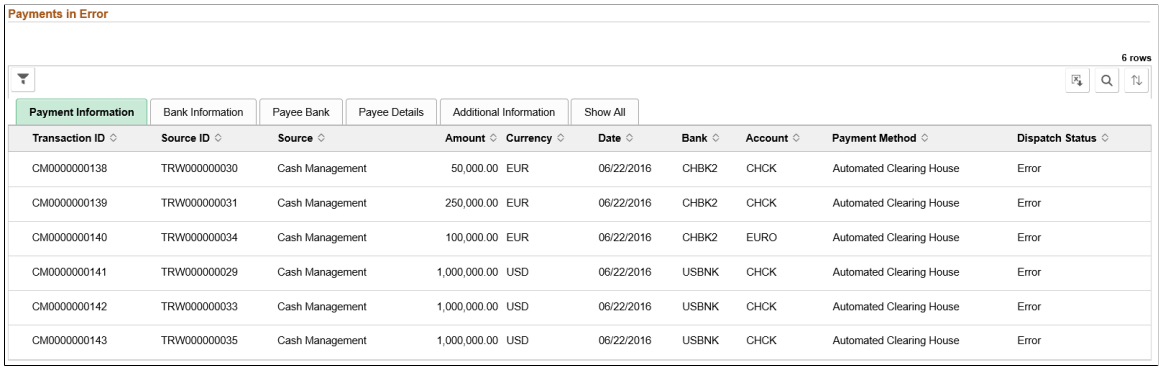
Use the Payments in Error page (TR_WC_FG_GRID_FL) to view a summary list of payments in error.

Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

Click the **Exceptions: Payments in Error** link.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Payments in Error page.



Accounting Errors Page

Use the Accounting Errors page (TR_APP_WC_GRID_FL) to view a summary list of accounting errors.

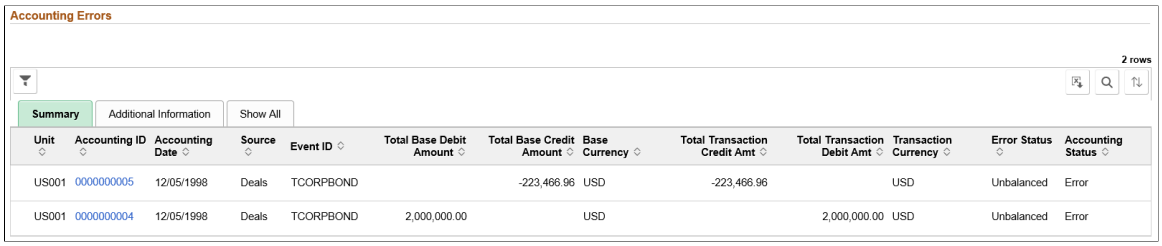
Navigation:

Cash Management >Treasury WorkCenter >My Work pagelet

Click the **Exceptions: Accounting Errors** link.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Errors page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Field or Control	*Description*
Accounting ID	Click the Accounting ID link to open the Accounting Entries page (TRA_ACCTG_LINE).

Using the Fluid Treasury WorkCenter - Links

Use the Treasury WorkCenter - Links pagelet to view Treasury-related links. The primary purpose of this pagelet is to minimize the number of clicks to access critical path components and pages. Click any of the links on the pagelet to display the destination page in the transaction area.

The Links pagelet can provide access to internal links and external links.

This example illustrates how the Links pagelet in Treasury WorkCenter can be set up using preconfigured links:

The Links pagelet can provide access to internal links and external links.

To set up WorkCenter pagelets as a system administrator, see "Configuring Pagelets" (Enterprise Components).

Related Links

"Working With and Personalizing the Classic Links Pagelet As an End User" (Application Fundamentals)

Using the Fluid Treasury WorkCenter - Queries

The Queries section of the Reports/Queries tab can include links to Query Manager, public queries, private queries, and actionable operational analytics (such as grids and graphs). Click on any link in the Queries pagelet to display the query or analytics in the transaction area of the WorkCenter.

The Queries pagelet can provide access to public queries, private queries, and Pivot Grids.

To set up WorkCenter pagelets as a system administrator, see "Configuring Pagelets" (Enterprise Components).

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Related Links

"Working With and Personalizing the Classic Queries Pagelet As an End User" (Application Fundamentals)

Using the Fluid Treasury WorkCenter - Reports and Processes

The Reports/Processes pagelet can provide access to system-defined reports and processes for which you have appropriate permissions.

This example illustrates how the Reports/Processes pagelet in the Treasury WorkCenter can be set up using preconfigured links:

To set up WorkCenter pagelets as a system administrator, see "Configuring Pagelets" (Enterprise Components).

Related Links

"Working With and Personalizing the Classic Reports and Processes Pagelet As an End User" (Application Fundamentals)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

 Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 19

Configuring Batch Processes for Cash Management

Configuring Temporary Tables for Batch Processing

When you run batch processes in parallel, you risk data contention and deadlocks on temporary tables. To avoid this, PeopleTools enables you to dedicate specific instances of temporary tables for each process. When PeopleSoft Application Engine manages a dedicated temporary table instance, it controls the locking of the table before use and the unlocking of the table after use.

When you decide how many temporary table instances to dedicate for a process, consider the number of temporary tables that the process uses. More instances result in more copies of the temporary tables on the system. For example, if a process uses 25 temporary tables and you have 10 instances for a process, you will have 250 temporary tables on the system.

If you run processes in parallel and all of the dedicated temporary table instances are in use, the performance of the process decreases. You need to find a balance that works for your organization.

Note: When you specify the number of instances, PeopleSoft Application Designer displays a list of the temporary tables for the process. Use the list to determine how many temporary tables each process uses.

Specify how many temporary table instances to dedicate for each of the following batch processes that can run in parallel in Cash Management:

- Bank Statement Accounting (TR_STMTACCTG).
- IHB (in-house banking) Interest Accruals (TR_TRINTACU)
- Netting Auto Selection (TR_NET_ASEL).
- Netting Closing (TR_NET_ARCLS {library run from AP_APY2015}).
- Netting Closing (TR_NET_CLOSE {library run from AP_APY2015}).
- Cash Position/Position Monitor (TR_POS_TOTAL).
- Pool Transaction Information (TRP_TXN_XFM)
- Investment Pool Income Distribution (TRP_INC_DIST)
- PeopleSoft Cash Management to JD Edwards General Accounting integration (TR_JRNL_INT)

The PeopleTools documentation discusses the usage of temporary tables in detail and describes how to specify the number of instances. See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Application Engine*.

If you run any of the General Ledger COBOL processes, also configure the temporary tables for those processes. The documentation for *PeopleSoft General Ledger* discusses how to do this in detail.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 20

Delivered Workflows for Cash Management

Delivered Workflows for Cash Management

This section discusses Cash Management workflows. The workflows are listed alphabetically by workflow name.

Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval

This section discusses the Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval workflows.

Note that these workflows are separate workflows that use the same pages and processes.

Description

Information Type	*Description*
Event Description	When you select a settlement on the Select Settlements page, or approve a settlement on the Approve Settlements page. **Note:** The Select Settlements and Approve Settlements page have the same object name (STL_SELECTION).
Action Description	Routes names of selected or approved settlements to an assigned user's worklist.
Notification Method	Worklist
Active or Inactive	Active

Workflow Objects

Information Type	*Description*
Approval Rule Set	Execute Treasury Settlements
Business Process	Managing Cash (TR_MANAGE_CASH)

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Information Type	*Description*
Activity	Execute Treasury Settlements
Role	In PeopleTools Application Designer, you can edit the delivered approval rule set to change the assigned roles.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 21

Cash Management Reports

Cash Management Reports: A to Z

This table lists the BI Publisher reports provided with Cash Management, sorted alphanumerically by report ID.

Report ID and Report Name	*Description*	*Navigation*	*Run Control Page*
FSX3003 Fees & Interest	View miscellaneous transaction details for a specified bank ID, bank account, and statement ID number.	**Cash Management** > **Reports** > **Fees and Interest**	RUN_FIN3003
TRX1000 Accounting Entries	View comprehensive accounting entry information for a specified business unit and accounting ID.	**Cash Management** > **Treasury Accounting** >**Reports** > **Accounting Entries Report**	RUN_TRC1000
TRX1001 Substitution Rule Definition	List detailed information for a Substitution Rule: overall definition information, field names and test/substitution values.	**Cash Management** > **Treasury Accounting** >**Reports** > **Substitution Rule Definition**	RUN_TRX1001
TRX1002 Substitution Rule Templates	List all accounting templates associated with a substitution rule.	**Cash Management** > **Treasury Accounting** >**Reports** > **Substitution Rule Templates**	RUN_TRX1002
TRX1010 Settlement Instructions	View settlement instruction information for all settlement IDs of a specified SetID.	**Cash Management** > **Reports** >**Settlement Instructions Report**	RUN_TRC1010
TRX1014 Cash Flow Settlements	List bank, account, and settlement information for cash flows of a specified business unit and time period.	**Cash Management** > **Reports** > **Cash Flow Settlements**	RUN_TRC1014
TRX3005 In-House Bank Statement	Lists transaction and interest accrual activity for a specified bank and account during a defined time frame.	**Cash Management** > **In-House Banking** > **In-House Bank Statements**	RUN_TRC3005

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Report ID and Report Name	*Description*	*Navigation*	*Run Control Page*
TRX4000 Netting Balance List	Lists comprehensive balance information for all nets of a specified netting status and time period.	**Cash Management** > **Reports** > **Netting Balance List**	RUN_TRC4000
TRX4010 Netting Advice Balance Summary	Lists total receivable, total payable, and total net amounts for a specified netting status and time period. The amounts are formatted for faxing.	**Cash Management** > **Report** > **Netting Advice Summary**	RUN_TRC4010
TRX4020 Netting Advice Balance Detail	Lists detailed information (such as accounts payable/ accounts receivable association, business unit, gross amount, and net amount) for all nets of a specified netting status and timeframe.	**Cash Management** > **Report** > **Netting Advice Detail**	RUN_TRC4020
TRX4050 Fee Structures	Shows comprehensive fee structure information for a specified bank code, including the fee description, type, minimum and maximum ranges, and rate and price information.	**Banking** > **Account Analysis** > **Fee Structures Report**	RUN_TRC4050
TRX4100 Participant Positions by Pool	Lists the positions of investment pools and the positions of each pool's participants for a specified business unit.	Cash Management, Reports, Participant Positions by Pool	RUN_TRC4100
TRX5000 Cash Sweep Structure	Lists detailed information for a cash sweep structure, includes the master bank account, overall cash sweep processing attributes, sub-accounts, sub-account processing attributes and audit information.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Structure	RUN_TRX5000
TRX5001 Cash Sweep Bank Accounts	Lists all of the cash sweep structures associated with a given bank account and whether the account is the master bank account or subaccount in the structure.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Bank Accounts	RUN_TRX5001

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Report ID and Report Name	*Description*	*Navigation*	*Run Control Page*
TRX5002 Cash Sweep Summary	Summarizes cash sweep amounts within a cash sweep structure by bank account.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Summary	RUN_TRX5002
TRX5003 Denied Cash Sweep Payments	Run the Denied Cash Sweep Payments report.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Denied Cash Sweep Payments	RUN_TRX5003

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Copyright © 1988, 2022, Oracle and/or its affiliates.